



LONDON BOROUGH OF CAMDEN  
PUBLIC LIBRARIES



REFERENCE LIBRARY











# Sir Ferumbas.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series. No. xxxiv.

1879.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 53 MOHRENSTRASSE.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

THE  
ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

---

PART I.

Sir Gerumbras.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE PAPER MS. ABOUT 1380 A.D., IN THE  
BODLEIAN LIBRARY (ASHMOLE MS. 33)

BY

SIDNEY J. HERRTAGE, B.A.,

EDITOR OF THE "GESTA ROMANORUM," "STARKEY'S LIFE AND LETTERS," ETC.

LONDON:  
PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY,  
BY TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXIX.

Extra Series,

XXXIV.

---

BUNGAY: CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS.

## INTRODUCTION.

---

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <p>§ 1. <i>Popularity of the romance, as shown by numerous editions</i>, p. v.</p> <p>§ 2. <i>Caxton's "Lyf of Charles the grete,"</i> p. viii.</p> <p>§ 3. <i>Ferumbras an enlarged portion of a previous romance</i>, p. xi.</p> <p>§ 4. <i>English MSS. of the Charlemagne Romances</i>, p. xii.</p> | <p>§ 5. <i>Description of the Ashmole MS. 33</i>, p. xiv.</p> <p>§ 6. <i>Characters of the romance</i>, p. xvii.</p> <p>§ 7. <i>Its versification</i>, p. xviii.</p> <p>§ 8. <i>Its Dialectal and Grammatical peculiarities</i>, p. xviii.</p> <p>§ 9. <i>Conclusion</i>, p. xxvii.</p> |
|---|---|

§ 1. IN the present Introduction I do not propose to enter into the general question of the Origin and History of the Charlemagne Romances, but to confine myself to the one with which we are immediately concerned.

Of all these romances none attained to so high a pitch of popularity as that, the present version of which is now for the first time published. MM. Krœber and G. Servois, the editors of the old French version (from which the present is a translation), in their introduction say: "Des le xii<sup>me</sup> siècle probablement, et pour sûr au siècle suivant, la chanson de Fierabras était chantée en provençal et en français, au midi et au nord de la France. Elle a été de bonne heure traduite ou imitée dans presque toutes les langues de l'Europe, et n'a cessé chez nous d'être rajeunie et reproduite dans les versions en prose qui en ont été publiées depuis le xv<sup>e</sup> siècle jusqu'à nos jours."<sup>1</sup>

Of the Romance of Fierabras two versions exist, the one Provençal,<sup>2</sup> the other French, the former of which, in the opinion of MM. Krœber and Servois, was a translation from a French original now lost. Of the French

<sup>1</sup> "Fierabras, *Chanson de Geste*," Paris, 1860, 8°. p. ii.

<sup>2</sup> Published by Herr Bekker, with the title, "Der Roman von Ferabras provenzalisch, herausgeg. von Herr Bekker," Berlin, 1829, 4°. It consists of 5084 lines.



version five MSS. are known to exist, two belonging to the XIV, and two to the XV century.<sup>1</sup>

Previous to 1860, the poetical version of *Fierabras* had never been printed, but there had been numerous editions of the prose romance. A full account of these will be found in Brunet's *Manuel du Libraire*, s.v.v. *Conqueste* and *Fierabras*, and I shall therefore confine myself to a notice of the most remarkable of these editions.

The first prose version was published in 1478, at Geneva, with the title, "Le Roman de Fier a bras, le geant," and the colophon, "Imprime a Geneve l'an de grace mil cccc.lxxviij. le xxviij<sup>e</sup> iour de Novembre." It is in folio, Gothic letters, and consists of 115 leaves, with no pagination.

In the Grenville Library in the British Museum, Nos. 10,531, and 10,532 are two copies.

The first, entitled, "*Fierabras, Roman par Henry Bolomier*," which is the copy mentioned by Brunet, N. R. II. p. 231, as incorrectly described in the Catalogue of Vander Velde, commences with the prologue *Saint Pol docteur de Verite*, which, with Table of Chapters, occupies five leaves. The text begins on leaf 6, and finishes on 110 back, with the colophon—"Explicit *Fierabras, par Symon du Jardin à Geneve*." It is in folio and undated.

The work is divided into three Books, the second of which contains

<sup>1</sup> The editors of *Fierabras* only mention *four*, but one has since been discovered in the Municipal Library of Hanover. (See p. xiv. below.) Of these only one is in the British Museum, viz. MS. Reg. 15. E. vi. This magnificent MS., which is in a state of perfect preservation, forms an enormous folio volume, on vellum, written in double columns in the 15th century. It contains 487 folios, besides 5 folios at the beginning, of which one is blank. The first has, on the back, a table of the contents of the volume. The second contains, on the back, a superb miniature, representing John Talbot, Earl of Shrewsbury, who died in 1453, on his knees, presenting this volume to Margaret of Anjou, queen of Henry VI, who is seated beside her husband on a kind of bed, in a chamber of which the tapestry bears everywhere the arms of England and France quartered. Behind the queen are two ladies, and behind the king a great number of men. Above is a dedication in verse.

The third leaf contains a pedigree of Henry VI. This leaf, as well as the preceding, is ornamented with the armorial bearings of John Talbot, and of Henry VI. and his queen quartered. The back of the fifth folio is entirely occupied by a large miniature, representing *le Chastel du Chaire, la Cité de Babiloine, Nectanebz seigneur d'Egipte, père Alicandre, le jardin du Baulme, and les moulins de Babiloine*.

The volume contains a large number of Romances in prose and verse. *Fierabras* begins on lf. 66, and ends on lf. 81, with the colophon, *Cy fine le iiijme livre Charlemaine*, and is followed by *Le livre de Oger Le Dannemarche*, which begins on leaf 82, under a miniature representing Ogier breaking Charlot's head with a chess-board. The last piece but one is *Le livre des fais d'armes et de chevalerie*, translated and printed by Caxton in 1490.

the whole of the romance of Sir Ferumbras. This is subdivided into 3 parts, the first containing 16 chapters, and extending from the appearance of Ferumbras before Charles' camp to the capture of Oliver: the second extends to immediately before the starting of Richard of Normandy on his message to Charles from the besieged knights; and the third ends with the wedding of Guy and Floripas. The fight between Roland and Ferragus occurs in Book III. part i. chapt. 12. It agrees throughout with the French version as printed by MM. Kroeber and Servois.

The heading to Book II. runs as follows:—"La premiere partie du second liure contient XVI chapitres, et parle de la bataille faicte par oliuier & fierabras ung merueilleux geant," and it is taken, we are told, from a "rommant fait a lancienne façon sans grand ordonnance dont iay este insite a le reduire en prose par chapitres ordonnez," and has been turned from "la rime ancienne en prose."

The first and third parts are taken from Vincent de Beauvais, *Speculum Historiale*. (See quotation from Caxton's translation below.)

The second copy in the Grenville Library, 10532, has the colophon: "Cy finist Fierabras imprime a lyon lan de grace mil quatre cens quatre vingtz et seize, Le xx jour de novembre." It consists of 65 leaves, in folio.

In the Royal Library, British Museum (press-mark c 6 b. 12), is a copy without title-page, with the colophon, "Cy finist Fierabras. Imprime a genesue Par maistre Loys Garbin bourgeois de la dicte cite. Lan mil cccc.lxxxiiij. et Le. xiiij. iour de moys de Mars. Deo gracias. Amen." Folio, 115 leaves. On the back of A i is a large woodcut representing Fierabras, and another large one on O 5, representing Charlemagne. Smaller cuts are interspersed in the text. The preface is on A ij, the Index begins on A ij back, and the text on A vj. It corresponds throughout with the Grenville copy, No. 10,532.

A prose edition in German is also in the British Museum (Press-mark 837, l. 21), printed by Iheronimus Rodler, at Siemern, 2 May, 1533. Folio: 53 leaves without pagination. It is interspersed with large woodcuts. This edition was reprinted in 1809.

In the same Library are also three editions of a work entitled—"Historia del Emperador Carlo Magno, en la qual se trata de las grandes proezas y Nazañas de los doce Pares de Francia, y de como Fueron vendidos por el traydor Ganalón: y de la cruda batalla, que hubo Oliveros Con Fierabras, Rey de Alexandria. Traducido del Frances al Castellano." Por Nicolas de

Piamonte. First edition, 1528. Reprinted, Cordova, 1649, 4°.; 1700, 8°.; 1777, 8°. This work is in reality a literal translation of the second part of the French prose romance, and corresponds exactly with our version.

Italy early adopted the Romance, and towards the close of the XV century was published a poetical version in that language, entitled, "*El cantare di Fierabraccia et Olivieri.*"

§ 2. In 1485 Caxton printed his "Lyf of the Noble and Crysten Prynce, Charles the Grete," which is simply a translation of the French Prose Romance of Fierabras already referred to. The following is his rendering of the Prologue of the French versions:—

1 " **S** Aynt Poul doctour of veryte sayth to vs that al thynges that ben reduced by wrytyng / ben wryton to our doctryne / And Boece maketh mencion that the helthe of euery persone procedeth dyuercely / Thenne sythe it is soo that the cristen feyth is affermed and corrobered by the doctours of holy chyrche / Neuertheles the thynges passed dyuersley reduced to remembrance / engendre in vs correction of vnlaful lyf. For the werkes of the auncient and olde peple ben for to gyue to vs ensauple to lyue in good & vertuous operacions digne & worthy of helth in folowyng the good / and eschewyng the euyl. And also in recountyng of hys hystories / the comune vnderstandyng is better content to the ymaginacion local than to symple auctoryte / to which it is submysed / I saye this gladly / For oftymes I haue been excyted of the venerable man messire henry bolomyer chanonne of lausanne for to reduce for his playsyr somme hystories as wel in latyn & in romaunce as in other facion wryton / that is to say of the ryght puyssaunt / vertuous / and noble charles the grete / kyng of fraunce and emperour of Rome / Sone of the grete Pepyn / And of his prynces & barons / As Rolland Olyuer / and other / touchyng<sup>2</sup> somme werkes haultayne doon & commysed by their grete strength & ryght ardaunt courage / to the exaltacyon of the crysten fayth and to the confusyon of the hethen sarazyns and myscreaunts whiche is a werk wel contemplatyf to to lyue wel / And bycause the sayd henry Bolomyer hath seen of thys mater / and the hystories dysioyned wythoute ordre / therfore at his request after the capacyte of my lytel entendement / And after thystories and mater that I haue founden I haue ordeyned this book folowyng / And it myght soo haue ben that yf I had ben more largely enformed and al playn I had letter made it / For I haue not sayd any matere / but I haue therof ben enformed / Fyrst by an autentyke book named myrrour hystorial / as by the canones and somme other bookes whiche make mencyon of the werke folowyng / And by cause I may haue a lytel parte of honourable foundement I shal touche of the first cristen kyng of fraunce. For the moste parte of this book is made to thonour of the frenssh men / and for prouffyte of euery man / and after the desyre of the redar and herer / there shalle be founden in the table all playne the mater of whyche the persone

<sup>1</sup> sign. A ij.

<sup>2</sup> col. 2.

shal haue desyre to here or rede / wythoute grete ate[n]dacyon / by<sup>1</sup> the playsyr of god to whome I submytte al myn entente to write no thyng<sup>1</sup> that ought to be blamed / ne but that it be to the helthe & sauacion of euery persone /"

This is followed immediately by Caxton's own prologue, as follows:—

"**T**Henne for as moche I late had fynysshed in enprynte the book of the noble & vycoryous kyng<sup>1</sup> Arthur fyrst of the thre moost noble & worthy of crysten kynges / and also tofore had reduced into englysshe the noble hystorye & lyf of Godefroy of boloyne kyng<sup>1</sup> of Iherusalem / last of the said<sup>1</sup> iij worthy Somme persones of noble estate and degree haue desyred me to reduce thystorye and lyf of the noble and crysten prynce Charles the grete kyng of fraunce<sup>2</sup> & emperour of Rome / the second of the thre worthy / to thende that thystories / actes / & lyues may be had in our maternal tongue lyke as they be in latyn or in frensshe / For the moost quantyte of the people vnderstonde not latyn ne frensshe here in this noble royaume of englond / And for to satysfy the desyre & requeste of my good<sup>1</sup> synguler lordes & specyal maysters and frendes I haue enprysed and concluded in my self to reduce this sayd<sup>1</sup> book in to our englysshe / as all alonge and playnely ye may rede / here / and see in thys book<sup>3</sup> here folowyng / besechyng al them that shal fynde faute in the same to correcte and amende it / And also to pardone me of the rude & symple reducyng<sup>1</sup> / and though so be there be no gaye termes / ne subtyl ne newe eloquence / yet I hope that it shal be vnderstonden & to that entente I haue specyally reduced it / after the symple connyng<sup>1</sup> that god hath lente to me / wherof I humbly & wyth al my herte thanke hym / & also am bounden to praye for my fader and moders soules / that in my youthe sette me to scole / by whyche by the suffraunce of god I gete my lyuyng<sup>1</sup> I hope truly And that I may so do & contynue I byseche hym to graunte me of his grace / and so to laboure and occupye my self vertuously that I may come out of dette & dedely synne / that after this lyf I may come to hys blysse in heuen. AMEN."

The text concludes with the following epilogue<sup>4</sup>:—

"¶ And by cause I Wylliam Caxton was desyred & requyred by a good<sup>1</sup> and synguler frend of myn / Maister wylliam dau<sup>5</sup>beney one of the tresorers of the Iewellys of the noble & moost crysten kyng<sup>1</sup> / our naturel and souerayn lord<sup>1</sup> late of noble memorye kyng Edward the fourth on whos soule Ihesu haue mercy To reduce al these sayd<sup>1</sup> hystories in to our Englysshe tongue I haue put me in deuoyr to translate thys sayd<sup>1</sup> book as ye heretofore may se al a longe and pl[a]yn / prayeng<sup>1</sup> alle them that shal rede / see or here it / to pardon me of thys symple & rude trans[l]acyon and reducyng<sup>1</sup> / bysechyng<sup>1</sup> theym that shal fynde faute to correcte it / & in so doying they shal deserue thankynges / & I shal praye god for them / who brynge them and me after this short and transytorye lyf to euerlastyng<sup>1</sup> blysse. Amen / the whyche werke was fynysshed in the reducyng of hit in to Englysshe the xviij day of Iuyn the

<sup>1</sup> sign. A ij, back.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. frauuce.

<sup>3</sup> col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> sign. M vij, back, col. 1.

<sup>5</sup> col. 2.

second<sup>d</sup> yere of kyng Rychard<sup>d</sup> the thyrd<sup>d</sup> / And the yere of our lord<sup>d</sup> MCCCClxxxv / And enprynted the fyrst day of decembre the same of our lord<sup>d</sup> & the fyrst yere of kyng Harry the seuenth /

¶ Explicit per William Caxton."

On Sign. M. vij we read—"it is so that at the requeste of the sayd<sup>d</sup> venerable man tofore named Maister henry bolonnyer chanoune of lausanne I haue been Incyted to translate & reduce into Frensshe the mater tofore reduced. as moche as toucheth the fyrst & the thyrd<sup>d</sup> book / I haue taken & drawn oute of a book named myrroure hystorial for the moost parte / & the second<sup>d</sup> book I haue onely reduced it out of an olde romaunce in frensshe"—In the "Table" we are told that "The fyrst book spekyth of the begynnyng of fraunce / and of the fyrst crysten kyng of fraunce / whyche was named Cloys." . . . "The second book spekith of the batayle that Olyuer dyd ayenst Fyerabras the meruayllous geaunte." . . . "The iij book speketh how by reuelacyon of saynt Iames Charles went and conquerd Spayne and Galyce . . . and fynally of the trayson of Ganellon by the whyche the deth of Rolland was pyetous / the deth of Oliuer dolorouse. . . . and fynably the deth of Charles themperour."

The only existing copy at present known is in the King's Library, British Museum (Press-mark C. 10 b. 9). It is perfect, and consists of 96 folio leaves in double columns, 39 lines to a column. There is no title-page.

The present romance was particularly popular in Spain. The *Historia del Emperador Carlomagno* contains, in addition to the events related in 'Fierabras,' also the combat between Ferragus and Roland, and an account of the fatal day of Roncesvalles.<sup>2</sup> Piamonte's work has been several times reprinted, and two editions in Portuguese were published in the last and present centuries.<sup>3</sup> To it doubtless Cervantes was indebted for many of his allusions, and it was it which he represents as having been in the library of Don Quixote, and burnt by order of the priest and the barber.<sup>4</sup> In 1635 Calderon wrote his drama 'La Puente de Mantible,'<sup>5</sup> which is founded on a portion of our romance.

The Welsh version of the 'Gests of Charlemagne,'<sup>6</sup> lately published, does not contain our romance, but is a translation of Turpin's life of Charlemagne, as is also the Irish version in the "Book of Lismore," the property of the Duke of Devonshire.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> sign. M. vij, back.

<sup>2</sup> See Ticknor, *History of Spanish Literature*, 1849, I. 222.

<sup>3</sup> 'Fierabras,' ed. MM. Krœber and G. Servois, introd. p. xvi.

<sup>4</sup> See Skelton's ed. of 'Don Quixote,' 1652, Bk. I. Pt. 4, chapt. xxii. p. 130.

<sup>5</sup> In this spelling he follows the practice of Piamonte in his *Historia*.

<sup>6</sup> 'Campeu Charlymaen,' being the Gests of Charlemagne, &c., ed. from the Hengwrt MSS. by the Rev. R. Williams, 1878 (privately printed).

<sup>7</sup> See the *Academy*, May 22nd, 1875.



The earliest known mention of any romance on the subject is in a deed of the xiv century, by which Guy de Beauchamp, Earl of Warwick, bequeathed his library to the Abbey of Bordesley, in the county of Warwick, in the catalogue of which we find a *Volum del romance des mareschaus et de Fierabras de Alisaundre*, and probably is the same which is referred to in the catalogue of the library of the Castle of Montauban, in France, taken in 1507 :—

“Item. vng libre en romans dit Mellusina.

Item. ung autre libre en romans dit *Fierbras*.”<sup>1</sup>

§ 3. M. Gaston Paris in 1865 pointed out that ‘Fierabras’ was in reality but a portion of an earlier Romance, considerably amplified and re-handled. Of this earlier poem, only known from the short analysis of it by Philippe Mousket (v. 4666 *et seq.*), the following summary is given by M. Paris:<sup>2</sup>—“Puis Rome fut prise par force, et toute la population mise à mort, le pape tué, Château-Miroir pris, et toute la ville brûlée. Le duc Garin et les siens entrèrent en Château-Croissant; car les Sarrasins, Turcs et Persans, avaient amené trop de monde et de Syrie et d’Espagne. Les chrétiens désespérés envoyèrent demander secours au bon roi Charlemagne, qui tenait sa cour en France. Le roi leur envoya Gui de Bourgogne . . . , et Richard de Normandie. Ils reprirent *le Miroir*; le duc Garin, qui tenait Pavie et avait conservé Château-Croissant, prit aussi part à la bataille. Charles arriva lui-même, amenant ses troupes rassemblées de maint pays . . . . il se dirigea vers Rome et fit grand mal aux païens. C’est alors qu’Olivier combattit l’orgueilleux Fierabras; il le vainquit et reconquit les deux barils que celui-ci avait pris à Rome; il les jeta dans le Tibre, afin que personne ne pût plus boire du baume qu’ils contenaient; c’était celui-là même dont Jésus-Christ fut embaumé. Enfin tous les païens furent tués et les chrétiens reprirent Rome; on fit un autre pape, et Charles revint en France, louant Dieu et saint Pierre.”

There are numerous passages in ‘Fierabras’ pointing to a preceding romance: thus at the very start we are introduced at once *in medias res* in a manner which seems to show that the author takes it as granted that his readers are well acquainted with the events which he so rapidly describes<sup>3</sup>—the opening lines being in point of fact a brief *resumé* of the poem summarized as above by M. Gaston Paris under the name of ‘Balan.’ Again, ll. 2241—2246<sup>4</sup> are also palpable references to events previously described.

<sup>1</sup> ‘Fierabras,’ ed. MM. Krœber and Servois, introd. p. xxii.

<sup>2</sup> *Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne*, pp. 251-2.

<sup>3</sup> *Histoire Poétique*, p. 251.

<sup>4</sup> Corresponding with ll. 1412—1420, and 2076—2084 of ‘Sir Ferumbras.’

The author of 'Fierabras' has, however, considerably modified his original to suit the altered taste of the time, has transported the scene of action to Spain,<sup>1</sup> and has substituted for the simple and matter-of-fact ending of the earlier poem one much more romantic. From these facts, and the absence of any reference to it by any author earlier than the xiv century, as well as from the frequent allusions to other works found in it, M. Gaston Paris has come to the conclusion that 'Fierabras' is a comparatively modern production, and he thinks it probable that it was composed in the interest of the monks, in order to draw attention to the relics preserved at the Abbey of Saint Denis.

These allusions to a pre-existing Romance are not, of course, so evident in 'Sir Ferumbras.' The first leaf of the Ashmole MS. being lost, we cannot say how the English translator rendered the introductory lines, and his words at l. 65 in reference to the sacred relics "of wham y tolde 3ow of eer," may only refer to his mention of them in his (now lost) introduction. Lines 1412—1420, and 2076—2084, however, as already stated, clearly refer to a story already told, as do also ll. 3193-4.

But since the publication of M. Paris' exhaustive work, there has been found in the Municipal Library of Hanover a unique copy of a Romance with the title of 'La Destruction de Rome,' which represents the first part of the Romance of 'Balan' alluded to above. This poem, which consists of 1507 lines, contains the account of the capture of Rome by Balan, the slaughter of the Christians, and the seizure by Ferumbras of the holy relics.<sup>2</sup>

§ 4. I now come to the consideration of the English MSS. of the Romances.

It is not a little remarkable, considering the great popularity of the subject,—a popularity clearly proved by the frequent allusions in other works,<sup>3</sup>—that so few English versions of the Charlemagne Romances should

<sup>1</sup> M. Gaston Paris points out a curious instance of forgetfulness on the part of the author of 'Fierabras,' which, in itself, is a strong proof of the source of the poem. Mousket in his analysis of 'Balan' says that Oliver threw the two *barils* containing the sacred ointment into the Tiber, and so in 'Fierabras' the author, forgetting that he had shifted the scene to Spain, says (l. 1049)—"Pres fu du far de Rome ses ■ dedans jetés."—*Histoire Poétique*, p. 252.

<sup>2</sup> Published by M. G. Grœber, in *Romania, Recueil Trimestre, consacré à l'étude des langues et des littératures Romanes*, edd. MM. Paul Meyer and Gaston Paris, January 1873, pp. 1—48. It was composed in England towards the end of the 14th century.

<sup>3</sup> For references to the Charlemagne Romances generally, see the *Cursor Mundi*, ed.



exist, and that those which do survive are each *unique*.<sup>1</sup> This last word perhaps calls for a few words of explanation. Mr J. Shelly, in his analysis of the English MSS. of the Charlemagne Romances,<sup>2</sup> writes as follows:—" *Ferumbras*. We have two versions of this romance: one of them the Farmer MS. analyzed by Ellis, and now in the library of Sir Thomas Phillipps; the other a fragment of great length [Ashm. 33], which will shortly be printed by the Early English Text Society. They both belong probably to the end of the fourteenth century. *The original of the romance is the French 'Fierabras.'*"

Now this I believe to be likely to mislead. The two poems appear to me to be essentially different works: the 'Sowdone' being a translation of a MS. of the poem, analyzed by M. Gaston Paris, and already referred to, under the name of 'Balan;' while 'Sir Ferumbras' is, as has before been stated, a translation of the French 'Fierabras,' itself an enlarged and greatly modified version of the second part only of that poem. What Mr Shelly refers to as the "long introductory account" is, in point of fact, only a condensed reproduction of the 'Destruction of Rome,' which, as I have said, represents the first portion of 'Balan.'

To point out all the differences between 'Sowdone' and the present poem would take up too much space, besides being unnecessary, as the former will

Morris, II. 15, 16; *Richard Cœur de Lion*, prologue; and others mentioned by Warton, *Hist. Eng. Poetry*, ed. Hazlitt, II. 122, 125. And for direct references in other authors to *Sir Ferumbras*, see notes to II. 511, 1109 below; Ellis, *Metrical Romances*, II. 369; Pinkerton, *Ancient Scottish Poetry*, I. 195, ed. 1792.

<sup>1</sup> The following are all which are at present known to exist:—

1. 'Roland and Vernagu.'

2. 'Sir Otuel.'

(These two are in the Auchinlech MS., the date of which is 1330, and have been analyzed by Ellis, *Met. Romances*, II. 283, the first under the title of 'Roland and Ferragus,' and the second from a more complete version in a MS. belonging to W. Fillingham, Esq. They were both published by the Abbotsford Club in 1836.)

3. 'The Song of Roland.'

(A fragment of about 1000 lines preserved in Lansdowne MS. 388, leaf 384. Extracts and an analysis of this fragment from the pen of the late Mr T. Wright will be found in the *Chanson de Roland*, ed. M. Fran. Michel, Paris, 1837.)

4. 'The Sowdone of Babyloyne.'

(Edited for the Roxburghe Club in 1854 from the MS. now in the Library of Sir T. Phillipps, at Middlehill, and analyzed by Ellis, II. 369, under the title of the Farmer MS.)

5. 'Sir Ferumbras.'

(The romance here printed. As all these romances will shortly be published by the E. E. T. S., it is unnecessary to describe them more in detail. I don't know whether I ought not to add that most amusing poem of "Rauf Coilyear," now being edited for the E. E. T. S., by Dr J. A. H. Murray.)

<sup>2</sup> Warton, *Hist. of English Poetry*, II. 197-8.

shortly be edited by Dr Hausknecht for the Early English Text Society, but I may mention a couple of important instances.

In the 'Sowdone' Roland is captured by the Saracens at the same time as Oliver, and both on being conducted before Lavan (Balan) at once avow their identity. It will be at once seen how greatly this alters a portion of the story as told in our poem.

Again, the names of the "douzeperes" do not agree. In fact, in the 'Sowdone' no less than 16 names are first given, and to these 11 more are subsequently added. (See note to l. 259 of the present volume.)

Moreover, in the 'Sowdone' the narration of the same events which in the Ashmole MS. occupy nearly 6000 lines, is compressed into 2224 lines (excluding the 1050 lines of the account of the taking of Rome), and as the lines in the 'Sowdone' are but half the length of those in Sir Ferumbras, as here printed, we see that the proportion between the two poems is over 5 to 1.

It is impossible to believe that two authors could have so treated the same MS. in so essentially different a manner. But the difficulty vanishes if we assume, as I think is clear, that the 'Sowdone' represents the original poem of 'Balan,' while Sir Ferumbras represents only a portion of it.<sup>1</sup>

The version here printed is clearly a translation of a MS. of the same type as the *Fierabras*, edited by MM. Krœber and Servois. The author has followed his original closely, so far as relates to the course of events, but at the same time he has translated it freely, introducing several slight incidents and modifications, which help to enliven and improve the poem. That he has not translated his original literally is shown by the fact that the French version consists of only 6219 lines, or, allowing for the missing portion of the Ashmole MS., not much more than one-half the number of lines in the latter, and that too, although he has cut down the account of the duel between Oliver and Ferumbras from 1500 to 800 lines, by leaving out Oliver's attempts at converting the Saracen, Charlemagne's prayers, &c.

§ 5. I will now proceed to give an account of the MS. from which this

<sup>1</sup> In the Hanover MS., which contains the 'Destruction of Rome,' that romance is followed directly by a version of *Fierabras*, with the colophon—"Ici est li finement de l'estoire de Fierenbras d'Alisandre et del bone roy Charles." Of this poem M. Grœber does not give any account, and I was in hopes that on examination it would be found to be of the same type as the MS. from which the 'Sowdone' was translated, but M. Gaston Paris informs me that it is the same as the printed text, differing only in slight variations of readings. He agrees, however, that the "Sowdone" is founded on a MS. similar to the Hanover one.

Romance has been printed. It is unfortunately imperfect, but, judging from the proportion between the French 'Fierabras' and it, I do not believe that more than *one* leaf has been lost from the beginning and perhaps three from the end. The missing lines have been supplied from the French version.

The Ashmole MS. 33, preserved in the Bodleian Library, is an octavo volume, consisting of 77 leaves of coarse, thick paper. The ink used by the writer was very bad, and in many places so completely has it faded that it is only in a strong sun-light that it is at all possible to decipher the words. The MS. has been fully described by Mr Black in his Catalogue of the Ashmolean MSS. col. 14, and I cannot do better than quote his account, which has been verified by Mr Henry Sweet, of Balliol Coll., Oxford. Mr Black says:—

"The book is not more curious than its antient covers, which are now preserved in a case with it. They are a triple envelope of parchment flapping over the right hand cover, and consist of 2 sheets. The outer one is a letter executory of a bull of pope Innocent VI for the presentation of Thomas de Silton to the vicarage of Columpton, in the diocese of Exeter, then vacant by the death of Peter Moleyns; which bull, being addressed to the Abbots of Schirbourne and Cerne, and to John de Silvis, dean of S. Agricola at Avignon, was executed (by the last named) in the present letter addressed to the Bishop of Exeter. The foot, containing the date, is cut off; but the bull is dated at Villa-nova, 3 *id Maij*, anno 5, which is 1357.

"The inner cover is a very long and imperfect [latin] instrument, stating that before mass on the 7th Sunday after Trinity, in 1377, in the chapel of Holne, in the diocese of Exeter, Roger Langeman, rector Lydelynche (dioc. Schirb.), publicly read and expounded an instrument which cites the proceedings and final sentence in the Court of Rome in consequence of the consecration of a burial-ground adjoining the said chapel, which was prejudicial to the rights of John Brygge, the Vicar of Buckfastleghe, to whose parish church the right of burial belonged, the said chapel being a member thereof. [But] these covers are most remarkable for having preserved a curiosity not equalled in any collection of MSS., and that for antiquity is unique of its kind, namely, a part of the author's original corrected draught of this poem [of 'Ferumbras'] written on the back of the documents already described. Thus the lines [in the draught]—

"As Charles stod by chance at conseil with his feris  
Whiche pat wern of france his ogene dojepers."

are read at the foot of fol. 3 [ll. 258-9 of the corrected copy]—

"As Charlys was in his greuance stondyng among his feren  
And counsailede with þe grete of fraunce and with ys dobbeperen."

"The inner cover is folded double; and the draught, being written on the inner side, has been kept free from dust, though it is much worn at the edges

and folds. The sheet contains four large columns of text, each equal to  $2\frac{1}{2}$  pages of the MS.; half of the breadth of the fourth column was cut off to reduce the flap to a convenient width."

I may add to what Black says that the draft and the MS. are in the same handwriting, and that the handwriting is evidently, in the opinion of Mr Sweet, of the same character and period as that of the second document described as forming part of the cover, which is of the end of the fourteenth century. The draft is only of the earlier part of the poem, and contains numerous corrections.<sup>1</sup> The latter part of the poem itself is much corrected in the same handwriting, and was possibly written off at once, and not copied from a previous draft. Black concludes from the facts he mentions, that "the author [of the poem] was a clergyman, lived in the diocese of Exeter (probably in that city), and composed his work shortly after 1377, or early in the reign of Richard II. Mr Furnivall suggests to me, however, that the facts lead to a very different conclusion, viz., "that the author was not a man who cared much for bulls or Exeter diocese, and had no hesitation in using up for his poem documents that a Devonshire man would have valued and kept unharmed." I am inclined, however, to believe that Black is probably right. It is not likely that these documents would have wandered out of the diocese of Exeter, where their most likely place of deposit was the cathedral city, so soon after their date as the time when this draft of the poem was apparently written upon them. The documents are not such as were likely to be very carefully preserved, and we must remember that at that time there was no antiquarian interest attaching to them. From internal evidence I should be inclined to suppose that the author of the poem was a clergyman, and for the reasons I have given I think it is most likely that he lived at Exeter.

The date of the action of the poem is fixed by ll. 304-5, where we learn that the events related occurred *three* years before the battle of Roncevalles, and the treachery and consequent death of Gwennelon, which took place in A.D. 778, and are narrated in the 'Song of Roland':—

"traytours wern hee.  
As 3e schul huren after þys : or passede 3eres three,  
þay be-traiede þe kyng & his."<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> The corrections throughout are given in the footnotes, the square brackets showing the words erased, and the text showing the corrected form of each line.

<sup>2</sup> The author of 'Sir Ferumbras' has gone out of his way to give the date of the poem wrongly, for ll. 4869—4871, in which he says—

§ 6. The character of Roland is throughout most admirably and consistently drawn. Everywhere we find him the same reckless headstrong fellow, whether it be in the battle-field or in delivering his message to Balan. He is far the most important personage in the poem, and it certainly seems a misnomer to call it after Ferumbras, whose actions fill only about one-fifth of the whole poem. The title having, however, been already given to the romance, it has not been considered expedient now to alter it.

Oliver is the next most important character. As he himself says, he "ys noȝt so good" as Roland, but he "ys a man heȝ of mod Sarasynȝ to yule arraye." He has not the daring nor the high spirit of Roland, and when he finds himself in captivity, with no probable hope of relief, his courage gives way.

Ferumbras himself after his duel with Oliver disappears from the scene, and does not appear again till close to the end of the poem. At his first appearance he conducts himself like a conceited bully, and his abject appeals for mercy when defeated do not tend to raise our estimation of him.

Of the remaining characters of the poem it is unnecessary to speak, with one important exception, Floripas, the handsome but certainly undutiful daughter of the Emir. From first to last she is consistently exhibited to us as an exceedingly strong-minded young lady, determined to have her own way, whatever the cost may be: her murders of Britomart and her governess are equalled only by her conduct towards her father in the closing scene of the poem. But yet at times the naturally soft disposition of the woman shows itself; as, for instance, when the French knights return to the castle after their sally against the Saracens, with the tidings of her lover's capture, and we cannot help admiring the daring of the woman who is never at a loss for an expedient, and who always effects her purpose, though without the slightest consideration as to the means adopted.

The origin of the name Ferumbras, which is only a corruption of the French *Fierabras*, is fully discussed in MM. Krœber and Servois' edition, pp. xi, xii, where they point out that the name was not invented by the author of the poem, since William II., Count of Poitiers (963—990), was surnamed *Fierabras* (*Fera brachia* or *Ferox brachium*) on account of his

---

"After þe ȝer þat our lord was bore  
*Nyzen hondred & four score . . . .*  
 þe toun of mantrible conquerid was,"

are not in the original French.

FERUMBRAS.

b



extraordinary strength, in the same way as Baldwin, Count of Flanders, was surnamed *Bras de Fer* (the Iron-armed). Pierre de Maillezais<sup>1</sup> calls William III., the son of William II., Fierabras or Fierebrace: *Natus est willelmus cognomento Fera-brachia*. To these instances I may add that Warton, *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, ed. Hazlitt, II. 184, mentions that "about the year 1230, William Ferrabras, and his brethren, sons of Tancred the Norman, and well-known in the history of the Paladins, acquired the signories of Apulia and Calabria." In a footnote to this passage he explains the name as being simply *Bras de fer*, but the French Editors incline to the opinion that it is derived from the Latin *ferox brachium*, or *fera brachia*, a view which seems strongly supported by the quotation given above from Pierre de Maillezais. As to the name Floripas the same editors consider that it is equivalent to *passe-fleur* (the Wood Anemone).<sup>2</sup>

§ 7. Of the versification of the poem it is not necessary to say much. It is for the most part written in short alternately ryming lines, and, though not an alliterative poem, yet has a large amount of alliteration. In parts it is very rough, possibly from never having been finally revised by the author, while at times it runs along very smoothly. As a rule the final *e* is pronounced (see ll. 354-5, 1904-5, 1982-3, &c.). The rymes are full and true, to effect which, however, the author frequently has had recourse to some very curious spelling (see for instance ll. 260-1). Occasionally we have instances of half-rymes, as in ll. 76-7, 86-7 (first-half), 370-1, 1545-6, &c.

The change in form and metre at l. 3411 is remarkable, more especially as there is nothing to correspond with it in the original French version. It is noticeable that the concluding portion of the poem has been revised by the author more than any other, and is in consequence more smooth and finished, and "goes" better.

§ 8. The poem is written in a Southern (probably Devonshire) dialect, but has an unusually large admixture of Midland and Northern forms. Whoever the author may have been, it is abundantly evident that he had travelled, and most probably resided, for some considerable time in counties north of his own. In this way only can we account for the combination of Northern and Southern forms which so frequently occur. It is nothing unusual to

<sup>1</sup> *De Antiquit. Eccles. Malleac.*, Bk. I., heading of cap. II.

<sup>2</sup> It is worthy of notice that in the description of Floripas given in the 'Destruction of Rome,' l. 259, her lips are compared to the peach-blossom, *fleur-de-pesquier*.

find varying forms even in the same line: thus, for instance, in ll. 1975-6 we read:—

“And er *sche* cam strauzt in-to halle : neuere *heo* ne stente,  
And forþ *sche* þraste among hem alle : & to hur fader ryzt *heo* wente.”

So again in l. 2380 :—

“y not how þay schul ascape þen : þat hy ne goþ to dede.”

*A* and *he* are also frequently met with in the same line, e. g. ll. 740, 2403, 3004, &c.; and so *buþ* and *beo* in l. 2940.

To the same circumstance, doubtless, are also due the small number of instances in which *v* occurs for *f*;<sup>1</sup> the use of the Northern *-ande* in the present participle as well as the Southern *-ing*, *-yng*, and of such a distinctively Northern preposition as *tīl* (to); and the absence at times of inflexion in the past indicative.

We frequently find *c* substituted for *s*; especially in the words *wace* (was); *nace* (was not)<sup>2</sup>; *horce*,<sup>3</sup> *pacye*: and in a few instances we find *t* for *d*; *hant*, *swert*.

*Fry* for *freo* occurs at l. 3441. This form is found also in the *Ayenbite of Inwyȝt*, and Shoreham's Poems.

Late examples of several forms which occur in Lazamon appear in the present poem. Thus we have l. 311 : *tweyre* (A.S. *twegra*), genitive of *tweȝen*; *beyne* (both), l. 661 : *þan* (dat. of the article); *y-kend* (begotten); *spelie* (spare).

*-chs* and *-sch* or *-sche* would appear to be equivalent, for we find *frehcs*, *flechs*, *frenchs*, used indiscriminately with *fresch*, *flesch*, and *frensche*.

To give a complete list of all the curious forms which occur in the poem would exceed the limits of this introduction, and is moreover unnecessary, since very many of them are, so to speak, ἀπαξ λεγόμενα, invented for the occasion, by the author, solely in order to make his rymes as perfect as possible.<sup>4</sup> They can therefore only be looked upon as curiosities of orthography, except in so far as they bear on the question of pronunciation.

Perhaps the most curious form of all is *dopþeper* for *doȝȝoper*, which with one exception is found consistently throughout the poem, although in the original draft the correct form appears.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The following are all that occur:—*by-vore*, *vaste* (verb); *vaste* (adv.); *veve*, *vetres*, *vifty*, *vyve*, *vynde*, *cores* (furrows); *vacche*, *y-vere*, *vet*, *verde* (fared); *volde*, *auongo*, *voule*, *vuste*. In some cases the author has actually corrected the *v* as first written into *f*: see for instance, l. 5829.

<sup>2</sup> See ll. 186—190. <sup>3</sup> See ll. 4203-4. <sup>4</sup> See for instance, l. 260. <sup>5</sup> See note to l. 259.



Premising this much, I now proceed to give the principal dialectal and grammatical peculiarities of the poem.

## NOUNS.

### 1. NUMBER.

Plurals as a rule end in *-s*, *-es*, or *-3*, but we find numerous examples of plural forms in *-n* and *-en*, and very frequently the same word occurs in both forms: thus we have *fon*, *fone*, *foes*, *foos*, *fos*; *feres*, *feren*; *otes*, *oten*; *browes*, *browen*; *tres*, *tren*; *mylen*; *lippen*; *knen*; *tren*, and others peculiar to the Southern dialects, as well as *eyene*, *eyne*; *schon*; *hosen*, which are found also in Northern writers.

A few instances occur of plurals in *-e* (representing an earlier *-en*); as *longe*, *lunge* (lungs); *fepeme* (fathoms); *hande*, *haunde*, *hond* (= *honde*, hands); *sythe* (times); *hyne* (servants); *gome* (men); *fere* (companions); *tange* (tongs).

### 2. GENDER.

Inanimate objects are generally considered as *neuter*, but not unfrequently as *masculine* or *feminine*, the pronouns in these cases following the gender of the nouns in Anglo-Saxon. Thus l. 1551:—

“*þay toke þe way as he lay ful euene.*” “*the day hym sprunge;*” “*the sunne hure sette,*” &c.

### 3. CASE.

The genitive singular ends in *-s*, *-es*, or *-is*, and in the case of proper names *is* or *ys* written as distinct words: thus we find *godes gras*; the *Ameral ys* *pauylloun*; *Terry is sone*, &c.

When a proper noun ends in a sibilant, as *Charlis*, *Naymes*, the sign of the genitive is altogether omitted; as *Charlis Knyghts*, &c.

*Fader*, *moder*, *suster*, *dozter* do not alter their forms in the genitive singular: thus we find *suster sone* (sister's son); *dozter dede* (daughter's deed); *moder half* (mother's side); *fader loue*.

Of a genitive singular in *-e* there are a few instances, viz.: *heuene*, which occurs frequently in the phrase *heuene king*, *heuene blisse*; *helle pyne*; and *gode loue*; and of the genitive plural in *-ene* (A.S. *-ena*) we also find one example (l. 3222), *heþenene route*. (See also l. 4646.)

The genitive is occasionally used adverbially, as *lyues*, *willes*.

## ADJECTIVES.

The rule as to the use or omission of the final *-e*, as a distinctive mark of singular and plural and definite and indefinite forms, has not been always followed by our author, a result probably due to Northern influence.

We find an instance of the genitive singular ending *-es* in *oprys syde*, and a few instances also occur of the genitive plural in *-re*; as *alre* (*aller, aldre*); *tweyre* (A.S. *twegra*).

*Bopen* is the only instance of the dative plural; and *anoperne*, acc. mas. occurs once in l. 995.

Adjectives and Adverbs in *-liche* form their comparatives in *-loker, -luker*; as *lodliche, lodluker*; *sykerliche, sikurlukere, surlokere*.<sup>1</sup>

## DEFINITE ARTICLE.

In this poem we find late examples of the inflexions of the definite article. The following forms occur:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
<i>Masc. &amp; Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>		
N. <i>þe, þa.</i>	<i>þat.</i>	N. Acc.	<i>þo, þay, þey.</i>
G. [ <i>þas</i> . <sup>2</sup> ]			
D. <i>þan, þen.</i>			
Acc. <i>þan, þan.</i>	<i>þat.</i>		

*þo* and *þat* are also found as demonstratives as in the Northern dialects.

## THIS.

Many of the older inflexions of *this* occur in the present poem: thus we find:—

SINGULAR.			PLURAL.
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
N. <i>þes, þis, þys.</i>	<i>þis, þys.</i>	<i>þis, þys.</i>	<i>þes, þeese, þis, þus, þys.</i>
G.			
D. <i>þis, þys.</i>	<i>þis.</i>		<i>þes, þis, þus.</i>
Acc. <i>þees, þes, þis, þys.</i>	<i>þes, þys.</i>	<i>þis, þys,</i>	<i>þes, þese, þis, þys, þus, þuse.</i>

*Ilke, þilke*, a distinctively Southern form, occur frequently: twice in combination with *þat*, as *þat þilke*.

<sup>1</sup> *Sykerer* occurs once.

<sup>2</sup> Only in the phrase *sone þas*; but see under Adverbs, p. xxvii below.

## NUMERALS.

Amongst these we find the Southern forms in—*the*; *elleuefpe*, *twelpe*. No Northern forms occur.

We have only one instance of the dropping of the final *-n*; viz. *seue* (seven).

## PRONOUNS.

## 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The following table will show the numerous forms which occur:—

SINGULAR.					
	1st Pers.	2nd Pers.			
			Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N.	<i>I, y, ic, ich, ych.</i>	<i>pou.</i>	<i>a, he, hee.</i>	<i>heo, she, sohe,</i> <i>sheo.</i>	<i>it, yt, hit, hyt.</i>
G.	<i>my, myn, myne.</i>	<i>þy, þyn, þyne.</i>	<i>his, hys, is, ys.</i>	<i>her, hir, hire,</i> <i>hur, hure, hyr.</i>	<i>his.</i>
D.	<i>me.</i>	<i>þe.</i>	<i>him, hym.</i>	<i>hir, hire, hure.</i>	<i>him, hit.</i>
Acc.	<i>me.</i>	<i>þe, þee.</i>	<i>hem, him, hym,</i> <i>hymme, em.</i>	<i>her, hur, hure.</i>	<i>it, yt, hit, hyt.</i>

PLURAL.					
	1st Pers.	2nd Pers.			
			3rd Pers.		
N.	<i>we, ous.</i>	<i>3e.</i>	<i>hee, hi, hy, hymen, pai, pay, paye, þei, þey.</i>		
G.	<i>our, oure.</i>	<i>3our, 3oure.</i>	<i>her, hir, hire, hure, hyre, þair.</i>		
D.	<i>ous, us.</i>	<i>3ou.</i>	<i>hymen, hem, hymyn, þayn.</i>		
Acc.	<i>ous.</i>	<i>3ou, 3ow.</i>	<i>hymen, hyme, hem, hemen, em, þeyn.</i>		

*Ich*, which is still retained in the Southern dialects of the present day as *uch*, *utchy*, occurs once in l. 389 of the original draft of the poem in combination with *wille* as *ich chille*, where the *ich* is unnecessary and the corrected copy reads *i wille*.

*Ic*, which is the Northern form, only appears once, l. 2799. The two forms, *ich* and *I, y*, are used without any distinction, except that if the pronoun follows the verb, the latter form is generally used.

The distinction between the singular and plural pronouns of the second person is regularly observed; *pou*, *þe*, being used in sentences expressing contempt, inferiority, and affection, while *3e*, *3ou*, imply inferiority or respect on the part of the speaker. This Balan addresses Floripas as *pou*, while she uses the plural *3e*. (But see l. 1998.)

*A* = he, which does not occur in any Northern writer, still survives in

modern dialects in the South of England, and is the usual form in the present poem.

*Heo* is the Southern pronoun corresponding with the Midland *sche*, *she* (Northern *sco*, *sho*).

*My self*, *him selue*, &c., occur as well as *me selue*, *þe self*, *ous self*.

In the pronouns of the third person plural, *þai*, *þair*, *þeym*, are Northern forms: *þei* Midland, and the remainder Southern. *Em* is only used in coalescence with a verb, as *castem*, *affuldem*.

*Me*, *ma*, is used as an indefinite pronoun of any person.<sup>1</sup>

*Hit*, *it*, is usually referred to masculine nouns even in the plural number: thus (l. 1981) we read:—

“Hit beþþ kniȝtes y-sent to me.”

See also ll. 3114, 3183, &c.

We also find such forms as *hure boþen*; *ȝour summe*; *þat summe*; *hur ayþer*; *hur everech*; *our on*.

The pronoun frequently coalesces with the verb; thus we find such forms as *leuet* (leave it); *shaket* (shake it); *taket* (take it); *affuldem* (felled them); *profryem* (offer them).

A very noticeable peculiarity of the poem is the reflexive use of the pronoun in conjunction with the noun before an intransitive verb. We commonly find such sentences as the following:—“*þe nyȝt hure neȝhede faste*” (l. 1494); “*endelonges is side þat blod him ran*”; “*þat blod him rennep*”; “*þat gret host hym come*”; “*on þe wal þat fur him hent*”; “*þe day hym sprunge*”; “*þe day him is a-go*”; “*forth hem wendith þes noble kniȝtes*,”<sup>2</sup> &c.

*þat* is commonly used as a relative, and *hwych*, *wich*, not infrequently is used indefinitely: see, for instance, ll. 514, 3101, &c.

The interrogative pronoun is *Ho*, *wat*, *what*; gen. *was*; dat. and acc. *wham*.

## VERBS.

### 1. INDICATIVE MOOD. PRESENT TENSE.

The following are the personal endings:—

<sup>1</sup> It is frequently understood after the verbs *let*, *make*, *do*, in such phrases as “to don him sle” (= cause *men* to slay him, cause him to be slain); “let hewen hem flesch & bon.”

<sup>2</sup> As to this last instance see Prof. Skeat's note to ‘P. Plowman,’ B. Prol. 7.

## SINGULAR.

1. *-a, -e, -y, -n*; as *granty, thonky, ha* (I have).
2. *-st*, as *ledest*; very frequently contracted as *gest* (gettest); *abust* (= *abeodest, tellest*)<sup>1</sup>; *hurst* (hearest).
3. *-th, -t, -es, -en, -n*.

The ending *-y* of the first person which is purely Southern is common in this poem. The ending in the third person *-t* is used where the original ending *-th* has been contracted, as *stent, stont* (stendeth)<sup>2</sup>; *calt* (calleth); *by-gynt* (beginneth); *telt* (tellet); *lest* (loseth); *sit, syt* (sitteth). Such forms as *riȝdt* (he rides) and *tyȝd* (betides) are noticeable.

Of the ending *-es, -s* (a West-Midland and Northern form) we have but very few examples; all that I am aware of are *wendes, ounlekes, strekes* (ll. 1364-5); *gas* (goes)<sup>3</sup>; *cryes* (l. 3079).

The ending *-en, -n* (Midland) only occurs in a few instances, l. 2195, *gon* (goes); l. 2782, *sen* (I see).

The *e* is very frequently omitted before the *-th* in the third person singular; thus we find *comp, berp, scherp, &c.* In many cases this peculiarity, which still exists in Devonshire, serves to distinguish between the singular and plural.

## PLURAL.

- |                         |                  |
|-------------------------|------------------|
| 1. <i>-n.</i>           | } <i>e, -th.</i> |
| 2. <i>-es, -n.</i>      |                  |
| 3. <i>-en, -n, -es.</i> |                  |

The Midland ending *-en, -n*, occurs but seldom in comparison with the other endings; but yet is not uncommon. We find *ȝe sen*; *we han*; *ȝay comen, &c.*

Of the Northern ending *-es* there is only one instance, viz. *goes*, which occurs in the second and third persons.<sup>4</sup>

There are several instances in which the plural ending *-th* is preceded by an *a*, as *ȝay prikeath*; *ȝe loueath, &c.*

<sup>1</sup> Explained by Halliwell wrongly "arranges?"

<sup>2</sup> According to Dr Morris (*Specimens of Early English*, 1867, Introd. p. xxxv) the rule is that "*-t* is used for *-teth* or *-deth*, only in verbs having *t* or *d* for the last syllable of the root," but from the examples given above it is clear there are numerous exceptions to this rule.

<sup>3</sup> See ll. 1975, 2145, &c.

<sup>4</sup> On l. 5821, Mr Parker says:—"I think this *s* is added, though by the same hand."

## PAST TENSE.

The past tense of weak verbs ends in *-ele*, *-de*, or *-te*.

We find instances of inflected verbs as *pou slowe*, &c., as well as of non-inflected; the final *-e* being as often as not omitted.

The third person singular and plural occasionally ends in *-n*, as *hoten* (he bade); *kemen* (they came); *beren* (they bore).

## 2. IMPERATIVE MOOD.

With one exception there is no instance of any but the Southern forms:—singular, *-e*, plural, *-eth*: *-ath* occurs in *prykeap* (l. 979); *confortiaþ* (l. 1154); and *harneyscheap* (l. 2929); *schewyap*; *herknyap* (l. 2072).

The Northern imperative ending *-es* occurs only in l. 2347, where we have *leteþ*.

## 3. INFINITIVE MOOD.

Here we find a large variety of forms mainly Southern. Thus we have verbs ending in *-a*, *-y*, *-ye*, *-ie*, *-n*, *-ne*, *-o* (*on*). Very frequently the same verb appears in two or more forms; e. g. *sle*, *slee*, *slen*, *slo*, *slone*; *flee*, *flen*, *flene*, *fleo*; *be*, *bee*, *ben*, *bene*, *beo*. *Ha* and *prikea* (l. 3641) are the only instances of infinitives in *-a*.

The endings *-y*, *-ye*, *-ie* (representing older forms in *-ian*) are very common in this poem, but are *never* used by any Northumbrian writers.

The gerundial form of the infinitive occurs in three instances; to *tristying* (= *tristenne*, l. 199); to *done* (l. 811); and to *donde* (l. 681).

The verb to *Have* appears under the following forms:—*ha*, *hab*, *han*, *hane*, *hauen*: while *dan* occurs twice as the infinitive of *do*.

## 4. PARTICIPLES.

In the present participle instances of the Northern ending *-ande* are not uncommon, the same verb sometimes using it as well as the Southern *-ing*, *-yng*: thus we find such double forms as *fleoing* and *fleand*; *prikyng* and *prikande*; *liggyng* and *liggande*, &c., as well as the single forms, *lyuand*, *flyngande*, &c.<sup>1</sup>

## 5. PAST PARTICIPLE.

The past participles of weak verbs end in *-ed*, *-t*, or *-te*, and of strong verbs in *-en*. In the latter the final *-n* is frequently omitted.

The prefix *i-* or *y-* (peculiar to the Southern dialects, and never used by Northern writers,) abounds throughout the poem.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Query—Is *gonde* (l. 1890) a present participle?

<sup>2</sup> This prefix *i-*, *y-*, is not confined to the past part., but is used also in (a) other parts

Instead of the prefix *i-* or *y-* we sometimes find *a-*, as *a-slave* (twice combined with *be* into the form *ba-slave*), *a-go*, *a-broke*.

Verbs in *-che* and *-ge* make their past participles in *-nt*, or *-nte*, a form peculiar to Southern dialects. Thus we have *i-spreynt* (*springe*, to sprinkle); *i-dreynt* (*drenche*, to drown), &c.

To *Be* has the forms *i-be*, *i-beo*, *y-ben*, *be*, *ben*, *bene*, *beo*; and to *Do*; *do*, *don*, *done*, *dow*.

Negative Verbs, which occur but very seldom in Northern writers, are here common, e. g., *nas*, *nel*, *nabbe*, *nyste*, *nam*, *nad*, *naþ*, &c.

The curious form *mixt* (mightest) occurs in l. 474, and *sysst* (seest) in l. 5809.

The following are examples of the pt. tenses of verbs:—*blan*, *bute*, *carf*, *to-chon*, *clef*, *dradde*, *floze*, *ful*, *gan*, *gun*, *glod*, *huld*, *keem*, *lowe*, *nam*, *nome*, *preynte*, *rozþ*, *schad*, *schar*, *schet*, *shette* (to shoot), *shitte* (to shut), *shutte* (to shoot), *sez*, *skryzte*, *slowe*, *swarf*, *swer*, *sworn*, *swatte*, *þraste*, *wep*, *zaf*, *zif*, *zoue*.

*Hab* occurs in the 2nd person plural of *have*.

The verb to *Be* in the present indicative has the following variety of forms:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>am</i> .	<i>are</i> , <i>beeth</i> , <i>bene</i> , <i>beo</i> , <i>buth</i> , <i>byth</i> .
2. <i>art</i> , <i>ert</i> .	<i>are</i> , <i>buth</i> .
3. <i>is</i> , <i>ys</i> , <i>yse</i> .	<i>are</i> , <i>aren</i> , <i>arn</i> , <i>beeth</i> , <i>ben</i> , <i>buth</i> .

Of these *aren* and *arn* are Northern forms.<sup>1</sup>

It is not at all an unusual thing to find two different forms in the same line; thus (l. 2940)—“we ne *bup* bote ten her now, & mo ne *beo* we nozt;” and (l. 1070)—“my felawes þat her *beep*, knyztēs þay *bup* fol sure.”

In the past tense we find the following forms:—

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
1. <i>was</i> .	<i>were</i> , <i>wore</i> , <i>wern</i> .
2. <i>wer</i> .	<i>were</i> .
3. <i>was</i> , <i>wes</i> .	<i>war</i> , <i>ware</i> , <i>wer</i> , <i>were</i> , <i>wern</i> , <i>weore</i> , <i>woren</i> , <i>worne</i> .

In the imperative *beo* is the singular, and *beep*, *beþ*, the plural form.

of verbs, as *y-laste* (inf.); *y-knowe* (pres.); *y-lif* (imperat.); *y-saw* (pt.): (*b*) with adjectives, as *i-liche*; (*e*) with adverbs, as *y-fere*, *y-mone*, *y-same*.

<sup>1</sup> *Aren* occurs in ‘P. Plowman,’ C. xi. 155.



We also find numerous examples of the *verbal prefixes* peculiar to the Southern dialect. Thus we have:—

1. *An-* (*a-*); as *anrise* (*agrise*), to frighten: *anhonge*, to hang; *a-lacche* (catch).

2. *Of* (for, to); as *of-seche* (seek for); *of-sende* (send for); *of-take* (over-take).

### ADVERBS.

With the exception of *algate* and *until*, which are purely Northern forms, the adverbs are mainly Southern. Thus we have:—

1. Adverbs in *-e*, as *longe*, *swype*, *hanne*, *henne* (= *hennene*); *whenne* (= *whanene*); *thenne* (= *thanene*), &c.

2. Adverbs in *-en*; as *suppen*, *wepen* (Northern).

3. Adverbs in *-es*: as *endelonges*, *willes*, *hannes*, *lyues*, *pannes*, *ones*, *wannys*.

4. *Ac* (but); *eke*, *eek*, *yke* (also); *so—so*, *as—so* (as—as).

The phrase *sone þas* (= soon thereafter, directly), which occurs several times in the poem, is noticeable. Dr Murray inclines to consider *þas* as the genitive of the article (compare “wel was him þas,” in *Early Eng. Poems*, &c., ed. Furnivall, xii. 122); while Dr Morris thinks it is a corruption of *suppes* afterwards.

### PREPOSITIONS.

*Til* (to), a purely Northern preposition occurs frequently. Of peculiarly Southern forms we have:—

1. *An*, *a* (on, in); as *an-hez*, *an-honde*, *a þys* side. The corresponding Northern form *on-* occurs only in *on-lyue*, *on þe lift* (aloft), *on sonder*.

2. *Fram* (from).

3. *Mid* (with).

§ 9. To Mr George Parker, of the Bodleian Library, Oxford, who has always taken a very lively interest in this romance, is due the sole credit of deciphering the MS. Written as it is on bad paper, with bad ink, and with numerous interlineations and corrections, it is difficult for any one who has not seen the MS. to appreciate the difficulties under which he has had to labour—difficulties increased as they have been by his having to compare the proofs with the original in the dull, sunless days of winter, when, as I have

already said, in some passages nothing but a strong sun-light is sufficient to render the writing legible.

To him my best thanks are due, as also to the Rev. Professor Skeat and F. J. Furnivall, Esq., who have rendered me assistance as to the meanings of some obscure words.

S. J. HERRTAGE.

## SKETCH OF THE STORY OF "SIR FERUMBRAS."

---

CHARLES, at the head of his army, had encamped close to Morimond, when Ferumbras, a gigantic Saracen knight, appears and challenges any six of the French knights to single combat (p. 2). Charles requests Roland to accept the challenge, but he refuses (p. 5). Oliver, who is suffering from a serious wound, with difficulty obtains Charles's permission to accept the challenge (p. 10). Ferumbras, despising Oliver's youthful appearance, tries to frighten him (p. 12); asks him to describe Charles and the douzeperes (p. 15); and enquires his name (p. 16). Oliver declaring himself to be a poor knight, Ferumbras derides him, and bids him return and send Roland, or another of the douzeperes (p. 18). Stung at last by Oliver's language, Ferumbras prepares to fight (p. 22). The struggle lasts with varying success, till Ferumbras, in striking at Oliver's head, exposes his side, which Oliver pierces (p. 31). Ferumbras begs for mercy, promising to become a Christian (p. 32), and warns Oliver of an ambush of Saracens close by (p. 34). Oliver, finding himself obliged to abandon Ferumbras, tries to escape by flight, but is surrounded and taken prisoner (p. 36), as are also four others of the Douzeperes, who had come to his assistance (p. 38), and the five are bound, blindfolded, and led away to Balan, at Aigremont (p. 42). Ferumbras, being discovered by Charles, lying wounded, is taken to the French camp and baptised (p. 42). Oliver and the other French captives are brought before Balan (p. 43), who at first orders them to death, but afterwards throws them into a deep dungeon, without food or light (p. 45). Floripas, Balan's daughter, hearing their cries, comes to them, and offers to release them, if they will help her in gaining Guy to her husband (p. 47). They agree, and Floripas conducts them to her own chamber (p. 48). Charles determines on sending a messenger to Balan to demand the restoration

of the prisoners (p. 51), and the seven remaining Douzeperes start (p. 53). On their way they meet seven kings coming from Balan on a similar errand, whom, with one exception, they slay (p. 57). By a trick they pass the bridge of Mantrible (p. 61) and arrive at Aigremont. They deliver their message in turn, and Balan in a rage orders them to prison (p. 66), from which they are saved by Floripas, who leads them to their comrades (p. 68). She then presents to them the Sacred Relics of the Thorns, Cross, Nails, &c., which Ferumbras had carried off from Jerusalem, and sent to his father Balan, the Emir of the Saracens (p. 71); and advises them to kill all the Saracens while unprepared (p. 75). They follow her advice, but Balan escapes (p. 76), and gathering his army, lays siege to the tower (p. 77). Provisions failing, the French sally out (p. 85), and capture a convoy, but are forced to abandon it. Guy is captured (p. 88), and is about to be hanged by Balan, when he is rescued by Roland (p. 96). The French capture a convoy of provisions (p. 99). Balan attacks the tower with a battering ram (p. 103). The tower is set on fire, but the flames are extinguished by Floripas (p. 104). The French Knights in default of stones throw Balan's gold at their besiegers (p. 105). In a sally by night Roland captures Aspayllard (p. 107). Provisions running short, the French determine to send Richard of Normandy to the Emperor Charles the Great for aid (p. 110). Balan, however, besets the bridge so that none can leave the tower (p. 111). After eight weeks he escapes, pursued by King Clarion, whom he slays (p. 116), and crossing the river Flagot by a miracle (p. 123), reaches Morimond, just as the French are starting for France, Charles having given up all hope of his knights (p. 131). By a stratagem the bridge and town of Mantrible are taken (p. 150), and Charles presses on to Aigremont (p. 152). Balan, instigated by the devil, ventures on battle (p. 170): he himself is defeated by Charles, and captured (p. 175), and the Saracens utterly routed (p. 176). Balan, in spite of the entreaties of Ferumbras, refuses to be baptized, and is slain by Ogier (p. 182). Floripas is baptized, and wedded to Guy (p. 183), between whom and Ferumbras Spain is divided; and Charles returns to Paris, where he distributes the Sacred Relics (p. 188).

---

#### ERRATA.

Page 209, *note to l. 2034, for gayme read gayne; and for amuse read profit.*

## ADDITIONS.

Introd. p. xxii, to forms of 3rd pers. pron., acc. pl., add *zam* (l. 2650; cf. Lazamon, l. 763).

Introd. p. xxvii, l. 15, "*sone þas*:" compare Lazamon, l. 1787: "wel was Brutus *þas*:" and the Peterborough Chronicle, sub ann.: "*Ʒa com se arcebiscop . . . . and sona þas to þam cyng gewānde*."

p. 38, l. 971. I have since found an instance of this use of *acre*: see *Morte Arthure*, l. 3849:—

"Ane *akere lenghe* one a launde, fulle lothely wondide."


So also Allan Ramsay in his poems, ed. 1844, p. 73, says:—

"By ane *akerbraid* it came nae neer him."

To Glossary add—**ABYE**, 176/5657, *vb.* bend, bow. A.S. *abēgan*, the tra. s. form corresponding to the intrans. *abūgan*. The two forms appear to be confused by Stratmann under *abezen*, where the first two examples should be referred to *abūzen*. See the *Saxon Chronicles*, ed. Earle, sub ann. 1073 (p. 212):—"swiðe þet land amyrdon. and hit eall *abegdon*. Willelme to handa" (completely devastated that land, and subdued it all under the power of William), and *ibid.* p. 223:—"mycel *abegdan* to heora anwelde" (subdued much of it under their power).

**DONE MAN**, 109/3445, *pp.* For the explanation of this phrase I am indebted to Prof. Skeat, who refers to *P. Plowman*, B xviii, 298: "to warne pilates wyf what *dones man* was ihesus." The phrase is very rare and singular. Prof. Skeat, in his notes to *P. Plowman*, shows that "*dones* is the *pp.* *don*, made, used as a substantive, and even taking a genitive suffix, such as we see in the phrase *what kynnes man*." He refers to three other instances of the phrase, two being from the B. fragment of the *Alexander Alliterative Romances*, ll. 222, 999 (MS. Bodley 264).

Since the footnote (1) to p. xiii of the Introduction was written, a paper MS. of the early part of the 15th century has been purchased by the authorities of the British Museum. This MS., amongst many other poems, contains two Charlemagne Romances, the first, which is entitled "The Siege of Milan," being unique, while the second is a version of "Sir Otuel" (No. 2), but varying so much as to be practically an entirely different poem. Both these romances are now in the press for the E. E. T. S.

 The cost of the *Gesta* and *Sir Ferumbras* being over the income of the Extra Series for 1879, the Committee give notice that *Sir Ferumbras* must be looked on as partly an 1880 book, tho included in the 1879 issue.—F.

## CHARACTERS OF THE ROMANCE.

Charlemagne, Emperor of France, &c.

Balan (Laban), Emir of the Saracens.

Ferumbras, Balan's son ; defeated in single combat by Oliver, and converted to Christianity.

Floripas, daughter to Balan ; in love with Sir Guy, to whom she is finally married.

Reyner, a French Knight, father of Oliver.

Roland.

Oliver.

Terry (Thierry).

Geoffrey.

Ogier.

Basyn.

Naymes.

Richard of Normandy.

Berard.

Aubrey.

Gwylmer.

Guy of Burgundy.

Raoul.

Howel.

Alorys.

Gerard.

Hugo.

Gwenylon (Ganelon)

Hautefulle.

Malkare.

Hardree.

Turpin, the Bishop.

Alagolofure, a Saracen giant ; warden of the Bridge of Mantrible.

Brytamon : Balan's gaoler at Aigremont.

Turgys.

Kargys.

Lucifer of Bandas.

Lampatrys.

Moradas.

Clarion.

Sortybran.

Bruyllant.

Aspayllard.

Tenebre.

Bruyllant, King of Persia, brother to Balan.

Maubyn, a Saracen thief.

Enfachoun, a Saracen giant.

Amyote, a giantess, wife to Enfachoun, slain by Charles.

Malyngراس, Balan's messenger.

Maumecet : chamberlain to Floripas.

Maragounde : governess to Floripas.

} Charlemagne's *douzeperes*.

} French Knights.

} Saracen Kings.



# Sir Ferumbras.

[Ashmole MS. 33, Bodleian Library.]

(As the first leaf of the Ashmole MS. is lost, the missing introductory lines are here given from the edition of "Fierabras," published in the Series of "Les Anciens Poètes de la France," from the MS. in the French National Library, No. 180.)

[S]eignour, or faites pais, s'il vous plaist, escoutez  
Canchon fiere et orible, jamais meilleur n'orrez,  
Ce n'est mie menchoigne, mais fine verités.  
A Saint Denis en France fu li raules trouvés :  
Plus de cent cinquante ans a yl esté celez.  
Or en ores le voir, s'entendre me volés,  
Si com Karles de Franche, ki tant fu redoutés,  
Reconquist la coronne dont Dix fu couronnés,  
Et les saintismes claus, et le signe honneré,  
Et les autres reliques dont ill i ot assés.  
A Saint Denis en France fu li tresors portés ;  
Au perron, au lendi, fu partis et donnés.  
Pour les saintes reliques dont vous après orés,  
Por chou est il encore li lendis apelés.  
Ja n'i doit estre treus ne nus tresors donnés ;  
Mais puis par convoitisse fu cis bans trespasés ;  
Moult par est puis li siecles empiriés et mués ;  
Se li peres est maus, li fix vaut pis assés,  
Et du tout en tout est li siecles redoutés,  
Ke il n'i a un seul, tant soit espoentés,  
Ki tiegne vraiment ne foi ne loiautés.  
N'en dirai ore plus, s'arai avant alé.

FERUMBRAS.

Listen to me,

4 and I will  
tell you a  
wonderful  
and true  
story of  
Charles,

8 the doughty  
king  
who recover-  
ed the crown  
of thorns,  
the nails,  
and the other  
sacred relics,

12 and brought  
them to  
St Denys.

16

20

15

- Charles had collected all his barons,  
Karles ot ses barons semons et demandés  
De par toute sa tere où est sa poestés ; 24  
Moult fu grans li barnages quant il fu assanles.  
and advanced on Morimond.  
Tant les a l'enpereres et conduis et menés,  
K'es vaus sur Morimonde a fait tendre ses trés.  
Oliver, who commanded the advance-guard,  
Oliviers li jentious, ki tant fu alosés, 28  
Icil fist l'avangarde à .v<sup>c</sup>. fersarmés ;  
is suddenly attacked by the Saracens in the valley of Rayer.  
Le val Raier garda tout contreval les prés.  
He himself is wounded, and the French are on the point of being put to flight, when Charles with his old knights comes to their aid.  
Et paien lor salirent à l'issue des gués ; 32  
.L. mile furent, les gonfanous fremés,  
Pour calanger les teres et les grans yretés.  
Olivier li gentius i fu le jour navrés.  
Desconfit fuissent Franc, c'est fine verités,  
Quant les secourut Karles o les viellars barbés, 36  
Et paien s'en tournerent les frains abandonés.]  
[leaf 1] . . . Charlis doghti [knyȝtes] . . ta . le as þay a waywarde spedde  
Mo þan a þausend with out . . . . slowe þai as þay fledde  
& drow hym . . . . wiþ on . . are : with his host þat was þere. 40  
Ac Olyuer was a-woundede sare : at þat tyme wiþ a spere.  
That night Charles said that his old knights had borne them better than the young barons.  
¶ þat nyȝt was Charl[es proude] y wet : & auaunted his kniȝtes olde.  
Roland heard, and the boasting grieved him. Next morning, after mass,  
& sayde þat þay had [boren] hem bet : þan ys ȝonge barouns bolde.  
& [Rolan]d iherd hit euery del : & his auaunttyngge hem greuede sore,  
Ac þoȝ him self had born him wel : þanne spak he no more. 45  
**E**rlich on þe morrwenyng þe kyng aras : & al his chiluelarie,  
& hurd is masse wan hit was : & so to þe mete gan hye,  
& al on murȝþe was he y-sete : wiþ a fair baronye ; 48  
Ac or he hadde þane half y-ȝete : on herte him gan to nuye,  
comes a Saracen knight.  
Wan cam þer a Sarsyn [werreour] pere : by-fore is host al-one :  
Of such anoþer herde ȝe nere : nowar þar ȝe han gone,  
Of Strengþe, of schap, of hugenys : of dedes of armes bolde. 52  
þe kyngdom of Alysandre was al his : & fro babyloyne, þat holde,  
Riȝt in to þe rede see : lord was he and syre.  
Alexandria was his, and all from Babylon to the Red Sea.  
To ma[r]tyre cristen men & slee : þat was his desyre.  
Apulia, Palermo and Russin were his subjects.  
Poille, palerne, and russye : he putte to seruage, 56  
To holde of hym by maystrye : & to do til hym homage.  
But for pay of Rome in such a cas : wolde noȝt grantte ys [wille]

- He slow þe Pope þat þo was : and alle þat he myȝt tille :  
 Cardynals, Abbotes & Pryours : monekys & frerys eke,  
 & alle clerkes of honours : boþe pore & reke,  
 Saue nunnes : sloȝ he sykerly : þe relygyous þat þar war.  
 Wymen he tok, & lay hem by : & afterward duden hem [slee]  
 þat Cite a struyede, & þanne beer : þe relyqes fayre & free,  
 Of wham y tolde ȝow of eer : þe croune & þe nayles three.  
 Of ierusalem & of al þat lond : lord he was aboute,  
 þer-for þer duden vntil his hónd : many a sarsyn loute ;  
 Of turkys, persans & arrabyen : gret puple had he wypholde.  
 He ne doutede þer-for non cristen men : so riche was he of golde.  
 He was departid fram ys host : þat was ful gret of nombre,  
 & soȝte þat contree & al þat cost : cristenmen to encombre.  
 Wan he with non ne may ymete : on herte him greueþ sare ;  
 To Charlisward rod he wiþ herte grete : & fyndeþ hym loged þ[are]  
 In paulyons riche & wel abuld : a fair host him aboute.  
 . . þe<sup>1</sup> feldeß wern al y-fuld : wiþ hym & wiþ his route.  
 ¶ Wan he was war of þe frenschemen : on h[ert] him likid ille  
 He stynte & þoȝte noȝt remuye hem : þere til he ha foȝt is fille.  
 By þe egle of gold þat brizte schon : vppon charlis paulyoun  
 knew he þer-by þe kyng, was on : þat was of gret renown :  
 & ful wel saw hym whar he sat : & knew him by his araie.  
 for angre þat he toke of þat : he wax so pal so clay—  
 By Mahonet ys oþ þanne a swer : as he was þar al-one  
 þat he ne wolde for no fer : out of þat felde gone,  
 Er Charlis wiþ þe hore berde : wer take ouþer a-slaȝe,  
 & discoumfit were al his ferde : þat lyuede on þe cristene lawe,  
 him self schelde þer ben is bane : he swor þan by his driȝte.  
 now wil ych to ȝov telle ys name : & sigge ȝow wat he hyȝte  
 ¶ Syre Fyrumbras of Alysandre : me calde þat Sarsyn.  
 His body wold he putte in auntre : for þere riȝt þoȝte he lyn  
 & liȝt hym doun an vndre a tree : a boȝe-schot fram þat host :  
 þar-to ys stede þan tyeþ he : & gan to blowe bost.  
 He seȝ Charlys sitte & ete : þan þoȝte he as a stod,  
 If he may let him of his mete : ys herte hit wold do gode.

He had slain  
the Pope,

60

64 and destroyed  
the city of  
Rome.

He was lord  
of Jerusalem.

68 He had  
fought with  
Turks,  
Persians and  
Arabians,

and had come  
to that coun-  
try to harass  
Christians.

72

[leaf 1, back]

76

By the  
standard he  
knows the  
king is there.

80

He grows  
pale with  
anger,  
and swears to  
take or slay  
Charles.

84

88 Fyrnebras  
[Ferumbras]  
of Alexandria  
was his name.

He alights  
under a tree,

92

<sup>1</sup> Originally [Al] þe. the Al having been erased.

- and cries to Charles,  
"Send thy best knight  
to fight with me.  
If two are afraid, send three;  
and though there come twelve  
I will pound them to dust.  
I have slain ten kings,  
and so shall I thee."  
He takes his helmet off to wait for an answer.  
[leaf 2]  
Charles is angry,  
and asks Richard of Normandy if he knows that knight.  
"Yes," says Richard, "it is the greatest king in heathenness."  
Then the king swears he will eat nor drink more till one
- panne cryede he "Charlis, with þe berde : herkne what y speke :  
[S]end me þe beste knyzt of þy furde : myn anger for to wreke,  
Duk Roland, oþer Olyuer : oþer any of þy route, 96  
& fiȝte y wile wiþ hem her : beo þay noȝt so stoute :  
& if þat on of hem ne dar him self : wiþ me fiȝte al one  
Send hem boþe on þyn helf : to fiȝte wiþ me ymone ;  
[&] if þay two ne buþ noȝt bolde : aȝen me to fiȝte on stoure, 100  
[Of] such þre y ne ȝyue auelde : & þoȝ þer come foure,  
[&] þoȝ þer come twelue : þe beste of þy fered,  
[B]ot if y slee hem sone helue : ne kep y neuere ete bred.  
[I] wil kuþe on hem my miȝt : & dyngen hem al to douste. 104  
Wheþer þay wille on fote fiȝt : ouþer on horse iouste,  
Send hem hider to me anan : for ich hymen her diffye,  
Ouþer by Mahoun þat made man : þou schalt wel sore a-bye.  
Y haue wyþ myn handes two : y-slawe kynges tene, 108  
So schal y þe now or þow go : þat al men schal it sene."  
he dude his helm þan of is hed : & set him doun þat tyde ;  
Of þyng he haueþ þer y-sed : an answer he þoȝte a byde. 111  
**K**ying Charlys þe Sarsyns speche y-hurde<sup>1</sup> : & so dude al his host,  
& how foule þat þe freke him furde : blowyng such a bost ;  
He was atened of his envy : he tok of hym so liȝte,  
And asked of Rychard of normandy : if he knew þat knyȝte 115  
þat mad hem þer so peryllous : & auauntid him þo so ȝerne.  
"He ne telleþ bote lyte of ous : be his wordes sterne ;  
Proutelich he auauntteþ hem : wiþ xij. for to fiȝte. 118  
Wiþ þe beste þat buþ of al my men : & to dulfulle deþe hem diȝte."  
¶ "ȝea," quap Ri[chard], "with outen op : y knowe him wel to wisse ;  
Hit is on þe gretteſt kyng for soþ : þat dwelleþ in heþenisse. 121  
In al paynye nys prynez ne kyng : þat berþ so gret a name :  
þorȝ out þe werld of is beryng : sprynges los & fame.  
Ne douteþ he kyng ne Emperour : þe value of a ryssche, 124  
þar for hem folwyþ al þat flour : þat in paynye ysse."  
¶ þanne þe kyng gan waxe wroþ : & aboute him gan be-holde,  
& by ſeynt dynys a ſwer is op : þat after þat tyme a nolde  
Ete ne drynke no more þat day : for none kynnes þyng, 128

<sup>1</sup> Charlys [sat &] hurde.

Or on of hys<sup>1</sup> in god aray : had foȝt *with þat* kynge.

of his has  
fought with  
that king.

¶ þe Emperour, sir Charlémayn : a wondrede of þat man :

More wolde he wyte fayn : & of Richard askeþ þan

What ys riȝte name was : þat made such a slaundre.

132

“Sire,” said he, “sir Fyrumbras : þe kyng of Alysandre :

pys ys he þat be-lay : Rome þy gode Citee,

& þyn relyqes bar away : þe croune & þe nailles three,

135

‘And the  
man’s name?’  
‘Sir Ferun-  
bras,’ says he,  
‘the King of  
Alexandria.’

þat þou & þyne *with* strengþe of hond : in hepnisse *sum* tyme wonne.

To cristenmen in many a lond : gret sorwe he haþ by-gonne.”

The French  
are  
frightened.

¶ Wan þe frensche i-hurde pys : sore þay wern afriȝte,

138

Was non of hymen þat wolde y-wys : profryem *with him* to fiȝte ;

Euereche behuld on oþer tho : bot ech man held hym stille.

None would  
fight with  
him.

Charlis bot is lippen tho : for he nad noȝt is wille,

¶ He clipede is neuewe duk Roland : þat was aman of myȝte,

142

& prayede him faire to take an hond : aȝen hym to take þe fyȝte.<sup>2</sup>

Charles prays  
Roland to  
take the fight  
in hand.

Roland answerede wyþ egre mod : & sayde so most he þe,

Roland  
refuses,

Leuere him were he were wod : oþer hanged on þe tre,

Or he wolde euere after þan : for hys prayere fiȝte

146

Wyþ Sarasyn ne *with* cristen man : noþer in wrong ne riȝte.

“For ȝester neite wan we had fiȝt : ȝonder out on þe playne,

[leaf 2, back]

A þousent þer we putte to fiȝt : & x þousent þer wern sleyne,

& My<sup>3</sup> felawe Erld Olyuer : was þar y-wounded sare ;

150

Alle ȝe hadden be a-slawe ther : *with* sarsyns þat þer ware,

Ne had þyn do[33]epers þe bet i-swonke : ich & my felawes :

& to-niȝt wan þat þov were dronke : þan þou laidest þy lawes,

& saydest þat þyn knyȝtes hore : hadden wel betere ifyȝt<sup>4</sup>

154

þan we þat ȝonge knyȝtes wore : þat disconfitedem alle *with* myȝt.

þyn angre<sup>5</sup> ous greuede sore : wan þou toke of ous so lyȝt ;

because  
Charles had  
insulted him.

At al men know<sup>6</sup> þat þar weore : þat þov saidest ounriȝt,

þou madest þat anaunt, soþ to saye : for to preyse þe selue.

158

Ac<sup>6</sup> Be-hold aboute now y praye : ouer *and* on euery helue.

‘Look about  
who will take  
the fight,

Hwyh of him wil take þe fiȝt : aȝen þat Sarsyn strong ;

<sup>1</sup> hys [pers] in.

<sup>2</sup> Aȝe [þe sarsyn to] fyȝte.

<sup>3</sup> My [owe].

<sup>4</sup> MS. altered (?) to ifoȝt.

<sup>5</sup> þyn [speche]

<sup>6</sup> The MS. has a line drawn from Ac to At above ; the Ac being added before Behold. The line originally ran :—Be-hold aboute y þe praye : her by euery helue.

for I will not.' For y ne wil noȝt by god almyȝt : & wyt þat þyn owen wrong,  
 & ho so takeþ hit on þy part : y swere by cryst in trone, 162  
 Of me neuere after-wart : loue ne get he none."

Charles, with  
 his gloves,  
 smites  
 Roland in the  
 face.  
 Roland draws  
 his sword,  
 but the others  
 separate  
 them.

¶ "A : glotoun," saide þe Emperer : "entempre þou beter þy tonge<sup>1</sup>,  
 If þow nere my cosyn þe neer : wel heȝe scholdestou be honge." 165  
 Wiþ gloues<sup>2</sup> þat he þan had an hond : þat with gold ibotened were,  
 In þe face smot he duke Rolond : þat þe blod sprong out þere.  
 þe duk a syde þanne gan to sterte : & drow ys swerd anon, 168  
 & wolde ys vncle þar-wiþ herte : nad oþre between hem gon.

¶ "Alas" : quap Charlis þar a stod : "wel sory now may y be,<sup>3</sup>  
 Wan he þat ys my flesche & blod : with wepne assaylleþ me :  
 & he þat scholde me socoury : to ȝen myn enymys 172  
 Despyseþ me her dispytously : & telt of me no prys.

Charles  
 orders him  
 to be put to  
 death,  
 but Roland  
 swears whoso  
 comes near  
 him shall  
 be slain.

Now y pray to god of heuene : þat al þyng knoþ & seeþ,  
 Ne lyue he noȝt þys day til euene : wyþ oute schentful deef." 176  
 for wrappe þan him criep þe kyng : & het to taken him sone,  
 & swer he nolde ete ne drynk : til he to depe wer done.

¶ Roland huld ys swerd a-drawe : & swer bi god al one  
 Ho so neȝed him schold ba-sclawe : & cloue down to þe stone.  
 Wan þe frensche men ihurde þys : þay douted him for to fonde, 180  
 þan was non sa hardy y-wys : on hym to leyn no-honde.

Ogier  
 interposes.

¶ Oger spak for duk Roland : & praide þe kyng to cesse,  
 & saide "sire, ȝe doþ hym wrong : to smyten him on þis presse.  
 Wel ofte he haueþ socourd ȝow : & of ȝour fon ȝov veñged, 184  
 Wer for y rede cessyeþ now : til eft hit may be amended."

[leaf 3]  
 Charles is  
 sorry.

CHARLIS be-huld þan how ys blod : ran down of ys face<sup>4</sup>  
 þe lasse him wondrede þoȝ ys mod<sup>5</sup> til anger gunne him chace,  
 þoȝ he for him þan sory were : no wonder for soþ hit nace 188  
 Amonges þe lordes alle pere : ofte he saide "alace !  
 Fader, & sone, & holy gost : wat schal y don," he<sup>5</sup> sede,  
 "Suppe þe man y trist an most : for-sakeþ me at my nede,  
 & draȝþ ys swerd bi-fore my fas : to sle me ȝif he miȝte ? 192  
 þat y so longe scholde lyue alas : to sen hit with my siȝte !"

<sup>1</sup> [mesure] þou beter þy [speche].

<sup>2</sup> Wiþ [þe] gloues.

<sup>3</sup> [Now] sory may y be.

<sup>4</sup> These words, face, chace, nace, alace, are altered from a final s in a hand of the same date.

<sup>5</sup> MS. he [he.]



¶ Duk Neymes þan him spak anon : & sayde wordes wyse—

Duke  
Neymes then  
said, ' Let  
him go,

" At þis tyme, sir, now let him gon : he wil him betre auyse ;  
þe habbeþ knyghtes among ous her : þe beste þat moȝe be founde, 196  
Sendeþ anoþer doþþeper : to fiȝte wiþ þat hounde."

and send  
another.'

¶ " By god," quap þe kyng, " now it is so : þat Rolond hit haþ for sake,  
y knowe non opre to tristyng to : batail with him to take,<sup>1</sup>

' I know none  
but Oliver,'  
says the king,

Out-take hys felawe Olyuere<sup>2</sup> : & he were hol & sounde ; 200

ac he lyþ hert now with a spere : & bereþ a gryslich wounde."

' and he is  
sorely  
wounded.'

¶ As he þanne<sup>3</sup> stod & þoȝte : to wham he speke may,

Meanwhile  
Oliver had  
heard of the  
Saracen,

þe tydyngge was to Olyuer broȝte : þer he on bedde lay

Of þe sarsyn þat was y come : & of þe kyng al so, 204

& how Roland haþ Charlys vndernome : & wold noȝt þat batail do.

¶ Wan þe Erld hit vnderstod : þat Rolond hit nolde take

To fiȝte aȝen þe Sarsyn wod : & al for wrappes sake,

& non opre ne profrede him noȝt : þat batail to vnde[r]fonge, 208

and how none  
would fight  
with him.

Him was ful wo þan on is þoȝt : & ofte sekede amonge ;

Sone he arerd him after þan : & lokede oppon is syde,

& saw is blod how [doun] it ran : out of is wonde wyde :

Soon he lifts  
himself up,  
and seeing  
how his blood  
runs from  
his wound,

Hys wounde was þo in yuel aray : & for Angwys gan to chyne. 212

Olyuer tok his mantel of say : gold peynt hit was wel fyne,

tears his  
mantle to  
pieces,

& rent hit al to peces smal : & þer wiþ is wonde he diȝte,

& stoppede is wounde þer wyþ al : & bond hure as he miȝte.

and stops his  
wound with  
it.

þan he clepede ys squyer : Garyn, & til hym he sayde : 216

" Do þat myn armes sone be heer : & help me y were a-rayde :

Then calls  
for his arms.

I wil fiȝte wyþ þat heþene kyng : as crist me helpe & rede.

ne langede me neuere more do þyng : þat toched mannes dede."

¶ Garyn þanne ansuerede aȝen : " sire, wat hast þow þoȝt ? 220

His squire,  
Garyn,  
remonstrates  
with him,

Wilt þ<sup>n</sup> silf willes lete þe slen : þy purpos ne preyse y noȝt.

By-þenk þe how þy blod ys schad : & hast a gryslich wounde ;

How scholdest þou fiȝte þat art so mad : wyþ þat heþene hounde ? "

¶ " Let of þy speche," þe Erld hym saide : " for no þyng wil y spare, [leaf 3, back]

Bot y made til hym abraide : of blisse y were al bare. 225

To helpe my liege lord Charloun : to batail mot y fare,

but Oliver  
insists,

y wil hold vp his renoun : wyþ al my myȝt & mare.

<sup>1</sup> [þat battail] with him to take.

<sup>2</sup> Out-take [þe gode erld] Olyuere.

<sup>3</sup> As he [byþoȝte him] þanne.

If y him faillede on þys nede : wan Roland hit haþ for-sake 228

þer is non oþer, so god me spede : þat wil hit vndertake :

ne schal no man bet proue is frende : bot a-say hem on his nede,

y praye þ<sup>e</sup>, Garyn, as þou ert hende : go bryng þou forþ my wede."

"Sir," said he wel delfolly : "þoȝ hit beo noȝt my wille 232

y wol þe armye sykerly : þy purpos to fulfille."

His arms  
are brought,  
and he puts  
them on,

his armes he bryngþ him þanne anon : & Olyuer gan him schride,

wiþ is hosen of mayle he by-gon : nolde he no leng a-byde :

& suppe an haberke al of steel : on is body he caste, 236

Garyn hur lacede faire & weel : & mað hur sitte faste.

His helm he setteþ on is heuede : & fastnede þe auentaille.

Hautecler is swerd was noȝt be-leued : he gurd him with saun faille.

Garyn his gode stede hym fette : þat was in spaygne iboȝt ; 240

mounts his  
steed,

þe erld lep vp wyþ oute lette : his styrop trepede he noȝt,

And smot þe stede him to saye : wiþ is spores of golde.

þe stede was god & lup a waye : wel fifty fet i-tolde ;

þat gode hors blessedde he þo : & louely strek ys mane, 244

He miȝte sikerly hym triste to : hym semede wel by þane.

"Garyn," quap Olyuer, "wel þe be : þov hast wel kept my stede,

If y may lyue & come aȝe : ȝelde y wil þy mede." 247

takes his  
shield and  
spear,

¶ Garyn him þankede & tok hym als : his scheld with hym to bere,

& Olyuer hit heng a-boute is hals : & til him tok a spere.

wan he was armed on horses bak : a fair knyȝt a was to see,

a iolif on wyþ oute lak : boþe strong & fers was hee.

God him spede for his miȝt : now he takþ ys waye, 252

wiþ þe werste Sarsyn wil he fiȝt : þat he dude euere a-saye.

and rides to  
Charles' tent.

¶ fforþ þan rod he stoutely : wel i-armed oppon his stede,

ys herte was god & sykerly : serued him to do þat dede : 255

he lifte vp ys hond & blessed him þan : & recomandedem to god almiȝte,

To Charlis paupyloun þe way he nam : til hym rod ful riȝte.

**A**S Charlys was in his greuance : stondyng among his feren, 258

& counsailede with þe grete of fraunce : & with ys doþpeperen,

Roland drow him a-side þare : among hem he ne keem,

& þan he by-gan repentye sare : þat he haþ greued his Eem. 261

Wel sore him greuede þat þe kyng : was angred for ys sake,

þan had he leuere þan eny þyng : had he þat batail take :

[leaf 4]  
Roland is  
sorry that

- þer to wolde he þanne be fayne : for schame 3if he miȝte  
 ffor þat batail to dereyne : profry hym forþ to fiȝte. 265
- ¶ Olyuer rideþ wyþ sper & scheld : in-to þe pauylloun,  
 Many was þe knyȝt þat him beheld : wan he spak ys resoun :  
 To þe kyng said he among þe pres : "y haue þe serued ȝore 268
- In werre & eke in lond of pes : wel seuen ȝer' & more,  
 & euere suppe y haue me raid : redely to þy seruyse,  
 & ȝut i holde me wel apaid : to don þe same gyse,  
 for y haue me preued on þy werre : to fiȝte aȝen þy foes. 272
- In many a lond boþ ner & ferre : y gete me prys & loes ;  
 y þank þe þat in many a lond : my name ys kud aboute.  
 & namliche be cause of duk Rolond : þe more me doþ me doute,  
 for sippen to gaddre we furstly knewe : neuere ous two to sterte. 276
- We habbeþ be felawes gode & trewe : in body & eke on herte ;  
 he haþ me holpen in many plas : syn we to-gadre come.  
 y þonky þat ȝow & godes gras : þat he tok frendschip to me.  
 for al my seruyse y haue þe don : y pray þe now a bone, 280
- Oþer sond ne kep y non : so þow hit grante sone."
- ¶ þe kyng ansuerede him a-ȝe : "dure frend, say þy wille,  
 be it castel, burgh, outhur Cite : & ich hit wol ful-fille.  
 And wan we comeþ to fraunce : more miȝt þou craue, 284
- As god ȝyue þe gode chaunce : ask on & þou schalt haue."
- ¶ þe Erld hym þonkeþ lome : & til him gan to sayne :  
 "Graunte, sire, þe batayl to me : þe sarasyn to fiȝte agayne,  
 for al þe seruyse y haue þe do : y aske non oþer þyng." 288
- Alle þat herd him wondrede þo : of is bold askyng ;  
 & for he was wonded so sore : þat is colour was neȝ a-go,  
 hymen wondrede wel þe more : þat he therste hym profry to.
- ¶ þan saide Charlis kyng : "Olyuer, what hast þou þoȝt ? 292
- By-þenk þou art y-woundȝyng : & neȝ þe depe ybroȝt,  
 & art now al pal of hewe : for þe blod þou hast schad,  
 & þy wounde ys ȝut al newe : & no medecyn naueþ ihad,  
 how miȝtest þou now fiȝte þanne : þy miȝte ys þe be reued, 296
- wyþ þat myȝty heþene manne : y rede þe þat þou leuet."
- ¶ "Nay," quap O[liver], "be god of heuene : for no þyng wil y spare,  
 noȝt for grete Citees seuene : in what lond þat þay ware.

he offended  
Charles.

Oliver  
reminds  
Charles of his  
long services,

and asks to  
be allowed  
to accept  
Ferumbras'  
challenge.

Charles  
remonstrates  
with him.

- & if 3e been a trewe kyng : þat batail wil y haue." 300
- [leaf 4, back] ¶ "Noȝt by my wil for noȝyng" : said he so god him saue.  
Then Gwelon and Hardree come before Charles. They were traitors, and ere three years they betrayed the king and were hanged.  
þanne þer come bi fore Charloun : Gwene-loun & hardree.  
Cristes cors come on hure croun : for traytours wern hee!  
As 3e schul huren after þys : or passede 3eres thrie 304  
pay be-traiede þe kyng & his : war-for þai had hure fee,  
an honged þai weren & to-drawe : þer after boþe two,  
As for traytours 3af þe lawe : for traysoun pay had ido<sup>1</sup>.  
þanne wolde pay wel faze : 3if þei miȝt helpe to 308  
pat sir Olyuer hadde be slaze : & to þe kyng pay saide þo :  
¶ "Syre, hit ys ordeynt be parlyment : among ous to ben yholde,  
pat wat be rewarded be tweyre assent : þ<sup>e</sup> pridde assenty sholde : 311  
Hit ys rewardet ous two be twyne : pat Olyuer schal wende & take  
þe batayl wiþ þe 3ond Sarsyne : & do hit for þy sake."  
¶ þe kyng answerede þis traytours : "Gweneyloun & hardree,  
For 3our iuggiment out of cours : haue 3e muche maugree ! 315  
Now schal he to þat batail fare : on him 3e hit habbeþ ypilt ;  
& if þe sarsyn ouercompþ him þare : certis 3e bereþ þ<sup>e</sup> gilt.  
Body & saule mot y forfare : 3if hit be falleþ so,  
Bot if 3e boþe for-þynk hit sare : 3our lyues schul 3e for-go." 319  
¶ "So crist," quaf pay, "scheld ous fram care : þat batayl mot be do,  
& alþoȝ he ben a-slawe þare : what mowe we do þer-to ?"  
By twene hem þan pay sede stille : "ne come he neuere aȝen !"  
For þat was al hure herte wille : þat þe sarsyn schold him slen.  
¶ Charlis to Oliuer saide þo : "god help þe, dere herte, 324  
pat þou mote ouercome our fo<sup>2</sup> : & come aȝeyn in querte.  
y hope þe scholde spede wel : nere þy greuous wounde,  
3ut trist y to god þat so þe schal : for þyn herte is hol & sounde."  
¶ Wiþ þat com forþ Duk Reyner : þat of Genyue duk was þo, 328  
Olyuers fader, a knyȝt ful feer : for him his herte was wo :  
"Mercy, quaf he to kyng Charloun : my sone ys wonded sore,  
Fram hym ys falle ys blod adoun : how miȝte he fiȝte more.  
He ys boþe paal & feynt : & 3ut me greues more, 332  
<sup>1</sup> [god] for traysoun, &c. <sup>2</sup> ouercome [þy] fo.

*Original draft.* From him ys falle his blod adoun . how miȝte he fiȝte more ?" 331

- þat if he beo þer in batail atteynt : þou lest þy los þefore."
- ¶ þan him answerede Gweneylloun : & Hardre in hure scorn :  
 "þov hast y dremed of venesoun : þov mostest drynke a torn.  
 He schal do now þat he be-soȝte : for we assentieþ to : 336  
 ho so wil or wil hit noȝt : þat batail he mot do."
- ¶ "ȝif hym þy blessing, swete Reyner : saide Charlis kyng,  
 For fȝte he mot wyþ þat sarsyn feer : me semeþ bi hure tellyng."  
 þe duk hef vp an heȝ his hond : & blessede his sone þare, 340 [leaf 5]  
 & O[liuer] þat was wel fre to fond : tok is leue to fare.  
 for him praiede many a wyȝt : þat god him scholde spede,  
 boþe kyng, duk, erld & knyȝt : scholde help him in þat nede.  
 D<sup>V</sup>c Oliuer him rideþ out of þat plas : in a softe amblere, 344 Oliver rides  
 ne made he non oþer pas : til þey wern met y-fere<sup>1</sup>: away,  
 And wan he cam þer as he was : þyderward he caste ys chere,  
 & fyndeþ þer sir Fyrumbras : liggyng on þ<sup>e</sup> erþe there.  
 ¶ Wan he saw erld Olyuer : a tornþ him þat oþer side ; 348 and finds  
 Aȝeyn him for to arise þer : dedeyngnede he þo for pride. Ferumbras  
 þe knyȝt him neȝede þanne neer : & spak til him þat tide : lying down.  
 "Arys vp, Sarsyn, þat ert so feer : no lenger ne miȝtou bide ;  
<sup>1</sup> til þey [come], &c.

- [þan him answerede Gweneylloun] & Hardre in hur scorn : 334 *Original*  
 þou [ha]st y met of venysoun [þou mostest] drynke a torn *draft.*  
 [He moste] ytake þat he bi-soȝt [for] we assentieþ to 336  
 Ho so wil or wil hit noȝt . he [mot þat batail do]  
 . . . . . saide charlis þou ȝif hym þy blessinge . . . .  
 Siker he . . . . .  
 þe duke hef vp an-heȝ his hond & blessid is sone þare ; 340  
 & Olyuer was fre to fond & forþ he gan to fare.  
 For him prayede many wiȝt þat god him scholde spede,  
 Boþe of baroun & eke knyȝt : & holp him in þat nede.  
 Oliuer torneþ him þanne wiþ an hardi chere, 344  
 Toward þat heþene manne he rideþ a softe amblere ;  
 Til he cam þer þat he was him þoȝte ech stap was þre,  
 At þe laste he fyndeþ Fyrumbras liggyng vnder a tre.  
 Whan he of saw<sup>1</sup> Sir O[lyuer] he turneþ þat oþre side, 348  
 Him dedeyngnede to him arise þer, so ful he was of pride.  
 þe knyȝt him neȝeþ ner & ner, & spake to him as he lay,  
 & askude of him what he were þat made such affray,

<sup>1</sup> of saw added above the line.

	& þat auantyngge þat, þou hast mad : & þou hit meyteyne wolle	352
and defend thyself;	Loke þat þou be armed sad : & hele þy bare scolle :	
I am come to fight with thee.	y am come her .o. semple knyzt : y-redy <i>with</i> þe to fize,	354
	yf þou þyn auaunt perfony myzt : a-rys vp anon & dizt þe."	
Ferumbras says scornfully, "If thou knewest me thou wouldst not offer to fight me,	¶ Fyrumbras on him glente ys eyze : scornfullich & low :	
	"Lef," saide he, "þy grete foleye : y rede þe for þy prow,	
	For if þou yknewe me arizt : my doynge & my creaunce,	358
	þou noldest profry me no fize : for al þat gold of fraunce.	
altho' I am alone.	Al þoz y ben her my self al one : a gret lord am y holde,	
	A kyng ycrounede on my trone : þe richeste man on molde.	
I am Ferumbras of Alexandria, the troubler of Christendom.	Fyrumbras is my name : of Alysandre kyng y-tolde,	362
	In tal þe worlde sp[r]ynggeþ fame : of myne dedes bolde.	
	¶ Wyþ my werres y haue a-nyed : mucche of cristendome,	
	& spayne & poyle y haue distryed : þe Citee eke of Rome ;	365
I slew the pope and all his cardinals,	þer slow ich þa[n] [þe] pope prout : & al his Cardynales þat yfond,	
	& alle þat wern of þe rout : y slow hem <i>with</i> myn hond.	
and took the Crown of Thorns and the Nails	¶ þanne tok ich þe croune of thorn : & þe nayles three,	
	þat paynede crist wan he was born : on þe rode Tree,	
and sent them to the Emir Balan, my father.	& send hem to þe Amerel Balaan : my fader to present.	370
	Mucche del of cristendam : y haue y-slawe & brent :	

<i>Original draft.</i>	& þat auaunt þat he gan make zif he metenye wolde	352
	A preydem army him for þat sake for <i>with</i> him fize he scholde.	
	Fyrumbras on him glent his eye scornfully & low :	
	"Lef þou," seid he, "þy foleye, y rede þe for þi prow ;	
	If þou yknewe me arizt & wat is my creance,	358
	þou woldest profrie me no fize for al þat gold of fraunce.	
	þoz y be her now al-one a gret lord ich am iholde,	
	A kyng [y-]crounede on my trone, þe richest man of molde.	
	Fyrumbras ys my name, of Alisandre ich am kynge,	362
	In tal þe world spryngeþ fame of my wel berynge.	
	ich am pilke þat haþ destruiet <sup>1</sup> mucche of cristente :	
	Al Spaygne an[d] poile y haue anuyed, & Rome <i>your</i> oze Cite.	
	þar y slow þe pope of Rome & alle his cardinals,	366
	& alle þat wolde nozt loute to me þanne slow ich als :	
	þar tok ich þe croune of þorn & þe nailes þre,	
	þat payne crist wan he was born on þe rode tre,	
	& sende hem my fader Balahen & zif hem to present.	370
	Miche puple of cristen men me self y haue i-schent.	

<sup>1</sup> destruiet [Rome].



Fram babylony þat ys my owe tour : in to [þe] rede see  
 Al þe lordes of honour : hure londes holdeþ of me.  
 Ierusalem, þaym, & ierico : ich wan wyþ my prowesse,  
 & alle þe tounes aboute al so : boþe more & lesse.<sup>1</sup>  
 þe croys þat ihesus deyde an : & þe sepulchre al so,  
 With dede of armes ich hem wan : & relyques many mo."  
 þanne saide Olyuer "by my croun : y hure wel by þy sawe  
 þow hast y-do distruccion : myche to cristen lawe ;  
 & hast al so y-mad envy : wiþ christene men to fizte,  
 of alle oure zonder company : wiþ .xij<sup>e</sup>. þe moste of mizte.  
 & y am her bote a demeyne knyzt : of þe realme of fraunce,  
 & am y-come wyþ þe to fizt : for al þy grete bobbaunce.  
 Arys vp raply & þyn helm do on : & aray þe on þy stede,  
 & grayþe þe to fizte wiþ me anon : or elles y make þe blede."  
 þe Sarzyn gan to lawe smere : & to O[lyuer] sayde þan :  
 "Wat wendest þou now so me a-fere : þov art an hastif man,

From Baby-  
 lon to the  
 Red Sea all is  
 mine.  
 374 I won Jeru-  
 salem and all  
 the townes  
 about,  
 [leaf 5, back]  
 the cross and  
 sepulchre and  
 many more  
 reliques.  
 378 Then says  
 Oliver, "Thou  
 hast done  
 much harm  
 to Christians.

382 I am here but  
 a lowly  
 knight to  
 fight with  
 thee.  
 Arise, and  
 prepare to  
 fight with  
 me.  
 386 The Saracen  
 says,

' At the bottom these lines (the 3rd and 4th in a different hand) :  
 Duk O[lyuer] priked in-to þe feld þer þe Sarzyn lay,  
 Wel y-armed with sper & sheld his harneys was so gay.  
 [These are crossed through and were probably a substitute for lines 344,  
 345, between which a line is erased, though written in the margin.]  
 Do on þyn helm oppon þyn hed . & lep oppon þy stede  
 If þou mizte proue þat þou hast sed . let se hit now in [dede]  
 which seem to be a substitute for lines 384-5.

Fro Babalony þe heze tour in-to þe rede se  
 Al þe lordes of honour alle þay holdeþ of me ;  
 Ierusalem & ierico ich wan with my prouesse  
 & al aboute tounes mo boþe more & lesse.  
 þe croyz þat þour god dayd an<sup>1</sup> & þe sepulchre also  
 Wyþ dede of armes ich am wan, & reliques many mo."  
 O[lyuer] saide, "by my croun y haue y-herd þy sawe :  
 þou hast do muche distruccioun to oure christene lawe  
 & hast mad<sup>2</sup> þy avy wyþ xij men for to fizte  
 of al oure zonder company þe alre beste knyzte.  
 I am her a meyne knyzt y-comen out of<sup>3</sup> fraunce,  
 al-redy now with þe to fizt for al þy gret bobaunce.  
 Arys vp & anon do on þyn helm & lep oppon þy stede,  
 & rap . . . redy rap þe wel & elles y make þe blede."  
 þe Sarazyn law . . . smere & to Oliuer sayde þan :  
 Wenist þou so me a-fere ? þou ert an hastife man.

Original  
 draft.

374

378

382

386

<sup>1</sup> þour god [was] an [ido].      <sup>2</sup> & [now] hast mad.      <sup>3</sup> MS. of of.



	Er y remuvie me of þys place : þat soþe þou schalt me telle,	388
'Who art thou, and who sent thee here,	Of wat kunne comen þov wace : & þy name wyten i wille,	
	& of þy comyng whar for it ys : & ho þe hiderward sente.	
and what is thine intent?	y wol wyten <sup>1</sup> þat soþe of þys : & wat is þyn entente :	
	& wan þat y know it wyterly : þe soþe þat þou saye,	392
	þan schal y sykerly : arise vp and me arraye."	
Oliver answers, 'I am sent by Charles	¶ þan him ansuerede Olyuer : wyþ sterne contynauce :	
to say, Turn to Christendom, or else	"y am y-sent to þe heer : by Charlis kyng of fraunce.	
	Charlis þe sente be me to say : þov torndest to crestendome,	396
	& for-soke þy false lay : & to follozt sone þov come :	
	belyue þou scholdest on god almyzt : þat for ous gan blede,	
fight, or flee.'	& elles y chalenge wiþ þe to fzt : outhur y schal haue þy stede,	
	& fleo þov schalt of þis lond : as a ladde doþ on þy fote.	400
	Charlis sent to þee þis sond : þou ne ge[te]st non oþre bote."	
'Christian knight,' says Ferumbras, 'there is no haste,	¶ "Christene knyzt," quap Fyrumbras : "þou art a wonder gome :	
	þer is non haste in þys cas : to fzt 3ut mowe we come.	
	Ac for þou tellest so litel of me : ne were it for repreue,	404
	By Mahoun, þat ys my vowe : of þyn heued y wolde þee reue.	
Tell me one thing, before we fight,	Ac tel me o þyng nopeles : er we to-gadre fzte,	
	<sup>1</sup> MS. wynten, marked for correction.	

<i>Original draft.</i>	Or ich remuwy of þys plas þat soþe þou schalt me telle	388
	Of wat kyn y-come þou was, & þy name wyte ich chille,	
	& war-for þy comyng is, & ho þe hider sente.	
	Y wil wite þat soþe of þis & what is þyn entente.	
	& wan y knowe hit wyterly þat hit is soþ þat þow saye,	392
	þan schal y sykerly arys vp & me a-rye."	
	¶ þan him ansuerede olyuer wyþ sterne continauce :	
	"Y am y-sent to þ <sup>e</sup> her by Charlis kyng of fraunce ;	
	Charlis þe sente by me to say þou torne to cristendome,	396
	& reneye þy false lay & to follozt sone þou come ;	
	by-lyue þou scholdest on god almyzt, þat for ous gan blede,	
	& ellis ich chaulange with þ <sup>e</sup> to fzt, oþer y wil haue þi stede.	
	Fleo þou a-way out of þis lond as an harlot al afote.	400
	C[harlis] sent þe such a sond, þou getest non oþer bote."	
	¶ "Crestene knyzt," quap F[yrumbras], "þou ert a wonder gome.	
	Ne haste nozt me myche in þis cas to fzte þou myzt wel come.	
	Ac for þou letest so lite of me, nere hit for repreue,	404
	By Mahoun þat ys my vowe of þyn heuede wold y þe reue !	
	Ac tel me o þyng nopeles or we to-gadre fzte,	

- & say me soþ & no lees : as help þee þy god almiȝte.  
 of C[harlis] þat ys ȝour Emperer : of whame men stondeþ aye,  
 & of duk Roland þat ys so fier : þe soþe þou me saye,  
 & ek of is felawe, Erld Olyuer : tel me y þe praye,  
 And of duk Berard of moundisdier : what manere men buþ þaye.”  
 ¶ “Sarsyn,” saide þe gode knyȝt : “þat soþe schaltou here.  
 Charlis ys so strong in fiȝt : he fyndeþ nowar is pere :  
 & Rolond ys so muche of myȝt<sup>1</sup> : so coraious & so fere,  
 þat nowar nys founde non so wýȝt : wan he ys on ys gere.  
 Olyuer þ<sup>e</sup> erld ys noȝt so god : þe soþe for to saye,  
 Ac he ys a man heȝ of mod : Sarasynȝ to yule arraye.  
 Onys y wiste oppon a day : þat he slow kynges three  
 þat lyued on ȝour false lay : & tweyne mad he flee :  
 Ac he slow Sarazyns on þat place : [so doȝtilich þat t]yde  
 þat al þe feld y-strawed wace : of hymen on euery syde.  
 Terry is sone duk Berard : ys a noble knyȝt.  
 þer ys no doþþeper þat nys hard : & strong iholde & wyȝt.  
 Now haue y told þe þyn askyng : for þy fer arys vp sone  
<sup>1</sup> & Rolond ys so [noble a kni].

of Charles  
 and Roland,  
 410 and of Oliver,  
 and Berard.”

[leaf 6]  
 Oliver says,  
 ‘Charles is so  
 strong he has  
 no equal,  
 and nowhere  
 is such a  
 knight as  
 Roland.’  
 Oliver is not  
 so good, but  
 once he slew  
 three kings,  
 and made  
 two to flee.

422 Berard is a  
 noble knight.

Now I have  
 told thee,  
 arise and put  
 on thy gear.

*Original  
 draft.*

- & say me soþ & no les, so helpe þe þy driȝte !  
 Of þi lord kyng Charloun, of wam men stondeþ aye,  
 & of Roland þat knyȝt of gret renoun þe soþe þou me saye ;  
 & of his felawe oliuer tel me, y þe praye,  
 & eke of Berard of moundisdier, wat maner men buþ þaye.”  
 “Sarazyn,” saide þe gode knyȝt, “þat soþe y telle þe here.  
 Charlis ys so stronge in fiȝt he fyndeþ no-war is pere,  
 & R[oland] is an hardi man, so strong man & so wiȝt,  
 þat in no batail þer he cam . ne fond he neuere knyȝt,  
 þat onys a strok hym astod þat he on him leide,  
 þat he ne affuldem were wod, ouþer slowe at a braide.  
 Olyuer his felawe is noȝt so god, to soþe i þe telle,  
 Ac noþeles he is a man of mod heþene men to quelle.  
 Y wiste onis on a day war he slow kynges þre,  
 þat bi-leuede on þe false lay & tweye he made fle ;  
 He laide on Sarazyns on þat plas so doȝtilich with wille  
 þat al þe feld y-strawid was of Sarsyns þat weren ille.  
 Terry is sone, sire Berard, is a noble knyȝt,  
 & alle þe opre doȝepers buþ doȝty men & wiȝt.  
 Now y haue þe al itold ne tarie þou me no mere ;

410

414

418

420

424

	And do on þyn helm þou heþene kyng : & let se wat þou canst done, & bot þou þe rapere gynne to spring : y swere by crist on trone 426 Sone getest þou euyl endyng : <i>with</i> my swerd y wil þee slone."
The Saracen says, 'Thou art a fool.	¶ Þa ð þe sarsyn huld vp ys hed : after þes wordes felle, & sayde, "knyzt þou art a qued : to make me such a spelle, Litel prowessse for me it were : wiþ a vauasour for to melle, 430 Wiþ my swerd þat ys here : ellis y wolde þe quelle." ¶ "Sarsyn," quap Olyuer, "let now ben : þy prude & þy manace ; Or þe sonne hure sette þou schalt sen : of þy blod ful þis place. þow schalt þe zelde recreent : ouþer her riht schaltou dye." 434 þe Sarazyn saide " <i>verament</i> : y hope þov schalt lye." His scheld tok he þo til hym ner : & laide vnder ys hed an hye : Hym dredeþ noþyng of Olyuer : no more þan of a flye ; For he was strong & coraious : & hez man of parage, 438 Him semede it nas nozt worþ a lous : batayl wiþ him to wage.
'Christian,' says Firum- bras, 'tell me thy name and kin.'	¶ " <i>Christene</i> kniht," quap Firumbras : "y haue of þe god game, Tel me nov riht in þis plas : what ys þy rihte name ; & of wat kyn þou ert y come : tel me al þat soþe." 442
'Garyn,' says Oliver, 'at Perigot was I born.	"Garyn," quap O[lyuer], "Gwylmynes sone : y tel þe wyþouten oþe : At Perigot ich was y-bore : a borgeys dude me gete. y haue <i>trauayld</i> her be-fore : wel herde for my mete, Til ich me droz to courte-ward : & an <i>seruise</i> dihte me þare ; 446
At Court	

<i>Original draft.</i>	If þou ert to fihte bold, arys ; & do on þy gere, & bote þou þe raper haue y-do y make myn be-heste, <i>With</i> my swerd y schel þe slo 3if þat hit wil leste." þan þe Sarazyn held vp ys hed . wanne he had herd him telle & saide, "knyzt, þou ert a qued to make such a spelle. Litel prouesse for me hit were. <i>with</i> a uauysour for to melle, 430 <i>With</i> my swerd þat is here ellys y wold þe quelle." "Sarazyn, quap O[lyuer], let þis ben, þy prude & þy manace ; Or sonne . . . sette þou schal y sen of þy blod ful þis place. þou schalt þe zelde . . . . . 434
----------------------------	---

[(?) 10 lines missing.]

[top of col. 2]	. . . . . saie <i>with-outen</i> [ope] 443 [At Perigot ich] was [y-bore, a borgeys dude] me gete y haue <i>trauayld</i> her bfore many many for my mete At . . . y drow to courtward an <i>seruise</i> ich þer me dihte, 446
-----------------	---

þan serued ich þe kynges<sup>1</sup> styward : [seuene<sup>2</sup>] ȝer & mare :

He bar my los to Charlis kyng : for my gode seruyse,

þat he ȝaf me lond & oþer þyng : & halp me in þis wyse :

þe kyng suppe mad me knyȝte : to seruie him in is werre,

& he me sente wiþ þe to fiȝte : com on ȝif þou derre."

¶ Wan O[lyuer] hym haueþ al itold : Fyrumbras gan to smyle :

"Garyn," quap he, "þou art ful bold : bot lust to me a wyle :

Why ne sendeþ he duk Rolond : with me for to fiȝte,

Ouþer olyuer with þe harde hōnd : þat is so god a kniȝte ;

Oþer duk bera[r]d of montdisdier : ouþer Ogeroun þe wiȝte?"

"Parfay" ansuerede erld Olyuer : "þay han of þe dispizte

þar-for y am to þe y-sent : to spelie þai doȝty men :

for þoȝ y ben in batail schent : it ys no lest for hem.

Arys vp now & don þyn helm : þy scheld & [eke] þy gere,

& kep þe silue with oute herm : & be-þenk þe self to were.

Ouþer be þe deþ þat y schel deye : y ȝeue þe such a stroke,

þat þou him neuere schalt clowe a-weye : wile þou þy lyf miȝt broke."

¶ "By my fayþ," quap Firumbras : "haue þis wel in mynde,

Neuere ne faȝt y ȝut in plas "with man of lowe kynde,

<sup>1</sup> þe [heȝ] styward.

<sup>2</sup> MS. sone.

I served the  
high steward  
7 years.  
He bore my  
praise to  
Charles,  
who made  
me knight.

[leaf 6, back]  
Come on  
now, if thou  
durst!  
Ferumbras  
smiled.

'Why send-  
eth he not  
Roland,  
or Oliver,  
or Berard,  
or Ogeroun ?'  
'Faith,'  
answers  
Oliver, 'they  
despise thee.

Arise, now;  
arm thyself.'

& serued . . . . styward & memden with al my miȝte :

He [bar my los to Charlis kyng] þat he me gan auaunce,

& ȝaf me beste lond [& thyng] þat be in þe realme of fraunce,

Charlis [suþpe mad me] knyȝt to seruie him on his werre,

He se[n]te me hider with [þe] to fiȝt, asay now [if] þou derre."

Wan O[lyuer hym] haueþ [al i-]told F[yrumbras] gan to smyle :

he [said] "Garyn, þou ert ful bold, but lust to me a while :

Wy [ne] sendeþ he hider sir Roland with me for to fiȝt,

[Ouþer] O[lyuer] with þe herde hand, þat ys so noble a kniȝt,

[Ouþer Be]rard of moundisder, oþer sir Oger þe wiȝt?"

"Parfay," þan said Olyuer, "for þay han of þe dispizt,

þarfor y am to þe y-sent to spelie þai doȝty men,

þoȝ y ben in batail schent : it is ne lest for hem.

Aris vp now & do on þyn helm þy scheld & þy gere,

& lep vppon þy stede ariȝt & by-þenk þe for-to were ;

Ouþer by þe fayþ þat y schal to kyng Charlemeyn

On þyn heued y ȝeue þe a knal & cleue þe in-to þe brayn."

"By my . . . fayþ," quap F[yrumbras], "haue þis wel in mynde,

Neuere ne fauȝte y ȝut in plas with no man of so lowe kynde

'If I slay  
thee,' says  
Ferumbras,  
'what honour  
would it be?

However, one  
thing I will  
do;

I will yield  
thee my  
steed.  
Lead him  
to Charles,

and tell him  
to send  
Oliver,  
or Roland,  
or Gwylmer  
the Scot,  
or Terry,  
or Guy,  
or Berard,  
or Ogier,  
or all  
together;  
I shall not

Bote wyþ duk ouþer Erld' of myzt : ouþer kyng y-crowned free. 466

þoʒ y slowe þe her in fȳt : what prys were þat for me?

Men wolde sayn y were to blame : wyþ such on for to fȳte,

Bote þou haddest a betere name : þan Garyn a pore kniȳte.

Ac o þyng y schal now for þe do : i dude it neuere to wiȳte. 470

ʒyf þov wilt assenty to : in armes y wil me diȳte,

& lepe y wol now on my stede : & bere to þe a spere,

with anoþer ryd þou to me : wyþ a cors of werre,

Als so harde as þou mixt flynge on : a-rede me on þe schelde ; 474

y schal þe harmles lete gon : & falle y wil on þe felde ;

Tak þou þanne my gode stede : & þy beste þer-wyþ þou do,

& to Charlis þou him lede : & eke my scheld al-so.

Say him þanne as þy god þe saue : þat þov hem y-wonne heer, 478

& ʒif he þenkeþ more to craue : <sup>1</sup>to me send he<sup>1</sup> Olyuer,

Ouþer Roland, þat is so strong in fȳt : oþer þe scot Gwylmer,

Terry, ouþer Gy þe hardy kniȳt : Berard, ouþer Ogier.

& if it [be] so þat on al-one : ne dar noȳt þat batail take, 482

þeyȳ þay come euerechone : nel ich hem noȳt for-sake."

¶ "þov spekest folie," saide Olyuer : " & makest muche delaye,

<sup>1</sup>—<sup>1</sup> [þanne] send he.

*Original  
draft.*

Bote it wer duke or erld ful wiȳt, ouþer kyng y-crowned fre. 466

þoʒ y sle þe in such a fȳt, what pris wer þat for me?

Men wolde sayn y were to blame wyþ such on for to fȳte,

Bote þou haddest a better name þan Garyn a pore knyȳte.

¶ Ac o þyng y schal for þe do, y dude hit neuere to wiȳte : 470

If þou wolt assenty to, in armes i wil me diȳte,

& take y wol my stede & bere to þe a sperre,

Wiþ an oþer rid þou to me with a gret cors of werre

As harde as þou miȳt flyng<sup>1</sup> [on a]-rede me on my scheld. 474

y shal þe harmles lete gon, & falle y wil on feld,

& take þou þanne my gode stede þy best þer with to do ;

& To C[harlis] þou him lede & eke my scheld al-so ;

Say him as þy god þe saue how þou hit getest her, 478

Bot ʒyf he þenkeþ more to craue sende hider Oliuer,

Ouþer Roland þat ys so strong in fȳt, oþer þe scot Gwylmer,

Terry, ouþer Gy þe hardi kniȳt, berard, ouþer Ogier.

& if hit ys so þat on al-one wil noȳt þe batail take, 482

þeyȳ þay come euerechone nel ich noȳt hem for-sake."

"þou spekest as fol," qua[þ] O[liuer], " & makest moche delaye ;

- Wip þyn auaunt þou makest heer : þou ne miȝt noȝt me amaye. run away.  
'Thou  
speakest like  
a fool,' says  
Oliver;
- þy stede ys myn, y haue y-þoȝt : wather þou wile or no, 486
- þer-of schalt þou me lette noȝt : þat hit ne schal be so.
- þyn auaunt worþ dere aboȝt : þyn heued þou schalt for-go. 'thy boast-  
ing will cost  
thee thy life.'
- To do þat batail þou hast i-soȝt : al redy am y þarto.
- ¶ Arys vp þer-for hastely : & aray þe wel to fiȝte, 490 [leaf 7]
- Ouþer y swere be þat Mary : þat bar þat child of miȝte,  
no lenger wil y spary þe : for al þy grete bostyngge :  
bote liggyng her y wol þe sle : with-oute more drecchyngne."
- ¶ Fi[rumbras] gan to waxe wroþ : & vp bi-gan to sitte : 494
- Were O[lyuer] lef, oþer wer him loþ : þannes nolde he flitte : 'In spite of  
it all I will  
slay thee.'  
Ferumbras  
begins to be  
angry, and  
sat up.
- Egrelích he be-huld aboute : & lokede on þe kniȝte,  
& saw þe red blod russchen out : þorw is armure briȝte : He sees the  
blood on  
Oliver,
- endelonges is side þat blod him ran : & ful down to þe grounde 498
- þe sarsyn knew it wel by þan : he hadde a greuous wounde.  
& þan he askede of Olyuere : þat houede þer him tabide ; and asks if he  
is wounded.
- If þat he any<sup>1</sup> wonde bere : in ys body þat tyde.
- "Me þynkþ þou hast a wonde þere" : said he, "in þy syde." 502
- "þer-of," quap . O[lyuer], "ne haue þou no fere," : & turnd him þat 'Trouble  
thyself not,'  
says Oliver :
- sor to hyde.
- <sup>1</sup> he [a].

- 
- With þyn auaunt þou makest her þou schalt noȝt me amaye, Original  
draft.
- þy stede ys myn y haue iþoȝt, wather þe wil or no, 486
- þow ne schalt me lette noȝt þat hit ne schal be so.
- þyn auaunt worþ ful dere a boȝt þyn hed þou schalt for-go.
- To do þat batail þat þou hast soȝt me self am redi þer-to.
- Go now . . . . . & raye anon to fiȝt 490
- Ouþer . . . . . by my god of [miȝt]
- . . . . . þy gret bostyngge
- . . . . . þe sle as þou ert liggyngne."
- Ferumbras made him þane wroþ & vp he gan to sitte, 494
- Were O[liuer] hem lef or loþ þannes nolde he flitte ;
- Egerlich he be-huld aboute & lokede on Olyuer,
- & saw þat red blod rusched oute out of his body þer ;
- þorw-out his armure þe blod out ran riȝt down to þe gronde, 498
- þe Sarzyn knew it wel by þan he hauede a grisly wonde :
- He askede þanne of Olyuer, þat houede þer him to byde :
- "Me þenckþ þou ert y-hert ful sere & berest a wonde wyde
- By þat blod þat rennep down by þyn oþer side." 502
- O[lyuer] saide, "[þat] is noȝt so," & turnde him hit to hide ;



'the blood  
is that of my  
steed.'

"þat blod," quap he, "þov seȝe þo : it comeþ out of my stede,  
For he scholde ȝerne go : his side y made blede :

Of þe hors it comeþ þat y sit on : þat blod<sup>1</sup> þat þou y-seȝe" 506

'Thou canst  
not so  
deceive me,'  
says the  
Saracen.

"þat ys lees," saide he anon : "þou blerest noȝt so myn eȝe,  
Ac if i can þat riȝt arede : þat blod him compþ of þe,  
Fram vaste be-side þy nauel-stede : as it semeþ me.

'But at my  
saddle hangs  
a vessel  
full of the  
balm with  
which thy  
God was  
anointed.

Ac by myddel þer hongep her : a costrel as þou miȝt se, 510

hwych ys ful of þat bame cler : þat precious ys & fre,

þat ȝoure god was wiþ anynt : wan he was ded & graued,  
y wan hym wyþ my swerdes poynt : many man haþ he saued.

For hwych man þat haueþ any wounde : & beo þer-wiþ enoynt, 514

It will heal  
any wound.

it wil don him be hol & sounde : & maky him in god poynt :

& if he þer of drynke may : beo þe deþ him noȝt so neere,

Sone he schel be on god aray : & beo al hol & feere.

Drink a little,

Go tak him now þer he hongep : & dr[i]nk of him a stounde, 518

þan schaltou noȝt a-bide longe : til þou be hol & sounde ;

then thou  
wilt fight all  
the better.'  
'No,' says  
Oliver, 'I  
need it not.'

& wan þou felest þy body feer : þe better þan miȝt þou fiȝte."

þan him answerede Olyuer : "y wil noȝt by þis liȝte ;

& or we departye henne : al hool þou schalt me vynde." 522

<sup>1</sup> þat [rede] blod.

*Original  
draft.*

"þat blod þat þou y-seȝe þo hit comeþ out of my stede,

For he schold faste hider go his sides y makede blede :

Hit is þe hors þat y sit on þat blod him renneþ fro." 506

"þou lyst," he saide, "by Makeron ! hit miȝte neuer be so,

Ac If y can þe riȝt arede þat blod him renneþ of þe.

Fro Faste by-sydes þy nauel stede, so ymote y þe !

But ȝunder at my sadel boȝe hongep o botel, 510

Ful of baume oun y loȝe ys he euery del,

þat ȝour god was anynt þer-with wan he byried was :

Ich hem wan with swerdes poynt at rome ȝour oȝene plas.

þe man þat haueþ wonde & is þer-with anynt 514

He schel be hol & sonde & waxe on god poynt.

Ac If he þer-of drynke, beo þe deþ noȝt so neer,

Anon riȝt he may swynke & beo hol & fer.

Take him þer he honge and drynke þer-of a stonde, 518

þou schalt [noȝt] abide longe or þou be hol & sounde,

& wanne þ[y] hert [ys] hol & fer þe surlokere þou miȝt fiȝte."

þan him ansuerde Olyuer, "y wil non bi þis liȝte ;

Or we departe a-twynne al hol þou schal[t] me fynde." 522



þe Sarasyn sayd til him þanne : “ þyn heȝ herte wil þee schynde.”

¶ Fyrumbras of Alysandre : to Olyuer spak & lowȝ :

524 Then Ferumbras asks Oliver to describe Roland,

“ Of what schap ys duk Rolandre : tel me y pray þe nowȝ,  
& ek of Olyuer þat is so wȝt<sup>1</sup> : of what schap ys hee y praye,  
As þou art a iantail knyȝt<sup>2</sup> : þat soþe þat þou me saye.”

¶ Olyuer him answerede þan : “ be-hold me þat am heer !

528 and Oliver answers, [leaf 7, back] ‘ Look at me ; such is Oliver. Roland is not so tall, but stronger and mightier.’

for In al þyng þat þou auyse can : such schap ys Olyuer.

Roland ys noȝt so long as hee ; ac more is he of myȝte,  
& doȝtyere man on to see : & sternere man in fiȝte :

ne faȝt he neuere ȝet in felde : wyȝ kyng ne Ameraunt,  
þat he ne asloȝ ouper madem ȝelde : ys body to him creaunt.”

532

¶ Fyrumbras ansuerde him agayn : prouteliche & sayde :

“ þoȝ þay wern her boȝe twayn : þay scholde me noȝt dure abraide,  
& þoȝ suche foure were here : be Mahoun & ternagaunt,  
Ich hem wolde wel conquere : wiȝ my swerd trechaunt.”

536 ‘ Though they,’ says Ferumbras, ‘ or four such were here I should not fear them.’ ‘ Thou art ever boasting,’ says Oliver ;

¶ “ Sarsyn,” saide Erld Olyuere : “ al day þou makest bost ;

Wer al þyng soȝ þat þou saist here : þou were a grymly gost.

Arys vp anon & arme þe : y ne wil no lenger duelle,

540 ‘ arise, or else

Oper be þe lord þat schep lef and tree : heuene & eke helle,

Bote þou arys vp on þy fet : & schippe þe a-non to fiȝte,

A tweyne i wol forcleue þyn hed : with my swerd her riȝte.”

I will cleave thy head.’

<sup>1</sup>. { And ek of [þe Erld] Olyuer.

<sup>2</sup> { As þou art iantail knyȝt [& feer].

þe Sarazyne saide þanne, “ þy prude wol þe schynde.”

¶ Ferumbras of Alisandre to O[liuer] spak & low,

524 Original draft.

“ Of what shap ys Roland, tel me y praiȝ þe now,

& of þe Erld Olyuer, of what facioun is he :

As þou ert iantail kniȝtes peer anon riȝt tel þou me.”

Oliuer him ansuered þan, “ be-hold me fer & ner,

528

In alle þyng þat þou can, riȝt such ys Oliuer.

Ro[land] is noȝt so long as h[ee] [Ac] more he is of miȝt,

& doȝtyere man y w[iste to see] & sternere man in fiȝt.

Ne fauȝt he neuere in fylde with kyng ne Amerant,

532

þat he [ne] made him ȝelde [ys] body to him creaunt ;

& if he him ȝelde nolde, & putte him to ys grace,

Sle him [þanne] he wolde [for] he went out of place.”

F[erumbras] ansuerde h[im] agayn, prout[fulich] & saide,

534

“ þoȝ þei were her boȝe tweyn, þey scholde me noȝt dure abraide,

& þoȝ suche iiij wer her, by Mahon & ternagant,

Ferumbras is wroth, and starts up. ¶ Wip þat þe Sarsyn þat was þor : wax wroþ on his herte 544  
 & bente hym brymly as a bor : & vp hym gan to sterte ;  
 & wan he stod appon þe ground : huge<sup>1</sup> was he of lengþe,  
 He is 15 feet high, wonderfully strong Fifteuene fet hol & sound : & wonderliche muche of strengþe. 547  
 Had he ben in cryst be-leued : & y-vollid on þe haly fant,  
 A better knyzt þan he was preued : þo was þer non lyuand :  
 and broad-shouldered. Fyrumbras of Alysandre : was a man of gret stature, 550  
 & ful brod in þe scholdres was : & long man in forchure.  
 Oppon is armure was he clad : wyþ a cote-armure clene,  
 He is clad in cloth-of-gold. Of cloþ of gold it was mad : & enbrouded with perlis schene.  
 He be-holdeþ oppon Olyuer : egrelich : as lyoun, 554  
 And by-gan to gon him ner : & siggeþ þys resoun ;  
 He says, 'I marvel at thy daring and pity thee. "Garyn, me meruaylleþ myche of þe : þat art so meyne a knyzt,  
 How þou darst entremetrie of me : a-zen me to take fize.  
 A ful gret pite me þenkþ it were : for þou art so bold 558  
 To sle þe in fize here : oper to take þe, if y wold.  
 Hit nys nozt on my porpos her : with no man to<sup>2</sup> fize  
 Bote he ben a kyngis peer : & strong man eke of miȝte.  
 I will fight with none except he be noble and mighty. Wend a-vey þou vauasour : & say so Charlis kyng, 562  
<sup>1</sup> [ful] huge. <sup>2</sup> [for] to.

Original Ich hem wolde alle sone wip my swerd trenchant  
 draft. . . . . makest bost  
 . . . . . [Bottom of sheet. ? 8 lines (long) wanting.]  
 . . . . . hol & sond . . . . . he . . . . .  
 Had he beo in crist be-leued, & fulled in holi fanston,  
 A betere knyzt þan he was preuid liuande nas þer non.  
 Fyrumbras of Alisandre was a man of gret stature, 550  
 Wel brode were his sholdres & long was his forchure  
 Vppon his armes he was clad wyþ a mantel . . . .  
 Of a cloþ of gold [it was] ymad . . . . . ene  
 He beholdeþ O[liuer] egrelich as lyoun, 554  
 & by-gan to gon him ner, & siggeþ þis resoun,  
 "Garyn, me meruailleþ muche of þe þat ert so comune a knyzt,  
 þat þou þerst þe sette to me a-zen me for to fize ;  
 Gret pite me þenkþ it were for þou ert so [meyne a kniȝte] 558  
 To sle þe her wyþ my gere, ouþer take þe to . . . . .  
 Hit is nozt to fize myn entente . . . . .  
 Bote he beo of londe & rente, gret & eke of miȝt.  
 Wend a-vey, þou vauasour, & tel so [Charlis kyng] 562

'þys day he falleþ in deshounour : for is fol sendyng.'

¶ "What ! ys," quap O[lyuer] "þy prechyng : icome to such an ende ?

I ne schal neuere, by heuene kyng : a fot ferther wende

Or y haue of þe þe hegere hand : ouþer sleyþ þee on þis felde, 566

Outher þov schalt be recreant : & maugre þy teþ þe zelde.

Tak þyn armys if þou wilt : no lenger nel y þe spare ;

On yuel deþ mot y be spild : if ich þe byde mare."

[leaf 8]

A lefte ys sper & drow ys swerd : & smyteþ til hym-ward sare, 570

& þozte cleue him vn-to þe berd : & til his hed hit bare.

þe Sarsyn anon bar of þe stroke : with ys scheld þat a held an honde

& a<sup>1</sup> quarter þer-of a smot : þat it fel down on þe sonde.

¶ "Arme þe, Sarsyn," saide Olyuer þan : "hit wil be for þyn prow."

"þou saist soþ," quap he, "by ternagan : þou haddest neyþslawe me now.

Hadd y þat stronge strok y-take : þou haddest to me<sup>2</sup> ymynt, 576

For euere my bred had be bake : myn lyf dawes had be tynt ;

Ac for þou mentest me pilke stroke : or ich ful armed were,

þov schalt abigge it al so hot : or þat y take my gere."

¶ þe Sarsyn þanne a drow ys brond : þat was so gret of strengþe, 580

<sup>1</sup> [noþeles] a.

<sup>2</sup> MS. mo.

Oliver  
answers,  
'I will not  
move till I  
have con-  
quered thee.'

He draws his  
sword and  
strikes at  
Ferumbras,  
who wards  
off the blow  
with his  
shield, which  
is broken.

'Had that  
stroke hit  
me,' says  
Ferumbras,  
'my bread  
had been  
baked for  
ever.'

He drew his  
sword,

To day he falleþ in de[s]honour for his fol sendyng."

"Wat ! is," quap O[lyuer], "þy prechyng icome to such an ende ?

I ne schal neuere be heuene kyng, [a fot ferther] wende,

Or ich haue þe ouer hand y-slawe þe in þis felde, 566

Ouþer þou schalt to me creant<sup>1</sup> maugre þy teþ þe zelde.

Take þyn armis 3if þou wilt no lenger y nel þe spare,

In yuel deþ worþ y spilt if y þe bide mare."

He lefte ys sper & drow is swerd, & smot til himward sare, 570

& haued y-þozt to cleue ys hed in-to þe bar[de þa]re.

þe Sarsyn þan bar of þe stroke wyþ his scheld [þat a] bar an honde,

Noþeles a quarter þer-offe he smot ful down [oppon þe so]nde.

"Arme þe, Sarsyn !" saide O[lyuer], "hit wil be for þi prow."

"þou sayst soþ, by Iubiter, þou haddest neyþ . . . e now.

Hadde y þat ilke stroke y-take þou haddest [to me y-ment] 576

For euere my bred hadde ben bake, my lif dawes hadde ben spent.

Ac for þou mentest me þylke stroke or ich all armed were,

þou schalt a bie hit al so hot or þat y take my gere,"

þe Sarazyn þan a drow his brand þat was so gret of strengþe, 580

<sup>1</sup> MS. to [re]creant.

*Original  
draft.*

7 feet long, & wan it was nakede on his hond : vij. fet it had of lengþe,  
 Him self was eke strong & feer : & is herte gan vp sprynge,  
 So pikke he smot to Olyuer : as he miȝte flynge.  
 þe erld was war, & kepte him wel : & laide til him with miȝte, 584  
 Ac þe Sarazyn was ful fel : & kepte is heued arizte.  
 His heued he kepeþ with is schelde : þat ounhelid was & bare ;  
 Bytere he þoȝte is whyle ȝelde : þat hadde a-greued him þare.  
 To Olyuer þanne smot he a stroke : riȝt on þe helm an heȝ ; 588  
 þoȝ þat swerd wer god it noȝt ne bot : bot down by is chyn it seȝ,  
 & before ys scheld a-down it glod : & oppon is sadel it ran,  
 þorw sadel & hors þat swerd him wod : þan ful down hors & man.  
 þe Sarzyn drow him þanne a-part : & to O[lyuer] saide sanzfaille 592  
 "þou ne schalt me fynde no cowart : a ligging man to saille."  
 A sterte to his helm, & pult him aan : & to O[lyuer] þanne a sede,  
 "If þou with me wilt fiȝte aȝan : by Mahoun þou gost to dede."  
 ¶ Olyuere stert vp hol & sound : & spekeþ til him wyþ grame, 596  
 "Y diffye þe nov, þou heþene hound : crist ȝyue þe muche schame !  
 Why hast þou my stede a-slawe : wat hadde þat hors mysdo ?  
 þy stede for hym now wil y craue : & haue him er þou go."

*Original  
draft.*

Wan hit was naked on his haund vij fet hit had of lengþe ;  
 & him-self was strong & fer, his herte gan vp sprynge,  
 So pylke he smot to Olyuer as þat he miȝt flynge.  
 þe duk was war & kepte him wel & laide to him with miȝt, 584  
 Bot þe Sarasyn was ful fel & kepede his heuede arizt.  
 He kepeþ his heued al with his scheld ounkeuered it was & bare ;  
 Bytere he þoȝte his wile ȝeld þat hadde agreued him þare.  
 To Oliuer þan ment he a stroke, on his helm he dud bi-gynne ; 588  
 þoȝ þat swerd wer god hit noȝt ne bot, bote ran down be his chyne.  
 A-fore his scheld a-down hit glod, vpon his sadel hit gan renne,  
 þorw hors & sadel þat swerd forþ wod, & O[lyuer] fel down þenne.  
 þe Sarazyn drow him þanne apart & to O[lyuer] said, "sanz faille,  
 Ne schalt þou fynde me no coward, A ligginge man to saile." 593  
 A sterte to ys helm & putte him an, & saide, "ich rede þou fle,  
 for If þou<sup>1</sup> fiȝtest with me aȝan, by Mahoun, y wil þe sle !"  
 O[lyuer] stertep vp hol & soun [& spekeþ] to him with [grame]  
 "y dyffie þe heþene hond . . . . . : . . . . . 597

(2 lines illegible)

<sup>1</sup> MS. þou þou.

A leyde to þe Sarsyn strokes smerte : riȝt als til his dedly fo ; 600  
& grete dyntes þanne þay gerte : hir eyþer til oþer þo.

¶ NOW by-gynt a strong batayl : be-twene þis knyȝtes twayne ; Now begins a deadly duel,

Ayþer gan oþer harde assayl : boþe wyþ myȝt & mayne  
þey hewe to-gadre wyþ swerdes dent : faste with boþen hondes, 604

Of helmes & sheldes þat fyr out went : so sparkes doþ of brondes ; fire flies out of their helmets and shields.  
So sterne strokes þay arauȝte : eyther til oþer with strengþe  
þat al þe erthe þer-of quazte : a myle & more on lenglþe.  
þey weren so eger boþe of mod : & eke so fers to fiȝte, 608  
þat eyþer of hem þan þoȝte god : to sle oþer if he miȝte.

Hit ne miȝt noȝt longe endure : þe batail betwene hem two,  
for neyþer ne knew of oþer mesure : bot euere þay foȝte so.

¶ Olyuer hym by-þoȝte þan : his los was lost in londe 612 Oliver exerts himself,

Bot yf he sleȝe þat heþene man : & þer-for he gan him fonde,

& smot him on þe helm an heȝ : & a gobet away a bar ;

Ys chyke þat swerd þo cam so neȝ : þat sum of is berd yt schar ;

þe strok a doun him glente anon : ac he wiþ is scheld him hente, 616

& elles had he his schuldre bon : for-coruyn wyþ þat dente.

Fyrumbras saide til hym þan : "maugre mote þou haue !

smites  
Ferumbras  
on the  
helmet,  
and cuts off  
some of his  
beard.

'A curse on  
thee,'

. . . . . on him strokes smerte  
. . . . . wel," quap he, "wilt þou so haue at þe wyþ herte."

¶ Now by-gynneþ strong batail by-twyne þe knyȝtes twayne, 603  
Eyþer oþer gan to assayl wyþ miȝte & with mayne.

þey hywe to-gydre with swerdes dynt, with miȝt of boþe hir honde,  
of helm & scheld þat fur out went So sparke doþ of þe bronde.

So Sturne strokes þay a-raȝte eyþer til oþer þe whyle  
þat al þe erþe aboute quazte men miȝt hure a myle.  
þey wer so fers on hure mod, & eger on hure fiȝte, 608  
þat eyþer of hem þoȝte god to slen oþer if he miȝt.

Hit miȝt noȝt lange dure such fiȝt by-twene hem two,  
for Neyþer ne couþe no mesure bote euere foȝte so.

¶ O[liuer] by-þoȝte him þo is los wer lost in londe 612

Bote he miȝte þat Sarsyn slo anon a gan him fonde,

He smot him on þe helm an heȝ, a gobet away he bar ;

His cheche þat swerd cam ful neȝ, sum of is berd he schar.  
þe stroke adoun him glent anon, & he with is scheld him hente, 616

& elles had he<sup>1</sup> is scholder bon for coruyn at þat dente.

Fyrumbras saide to O[liuer] þan, "maugre mote þou haue ;

Original  
draft.

<sup>1</sup> MS. he had he.

exclaims  
Ferumbras;  
'never was I  
so shaved.'

Suppen y was furst i-bore to man : my berd nas nozt so schauē."

¶ þe Sarsyn by-gan to waxe wroþ : egre, & eke fere, 620  
& hef vp ys swerd, & til him a goþ : & smot to Olyuere ;

Then he cuts  
the crest off  
Oliver's  
helmet.

Al anoneward þe helm an hez : ys crest a bar adoun,  
& þe cercle of gold þat sat þer-bey : þe perles wer worþ a toun,  
& of ys auantaile wyþ þat stroke : a carf wel many a maylle. 624

They fight  
like two  
lions.

þan olyuer profrede til him a st[r]oke : & gan him for to saylle,  
& þan by-gan þe stronge fízt : betwene þes kníztes tweye ;

As tweye lyons þay furde rízt : þat wolde slen his preye.

þe Sarasyn sayde to þe knyzt : "by Mahoun þou schalt deye !" 628

þan said O[lyuer] "by god almyzt : y hope þou schalt leye !"

¶ Azeyn þey wente to-gydre thare : & hur armure hewe a-sonder ;

Their strokes  
resound like  
thunder.

Hure strokes fulle so styþ & sare : þay schulde so doþ þe þonder.

Helmes & hauberkes þay kutte a two : wiþ hure strokes rounde, 632

& eyþer enpaynede him other to slo : ac 3ut nad þay no wounde.

Ferumbras is  
vexed and  
wonders who  
Oliver can be.

¶ Fyrumbras was aggreued sare : þat O[lyuer] hym stod so longe,

& þan him wondrede wat a ware : for he was so stronge.

He drew him þanne apart & sayde : "y pray þe, iantaile knízt, 636

As þow louest þat ilke mayde : þat baar þy god almyzt,—

Wel y wot þou art ful gret of fame : a bettere knízt wot y non,—

Original  
draft.

Syþ y was i-bore to man my berd was nozt so y-schauē."

¶ þe Sarazyn by-gan to waxe wroþ, egre & eke fere, 620

& hef vp ys swerd & to him agop, & smot to Olyuere,

Rízt oppon is helm an hey3 þe crest he bereþ [adoun],

& þe cercle of gold þat sat þer-by, þe perles were worþ [a toun] ; 624

of his auentaile with þat stroke he carf wel [many] a maile.

þan O[liuer] profrede him a st[r]oke & gan him for to assaile,

& þo by-gan ynewe fízt be-twene þis knyzttes tweye ;

As lyons þey furde boþe rízt þat folhode on ys preye.

þe Sarazyn saide to þe knyzt, "by Mahoun, þou schalt dye !" 628

þan saide O[liuer], "by god Almyzt, y hope þou schalt [lye]."

þan þay fozte to-gydre mare, hur armure þay k[utte] a[son]der ;

Hure strokes wer so dedly sare þay schulde so doþ þe þonder. 632

Helm & haberke þay kutte a two with hure strokes rounde,

& eyþer enpeyned him oþer to slo. Ac 3ut nad [þay no wounde].

Ferumbras was an angred sore þat O[liuer] hym stod [so longe] :

Him wondrede myche what he were for he was [so stronge].

Adrow him apart þanne and saide, "y praye þe [iantail] knízt, 636

As þow louest þat ilke maide þar bar þy god of mízt,

Tel me þy rízte name for bettere knyzt w[as] non.



Tel me þer-for þy riȝte name : Wat calleþ me þe at hom.

He asks him  
his name, and  
praises him.

640

Wyþ many a man y haue y-fauȝt : fond y neuere þy peer ;

þe grete strokes þov hauest me rauȝt : sitteþ my bones neer.

þou toldest me to day or þys : þy riȝte name was Garyn ;

Hit is noȝt so, y wot to wys : by Mahoun & Appolyn ;

644

If þat Garyn were þy name : y knewe it wel apliȝt

In tal þe world scholde sprynge fame : of such a noble kniȝt.

Tel me now þer-for þat soþe : as þou art gent & free,

& suppe schul we to-gadre boþe : "falle to fiȝt a-ȝe."

[leaf 9]  
"Tell me the  
truth, and  
then we will  
fight again."

¶ þe iantail knyȝt *with-drow him þan* : & spak *with-oute duelle*, 648

"Herkne now, þou heþene man : & þat soþe i wol þe telle.

Olyuer ys my name riȝt : a doþpeper y am of fraunce,

& am an erld & a knyȝt : as haue ich gode chaunce.

Oliver tells  
him that he  
is one of the  
peers of  
France, and  
of royal  
descent,

652

Y am Charlis Emys sone : y-come of men of gode,

& in my moder half i am y-come : al-so of kynges blode.

nov haue y to þe her itold : my name *with-oute lye*,

If þov art to fiȝte bold : com on · y þe diffye !"

¶ þan ansuerede fyrumbras : & saide to Olyuer,

and chal-  
lenges him to  
renew the  
fight.

656

"Y am now gladdere þan y was : for now y haue my per."

þan aȝen þai toke þe fiȝt : *with swerdes sherpe & kene*,

They begin  
again

Eyþer til other wiþ mayn & miȝt : þe strokes were wel sene ;

Harde þay foȝte to-gadre þo : þus miȝty men of mayne,

and fight  
even more  
fiercely than  
before.

660

þer was no reste betwene hem to : bot laide on ȝerne beyne.

for þou ert a knyȝt gret of fame wan þou ert at hom.

Wyþ many a man y haue i-fauȝt fond y nere [such] an oper,

Euery strok þat þou me rauȝt falleþ down as a foþer.

þou toldest to me to day or þys þy name was Garyn :

Hit is noȝt soþ, so ȝyue me blys, Mahoun & Apolyn !

If þat Garyn were þy name y knowe it wel ariȝt

In tal þe world schold springe a fame of such a noble kniȝt.

Tel þou me, kniȝt, al þe soþe as þow art gent & free,

& suppe schalle we to-gadre boþe falle to . fiȝte aȝe."

þe iantayl knyȝt *with-drow* . . . . .

Original  
draft.

640

[7 long lines cut off.]

648

"Ich am gladder þan y was now . . . . .

657

þan aȝen þay toke þe fiȝt wyþ . . . . .

Eyþer til oper wiþ al hure miȝt . . . . .

660

Wel hard was þat batail þe . . . . .

þer nas no reste be twene . . . . .



Each tries his best.	Wan eyþer knew what oþer was : þe hardere þay gunne to fiȝte,	
	& to slen eyþer oþer in þat plas : eyther dude ys miȝte.	
Ferumbras had never been beaten.	¶ Firumbras þe heþene kyng : was a man of gret fertee,	664
	& anpeynedem þanne þorȝ al þyng : erld O[lyuer] þer to slee :	
The fight continues.	Sipþe þe tyme þat he was bore : on batail ne com he non,	
	In-to þe day þat he com þore : þat he ne ouercom his fon ;	
Helmets, hauberks and shields are shattered.	ne a-ȝen no man ne tok querel : by-for þat in no lond	668
	þat he ne hadde þe betere deel : & eke þe heȝere hond.	
Oliver knocks Ferumbras' sword out of his hand,	ac now haþ he so longe y-soȝt : ys peer he haþ i-founde,	
	& þat til hym worþ hard iboȝt : wiþ-inne a litel stonde.	671
	þey foȝten to-gadres þanne ȝerne : þys wytherwyns wilde & wrope,	
	& smyte strokes smerte & sterne : in haberkes & helmes boþe.	
	Wiþ þe strokes þat þis frekes slente : flyngande to-gader in fiȝte,	
	Hur helmes & haberions þay to-rente : þat arst wer fair & briȝte,	676
	& hure scheldes stronge & grete : þey were al to-hewe ;	
	Vnder hure boþen fete : þan miȝte me þe peces schewe.	
	¶ Olyuer laid on þikke y-now : so dude Fyrumbras,	
	Bot with enterlas þat a þrow : to þe Sarasyn bi-tid a cas :	
	Olyuer smot is swerd away : fer out fram ys honde :	680
	þan was þe Sarsyn in gret affray : & niste wat was to donde.	

<i>Original draft.</i>	Wan eyþer yknew wat oþer was . . . . .	
	& To slen ys felaw in þat plas . . . . .	663
	Of Alysandre ser F[erumbras] was . ful . . . . .	
	In no batail neuere he nas þat . . . . .	
	Ne aȝe no wiȝt ne tok querel . . . . .	668
	þat he nadde þat betere del & e . . . . .	
	Ac now he haueþ so longe ys[oȝt] . . . . .	
	& þat worþ ful hard iboȝt wiþ . . . . .	
	þay foȝten to-gaddre ȝerne þy . . . . .	672
	& smyten strokes harde sterne in he . . . . .	
	Wiþ strokes þat þay to-gadre slent w . . . . .	
	Hure hauberions weren alto rent þat erst . . . . .	
	& hure scheldes strong & gr[et] . . . . .	676
	þe peces ley down at hire fet . . . . .	
	Olyuer laid on pikke y now . . . . .	
	Bot with entrelas þat he þrow . . . . .	
	Olyuer smot his swerd aw . . . . .	680
	þan was þe Sarasyn in gret a . . . . .	

- Ac O[lyuer] was a corteys kniȝt : & a-syde by-gan to stonde.  
 "Tak vp," said he, "þy swerd ariȝt : & to kep it beter þou fonde."  
 ¶ Fyru[mbras] was glad, & toke vp þat brond : quiklich at a brayde, 684  
 & wan it was on is hond : to O[lyuer] he spak & sayde,  
 "þou hast y-lyued þy lif to longe : to do me such a spyte,  
 y wil wiþ þat selue bronde : þy whyle wel a-quyte :  
 þyn outrage schal be dure a-boȝt : by Mahoun, my god al-one ; 688  
 þy god ne may þe helpe noȝt : þyn heued þou schalt for-gone.  
 A-fore þis day ne toke y nere : of no man such a schame."  
 "ne make it noȝt so," quap Olyuere : "for oper weys þee schal grame.  
 Or we departe þis ilke day : such tyme schalt þou sene 692  
 þat þow schalt sayn a weleway : þat y cam in þis grene !  
 ne schaltou by þat tyme noþyng ȝilpe : of þy doynge here ;  
 þy Mahoun ne schal þe noþyng helpe : þat þow ne a-biest dere."  
 ¶ & þan þey waxe wonder wroþe : þys knyȝtes styþ on stoure, 696  
 & eyþer of þis frekes boþe : til oper ȝaf many a schoure.  
 þey fouȝte to-gadre þar so longe : & ȝyue strokes sore,  
 þat þe fom of hure mouþ out spronge : so doþ out of þe bore.  
 þe Sarsyn þat was noþyng feynt : smot Olyuer in þe side,  
 þorȝ is scheld wyþ gold ypeynt : þe sterne strok gan glyde ;

but  
chivalrously  
tells him to  
take it again.

[leaf 9, back]  
Ferumbras  
picks it up,  
and says,

'Never before  
have I  
suffered such  
a disgrace,

but before we  
part thou  
shalt repent  
it.'

and  
foam like  
wild boars.  
Ferumbras  
smites Oliver  
in the side.

*Original  
draft.*

- Olyuer was wel corteys kniȝt . . . . .  
 "Tak vp," quap he, "þy swerd ar . . . . .  
 F[erumbras] tok vp ys longe brond . . . . . 684  
 & wan it was on hys honde to . . . . .  
 "þou hauest y lyued wel to longe . . . . .  
 Y schal þer-for wyþ þis bronde þ . . . . .  
 þyn out-raȝe schal beo dur . . . . . 688  
 þy god ne may þe helpe noȝt . . . . .  
 Y ne tok ȝute neuer er of no . . . . .  
 "Ne make noȝt so," quap Oliuer, "for oper . . . . .  
 Er we departe þys ilke daze So tyme . . . . . 692  
 þou schalt sayn a weleway þat y cam.  
 Ne schelt þou noþyng ȝilpe of . . . . .  
 þy Mahoun ne may þe helpe þat þou ne abi . . . . .  
 þan þey waxe wonder wroþe . . . . . 696  
 Eyþer of hem þanne boþe to oper . ȝ . . . . .  
 þei fouȝte to-gadre so longe with . . . . .  
 þe fom of hure mouþ out spronge . . . . .  
 þe Sarazyn þat was noþyng . . . . . 700  
 þorw his scheld þat with golde y-pe . . . . .

of scheld & haberk a-wey a-schar : al þat he arauzte,  
 & al þat side he made baar : with þe selue drauzte,  
 nad he stert þan a side : with-oute wordes mo, 704  
 Wiþ þat stronge stroke vnride : is lifdawes had be do.

The Saracen thinks he has wounded him, ¶ þe Sarsyn þan him vnderstod : he had ihert him sore,  
 & saide, "þou lesest þyn herte blod : þou turnest agayn no more !

Charlis wiþ þe hore berde : doþ þe lite Auaylle, 708  
 Suppen þat y schal wyþ my swerde : sle þe in bataille."

but Oliver says no, and defies him, Oliuer ansuerede & swor ys op : "bi god, þou spekst folie ;  
 Arst y wol þe make wroþ : 3ut her y þe diffie.  
 for 3ut am y sond & heyl : & ne fele no maner sare ; 712  
 y schal acquite þy trauayl : hennes or þov fare,

I will make thee yield to me, and to Charles I will hand thee over. Then began a fearful fight ; þow schalt 3ulde þe creaut : to me in þys felde ;  
 To Charlis suppen y wil þe graunt : & to hym y wil þe 3elde."  
 ¶ þan by-gan a ferly f3zt : be-twene þis two baroun, 716  
 Eyþer enpeynede him with al ys mi3t : to dyngen oþer adoun.

the sweat runs down their faces ; þay smyte to gadre þo so feste : with grisly dentes grete,  
 þat þe soot fram hem gan breste : & made hure chekes wete.  
 ¶ Kyng Firumbras þe stronge : O[lyuer] ascriede þo, 720  
 "þov endurest me to longe : þy lif þou schalt for-go,"

*Original  
draft.*

Scheld & haberke a-down he sch . . . . .  
 & al þat side he makede bar . . . . . 704  
 Nadde he stert þan a-syde y . . . . .  
 Wyþ þat strong stroke [vn]ride he h . . . . .  
 þe Saresyn þanne him vnder . . . . .  
 & sayde, "þou lesest þyn herte blod . . . . .  
 Charles with hore berd . . . . . 708  
 Sup . . . . .  
 O[liuer] ansuerden . . . . .  
 "Arst þou schalt þe make wroþ . . . . .  
 3ut am y boþe quert & heil . . . . . 712  
 y schal a-quyte þy trauail hen . . . . .  
 þou schalt 3elde þe recreant to . . . . .  
 To C[harlis] suppe i wille þe grant . . . . .  
 þan bi-gan þer a ferly f3zte . . . . . 716  
 Eyþer enpeynedem with is my[3t] . . . . .  
 þey laide on þan so feste wyþ . . . . .  
 þat þe sot of hem gan out berste & mad . . . . .  
 Sir Fyrumbras þe stronge Olyuer . . . . . 720  
 "þou durest me alto longe . þ . . . . .

þan him spak erld Olyuere : " þou ne afferest me noȝt so ! [leaf 10]  
 Other tydyng schalt þow here : er we departe a-two."  
 ¶ Al so scharply þes men of mayn : þan smyte to-gadre aȝy 724 their strokes  
 So doþ þe fyr & wynd & rayn : an heȝ al on þe sky, are like  
 With wilde strokes þat þay streken : eyþer on oper asonder, flashes of  
 Helmes & scheldes þar-wiþ to-breken : & schilde, so doþ þe þonder. their helmets  
 ¶ Firumbras wax wod on Olyuer : þat he hym wiþstonde miȝte ; 728 are shattered.  
 A toke is swerd, & ȝude him neere : to slen him had he tiȝte ; Ferunbras is  
 A smot him on þe helm an heȝ : þat was of god entaille, smites Oliver  
 A qua[r]ter þer-wiþ a-way þar fleȝ : & for-carf ys cappe of maille ; and cuts on the helmet,  
 Wyþ þat stroke a schar away : a gret del of ys hare ; 732 and cuts  
 Ac god halp O[lyuer] þat best may : þat he nas wonded sare. through his  
 ¶ O[lyuer] egerlich<sup>1</sup> þo gan to lok : & smot til him wiþ ire, cap-of-mail.  
 & eymede ful euene to ȝyue þe strok : þe sarsyn on is swyre. Oliver aims a  
 Wan Fi[rumbras] þe strok come seȝ : þat Oliuer til hym mente,<sup>2</sup> 736 blow at  
 His scheld held he vp an heȝ : to kepe hym fro þat dente ; Ferunbras's  
 Ac As he huld is scheld vp so : discouert was al ys side, neck.  
 & O[lyuer] aperceuede ful wel þat þo : & no lengre nolde abide, Forunbras  
 Bote Til him a gerte a stroke anon : & egerlich he hym sette : 740 guards too  
Oliver thrusts

<sup>1</sup> In the margin 'sturnelich.'

<sup>2</sup> þat til hym [þo was] mente.

þanne him saide O[lyuer] " þou afferest . . . . .	<i>Original</i>
Oper tydyng þou schalt here . . . . .	<i>draft.</i>
Als so scherpely þys knyȝtes . . . . .	724
So doþ þe fur wynd & rayn . . . . .	
With wylde strokes þat þey . . . . .	
Helmes & scheldes þer-with . . . . .	
F[erunbras] wax wod on O[liuer] þat he him . . . . .	728
A takeþ ys swerd & com him n[eer] . . . . .	
& smot him on þe helm an heȝ . . . . .	
A quarter þer-of he to clef & eke . . . . .	
With þat stroke he schar a-way . . . . .	732
Ac god hym halp þat best may þat . . . . .	
þan wax he ful egre of mod & . . . . .	
& eymed to ȝyue him a stroke . . . . .	
Wan F[erunbras] þat stronge stroke y[-seȝ] . . . . .	736
Hys scheld he held vp þanne an [heȝ] . . . . .	
As he huld his scheld vp so . . . . .	
O[lyuer] þat perceyuede þo, no len . . . . .	
To him he a gerte a strok a . . . . .	740

at his breast,	Vnder ys brest þe dent him com : ac ys costrel fferst him mette ;	
	þe costrel þat was with yre y-bounde : þer-with a-two he carf <sup>1</sup> ,	
	& þatlykour þer-on schad on þe grounde : & þat swerd on ys syde swarf <sup>1</sup> ,	
cuts his hauberk	& Oper half spanne for carf <sup>2</sup> a two : of is hauberke ymad of maylle,	
	& of is Iupoun hit <sup>3</sup> dude al-so : þat was of riche entaylle,	745
and 5 of his ribs in two,	& wip þat strok doun hit do (?) nam : v. ribbes of ys syde,	
	& wel neȝ ys guttes þat swerd him ran : & made hym a wounde ourride.	
and his guts begin to fall out.	His guttes þer-with gunne out falle : & doun gan renne þat blod ;	
	& ȝut stod he strong & stif with-alle : & ne batedede noȝt is mod ;	749
	Of herte was he hol & sound : & pleynde him þe ȝute no þyng,	
He kneels down, and	Ac sone he knelede oppon þe grond : & þankede heuene kyng,	
	¶ þanne clypede til hym ryȝt : erld Olyuer and sayde :	752
prays Oliver not to kill him,	“Haue mercy of me, iantail knyȝt : for Marie sone þat mayde. <sup>4</sup>	
	& For his loue þat al may see : y pray þe, sle me noȝt ;	
as he will be christened,	Hit is my wille cristned to bee : certis þat is my þoȝt.	
	My godes þat y me affied on : buȝ noȝt to haue on mynde,	756
	þay moȝe no more do þan a ston : & þat y now auynde,	
	ȝif hit by-tideȝ so þat y may : be y-wareschid of my wounde,	
persecute Mahomed- ans,	y schal scapye hem niȝt & day : þat bileueȝ on Mahounde ;	
	Cristendom by me schal encessed be : sykerly if y may scape ;	760
	<sup>1</sup> — <sup>1</sup> These two lines in margin. <sup>2</sup> spanne [he] carf.	
	<sup>3</sup> he altered to hit. <sup>4</sup> for [loue of] Marie sone.	

<i>Original draft.</i>	Faste vnder is breste he com . . . . .	
	Oper half spanne he carf at[wo] . . . . .	
	& of his iupoun he dude also þat w . . . . .	745
	With þat stroke a doun he carf his rib . . . . .	
	Neȝ þe guttes þat swerd doun . . . . .	
	Ac þow he seȝ his guttes fall a . . . . .	
	He stod als-so stif for al as h . . . . .	749
	Of herte was he hol & sound & . . . . .	
	Bott knelede him doun on þe grond & . . . . .	
	Sone he clepede to him riȝt E . . . . .	752
	“Mercy,” he saide, “iantail knyȝt for loue . . . . .	
	For his loue þat al may se y p[ray] . . . . .	
	For y þenke to cristened be ce . . . . .	
	My godes þat y affied on bep . . . . .	756
	þay mowe . . . . . ston . . . . .	
	. . . . . may be . . . . .	
	[6 or 7 lines cut off?]	
	y schal boȝe niȝt & day . . . . .	759

- & for payenye, so mot y þe : ful yuele wil y schape ;  
 þanne schulleþ peynymes cristned be : & hure lay for-sake.  
 & þe croune of þorn & þe naylles þre : azen þanne wil y betake,  
 & al þe relyqes þat y haue : y-take azeyn þe riȝt,  
 Y wil ȝeld op, so god me saue : & bileue on god almiȝt.  
 ¶ y ȝylde me her to Charlis kyng : þe beste knyȝt y-core  
 þat is owar now lyuyng : oþer euere was her be-fore.  
 for þou me hauest conquerid her : i put me in-to þy grace ;  
 y pray þe iantail Olyuer : for-ȝyf me my manace !”  
 ¶ Wan Olyuer had him al yherd : is herte gan vp sprynge,  
 In-to is scaberke he potte his swerd : & went him to þat kyng,  
 & huld him vp, for he wax paal : bi-twene ys armes rounde,  
 & laid him doun þar-wiþ-al : ful softe oppon þe grounde  
 & pulte is bowels in ageyn : & is goffanoun he gan to berste ;  
 To make a bond he was ful feyn : & bond hem in wel feste.  
 ¶ þan saide Fi[rumbras] til him aȝe : “do let me hennes bere,  
 þat y ne daye in þis degre : cristned y wolde y were.”  
 “Certis,” saide þe ientail knyȝt : “y wolde wel fayne fonde,  
 If y wiste how ymyȝt : make þe vp to stonde ;  
 Ac þow hast so myche y-bled : þat paal ys al þy face,  
 Wharfor y am sore adred : to remuwe þe of þys place.”  
 ¶ þan Fi[rumbras] enforcede hym þer : to arise vp-on ys fete,  
 & stod hym vp by Olyuer : & saide wordes swete :  
 “Iantail knyȝt, of me tak rewþe : as þow art god & hende,  
 & help me hannes for þy trewþe : for y am neȝ myn ende.  
 Myn herte him ys a-go ful ner : ychaunged is al my chere ;  
 y pray þe, iantail Olyuer : let me noȝt daye here.  
 ¶ Go now, tak my gode stede : þat tyed ys at þis tree,  
 & he schal wel in thys [my] nede : bere boþe me & þee.  
 & tak al-so my swerd ploraunce : þat hongep her by my side,  
 þe hefþe of hym doþ greuaunce : to my wounde wyde ;  
 & help me y were on hym an horce : y pray þe, ne spare þou noȝt,  
 & y wil me selue enforce : þat y wer on hym broȝt.  
 Set me be-for þe on is bak : & þe silue be-hynde þanne,  
 & so schalt þou wyþ-oute lak : safly haue me hanne.  
 ¶ Ac y wárne þe of a torn : war-for y wolde þow spedde :

and make  
Pagans be  
christened.  
[leaf 10, back]

764 He will  
restore the  
reliques he  
has,  
and yield to  
King Charles.

768

Oliver pities  
Ferumbras,

772

775 pushes his  
bowels in,  
and binds  
them up with  
his flag.  
Ferumbras  
asks to be  
carried away.

778 Oliver says  
he is afraid to  
move him.

782 Ferumbras  
asks

him to

786

fetch his  
steed,

790 and take  
his sword  
Ploraunce  
from his side,  
as it hurts  
his wound,

794 and to lift  
him on to his  
horse.

Ferumbras  
warns Oliver

- of an ambush  
of 15,000  
Saracens
- [leaf 11]  
waiting
- for his return.
- Oliver lifts  
him on to his  
horse,  
and leaps up  
behind him,
- but the  
Saracens in  
ambush  
break out.
- The French  
blow the  
assembly.
- Charlemagne  
and his peers  
arm.
- Oliver being  
surrounded,  
sets down  
Ferumbras,
- but finding  
he cannot  
escape,
- pys dai erly by þe morwn' : wan y ros of my bedde,  
 y leuede 3ond on a buchymment : sarasyns wonder fale, 798  
 In þe wode þat 3onder stent : ten þousant al by tale ;  
 & in þat ilke brusschet by : v. þousant of opre and mo,  
 y-horced & y-armed ful sykerly : fro þe top in-to þe to.  
 Ac y for-bed hem alle þere : wan y departede hem fro, 802  
 þat non of hem so hardy were : fro þenne þay ne scholde go,  
 Or ich hadde sum viage done : & til hem come a-geyn.  
 Go we hanne þer-for sone : & elles þow worst beleyn."  
 ¶ Wan O[lyuer] y-hurde how he spak : in herte a was agreued, 806  
 A tok þe stede þat was colblak' : & softly vp him heued.  
 Fir[umbras] was hard, & suffrede wel : þo3 hit him greuede sare,  
 & O[lyuer] lep vp be-hynde hym snel : & forþ wiþ him gan fare.  
 Ac al þat trauayl he cast away : as 3e schul here sone, 810  
 For or þat he eft kyng Charlis say : ful miche had he to done.  
 OF pys anbuschymen3 þan brek out : Bruyllant of Mount mirree,  
 & Sortybrant of Combles with hure rout : & þ<sup>e</sup> kyng of Mantreblee,  
 Arrenor · Gwychard · & Moredas : Gayot and Angwyree, 814  
 Wyþ al þe power þat þeer was : xv. þousant & three.  
 Olyuer sone y-se3 þat cas : & swypper bi-gan to haste. 816  
 But he was encombred wiþ Fyrumbras : þat he ne may ride faste.  
 Ac wan þe frenschemen hit se3 & knewe : how þe Sarsyns come with bost,  
 Hure commune horn þanne þay blewe : to assemble to-gadre hure host.  
 ¶ Charlis newew duke Roland : þan was sore amayed, 820  
 So wern þe doþpepers y vnderstand : for þay wern oun-araid,  
 Ac as 3erne þay mizte : þay caste þanne on hure gere,  
 Boþe kyng, duk, erld & knyzt : & al othere þat þar were.  
 ¶ þe Sarsyn3 gun prykie a-raundoun : & Olyuer bi-sette aboute, 824  
 þe woundede man þan he set adoun : & pouzte askape þe route.  
 & þan he prayde to god almi3t : schold saue him þat ilke day,  
 As wys hit was in trewþe & ri3t : þat he tok þat iornay.  
 & al-so he prayde for Fyrumbras : þat no man him be-reue 828  
 Til he wer cristned þo3 godes gras : & y-brozt to þe ri3t beleue.  
 ¶ & þan he be-gan to prykie bet : & nolde no leng[er] abide,  
 Ac wiþ Sarsyns he was bi-set : þat come on euery side,  
 þat he ne mizte a-scape þe ferd : so þikke þay fulle him aan ; 832



- & þanne at arst drow he is swerd : & defendede him as a man.
- ¶ þanne was O[lyuer] þat sembbly knyzt : al-one among is fon ;  
 He hewþ on Sarazyns with al is myzt : & sleþ of hem manyon.  
 Wham he smyteþ wyþ his dent : to deþe a leyþ hem doune, 836  
 Helmes & haberkes he al-torent : & doȝtylich scherth hure croune.
- ¶ þan O[lyuer] bleynte hym a-side : & þoȝte a-scape þ<sup>e</sup> route,  
 Bot þanne þer cam til him ride : lampatrys þe proute : [leaf 11, bk]  
 þe sarsyn bar til him a spere : ac for O[lyuer] haþ no schelde 840  
 þe strong strok away to bere : is bodi a-side he felde,  
 & ferlich til him a rod a-gayn : wip wel egre mode,  
 & wip is swerd a clef is brayn : þorw-out helm & hode :  
 þe sarsyn ful doun ded anon : & Olyuer tok is spere 844  
 & eke ys scheld & heng hit on : þer-wip him-self to were,  
 And metep with Turgys on þe feld : & rideþ til him for tene,  
 & ȝaf him a strok on þe scheld : þat was ful wel y-sene ;  
 þorw scheld, haberke, & aketoun : þat sper him gan to glyde, 848  
 þorw-out is body he bar him doun : & ded he ful þat tide.
- ¶ & þan he drow out hautecler : is swerd ful scharp igrounde,  
 & smot a sarazyn þat cam him ner : & ȝaf him deþes wounde :  
 Wip four othre metep he þan : þat of is way him lette, 852  
 & smot him boþe þorw hed & pan : & fuld hem on þe flette.  
 Alle þat O[lyuer] areche miȝte : wip hautecler he dust him doun.  
 þanne þe sarsyns waxe afriȝte : & flowen him what þay mown.
- ¶ To himward come þar ride þan : Moradas & kyng Kargys, 856  
 & þe kyng of Combles, sir Sortybran : & eke þe kyng Margys,  
 þus kynges a-scried erld Olyuer : & gradde til him ful hye,  
 " þou ne askapest noȝt ous, pautener : bot her riȝt þou schalt dye."  
 ¶ þan Olyuer gan drede hym sare : & faste prikede away, 860  
 And com þo wel neȝ him þare : Firumbras as he lay.  
 By þat tyme hadde sir Firumbras : ys haberioun of y-caste,  
 & to Olyuer clepede in þat cas : & said til hym an haste :  
 " þys hauberk y rede tak of me : & cast it oppon þyn owe, 864  
 þe sikerlukere þer-inne moȝe ȝe : defendy ȝour body aprowe .  
 þow hast þer-to grete nede : wyþ sarsyns þow art enclos,  
 þe grete god þe helpe & spede : & kepe þe fram þy fos !"  
 ¶ þan Olyuer hym þonkede ȝerne : & schridde him with þat gere, 868  
 Oliver puts it on.

draws his sword, and cuts down numbers of the Saracens.

[leaf 11, bk]  
Lampatrys charges him,

but Oliver dodges,

cleaves his skull, and taking his spear,

runs Turgys through ;

then draws his sword Hautecler,

and slays five Saracens.

Moradas and three kings

charge Oliver.

He flies

past Ferumbras,

who says :  
"Take my hauberk,

and may God save thee !

Oliver puts it on.

& anoþer way gan he terne : þat Firumbras y-founde nere.

The Saracens  
press on him.

Aboute Olyuer þan ful faste : þay prikede wiþ spers & scheldes  
& sturnelich on him þay þraste : Sarasyns in tal þe feldes.

Ac euere he metep hem with is brond : & deleþ strokes sounde, 872  
Wham so he hitteþ wyþ ys hond : a 3af hem deþes wounde.

Kargys with  
10,000 men  
attack him.

¶ Kyng Kargys wes sturne & prout : & Olyuer gan 3erne assaille  
With ten þousant sarsyns stif & stout : wel y-armed with-oute faille.  
Olyuer gan hym sturie about : & for-hewþ hem plate & maille 876

Oliver slays  
20,

xx<sup>ti</sup> slow he of þat rout : þat non armure ne miȝt hem vaille ;  
& þan he metep wiþ þat kyng : & rideþ til hym wyþ mod,

[leaf 12]

& smot him wiþ is swerd keruyng : a sterne strok & a god ;  
þorw helm & scolle he clef him doun : & þorȝ auentaile & þorȝ hod 880  
þorw haberke & þorw is aketoun : attes nauel þe dent a-stod.

and then  
the King  
himself.

¶ þan laid he on þe Sarsyns wykke : faste be euery helue,  
Ac euere þay fulle on him so þykke : þat ounep he kepte him-selue.

The Saracens  
swarm round  
him.

þe sarsyns wente til hym wiþ strengþe : & laid on him al aboute. 884  
Ac O[lyuer] kepte hymen<sup>1</sup> is swerdes lengþe : euerechone wiþ-oute,  
& smyteþ til hymen with myȝt & mayn : & kepþ him be euery syde ;  
Summe he smyteþ in-to þe brayn : & summe 3af woundes wyde ;  
A sterne gret schour a 3af hem þar : & laide hem a doun ful þykke.  
Neuer nas o man þat better him bar : amonges so mony wikke. 889

His horse is  
killed.

¶ þan cam til him a Sarsyn prout : prikyng wiþ rendoun,  
& smot his stede wiþ a sper þorw-out : þat he ful ded adoun.  
O[lyuer] stert vp . & til hym wond : & 3af him a stroke wyþ miȝte,  
Wyþ al þe strengþe of boþe ys hond : & to-clef ys body riȝte. 893

His shield,

¶ þe Sarazyns wroþe gunne to waxe : & as wode men þanne þay furde,  
& layde til him wiþ sper & axe : wyþ Gysarmes & with swerde.  
ys scheld þat was wyþ golde y-batrid : & eke wyþ ire y-bounde, 896  
Sone þay had hit al to-clatrid : þe peeces leye on þe grounde.

his helmet,

ys helm, ys coyphe, ys habryoun : alle þay hadde to-rente,  
& eke ys noble aketoun : was [al] for-hewe & schente.

and his  
jacket are  
in pieces.

Ac al þe while þat he was sounde : he delte dentes sare, 900  
Til he hauede so many a-wounde : þat he ne miȝt fiȝte no mare.

The Saracens  
overpower  
him,

¶ þan þe Sarsyns on him runne : & set on him hondes fale,  
To þe erþe þay habbeþ him wonne : & broȝt is body on bale.

<sup>1</sup> MS. hymem.

His hondes þan þay toke riȝt : & leyden him on his bake be-hynde, 904 tie his hands,  
& al so harde as tweyne myȝt : wiþ a corde þai duden him bynde.

& suppe þay han y-take a clout : & duden him more tene, blindfold him,  
& byndeþ þer-wiþ is eȝene about : for he ne schold noȝt sene.

An hakenay þay toke þat þay founde : & set him þer-on god spede, 908 set him on a horse,  
& vnder ys wombe ys legges bounde : þe sykerluker hym to lede. and tie his legs under its belly.

¶ þan þe knyȝt is mone gan make : & sayde, “ alas : alas !

Charlis kyng, for þy sake : me is bi-tid þys cas.”

He saide, “ Charlis, whar ert þou : in hwam my trist was euere ? 912

A : Rolond, felawe, help me now : ! for þou ne failedest me neuere.”

Til hym þan saide kyng Moradas : “ a-noþer schal be þy songe, Moradas mocks him,  
y ne schal noȝt ete, by Mahoun is fas : til þow be heȝe an honge.”

**N**OW ys Olyuer þus ytake : among is enymys. 916 [leaf 12, bk]

Moradas þe kyng of wham y spake : clipeþ his companys,

L. Sarazyns þanne a chees : among hem þar and sede : and orders him to be taken to Aigremont.  
“ Wendeþ bi-fore & ledeþ þees : to Egremoyneward with god spede ;

Fareþ faste on ȝour way : bote euere habep on mynde, 920

þat he be kept in yuel aray : & we willeþ ȝow kepe behynde.”

þay went hem forþ on apendant : with olyuer þat was ibounde,

þat hewles was of semblant : for he bar many a wounde.

His blod gan renne a-doun ful toȝt : by þe waye as he gan ride, 924

& ȝut þe sarasyns ne spared him noȝt : bote beten euere & cride, His escort torment and threaten him.

“ Turmentye we wel þes cristene þef : þe wile he is ous amonge,  
For he hath don ous gret repreȝe : to morȝe schal he ben honge.”

¶ By þat was araid duke Rolant : & saw hymen awayward schake, 928 Roland sees them,

“ Alas,” said he, “ god vayllant, : “ Olyuer my felaw ys take !

y-seep þat ȝonder company : how þay him ledeþ away ;

now spede we him to socoury : for godes loue wat ȝe may !” and calls for a rescue.

Roland prikede is stede of prys : so dude scot Gwylmer, 932

So dude Geffray and Aubrys : & Berard of Montdisdier ;

So dude þe duk of Borgoygne · Sir Gy : þat hardy was & wys, The French knights

& eke Richard of normandy : & eke sire Alorys ;

& duk neymes of Baueer : Wyþ þe gray hore berde, 936

Basyn, Terry, and Ogier : & Charlis wiþ al · his ferde.

þay criede “ a mont ioie ! seynt dynys : ” after hem as þay gunne ryde, ride to rescue him.

“ ȝe token yuele þe knyȝt of prys : & yuele ȝou schal be-tyde.”

¶ Rolant ran to Cornybourgh : & smot him *with* a spere, 940  
A persched ys scheld & bar him þorw : & slow hym for al ys gere.

Berard in þe same plas : mette wyþ Turgys,  
& Oger deneyys wyþ Athenas : & Richard wyþ Margys,  
& sire Gyoun of Borgoygne : wip Brudelan of mounthys, 944  
So þat euerech *with*-oute ensoygne : hap a-slawe his.

Each slays  
a Saracen.

To þe Sarasyns 3yuen þay hard batail : & slowe him alle aboute ;  
Wan hure speres gunne to faille : hure swerdes þay drowen oute. 947  
Of summe þay smyte of legges & armes : & of sum þe heuedes þay gerde,  
& summe þay stykede þor3 guttes & þearmes : so foule *with* hem þei ferde.

They are like  
wolves in a  
flock of  
sheep.

Als furde þay wip þat ilke hepe : wip-oute tales mo,  
As dop wolues among þe shepe : wan þay comeþ hem to.  
Al þe feldes þo wern y-fuld : of dede men on þe grounde, 952  
Saue an vewe þat leye & zulde : & abide hure deþes stounde.

[leaf 13]

Oliver's  
escort hurry  
him on,

¶ þe whyle þys batail was don þer : as y ha told 3ow here,  
þe opre of wyche y tolde of eer : chacyeþ forþ Olyuere,  
And leggeþ on hym strokes harde : as he ri3dt y-bounde, 956  
þe wyles þay of þe rerewarde : buþ y-laid down to grounde.

and take to  
flight ;

but Sorty-  
bran

¶ Wan þay y-se3e þat þes frensche men : 3yue hem so scherp a schour,  
Faste a-wayward gunne þay flen : þay sparede no deshonour.

Ac þe kyng of Combles, sir Sortybran : þat was hure gouernour, 960  
þanne cryede, " lordes, comeþ a3en : & schewyaþ 3our vygour !

We wolleþ sle þus frensche her : ri3t in clene bataille."

rallies them,  
and they  
attack the  
French.

Wip þat þe Sarsyns reliede hem þer : & þe frensche men gunne tassaille.

¶ þe Sarsyns þanne *with* gode herte : fozte & sparede hem na3t, 964  
Harde strokes & eke smerte : to þe frenschemen þanne þay razt.

þay caste til hem gleyues & launce : falsar3 & feþerd dart,  
& slowe þer-wip kniztes of fraunce : & 3aue hem batail hard.

Gwater,  
Gwylmyn,  
and others  
are slain ;

Gwater þay a slowe þen : & Gwylmyn þay duden al-so, 968  
And of othre frensche men : wel thre score & mo.

So sherplich þo on hem þay fulle : þes Sarsyns al wip strengþe,  
þat þe frensche men þai made reculle : wel an akers lengþe.

þanne þay asayllede Scot Gwylmer<sup>1</sup> : & toke him a-force fyne, 972

& eke sir Berard of Moundisder<sup>2</sup> : & Geffray of Langeuyne ;

& þe ferþe þay token al-so þere : sir Aubry, a noble knyzt,

<sup>1</sup> þay asayllede [Berard of montdisdier].

<sup>2</sup> Some words erased here.

Gwylmer,  
Berard,  
Geoffrey,  
and Aubry  
are taken,

- & alle þay arn of þe dopþpere : þat þo buþe taken in fyzt.
- ¶ þus barons weren take wiþ force : & harde y-bounde y trowe, 976 tied on horses, and carried away.
- And supþen y-set alle an horce : & awayward with hem þay drowe.
- Ac wan Charlis hit wiste & seȝ : for hymen hym gan to maye :
- Ofte a cride to his host an heȝ : “now prikeap knyȝtes, y praye ;
- If þay hymen ledeþ þus away : my dopþpers þat buþ y-take, 980 Charles laments for his knights.
- þanne ys my worschip lost for ay : certes for þat sake.”
- þanne miȝte me sen þe frensche men : after þis Sarsynȝ chace,
- þay huld hur scheldes bi-forn hem : & harde hem bi-gunne embrace. Then the French pursue the Saracens, and overtake them.
- At aualyng of an hulle : þe frensche han þey of-take, 984
- & wanne þe frensche men on hem fulle : þe Sarasyns gunne to quake,
- ¶ þan comencede a batail newe : by-twene þes hostes two, A fresh fight begins.
- þe Sarasyns sone þay al-to-hewe : þat þay of-token þo.
- Rolond drow out durenal : þat schon so siluer briȝt, 988 Roland draws his sword Durenal
- For O[lyuer] hym was wo wyþ al : þat he ne had him in siȝt.
- Ac supþe þat he ne may hym seen : a þoȝte þan or he wente
- Amonges hem þer a-wreke is teen : sone wyþ swerdes dente.
- ¶ þe furste he mette hiȝt engwylard : a Sarsyn of gret renoun, 992 [leaf 13, back] and cuts down Engwylard.
- þorȝ helm & coyphe þat wern hard : he clef ys hed a-doun ;
- He fel doun ded oppon þe ground : is lifdawes wern ido ;
- “Rest,” quap he, “þou heþene hound” : & anoperne he lawte þo,
- & ȝaf him a strok al on ys yre : with durenal is brond : 996
- His heued gerte he fro þe swyre : þat it tomblede on þe sond.
- Al þat he areche miȝte : a dust hem doun to dede.
- þe Sarsynȝ wern of him affriȝte : & prykede away god spede,
- & ledeþ wiþ hem þe ryche prysouns : þat þay habbeþ y-take, 1000 The Saracens fly with their prisoners.
- & þay folȝyeap after wiþ rendouns : wel sory for hure sake.
- ¶ Roland prykede after blyf : for þe loue of Olyuer þan,
- & potte an auenture ys owe lif : to rescuwy þat doȝty man.
- Ogier deneyȝ on Bryafort : wiþ him prikede al-so, 1004 Ogier
- And ȝaf Roland god counfort : þat chyuahee for to do.
- ¶ Now chacieþ þay þe Sarseneyȝ : þis noble kniȝtes tweye,
- Ouer mountayns & ouer valeys : ne dradde þai for non aye.
- To rescuwe þis barouns gode : euere þay prykede faste, 1008 chace the Saracens over hill and dale,
- As noble men & heȝ of mode : þat of noþyng wern agaste.
- Ac al þat þay of-take miȝte : as þay prikede þo, slaying all they can catch,

- With dent of swerd þay slozen him riȝt : & prikede forþ after mo.  
 þus þay prikede, þuse two baroun : hure frendes to rescowe, 1012  
 till nearly sunset,  
 Til þe sonne was neȝ go doun : & gan to sitte lowe.  
 Sory wer þey for hi ne miȝt : hure pruwesse fulfille þore.  
 when they turn back.  
 To Charlis host aȝen þay tiȝt : be-hynde hem fer þoȝ þay wore.  
 ¶ Wel longe hadde þys chas y-lest : of þys knyȝtes tweyn, 1016  
 þe Sarsyns fleȝe & noȝt ne sest : war-for þay turnde aȝeyn.  
 Al ful were þe weyes almost : of sarasyns þay han a-sleyn,  
 Ac for Rolond haueþ is purpos lost : þan was he noþyng fayn.  
 Charles at sunset retires to his camp,  
 ¶ Charlis saw þ<sup>e</sup> sonne neȝ set : þat red þan schon & lowe, 1020  
 In his pauillouns to haue recet : þiderward gan he drawe.  
 & wiþ his host he tornde aȝeyn : wiþ a wel yuele chere,  
 grieving for Oliver.  
 & euere he siȝte & gan to seyn : ‘Alas’ : þat he cam theere :  
 “Alas : Olyuer, my gode kniȝt : for þe myn herte ys cold. 1024  
 Alas ! þe tyme þou scholdest fiȝt : with þat Sarazyn bold.  
 Alas ! now buþ myn barouns wyȝt : fro me y-take in hold.  
 Alas ! þe tyme þat in mi siȝt : þis mischef falle schold.”  
 Neymes comforts him.  
 ¶ Duk neymes ihurde ys mone : & saide to þe kyng, 1028  
 “Auenge þe her-of eft sone : & let now þy mornyng.  
 [leaf 14] þyn barons schulleþ be delyuered wel : wiþ þe hilp of god almiȝt,  
 & þe Sarasyns, be þay noȝt so fel : schullap abigge þys ounriȝt.”  
 Charles vows vengeance.  
 þan kyng C[harlis] swer is oþ : ne scholde he neuere be fayn, 1032  
 Til he had him mad hem wroþ : & his barons gete aȝayn.  
 As they ride they find Ferumbras.  
 ¶ As þey ride so<sup>1</sup> on þe way : sechyng on þe playne,  
 þey founde Firumbras þar a lay : vnder a tre of frayne.  
 Wan Charlis y-saw him war he was : he neȝhedem & sayde, 1036  
 “Maugree haue þou, Fyrumbras : for þy foul mysbrayde ;  
 y haue y-lost Erld Olyuer : þys day for þy sake,  
 & duk Berard of Moundesdier : & oþre þat buþ y-take.”  
 Charles curses him.  
 ¶ Fyr[umbras] herde what Charlis saide : & made a grete syȝyng, 1040  
 oppon ys arm ys heued a layde : & humbliche ansuered þe kyng,  
 “A : charlis, kyng of fraunce : ne spek þer-of no more ;  
 y haue ynow of greuaunce : & ȝut me ys wers þer-fore.  
 Erld Olyuer with strenþe in fiȝt : hap me her conquered, 1044  
 & y til him am trewe y-pliȝt : & haue myn oþ y-swered,  
 þat y schal euere fro þys day : þe heþene lay for-sake,

<sup>1</sup> MS. ride [forþ].



- And beleue in *cristene* fay : & folloht to me take.  
 y suffrie ynow of sorwe & pyn : my syde ys al to-tore,  
 & if y daye her sarsyn : y wot y am y-lore.  
 For þe loue of þilke crist : þat þou lyuest on,  
 Help me þat y were baptist : in þe holy fanston :  
 For wer ich mad a cristenman : & my wounde faire y-helid,  
 Heþemen schold y so greue þan : þat þay shulle sore y-felid,  
 & þay þat now buþ Sarasyns : schold turne to *cristene* lay,  
 & elles þay scholde polye pyns : for hure false fay.
- ¶ þe croune of þorn schal y zeld vp : & þe naylles three  
 þat pyned þour lord wan he was put : on þe rode tree ;  
 & opre reliques riche y-now : whar-of y haue plentee,  
 y schal hem zelde azen to þow : Charlis kyng so free.
- Be þe saule þat y bere : & as god lese me of my greuance,  
 Me greueþ more for Olyuere : þan of my owe penaunce ;  
 Ac If y be helyd by help & cure : of my wounde wyde,  
 Alle þey schulle abbigget dure : þat token him in þat tide.  
 For godes loue, sir Emperour : tak pite of me here,
- It turneþ þow to gret deshonour : & y daye in þis manere.”
- ¶ Wan Charlis had herd þis answee : is herte to himward feld ;  
 He het .iiij. knyghtes him arere : & bere him forþ on a scheld.  
 Softe þus knyghtes þan him bere : to þe kyngis pauylloun  
 & of hur handes ne let him nere : til Charlis het set him down.
- ¶ Charlis hemself & sire Oger : ounarmede him þo anon,  
 & wan he was sengle amoung hem þer : hy auysed is schap echon.  
 Brode scholdres had he *with-alle* : & brustes ful quarree,  
 Wyþ longe sydes & middel smalle : a wel schape man was hee.  
*With* Browes bente & ezen stoute : and lokede so þe facoun :  
 To seche þe worlde al aboute : ne was man of fairer fasoun.  
 Alle þat him be-hulde þan : among hem þai saide þere,  
 þat Olyuer was a doþty man : wan hym he miȝt conquere.
- ¶ A wel fair knyȝt was Firumbras : ounarmid wan he lay,  
 Ac ys Fysage al discolourid was : for is blod was gon away ;  
 thre sipes a sounede afforn hem þere : for angwys of ys wounde,  
 By-fore þe lordes þat þar were : wiþ-inne a litel stonde.
- ¶ Charlis tok nite of þat siȝt : an archebisschop a clepede anon,

Christian ;

1048 I am sore wounded.

Help me now  
and I will  
make all  
Saracens  
become  
Christians.

1052

1056 I will give up  
the crown of  
thorns, and  
the three  
nails  
and other  
relics.

1060

I grieve more  
for Oliver  
than for  
myself,  
but I will  
avenge him."

1064

[leaf 14, back]

Charles  
orders four  
knights to  
bear him to  
his tent,

1068

and takes off  
his armour.

1072

A well shaped  
man he was,  
with broad  
shoulders,  
and eyes like  
an eagle.

1076

Thrice he  
faints with  
pain.

1080

Charles  
orders an  
Archbishop



- to baptise him that night. And het him sone þat he wer diȝt : to blessy þe holy fanston, þat he were fulled þat ilke niȝt : & ymad cristenmon. 1084  
þe prelat dide al so he hiȝt : & plungedede him sone þer-on.
- He is baptised, and his name changed to Florens, but he is always known as Ferumbras. ¶ þan was cristned sir Firumbras : a man of gret deffens, ys name ther y-chaunged was : & was ihote Florens, 1088  
ac þoȝ me tornde þar ys name : as þe manere was, Euere ȝut after a baar þe same : & men cliped him Firumbras. ¶ Wan he was cristene man ymad : on a bed þan was he laid, þat with riche cloþes was y-sprad : & ful faire araid.
- Charles' own physicians attend to him. Charlis clipede ys leches þo : & ȝerne gan him praye 1092  
þat þai scholde til him go : is wounde to enserche & saye. ¶ At is heste þey wente þer-to : & softe gunne taste is wounde, His lyure, ys lunge & is guttes al-so : & found hem hol & sounde.
- They declare they can cure him within two months, at which Charles is pleased. þan saide þay to Charlemayn : þay wolde him vndertake, 1096  
þay wolde with-inne monþes twayn : hol & sound him make. "Dop," quap he, "þat faire cure : & siker ynow ȝe beo, Of ȝour warysoun ȝe schul be sure : wan þat ich it seo."
- [leaf 15] ¶ þanne saide þ<sup>e</sup> Emperour : "iherid beo god almiȝt ! 1100  
Had y now erld Olyuer : myn herte were al lyȝt : & myne opre barons gode : þat þe Sarazȝyns han y-take." þan set he him doun drurymode : & dropede for hure sake.
- Meanwhile Oliver and his fellow-prisoners **T**Orne we aȝen in tour sawes : & speke we atte frome 1104  
Of Erld Olyuer & his felawes : þat Sarazȝyns habbeþ ynome. þe Sarazȝyns prykyap faste away : as harde as þay may hye,
- are hurried on And ledeþ wiþ hymen þat riche pray : þe flour of Chyualarye, 1108  
By hilles & roches swyþe horrible : on hur cors þay wente, And er þay come to Mantrible : neuere þay ne astente.
- to Mantrible, Ouer þe brigge þay gunne ride : þat was ful huge of lengthe, 1112  
In þe Cite þat nyȝt to abyde : to kep hem þer in strengthe. Wiþ hure prisouns þay comen in : þat were ytake be chaunce ; þe draȝtbrigge was drawe vp after hem : for drede of þe host fraunce.
- where they pass the night. Sone þay ryse vp-on þe morwe : & to Egremoygne þay toke þe way. 1116  
God kepe þe prisouns out of sorwe : for carful þay were þat day ! Wanne þay come to þe castel ȝate : hure hornes þay blewe faste, þe porter alredi was þer-ate : & let hym in an haste.
- Next morning early they start to Aigremont. ¶ þe heghe Amerel sir Balan : þat was on his halle an heȝ,
- The Emir, Balan,

- Faste þyder þanne he ran : wanne he hymen come y-seȝ,  
 & wiþ hem al-so sir Lamaȝour : a kyng of heþene londe, 1120 runs to  
meet them,
- & wan þay comen doun of þe tour : after tydyngges þay gunne to fonde.  
 ¶ Bruillant, þe kyng of mountmirree : of is stede him liȝte adoun,  
 þan amyral þanne saluede hee : in þe name of sire Mahoun,  
 þe Amyral of hym axeth sone : wat tydyng þay had y-broȝt ; 1124 and enquires  
what tidings  
they bring.
- “Tel þou hem me riȝt anone : and for no-þyng hele þou noȝt.  
 haue ȝe taken duk Roland : & Olyuer his felawe,  
 & wyþ Charlis foȝt wyþ hand : & hys doppepers a-slawe ?”
- ¶ “Nay,” seyþ he, “by seynt Mahoun : it is noȝt as ȝe sayn ; 1128 Brillant  
says : ‘We  
have been  
beaten by  
Charlemagne,  
and Ferum-  
bras
- We buþ discomfyt & sleyn a-doun : wiþ þe kyng Charlemany,  
 & þy sone sir Fyrumbras : þat fauȝt with a knyȝt of fraunce,  
 Be name ne know y noȝt wat he was : ac þar is betid a chaunce,  
 þat Fy[rumbras] by him ys ouercome : as þay foȝte in felde, 1132 has become  
a Christian.’
- & to cristendom haþ him nome : & to Charlis kyng is ȝelde.”  
 ¶ Wan þe Amyral haþ iherd þe kyng : in sowenyng gan he falle ;  
 Ac wan he awok of his soȝnyng : loude he gan to calle,  
 & wrong ys hondes & saide, “alas : ys my sone y-nome ? 1136 The Emir  
grieues
- My ioye ys lost For Fyrumbras : wat man is he bi-come.  
 ¶ Alas ! what sorwe haþ he don : þat was so hardy & wiȝt,  
 þat he was encombred so for on : to yeld him to such a knyȝt ?  
 V. hundred y saw aȝen him gon : & he slow alle in fiȝt, 1140 for Ferum-  
bras,  
[leaf 15, back]
- & now ys he take among is fon : y-lost ys al my miȝt.  
 & if he is turnd to cristene lay : alas : þanne is hit wers,  
 Leuere me were by my fay : he were to-drawe wyþ hors.”
- ¶ þe Amyral saide þanne aȝeyn : “tel me what is þe knyȝt, 1144 and asks who  
conquered his  
son.
- þat was so miȝty man of mayn : to ouercome my sone in fiȝt.”  
 Bruyllant saide, “so mot y pryue ; þes moste man in siȝt,  
 þat stent ibounde among hem vyue her by-fore ȝow riȝt.”
- ¶ “Aha !” quap he, “is þes þe þef ? : þe deucl him mote for-gnaȝe,  
 þat ouercom my sone þat was me lef : & broȝt him to is lawe ! 1149
- By Mahoun, þat is my god in pref : ne schal y noȝt be fawe,  
 Er y sen him haue mischef : an-hanged & to-drawe.”
- ¶ Wan þay herd him prete þus : þe frenschemen þar þay stode, 1152 Balan swears  
Oliver shall  
be hanged  
and drawn.
- Olyuer saide, “help, iesus : þat boȝtest ous wiþ þy blode !  
 & felawes,” he saide, “confortiaþ ȝow wel : & for noȝt þat may be-falle, Oliver warns  
his  
companions

- not to tell  
their names,  
or else     þat non of ous is name ne tel : auysyep 3ow wel *with*-alle :  
for wiste þe Ameral sykerly : of þe dobbeper þat we were, 1156  
for al þe gold in cristenty : non of ous wolde he spare,  
they will  
assuredly be  
hanged.     þat we ne scholde to deþe gon : be hangid & to-drawe,  
Ouper be demembrid euerechoun : & broȝt of lyues dawe."  
¶ "As þy wil is," saide þay þo : "we willeþ alle heere." 1160
- The Saracens  
unbind them.     To hem þan wente Sarsyns two : & ounarmide Olyuere ;  
þe bond þat is fysage was bounde wyþ : to stoppen is louely siȝt,  
þay ounbounde & is felawes siþ : þat were al men of miȝte.
- Oliver is pale.     ¶ þan was Olyuer al colourlees : for þe blod þat he had schad. 1164
- The Emir  
asks his  
name.     Wan þe Amyral y-saw al wat a was : for wrappe he wax neȝ mad,  
And til him a wente anon : & askede hym what he hiȝt :
- Oliver says,  
'Angwyron,'     "Sire," said he, "Angwyron : of france a pore knyȝt,  
To serue Charlis in bataille ; him self me dobbede riȝt ; 1168  
y ne haue no þyng *with*-oute faille ; bote wat y may wynne in fiȝt.
- and that they  
are all poor  
knights.     & my<sup>1</sup> felawes þat her beep : knyȝtes þay buþ fol sure,  
Ac þay ne haue namore þan ȝe seeth : hure hors & hure armure."
- 'Alas!' said  
the Emir,  
'this is a  
sorry chance :     ¶ "Alas," þan sayde þe Amyral : "how is þys afare ? 1172  
For my sone þat y louede wel : of blisse y am al bare.  
& now y hopede þat þuse had y-ben : dukes & Erldlis of fraunce,  
& [þay] ne buþ bote demeyne men : þis is a sory chaunce !  
noȝt for þat ȝe schul wel sen : þat þay schul haue greuaunce." 1176  
Quyke he het þay scholde hem fien : *with*-oute more distaunce.
- Lamasour ad-  
vises him not  
to slay them,     ¶ þanne saide kyng Lamasour : þat stod him faste bye,  
"y rede þe, sire, for þyn honour : a-staunche þyn herte hye ;  
For to slen suche vauasours : what miȝt hit profetye ? 1180  
Enprisone hem her wiþ-inne þy tours : & so þer let hem lye."
- but to im-  
prison them.  
The Emir  
agrees, and  
orders  
his gaoler to     ¶ þe Amyral þo wiþ-drow ys mod : ys herte was ful of grame ;  
& clepede ys iayler þer a stod : brytamoun bi is name :  
"Tak," he sayde, "þys vauasours : & to prisoun þou hem lede, 1184  
& pote hem to sorwe out of cours : y hote þe oppon þy mede.
- bind them  
strongly and  
surely,     Bynd hem herde wyþ yre & steel : & pote hem in stokkes of trow,  
& loke þay fare noȝt to weel : bot kep hem harde ynow.  
And ȝe, lordes, þat han hem take : goþ now alle y-same 1188  
& helpeþ him for my sones sake : þat þay ben maked tame.

<sup>1</sup> MS. my my felawes.

- & namlich þis ilke chef feloun : þat haþ me þus anuyed,  
 Lokieþ he be in such prisoun : þat sone he be distrused."
- ¶ þan wende forþ þe iayler : & tok til hym socoure,  
 & ladde wiþ hymen erld Olyner : & þe oper barons foure. 1192 The gaoler
- Wan þey comen þer the prisoun wes : wiþ yre þay bounde hem faste,  
 & left hem þer al mete-les : & so fro þeym þay paste. binds them, and leaves them without any food.
- ¶ Wan þey wern in prysoun þare : þay criede & made hure mone, 1196 They lament and pray.  
 And saide, "lord, how schul we fare : in prisoun her al-one.  
 As þow seest boþe fer & ner : sittyng on þy trone,  
 help ous, lord, whyle we buþ her : & kep ous fram our fone !"
- F**Loryppe on hure chambre seet : þ<sup>e</sup> Amyral is doȝtre dere ; 1200 Floripas, the Emir's daughter, hears the cries,  
 Sche was a mayde fair & swet : & hurde hure dulful bere,  
 & þe grete noyse sche herde also : þat among hem y-maked was.  
 Sche clepede hure maydens to hur þo : wyte sche wolde þat cas.  
 Florippe, þat maide fair & gent : hur maidens þan tok anon, 1204  
 & out of chambre doun sche went : þar þat folk gan gon.  
 Wan sche cam þar þay were : sche askede of on & on,  
 Why þat noise was maked þere : amonges hem euerechon.  
 ¶ On ansuerede as it was : & told hure al & some : 1208 She is told of her brother's conversion, and the capture of the French knights.  
 How hur broþer Fyrumbras : cristen man was bi-come,  
 & how þat pilke stronge knyzt : þat wan hym in bataile  
 Wyþ four othre men of myzt : wern put þo þer in baile :  
 And how þay criede, & made hure mon : as þay in prisoun sete. 1212  
 Sone sche leuede hem echon : & þan iayler gan sche mete,  
 For hure broþer sche gan to wepe : ac sone sche had ido. [leaf 16, back]  
 ¶ Wiþ hure maydens at an hepe : to þe iayler is sche go ;  
 Sche takeþ a syde Brytamoun : a conseil, & gan him frayne : 1216 Then she asks Brytannon, the gaoler, who his prisoners are.  
 & askeþ what buþ þay baroun : in prysoun sche herde pleyne.  
 "So Mahoun ȝyue me gode chaunce : ma dame," gan he sayne,  
 "Hit buþ kniȝtes out of fraunce : þat were wyþ Charlemayne. He tells her ;  
 þus buþ þaye þat han oundo : þy brother, sir Fyrumbras ; 1220  
 & many of oure þay habbeþ al-so : y-sleyn on many a plas.  
 On þer ys amonges hem þer : a bacheler fair of syȝte,  
 In þis world ne saw ich er : so fair y-schape a kniȝte.  
 He conquerede sir Fyrumbras : in batail þar þay fiȝte, 1224  
 now haþ he in prisoun herde gras : & more til him is tyȝte."

but especially Oliver.

binds them, and leaves them without any food.

They lament and pray.

Floripas, the Emir's daughter, hears the cries,

and goes to find out the reason.

She is told of her brother's conversion, and the capture of the French knights.

[leaf 16, back]

She weeps for Ferumbras, but not long.

Then she asks Brytannon, the gaoler, who his prisoners are.

He tells her ;

and that one of them is the fairest he had ever seen.

- She asks to speak with them. ¶ "Brytamoun," panne saide sche : "let me wip hem speke a þrowe For to wyte wat þay be : & hure couyne y-knowe."
- He says it can't be done. "Dame," said he, "for drede of gyle : y ne dar noȝt þat it be so : 1228  
þy wyt wolde turne *with-inne* awhyle : haddest þou leue þar-to.  
þy fader me for-bed al-so : þat for þyng þat miȝte be-falle  
þat to no man ne schold y þe dore vñdo : *with* hymen to speke or calle ;  
& y wil don ys commaundiment : þy speche ys al in vayne. 1232  
For þe ne wil y noȝt ben y-schent : i tel þe in certayne."
- 'Thou vile rascal,' said she, 'thus to answer a lady!' ¶ "Wat! harlot gadelyng," saide sche þan : "mote þou be heȝe an-honge!  
How answerest þow a iantail womman : þat budeþ þe no wronge!  
þou schalt abyte it · if y can : ȝe ȝut or come oȝt longe. 1236  
þe meede þat þou schalt her for han : wel sone þou schalt afonge!"
- She winks at her attendant, who runs to her chamber, returns with a staff, and gives it to her mistress. ¶ & þan sche preynt *with* hureȝe : oppon hur chamberere þarsche stod.  
¶ þat mayde was boþe wys & sleȝe : & knew ful wel hur mod,  
In-to þe chambre sche sterte anheȝe : rennyng as sche wer wod, 1240  
& tok vp a strong staf þat sche seȝe : hwych was herd & god,  
Vnder hur mantel sche hidde þe staf : & turnde aȝe wel faste  
& hym to hur lady sone sche ȝaf : & to-ward þ<sup>e</sup> prisoun sche paste.  
Wanne sche was þe dore affore : sche gan be-holde aboute, 1244  
& sayw þer no man þat was bore : *with-inne* ne *with-out*e,  
Saue Brytamoun abod þe iayler : þat of hur þan tok wonder.  
þe prisoun dore þan wend heo ner : & putte hure staf an vnder  
As sche wolde þe dore to-breke : sche gan þo hebbe & pyngre : 1248  
þe iayler þan pyderward gan to reke : to letten hur of þat pyngre ;  
Sche lefte þe dore & wend him ner : & lifte vp þ<sup>e</sup> staf *with* mayne,  
& so on þe heued sche set him þer : þat out sterte al is brayne.
- They try to break open the prison door. [leaf 17] "Rest," quap sche, "þow sory wyȝt : god ȝyue yuele chaunce ! 1252  
now schal y speke my fille riȝt : *with þes* knyȝtes of fraunce."
- Brytamoun runs to stop her, but she knocks out his brains with the staff. ¶ þe keyes sche tok of him anon : & ounlok þe dore an haste :  
By-twene hymen panne euerechon : þay lift vp þat bodi faste,  
& in-to prisoun þay gunne hem gon : *with* þat cors vnwraste, 1256  
& in þe dupe pit þer þay wer on : sone þas hit caste.
- She unlocks the door, and they throw the body into the pit, which frightens the prisoners. Florippe sends her maid for a torch, ¶ þan were þus prisouns alle : of þe fallyng i-pot in fere,  
So harde amongen hem hit gan falle : þay wende þe deucl it were.  
Florippe het a damesel briȝte : hastelich gon & fette 1260  
A gret torche & hym aliȝte : sone wip-oute lette.

þe damesel dude ase sche hiȝt : & com aȝen ful sone,

& broȝte a torche brennyng briȝt : & sperde þe dore anone.

¶ Florippe hure drow to anoþer part : & þar an dore ounlekes 1264

þat drow to þe putte ward : & doun in the pyt sche strekes.

Wan sche to þe prisouns was y-come : of hymen sche asked þare,

What þay buþ þat þar buþ nome : & wannys þat þay ware.

¶ "Damesel," saide erld Olyuere : "as god me ȝyue god chaunce, 1268

We buþ knyȝtes alle y-vere : y-born in douce fraunce,

And buþ Charlis men þe Emperere : & vnder his liegeaunce.

þe Ameral haþ y-put ous in prisoun here : & doþ ous gret greuaunce.

We buþ her wel herde y-bounde : with gyues & cheynes grete, 1272

Lyggyng on þys pittes grounde : with-oute drynke & mete.

By god þat made þis werlde rounde : me were leuere my lif for-lete

þan her to þolie þe stronge stounde : þer wormes doþ ous ete.

For hunger our bodies waxeþ feynt : & þolieþ moche pyne, 1276

War-for damesel as þow art gent : ȝyf ous sum what to dyne."

¶ Flo[rippe] tok wel gret pyte : of þys iantaile knyȝte,

& þus þanne answerede sche : "ȝow be-symeþ to beo men of miȝte,

ȝe schul ha mete, so mote y the : & drynke y-now at riȝte : 1280

Ac arst þow schalt sykery me : & þy treuþe surly plyȝte,

þat þou for me schalt don a þyng : þat y schal the saye,

& ther-to ben myn helpyng : by the power þat þou maye."

"Certes," said Olyuer, "my derlyng : y wil don at þy paye, 1284

y nolde þe faille, be heuene kyng : in payne þar-for to daye.

ȝyf y schal for þe fiȝte : ȝyf me mete & drynke,

& suppe arme me at my riȝte : & y wol for þe swynke ;

& if y schal þanne gon & mete : wyþ þe Sarsyns þat buþ abowe 1288

Doggedlich y schal hem grete : swetyng for þy loue,

þoȝ þer be of hem two hundred : y wil slen hem helue."

þat mayde þan gan wax awondred : & þoȝte by hur selue

þat he was doȝty man ynow : suche dedes to fulfille. 1292

Flo[rippe] saide, "sir, for þy prow : y pray þe hold þe stille.

To auaunt þe her in þis plas : it is ful gret folie,

It miȝte hermye ȝow alle in cas : if my fader miȝt it spie."

¶ þan him spak sir Berard : þe erld of montdisdier, 1296

þat was þe fairest kniȝt of regard : of alle þe doþpeper ;

She goes  
down and  
asks the  
French who  
and whence  
they are.

Oliver an-  
swers they  
are French  
knights,

and begs her  
to give them  
some food.  
Floripas pro-  
mises to do so

if they will  
do one thing  
for her.

Oliver says  
he will do  
whatever she  
wishes :

he will fight  
any number  
[leaf 17, bk]  
of Saracens.

Floripas begs  
him to be  
quiet,

lest her  
father should  
hear him.  
Then Berard



says that if  
she  
will be their  
friend  
they will do  
anything for  
her.

"Comly mayde of kynges kende : þe corteyst þat i knowe,  
Fayr of face now beo our frende : and we schul ben þyn owe ;  
& For þy loue þat art so hende : we schul boþe ryde & rowe, 1300  
& þylke þat buþ to þe ounkende : þay schulleþ be brozt ful lowe."

¶ "Certis," saide þat faire flour : "y þanke þe swete wyzt,  
þow coupest wel louye paramour : me semeþ a lady brizt."  
"3ea for soþ," quap scot Gwylmer : "3e habbeþ aredid arizt, 1304  
In many a lady fer & ner : his loue haþ he y-pyzt."

Then  
Floripas

¶ þanne was þat mayde fayn : wan sche wiste hure wille.  
After Maumecet hure chamberlayn : þanne sche sente stille,  
& het to brynge with him anon : anuyt, tange & slegge. 1308  
& sone he com wyþ euerechon : & brozt hem on is rigge.

sends for an  
anvil, tongs,  
and sledge-  
hammer,  
and orders  
the knights  
to be un-  
bound.

"Oundo þis prysouns on & on" : Florippe til him gan sigge,  
"þey schulleþ out of þis sory won : & her no lenger ligge."  
¶ Maumecet couþe ful wel þat craft : & put him anon þar-to : 1312  
Of al hure chaynes he haþ him raft : & ek hure vetres oundo.

This is done,  
and  
the knights  
get up and  
follow  
Floripas,  
by an old  
disused  
passage,

Sone þay stode oppon hure fete : and god þay þankede þo.  
And þe damesele fair & swete : with hure sche made hem go,  
¶ By an old for-sake 3eate : of þe olde antiquytee 1316

Sche made þys barouns passye ate : þe damesele þat was so fre.  
Maumecet þe torche afforn him baar : brennynge fayre & brizte,  
And ful pruyly ladde hem þar : in-to hure chambre rihte.

to her  
chamber,

**F**lorippe is in-to Chambre gon : pryuiliche & stille, 1320  
& þys kniztes wiþ hure ecchon : as it was hur wille.

Wan þay were wyþ-inne ibrozt : aboute þay gunne be-holde  
So riche a chambre & so y-wrozt : ne saw þay neuere on molde.

the walls of  
which are of  
precious  
stones,  
the windows  
of jasper,

¶ þe walles of þe chambre were : araid for þe nones, 1324  
y-maked of ful riche gere : of coral & riche stones,

þe wyndowes wern y-mad of iaspre : & of oþre stones fyne,  
ypoudred wyþ perree of polastre : þe leues were masalyne,  
Al þe coples cipres were : & þe raftres wer al-so, 1328  
And þe bases þat hem bere : wiþ golde were bi-go :

the beams  
and rafters  
of cypress,

[leaf 18]  
and the  
ceiling  
of silver gilt.  
It is built on  
a rock over  
the sea, and  
in it Floripas

þe celynge with-inne was siluer plat : & with red gold ful wel yguld.  
ne sawe þay neuere by-fore þat : a place so faire ybuld.  
þe chambre stod oppon þe se : amidward a roch of stone : 1332  
þer-inne duelte þat maide fre : as chef of al þat wone,



& with hure maide Ioyaunce : þe kynges doztre of Floyre,  
Clarymounde & mayde Floraunce : & þat fayre may Baudoyre,  
& opre maydens elleuene : burdes briȝte on boure ;

Lives with  
fifteen  
maidens.

1336

xv. þar were of hem ful euene : duellyng in þat toure.

¶ Ful noble was þe ryche aray : þat in þe chambre was.

þat vessel was of golde gay : þat scholde be tyn & bras.

þe dossers were of ryche pal : y-brouded al wiȝ golde,

& þe beddes of sente þorw-out-al : as parto falle scholde.

1340 The curtains  
are of rich  
cloth,  
embroidered  
with gold.  
The knights  
look out of  
the window  
at the sea,

¶ To a wyndowe wente þes barouns fre : & ther þay loked oute,

þay seȝe þe wazes of þe se : harde to-gadre route.

As þay auysede a-boute oueral : þe wardes þat þer wore,

1344

þe wawes walwede a-geyn þe wal : a sper schaft lengþe & more.

"Parfay," þan saide erld Berard : "þys tour is strong to wynne,

and admire  
the strength  
of the tower.

For any kyng it were ful hard : wyȝ assaut to comen inne."

¶ þe wyle þis barouns ley out þan : & tolde hure tales rounde, 1348

To Flo[rippe] com hure maystres gan : þat hiȝte Maragounde,

Floripa's  
governess  
asks who the  
knights are.

"Doȝtere," sche saide, "wat men buȝ þeese : þat þou hast of prisoun

y-broȝt ?

þy fader loue þow schalt lese : for hymen as y ha þoȝt.

þe longe man wyȝ þe pale fas : þat ys erld Olyuer

1352

þat ouercom þy broþer Fyrumbras : ful wel y knowe hym þer :

þat other wyȝ þe crollid her : þat stent hym faste by,

þat ys Berard of mountdisdier : & þe þridde ys Aubery :

She recog-  
nises the  
knights,

þe ferthe þat stent hymen bytwyn : þat is Scot Gwylmere ;

1356

þe fifthe ys Geffray Langeuyn : of france a dopþepere.

ne schal y neuere ete no more : bi Mahoun, þat ys my lord,

Or y ha told þy fader fore : þy doynge euery word."

and declares  
she will tell  
the Emir.

¶ Wan þat mayde y-hurde hure speke : chaunged was al hure blee ;

Floripa runs  
to the  
window,  
and leans  
out ;

Til a wondowe sche gan to reke : þat lay out to þe see ;

1361

& atte wondowe sche lynede out : hure angre sche þoȝte awreke.

Huremaistresse þanne sche clipede aloud : & bad hur with hure to speke.

then calls her  
governess to  
her,

Marigounde compþ til hure renne : & hure hed til hire gan layn, 1364

Flo[rippe] stod vp & preynte þenne : to-ward hure Chamberlayn,

and winks  
at her at-  
tendant,

& aȝen sche laid hur there : & fur out sche bent hure þo,

& to whyte what hure wille were : hure maistrasse dude al-so.

¶ þyderward þe Chamberlayn hym fasteran : þat hur cast y-knewful wel, [leaf 18, bk]

- who seizes the  
governess,  
and throws  
her out of the  
window. & By þe legges lifte he þe schrewe þan : & schef hur out ech del. 1369  
þan ful doun þat olde trate : in-to þe salte see,  
& Flo[rippe] þat was þanne þer ate : turnþ hure in faire aze,  
& sayde : " Maumecet my mate : y-blessed mot þou be 1372  
For aled þow hast mucche debate : to-ward pys barnee."
- The knights  
are delighted. ¶ Wan pys Frenschemen wiste of þis : al how it stod ariȝt,  
In herte þay hadde ioye & blys : & þonked god almiȝt.  
Flo[rippe] þanne til hem wendes : & spak til ȝam & saide : 1376  
" Confortyeþ ȝow, my leue frendes : & buþ noþyng amaiede,  
Syþe ȝe buþ her on þis clos : at my owe ledyngge ;  
Ne drede ȝow noþyng of ȝour fos : bot leteþ away mornyngge."
- She sees  
blood on  
Oliver,  
and asks if he  
is wounded.  
Oliver says  
yes. ¶ Sche caste hure eȝe on Olyuer : & saw him al be-bled ; 1380  
þat mayde þan hym neȝed ner : & askede war he hed  
On his body any wounde : & Olyuer sayde, " ȝee !  
Wyþ swerdes and speres scharp igrounde : y haue take three."  
¶ " Parfay," saide þat burde briȝt : " þou schalt be hol anon, 1384  
& recuuer y al þy myȝt : maugre al þy fon."
- She gives  
him a warn-  
draught,  
which  
heals every  
wound.  
Then she  
gives them  
food. Sche fet him a drench þat noble was : & mad him drynk it warm,  
& O[lyuer] wax hol sone þas : and felede no maner harm.  
Muche him wondred of þat cas : & þan gropede he euery wounde, 1388  
And founde hem þanne in euery plas : ouer al hol & sounde.  
¶ & þan she dude hem to drynke and ete : of þe beste þat miȝte bee :  
& seruede hem alle at þe mete : & tauȝte þat sche was free.  
Sche confortede hem with Al hure miȝt : & bad hem be glad & blyþe,  
And hy hure þankede faire aplyȝt : & ete & dronke swyþe. 1393  
¶ Wan þay had ete & dronke ynow : þe bord sche het arere,  
Ryche garnymentȝ forþ sche drow : & by-tok hymen for to were.  
þan said she : " lordes wel ȝe knawe : þat y haue do myche for ȝow  
Suppe y haue ȝow of prysoun drawe : agayn my fader prow : 1397  
y do hym wrong ȝow to saue : Syn Olyuer þat her ys now  
My broþer in batail ouer-come haueþ : & is worschip þer-with oundow.  
y knowe O[lyuer] swyþe wel : he ne may noȝt to me be hud, 1400  
noþeles ne drede him neuer adel : for me ne schal he be kud.  
Now wolt þou Oliuer þat couenant holde : hwich þow me be-hete?  
As þow saidest þat þow wolde : wanne þow in prysoun sete."  
¶ " ȝe," said he, " þat wil y do : do say me now þy wille." 1404
- and rich  
clothes.
- Floripas then
- asks Oliver  
if he will  
keep the  
promise he  
had made  
her.  
Oliver asks  
what she  
wants done,

- “pat wil y nozt,” quap sche þo : “til þou me han sakred tille.”  
 þan O[lyuer] huld vp his hant : trewely for to holde  
 By is power pat couenant : þan spak she til hym & tolde,  
 pat a knyzt þar was of fraunce : pat sche hadde longe y-loued ; 1408  
 hwych was icomen of grēt lyaunce : & a noble knyzt aproued.  
 þe knyzt þat was so gret of fame : was cosyn to kyng Charloun,  
 & Gy of Borgoyne was þe name : of þat bolde baroun.  
 “Wan þe Amyral my fader, Sir Balan : waste Rome Citee, 1412  
 þar saw ich þanne pat noble man : to don a dede free.  
 Lucafer of Bandas : a kyng of gret renoun,  
 On a stede y-armed was : and rod to þat Baroun,  
 And bar til hym wiþ a spere : to ha sleyn him in þe feld ; 1416  
 & þe knyzt þe strok away gan bere : manlich wyþ is scheld.  
 þe iantail kniȝt þan drow ys brond : & ȝaf him a stroke wiþ mayn,  
 pat hors & man adoun he wound : & leye þer-on þe playn.  
 Fro þat day in-to þys : myn herte haþ he yraft, 1420  
 Ne kepte y neuere more blys : were he to meward laft.  
 Wolde he be my worldly make : & weddy me to wyue,  
 For his loue wold y take : cristendom al so blyue.  
 As þou art a trewe knyzt : do & help now wat þou maye.” 1424  
 Olyuer saide : “bi god al-miȝt : damesele y schal a-saye.”  
**N**ow let we be þis Barouns ther : speke we of other þyng.  
 Olyueris fader, þe duk Reyner : com to Charlis kyng,  
 Ther he was among is host : & spekeþ on hys resoun : 1428  
 “For þy sake my sonne ys lost : þat was a bold baroun,  
 To mo[r]þe erly wan it is day : to sechen hym wil y fonde,  
 & bote ich him azeward gete may : for sorwe y go to schonde.”  
 ¶ Wan þe Emperour haþ hurd him speke : of him he toke pyte, 1432  
 On is fet sone gan he reke : & Roland þan clipeþ he :—  
 “Cosyn,” saide he, “þoȝ hit be so : pat hit falle in drede,  
 A message for me þow most do : þat toucheþ a mannys dede :  
 To Egremoygne-ward scheltou fare : to morwe wan it is day, 1436  
 To þe Amyral Balan þat is thare : and belyfþ on þe false fay.  
 Loke for nopyng þat þow ne spare : to tellen him as y say.  
 On myn half say him þat he me restare : þat he haþ mystaken away,  
 And specialiche myn barouns free : hot him in myn helue, 1440

and swears  
to do what-  
ever she  
wishes.

[leaf 19]  
Then she  
says she  
has long  
loved

Guy of  
Burgundy,  
whom she  
had seen at  
the taking of  
Rome,  
when he slew  
Lucafer,  
king of  
Bandas.

If he will  
marry her,  
she will be  
baptised at  
once.

Oliver says  
he will do all  
he can.

Meanwhile  
Reyner tells  
Charles

that he is  
going to seek  
for Oliver.

Charles

runs to  
Roland, and  
tells him  
that

he must go  
to Balan,  
and demand  
with threats  
the surrender  
of Oliver and  
his com-  
panions.

pat he hymen hastelich zelde azee : as he wol saue hym selue.

And if a doþ nozt as y say : & tarieþ þer wyþ to longe,  
y wil do take hym on a day : & on galwys heze an honge."

Naymes ¶ þan hym spak duk Naymoun : that was his counseyller, 1444

A gret lord was he of renoun : & of fraunce a doþþeper.

remonstrates " Certis, sire, 3e buþ nozt slez : to sende til him Roland :

By-þenk þat he ys þy cosyn nez : and al þyn other hand.

[leaf 19, bk] Duk Ro[land] is a man of myzt : þe doztyste þat lyþ to fraunce ; 1448

panne the to lese suche a knyzt : it were a<sup>1</sup> sory chaunce.

Myn herte me zifþ þat 3if he went : and takeþ þat iornee,

þat þou ne seest hym no more verament : & þer-for auyse þe."

that they will never see Roland again. Then said the King, "He shall not go alone, thou shalt go with him," Basyn intercedes, " Wel depardieux," quap þe kyng : " ne schal he nozt gon al-one ; 1452

Wend þow wiþ hym, my derlyng : my message schul 3e done."

¶ By-fore þe kyng com duk Basyn : þe þridde doþþeper,

& of is speche by-þozte him : & nezede Charlys neer.

" Sir," said he, " me þynkeþ now : be þat 3e goþ aboute, 1456

þat riztself willes þou þenkst oundow : þe beste of al þy route."

and Charles says, "Thou, too, shalt go," " Certis," quap Charlys, " and þou schalt gon : wyþ hymen & be þe þridde, 1460

þat schal my message to þe Amyral don : and do now as y bidde."

Then Richard of Normandy protests, ¶ þan com forþ a doþþeper : Rychard of normaundye, 1460

And sayde to þe kynge ther : " sire, þow dost folye

In suche a message for to sende : of al þy lond þat prys,

To don him sle ther & to schende : amonges þyne enymys."

and Charles says he shall go with them as their guide. " Aha" : quap kyng Charlemayn : " now is þis wel by-þozt, 1464

þat Rolond ne is felaws twayn : þe contreye ne knoweþ nozt.

þou schalt ben hure iantail gyde : & my furþe Messenger ;

For þou knowest by euery syde : þe contreys fer & neer."

Then starts up Terry of Ardane, and remonstrates, ¶ Vp a sterte after þane : a doþþeper of fraunce, 1468

þe duk Terry of Ardane : A baroun of gret lyaunce.

" Sir," said he, " what hast þow ment : wilt þow þyn barons spille ?

If þay goþ, þan buþ þey schent : þay comeþ þe no more tiller."

and Charles says he shall be the fifth. " Wel depardieu," quap Charlis þo : " greyþe þe on þy gere, 1472

þow schalt be þe .v. þat schal go : my message for to bere."

Then Ogier ¶ Vp þan aros oppon ys fet : sir Ogier þe Denys, & spak to Charlis thar a seet : & sayde on his deuys ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. y.

- "Sir," saide he, "y 3ow praye : as 3e buþ of kynges flour, 1476  
 Al þys doynge leteþ away : & kepeþ 3our honour.  
 For if 3our barouns þat buþ fre : wendeþ in þat message,  
 In aunture ys hure comyng a3e : fram þat sory vyage."  
 Charlis saide to hym þan : wyþ a stordy chere ; 1480  
 "y knowe þe for an hardy man : & of my lond a pere,  
 Such a message for to don : ne ys non bettere here.  
 Go þou al-so with hem ecchon : & be my messagere.  
 Cryst of heuene 3ow alle saue : my messagers alle sixe ! 1484  
 & 3ut þe vij schulle 3e haue : 3our felaschip to make wixe."  
 ¶ Sir Gy of Borgoygne stod faste bye : þe vij. doþeper :  
 Charlis on hym caste ys ey3e : & bad him come neer :  
 "Sir Gȳ," quap Char[li]s, "y loue þe wel : for þow art of my blod, [leaf 20]  
 & euere y hope þat y schel : for þow art wys & god : 1489  
 A dozty knyzt & hardy ynow : to don al mannys dede,  
 & canst ful wel as y trow : gon in such a nede.  
 þar-for Gyoun, by god of heuene : wyþ þes othre þou most gon ; 1492  
 þan haue y barouns seuene : my message wel to don."  
 ¶ þe nyzt hure ne3ehede faste : þe day was ne3 ago,  
 þe lordes buþ þan a-paste : wyþ-oute more a-do.  
 þys messagers agayn þe morwe : a-rayd hem for hure message. 1496  
 god saue hem alle fro sorwe : þay takeþ an hard vyage !  
 ¶ On þe morwe wan it was day : & þe lark by-gan to synge,  
 þys messegers come in god aray : alle by-fore þe kyng ;  
 Wel y-armed þorw-out al þyng : euerechone þey ware, 1500  
 & toke hure leue of Char[li]s kyng : on hure message forþ to fare.  
 Char[li]s bi-tok hymen god almi3t : þe he3 kyng of heuene.  
 Hure way toke þay þanne ri3t : to Egremoygneward ful euene ;  
 To þe Amyral ward, sire Balan : on ys castel þar he lay. 1504  
 Many was þe iantail man : þat for hymen bad þat day,  
 þat god hem grauntede grace & mi3tes : to a3e come in god aray :  
 & forþ hem wendeþ þes noble kny3tes : & takeþ hure iornay.  
 Ete we now þys lordes fare : god leue hym wel to spede ! 1508  
 And turne we a3en þar as we ware : & of þe Amyral y wol rede.  
 For his sone, sir Fyrumbras : & is Sarsyns þat wern a-slawe,  
 Sory & wroþ ynow a was : ri3t al so sayþ þe sawe.

begs him not to send them.

Charles says he shall go too.

Then he turns to Guy of Burgundy,

[leaf 20]

says he shall be the seventh.

The knights get ready.

At daybreak

they take leave of Charles and start to Aigremont.

Meanwhile the Emir

- summons  
seven kings  
to his  
presence,
- Vij. kynges þo made he come : afforn ys owe presaunce ; 1512  
 Peynymes þei were alle & some : & vnder his liegiaunce.  
 Among hem seuene on þar was : þat was chef of alle,  
 Ys name hote Moradas : þay comen to þe Amyralle.  
 ¶ Moradas askede for wat nede : þat þay wern of sent. 1516
- and tell them
- þe Amyral ansuerede for a dede : “y-hyreþ now þantent.  
 Lordlynges, wel 3e wyteþ alle : how Char[li]s þe kyng of fraunce  
 now is oppon my lond afalle : with prude & gret bobaunce,  
 And he þenkþ my lond conquerere : & to don ous alle schame. 1520  
 Bot arst y þenke hym affere : & alle hise to grame.  
 Wendep þer-for to Morymond : y-logged þer he lys,  
 And siggeþ to þe *cristene* hoñd : Char[li]s of parys,  
 [leaf 20, back] Ys *cristene* fayþ þat he for-sake : and be-lyue on Mahone, 1524  
 & hastelich myne amendes make : & 3ylde a3eyn my sone,  
 & eke al þe realme of fraunce : þat he hur holde of me,  
 þorw-out al in god liegeance : for euere-more in fee :  
 & þat he fle fro þanne a-way : & lete my lond in pees. 1528  
 & yf he ne doþ no3t as y say : þat neuere ne wil y sees,  
 Til y haue him distruyed : & alle þat y fynde of his ;  
 for he me haueþ so sore anuyed : wendeþ & siggeþ him þys ;  
 & 3if 3e meteþ with any *cristen* man : baroun outhur kny3t, 1532  
 lokeap þat 3e legge hem an : & slep hem a-doun wyþ my3t.”  
 ¶ Sir Mora[das] saide to þe Amerel : “þys message ys muche to drede.  
 þys frensche men buþ boþ lyther & fel : wan þay hereþ o3t of quede,  
 & if we schul don þys message : we ne comeþ no3t alle a3eyn. 1536
- ‘This is a  
dangerous  
errand,’ said  
Sir Moradas,
- ‘nevertheless  
we will do it.’
- We wolleþ noþeles do þat vyage : þer-fore to ben a-sleyn.  
 þat y ne say it for no drede : 3e mowe it wel deuyse,  
 Do we wolleþ wel þy nede : with-oute any feyntyse.  
 Me selue þy message y wil abede : in such a manere gyse, 1540  
 þat, bot y be taken oþer dede : an hundred hit schulleþ a-gryse.  
 Wip my swerd scherp<sup>1</sup> y-grounde : hure crounes wol y schaue ;  
 &, bot if my sawe soþ be founde : maugre mot y haue.”  
 ¶ þe sixe saide þay wolde al-so : & faste þay made bost 1544  
 þat to Char[li]s þay wolde werche wo : & eke to al is host.  
 Sone þay wern araid ari3t : þus vij kyngis y-vere,

<sup>1</sup> MS. schrep.



In stedes þat were fair of sizt : & eke on riche armere.

Alday þai riden & nozt ne alizt : to don þat ilke cure,

1548 They ride all day till they come to Mantribe, and on the next morning,

Til þai come to Mantribe at nizt : & wolde abyde þere.

On þe morwenyng wan it was day : forþ wende þes kynges seuene,

To morymond-ward þay toke þe way : as he lay ful euene.

Faste þay passede ouer al þe weys : þey knew ful wel þe cost ; 1552

Ne sparede þay hulles, noþer valeys : bote prikede forþ with bost.

**A**S þese frensche men come ryde : on message fro Charloun,  
Duk Naymes gan be-hólde a syde : & saw hem & hure penoun.

as the French ride along, Naymes spies the Saracens, and says,

"Mercy god," quap naymes þan : "now buþ we betraied ; 1556

3onder y se come many a man : y-armed & wel araid.

Hit semeþ sarasyns as be sizte : þat prikeap as wynd & rayn ;

Willeþ we wiþ hymen mete & fizte : oþer 3e wollap turne agayn ?"

'Shall we fight them, or retire ?' 'There are

"Sir duk," quap Rolond, "what eyleþ þe : þer ne buþ nozt xxx<sup>ti</sup> þare ;

Ne .xx<sup>ti</sup>. neyþer, ful wel y se : why makest þou such a fare ? 1561

[leaf 21] : not 20 of them,' says Roland, 'we shall soon tame them.'

Mete we with hem on cristes name : & gowe to hymen afrount.

We schulleþ hastely make tame : alle þilke heþene hound."

þay prykede hure stedes with hure spores : & þan þay runne away ;

Ne spared rigges noþer vores : til þay mette þat pray. 1565

¶ Wan þey come to-gadre nez : & Moradas þe kyng hem mette ;

When they come near the Saracens Moradas challenges them.

A cryede to hymen wel an he3 : & þus he hymen grette :

"If 3e lyueþ on þe heþene lay : Mahoun 3ov saue & kepe : 1568

& if 3e ben cristene men of fay : y diffie 3ow al þe hepe."

¶ "Sarsyn," saide duk neymoun : "haue þou muche maugree,

'We are messengers,' said Naymes.

We wendeþ on message fram Charloun : to þe Amyral of nubbee.

þow scholdest no messenger bere a doun : for al þyn he3 degree." 1572

"3us," quap he, "be Seynt Mahoun : & 3ut y 3ow diffye a3ee.

Moradas defies them.

Wolleþ 3e 3ou defende : ouþer 3e wollep flen ?"

"3ea, so god me mende" : þe duk him sayde a3en ;

"Hwych of 3ow wil wyþ me fizte" : saide þe Sarsyn þan. 1576

"y am," quap Naymes, "al-redy i-dizte : a-3eyn þe for to gan."

¶ "Ey," quap Moradas, "wat ert þow : þat telest of me so lyte ?

Naymes accepts the challenge. Moradas says he is too old.

For such a do3eyne<sup>1</sup> y make auow : y nolde nozt 3yue a myte.

Al for elde ys hor þyn her : hit semeþ wel by sizt : 1580

Send me anoþer þat ys my peer : on him to kyþe my mi3t.

<sup>1</sup> MS. doþeyne.



A doȝty iolyf bacheler : a'ȝong man & a wiȝt,  
 þat is of body fresch & fier : wiȝ such on wold y fiȝt."

Then he  
 orders his  
 companions  
 to stand back.

¶ þanne bad he to þe company : þat wiȝ him were þare, 1584  
 þat non of hem ne come him ny : how so it by him fare.

"For al þes *cristene* conquere y schal : þis day me self al-one,  
 & hymen presenty to þe Amyral : to-morwe or it be none."

Roland is  
 indignant,  
 seizes a spear  
 and

¶ Wan Ro[land] hurd him how he spak : for angre a wax neȝ wod :  
 A tok a spere wiȝ-oute lak : & rod til him wyȝ mod ; 1589

"Whar to makest þow al þat bost, Sarazyn?" Ro[land] sede

"Or þow passye out of þys cost : me self schal do þy nede.

charges him.

War now of me, ich þe diffie" : & bar til him is spere, 1592  
 And he anoper tok an hye : & scherply til him gan bere.

Their spears  
 are broken,

So harde þay acoupede on hurscheldes : þat broke buȝ boȝe hureschafte,  
 & þe peces fulle on þe feldes : þe hedes on þe tre by-lafte.

and they  
 draw their  
 [leaf 21, back]  
 swords.

Now haueþ þay hure speres tynt : hure swerdes out þay twyȝte, 1596

On helmes & scheldes ful many a dynt : ayȝer til oper areȝte :

So harde þey hywe on helm & scheld : þat þay al to-rente,

Me miȝte y-sen in tal þe feld : how þe sparkes by-fore out-wente :

þe cercles þat were on hur helmes set : of perre y-mad & golde, 1600

þey bern hem doun wiȝ-oute let : ne miȝt þay noȝt with-holde.

What halt hit mucche her-of to telle : to drecchen<sup>1</sup> ous of our lay?

Ro[land] ate laste wyȝ hym gan melle : & tazte him a sory play.

Roland  
 cleaves  
 Moradas  
 through his  
 helmet.

Roland smot hym on þe helm an heȝ : & laid hit a doun with mayn,

Helm & coyfe ther wyȝ a clef : þorw-out heued & brayn. 1605

His auentaile ne vailede him noȝt : þat þe swerd ne clef him þanne,

Til it hadde in-to is bodi i-soȝt : by-nythe is brest a spanne.

His followers

¶ Wanne his felawes þat y-sye : þat Moradas þe kyng was ded, 1608

Loude þay cryede & skryȝte an hye : "Mahoun wat is þy red?

How schulle we now ous selue gye : now ous lackeþ our hed?

þus *cristene* houndes schulleþ sore abyē : auengy we hym," þay sed.

charge at  
 Roland to  
 avenge their  
 leader.

¶ Agayn duk Ro[land] þan com þys route : wyȝ hure swerdes drawe,  
 & heweþ til hym al aboute : to hauen hem þanne a slawe. 1613

Roland

& Ro[land] ȝerne him gan defende : wyȝ durenale is brond,

And sturne strokes til hymen he slente : þanne wiȝ boȝe ys hond.

cuts Lam-  
 brok's  
 head off, and

Rolond smot þe kyng Lambrok : wan he was ameued, 1616

<sup>1</sup> MS. *dracchen* altered to *drecchen*.

- In þe necke : þat wyþ þat strok : A wypede of his heued.  
 A-noper strok þan a gerte : to Colbrant þe kyng *with* mayn,  
 & þorw-out is helm & ys coyfe him herte : & [al] for-clef is brayn.
- ¶ þe foure opre flozen faste ; wan þay sezen hem falle, 1620  
*cleaves Colbrank's skull. The others fly, but the French overtake them, and slay all, save one.*
- Ac þys frenschemen an haste : aze requilled hem alle,  
 & wan þay hadden hymen *with-inne* : alle þay sloze : saf on.  
 On was clouen in-to þe chynne : another to þe Brust-bon ;  
 þe þridde was styked *with* a swerd : þe furthe a-scapede away, 1624  
 And prykede faste to þe furd : þar þat þe Amyral lay ;  
 Til he com to Egremoyne : neuere þat he ne blan :  
 þan wente he wiþ-oute ensoygne : to speke wiþ Balan.
- ¶ Wan þat þe Ameral y-saw him come : þilke heþene kyng, 1628  
*The Emir asks what tidings he brings.*  
 þan way azen him haþ he nome : & askede what tydyng.  
 " Certes sire," sayde þe kyng : " suche tydynges haue y brozt  
 þat willeþ lyke þe noþyng : by þat þow art by-þozt.  
 zester day, so mote y thee : as we ryde forþ ryztes,  
 Wiþ seuen glotouns mette we : þat buþ of Char[li]s knyzt :  
 Al þyn Messagers þay han a-slawe : saue me þat am a-scaped,  
 To schewe to þe þorw my sawe : how þat ous is hapid.
- ¶ þey vij. þe vyage han vndertake : hiderward fram Char[li]s kyng,  
 To þe a message for to make : & hiderward buþ now comyng. 1637  
*him what has happened, and that the French knights are on their way with a message from Charles.*  
 Hure wyle mizt þow now wel 3ylde : beo þai hider i-come,  
 Al-quake y rede þan let hem hylde : þe glotouns alle & some."
- ¶ " Alas !" saide þe Amyral þan : " now am y brozt in care, 1640  
*The Emir laments his knights and Ferumbras.*  
 No lengre lyue y ne can : of blisse y am al bare.  
 Furst y loste Fyrumbras : my sone þat was me dere :
- L** & now haue y lost kyng Moradas : a knyzt *with* oute pere :  
 And othre kynges manye : & mucche of my socour ; 1644  
 Now my folkes doþ þus wanye : y-lost ys myn honour."
- Eue we her þan Amyrel : liggyng in sorwe & care ;  
 & of þis barouns y wil 3ow tel : þat to hymward buþ a-fare.  
 Wan þe vj. kynges wern y-sleyne : & þe vij<sup>e</sup>. was a-go, 1648  
 þan were þay alle in wittes tweyne : what was best to do.  
 Duk Naymes þe furste was : þat spak of þys entent :  
 " How mowe do, lordes, in this cas : þat we buþ now y-sent ?  
 If we goþ now to þe Amyrel : certis we buþ y-schent. 1652  
*Naymes advises them*

- to return, Turne we aȝe, y rede wel : & telle we how it stent."
- but Roland declares he will ¶ "Nay," quap Roland to þe duyck : "þan [wer] we yuele spedde ;  
Leuere me were to han be syk : liggyng on my bedde.  
If god send *grace* my wit to helde : & my owe lif to saue, 1656  
And durenale my swerd to welde : by-fore þis as y haue,
- never turn back till he has delivered the message to Balan, Turne aȝeynward y ne schal : for no manniss speche,  
Til y ha spoke wyþ þe Amyral : whar ich hym euere seche :  
& lokeap ȝe lordes do al-so : to kepe ȝou out of blame : 1660  
& certis, sirs, bote ȝe do : ȝe doþ ȝow selue schame.
- He proposes that they ¶ And take we þe heuedes of þys Sarsyns : & lede we *with* ous pader ;  
Euerech trossye on at his dyuys : to þe arsoun of his sadel.  
we willeþ hym lede forþ boldely : *with* ous wiþ-oute affray, 1664  
& if þar is any þat spekeþ oȝt by : say we it is our pray.  
& wan we comeþ to þe Amerel : al-so mot y waxe,  
y schal him presenty<sup>1</sup> fair & wel : þe heuedes alle sixe."
- each present a head to Balan. Naymes dissuades them, but ¶ "Ro[land]," quap neymes, "why spekestou so ? þou ert of heȝe parage,  
Wilt þou þe selue & ous a slo : þorw such a fol outrage ?" 1669
- Terry supports Roland, and "Be dure god," quap Terry þo : "it wil be riȝt god rage,  
Riȝt as he wil let it be do : for þat is vassalage."
- [leaf 22, bk] each takes a head. ¶ Euerech of hymen þan tok an hed : as it dyuysid was, 1672  
& forþ þay riden wyþ-oute dred : god help him for is gras !
- Naymes Duk naymes be-fore þaym gan to fonde : & afferrom lokede þo :  
þan saw he Mantryble afforn him stonde : & þe brigge þat lay þar-to.  
"By-holdeþ now, syrs," quap duk Naymoun : "þe ȝondre faire Citee :  
Me þynkeþ þat þat is Egrymoun : þer we scholden bee." 1677
- points out Mantrible, and says it is Aigremont. "Nay," quap Richard of normaundye : "soþely y þe sigge,  
Hit ys Mantryble þat þow sye : wyþ þe grete brigge.  
A þes half Mantrible þe grete Citee : ys þe brigge y-set, 1680  
Al of marbre y-mad ys sche : wyþ a quynte iet.  
Sixty pers þar buþ þar-on : þat both grete & rounde.  
þe werste piece of hem ecchon : cosnede a þousant pounce.  
Oppon ech pere þar stent a tour : enbataild wyþ queynte engynne, 1684  
Twenty knyȝtes of gret honour : mowe wel beo loged ynne.  
þe syd walles þat on þe brigge stondeþ : buþ an hundred pas of lengþe ;  
Bot how dup sche ys no man ne fondeþ : þe ryuer is so gret of strengþe.
- of marble with sixty piers. The bridge is 100 yards long,

<sup>1</sup> MS. prensenty.

- pe brigge ys of fair entaylle : on brede fourty fete. 1688 and 40 yards wide.
- An hundred knyghtes wyþ-oute faille : þer-on affrount mowe mete.
- x. cheynes þar buþ ouerthwart adrawe : in stedes dyuers y-set, Ten chains are drawn across it.
- As heuye as twenty men drogy mawe : ys euerech wyþ-oute let, 1691
- In tyme of nede þe chaynes buþ bent : & on othre tymes buþ oundo.
- Wo wer him þat wyþ-inne went : 3yf he þar hadde a fo.
- Oppon þe tour aundward rizt : þar stondeþ a iuwel gay, Upon the tower
- An egle of gold þat schynap brizt : so doþ þe sonne on may.
- þar is þe wacche y-mad anizt : wyþ sarsyns of gret aray ; 1696 the watch is set.
- Many ys þe gode cristene kniȝt : þat þar haþ be don of day.
- þe fairnesse þar-of no man ne wot : to telle it al on sonder.
- þe dotouse ryuer me calt flagot : þat raply renneþ vnder : The river is called Flagot.
- A geant ys maked briggeward : þat symeþ þe fend to see ; 1700 A giant is keeper of the bridge.
- Wyþ an hache an honde heuy & hard : þe brigge ay kepeþ hee.
- þe geant ys so wonderly wyȝt : and so pereillous on ys pray, So mighty is he that
- þat þoȝ þar come an hundred kniȝt : þar forþ to take þe way,
- Bot if þay don as he wol rizt : wyþ-oute more delay, 1704
- Hasteliche wil he wyþ hem fiȝt : & don hem out of day.
- for wham he may with þe hache arede : þoȝ he be i-armed wel, he would be a match for 100 knights.
- He clefþ him doun to þe gurdelstede : ouper is body þorw echdel."
- Euerech til oper þanne sede : "ther by-gynneþ luther haunsel, 1708 The French are frightened, but
- To don þe Message þat we buþ bede : to Balan þe Amyrel."
- ¶ "Lordes," quap Ro[land], "now hauy cast : to speken wiþ þat hounde. Roland says he will tackle the giant [leaf 23]
- To knowe ys wil y wil him tast : & drecchen him a stounde.
- Til ȝe alle be wel apast : & þan iwil him ȝyue a wounde 1712
- Wyþ duremental by godes fast : þat he ne schel neuere be sounde." and slay him.
- ¶ "Nay," quap Naymys, "by myn hed : so ne schalt þow noȝt ; 'Nay,' says Naymes,
- If þou dudest as þou sed : it miȝte be dure aboȝt.
- Ac wan we seep him doþ after my red : & makieþ it nobyng toȝt, 1716 'leave him to me.'
- & y wille ouercome þe qued : wyþ lesynges þat y ha þoȝt."
- ¶ Alle þay duden þanne assente : to þat ' þat he gan sigge, They agree,
- & forþward faste on hure way þey wente : & entrede on þe brigge. and ride on to the bridge.
- þe Briggeward was y-redy ther : at entre of þe ȝeate, 1720
- Wyþ an hol hundred of sarsyns fer : þat y-armed stode þar-ate.
- ¶ Duk Naymes furst gan to entre : þe brigge aforewarde,
- Ac þe Briggeward sone him hente : by þe brydel harde ; Naymes tries to cross, but the bridgeward seizes his bridle.

- & sone he askep wyþ<sup>o</sup>ute ensoygne : wyderward he was boun 1724
- Naymes says "Sir," saip naymes, "to Egremoygne : pys day if me mown."
- "Was men buth 3e," sayde he agayn : "þat comeþ in such aray?"
- they are  
on a message  
to Balan. "We buþ," quap he, "with Charlemayn : þe emperour, for soþ to say.  
To Egremoyne we moste on his message : to þe Amyral sir Balan. 1728
- Let ous nozt of oure vyage : y praye þe, gode man."
- 'Ye must  
first pay a  
toll,' said the  
Saracen, ¶ "3e mote furst," quap þe Sarazyn : "syþþe 3e þyder fondeþ,  
For þe truwage make fyn : þat to þis brigge longeþ."
- & N[aymes] hym answerede sone : "do tel me wat is þe trow, 1732
- & ful longe or hit beo none : þy pees schal wel be dow."
- ¶ þan Ansuerede þe wardeyn : "hit is nozt lyzt to fynde,  
Ac nopeles y-hure me seyn : and haue it on þy mynde.
- 'of 100  
maidens, Of grete hertes refet at al : y asky of 3ow an hundred, 1736
- & clene maydens faire smal : al-so manye y-sondred.
- 100 falcons, An .C. of gyrfacouns y asky bo : y-muwed ouer 3ere,
- and 100 white  
steeds ; and  
for each  
hoof of  
your horses  
a carbuncle  
stone. & an hundred of whyte stedes al-so : þat neuere no sadel bere.
- For ech fot of 3our stedes : þat 3e now rydeþ on, 1740
- 3e mote al-so her paye nedes : a charbuncle ston.
- Quyclych payeþ þys truwage : þat 3e han i-hurd me sigge,  
And wendeþ forth on 3our viage : ouer þys iolif brigge.
- & þo3 3e now wolde leue hit : & turne aze as 3e come, 1744
- For-gon 3ou tidde þerfor 3our heued : & þer-of nemap gome."
- Naymes says  
it shall be  
paid,  
that their  
baggage is  
following,  
and there he  
will find all  
he requires, ¶ "Wel, depardieu," nemys said : "al pys y knew be-fore,  
of Al þyn askyng schaltou beo ipaid : siþþen it nys no more.
- Oure harneys comeþ her be-hynde : wiþ to hundred men araid : 1748
- With hymen schalt þou al þyng fynde : þat þov hast to ous y-said ;  
Gyrfacouns y-muwed & white stedes : & hertes of gresse y wene ;
- [leaf 23, bk] And louely ladies on hure wedes : maydeyns þay buþ clene.
- and besides,  
coffers of  
gold and  
precious  
stones. þey bryngþ al-so cofres fyld : of golde & precious stones ; 1752
- The keeper  
agrees,  
and lets them  
pass. Tak y now þer-of wat þou wylt : and let ous gon at ones."
- ¶ "y grante wel," saide he þo : "suppen þay schulleþ paye."
- þe rayne þanne let he go : & let hem gon hure waye.
- After him alle þan toke þe way : & Ro[land] gan lawe smere, 1756
- And lawyng to Naymes gan he say : þat he was a gret lyere.
- ¶ As þay ouer þe brigge gunne ryde : Ro[land] him lokede aboute,  
A Sarasyn saw he ful of pride : ouer þe brigge þat lyned oute ;
- As they  
cross Roland  
sees a  
Saracen  
leaning over  
the bridge ;

- boȝ adoun on þat tyde : and cauȝte hym by þe snoute, 1760 stoops down,  
 and pitches him  
 over.  
 cast him on þe ryuer vnryde : & folghede þo forþ þe route.  
 "Alas," quap Neymys, "wat man is þys : alas ! why fareþ he so ? 'Alas !' says  
 Naymes,  
 'you will  
 bring us into  
 trouble.'  
 þys heȝe herte & his hardynys : schel brynge ous alle in wo. 1764  
 had leuere þan myn hors y-wys : were we fayre ago,  
 we wern a-spyed of þys : god kepe ous fram oure fo !"  
 þay wern þanne ful sore agaste : þe Citee to wende þorwgh,  
 Topeles þanne þai prikede faste : til þay wer passed þe borwgh. They ride on,  
 l þey wer comen to Agremoun : neuere þey ne astynte. 1768  
 bi-fore þe castel þay liȝte adoun : & at þe zeate in þay wente.  
 Wyþ a sarsyn þan þai mette : þus barouns gode & lel,  
 and askede of him wiþ-oute lette : war was hure Amyrel.  
 e sarsyn hym answerede þer : þat faste þar-by was he, They enquire  
 where Balan  
 is.  
 ittynge on a grene erber : & talkede wyþ kynges three. 1772  
 "Lorlynges," saide naymes þanne : "delyuerieþ me þe wryt,  
 at Char[les] sente to sir Balanne : for y wol presente hit.  
 wolde fayne be þe furste : to tellen him oure message, 1776 that he will  
 deliver the  
 message ;  
 este þe Amyral don ous burste : for any of oure outrage."  
 "Let of, sir duk," Sir Ro[land] sede : "whar-to spekest þow so ? but Roland  
 says  
 yn herte ys naȝt to such a dede : me self y wil hit do.  
 schal be þe furste of alle : þat our message schal a-bede, 1780 he will be the  
 first to tell it,  
 Wat so euere þar-of falle : y ne leuet for no drede  
 e lettre þat ys til hym wryte : takeþ him me, y praye,  
 e þe heuedes þat we of smyte : ȝusterday by þe waye ;  
 als ȝe alle schul sen it wel : boldelich wil y gon, 1784  
 y wil hymen to Amyrel : presenty vp anon :  
 schal it don apertely : be god þat me haþ boȝt :  
 or drede of him ne his maygny : nel ich spare noȝt."  
 l was til hym þo by-take : be hure commun assent, 1788 They give  
 him the  
 heads,  
 and enter the  
 arbour.  
 [leaf 24]  
 e þat present to Amyral make : in-to þe erber þan þay went.  
 þe A[myral] þan þay founde þer : conselyngge with kynges þre,  
 and wyþ hymen a gret power : sarazyns of hure meyne,  
 e nopeles þey of fraunce : affore þe Amerel ȝude 1792  
 and Ro[land] wiþ sterne continance : ys message þus gan bude :  
 Od þat ys our Sauyor : þat al þyng knowþ & seeþ,  
 Saue Char[les] þe Emperour : & al þat wiþ him beep !  
 Roland  
 delivers his  
 message  
 "God save  
 Charles



- and the devil  
take thee,  
and all thine. & þe Amyral þat sittest ther : þe deucl þe for-drawe, 1790  
And alle þat buþ wiþ þe her : & lyueþ on þ<sup>e</sup> false lawe :  
For þov mayntenest þef reynours : her nez to þyn honde,  
To gon aboute & robby ous : þat walkaþ on þy londe.
- Yesterday  
seven robbers  
of thine tried  
to rob us,  
but they were  
sadly  
deceived.\* ¶ As we zusterday at pryme : hiderward comen euene, 1800  
on þe gate we mette of þyne : stronge þeues seuene.  
pay þozte ous þar haue be-reyued : of our hors & of our gere,  
Ac pay were foule deceyued : hure heuedes pay lefte there ;  
& if þou ne miȝt me þar-of ilyue : be-hold her war pay beep." 1804  
a caste þe heuedes by-for him blyue : þat he & hyse hit seep.
- He throws  
down the  
heads, ¶ "Herkne ȝut more," said he þan : "þe cause of oure comyng.  
and says, "We haue  
been sent to  
demand the  
holy relics We buþ y-sent<sup>1</sup> to þe, Balan : be Charlis, þe Comly kyng.  
By ous sente he þe to sayn : to warnye þe by-forn, 1808  
þe nayles þow scholdest him ȝelde aȝeyn : & eke þe croune of þorn,  
& þe opre relyqes þat buþ fre : þat þou hast away y-born  
Out of Rome ys owe Citee : & elles þow gest a torn.
- and the five  
knights. ¶ þov scholdest hym ȝelde aȝe also : ys barouns þou hast y-take, 1812  
And out of þy prisoun let hem go : & for hymen amendes make.  
& certis he sayþ bote þow do : after þat is lettre spake,  
And if thou  
refuse  
we will He wol þe chacy as ys fo : & werche þe sorwe & wrake.  
Whar ere þou be founde in londe : of hym þou miȝt be adrad, 1816  
for þe tyȝd be-take wyþ honde : & to parys þou worst y-lad,  
And thar þanne þe tyȝd be an honge : ys auow he haueþ y-mad.  
take thee  
and hang  
thee.\* So schel he quyte þe þy wronge : & þer-of wil y be glad."
- Balan is  
enraged,  
swears he  
will have  
vengeance, ¶ þe Amyral wax þan wod & wroþ : wan he haþ herd him speke ; 1820  
& be Mahoun he swor ys op : þat he wolde ben awreke,  
Of pilke þat slowe kyng Moradas & ys opre kynges fyue :  
and specially  
on Roland. & namlich of him þat so hardy was : to fore him so to stryue, 1823  
& presenty til him with such outrage : pay heuedes bi-fore him selue,  
& so vylenly beode ys message : & schamy hem in euery helue<sup>2</sup>.
- [leaf 24, back] He orders  
him to  
stand aside, He het Roland þan stonde a-side : ther him self al-one,  
Til he hauede y-herde þat tyde : þe speche of euerechone.  
& be Mohoun þan swer þe schrewe : þat he nolde ete no bred, 1828

<sup>1</sup> MS. of y-sent.<sup>2</sup> This line at the bottom in the margin :—

for þy schrewed sake as he sayde &amp; to ous spake.

- Til he were al to-hewe : for þe message þat he abed.  
 “Ȝif þow dost so longe faste” : Rolond to him sede,  
 “þyn herte þanne wil ouercaste : & ake wil þyn hede.”  
 ¶ Duk neymys com forth þan : & by-fore Balan ȝude, 1832 and then  
 And in þe fairest manere þat he can : þe Message he gan abude ; Naymes  
 “Now list to me, sire Amerant : & tak it to non outrage, courteously  
 War-for we buþ to þe y-sent : þoȝ y telle my message. delivers  
 Charlys kyng & Emperour : sente þe to sayne, 1836 Charles’  
 þat þou scholdet wyþ honour : ȝelde vp til him aȝeyne message to  
 þe ryche relyqes þat þow toke : in Rome ys owe Cytee : Balan.  
 & al-so þow scholdest loke : þat is barons were sent aȝe,  
 þat þow hast to þy prisoun take : & liggeþ among hure fone : 1840  
 & his amendes þou scholdest make : of þe harmes þou hast him done :  
 Outher such word he þe sent : þat he nel neuere a-stynte,  
 Or he þehabbewyþ strengþey-hent : outherslawe þe with swerdes dynte.” Balan tells  
 “Wel,” said he, “y knowe ys wille : fairer þou abust þy tale. 1844 him to stand  
 Let anoþer ys message telle : & stond þou þer by þy fale.” aside till he  
 ¶ þan com forþ hym bi-fore : Rychard of Normaundye ; has heard  
 A strong knyȝt & a wel icore : was he wiþ-oute lye : the others.  
 “Herkne,” said he, “sire Balan : Ameral of nubbye : 1848  
 & y wil her as y can : my message to þe ounwrye. repeats the  
 ¶ Charlys þe noble kyng of fraunce : sendeþ to þe tydynges,  
 þou scholdest leue þy false creaunce : & belyue on heuene kynges :  
 þou also ȝelde him þe croune of thorn : & ys othre relyqes dere, 1852  
 þat þou dudest a-way be born : in Rome thar thay were ;  
 And eke ys barouns þat buþ y-take : þow scholdest hem ȝelde aȝeyn ;  
 And supþe to him amendes make : for hymen þat buþ y-sleyn.  
 Outher certis for þy wronge : he doþ þe now to seyn, 1856  
 þow worst ful heȝe an honge : wyþ-inne þes moneþys tweyn.”  
 “Ȝea : haue þow yuele grace” : þe Amyral sayde an hye, Balan  
 “þou semest me by thy face : Rychard of Normaundye.  
 He þat slow myn owen Eem : þe kyng of Mandralye ; 1860  
 Were þou he by þys leem : sone þow scholdest dye. tells  
 Now haue y herd three of ȝow : þat wolde i were in bale. him to join  
 Go thow to þy felawes now : & þe furthe let telle ys tale.” and let the  
 ¶ þan com forþ a doppepeer : duk Basyn of Genueys, 1864 [leaf 25] the message.

Basyn  
delivers the  
message.

& to þe Amyral he wente ner : & til hym þus he seys :

"Wost wat word he þe sente : Charlis kyng by ous.

As þou ne wilt be y-schente : to zelde him his barons,

And þe scherpe croune of thorn : & þe nayles three,

1868

War wiþ cristes flesche was torn : on þe rode tree ;

& if þou tarie longe : her-wyþ þou worst y-schent

Heze þow worst an honge : such word he þe sent."

Balan tells  
him to stand  
aside with  
Roland,  
and let  
another  
speak,  
and after  
him Terry,  
of Ardennes,  
a stern,  
grim man,  
fiercely  
repeats it.

"ʒea, trupt" : quap þe Amyrale : "y set nozt by þy sawes.

1872

let come þe fyfþe & telle ys tale : & go þou to þy felawes."

¶ þe duk of Ardane, sire Terry : sterte forþ on is fet :

Wyþ a sturne look & hardy : is herte was ful gret :

1875

Ys berd was long, & al whyt hor : a was [a] grymly freke.

His brest he bend vp as a bor : & to Amyral gan he speke :

"Now list to me, þow Sarazyn : þat makest so gret bobaunce,

What word þe sende Charlemyn : þe noble kyng of fraunce.

1880

Charlis þe kyng of fraunce : þe sende pis tydyng,

To leue þy false creaunce : & belyue on heuene kynge ;

& zelde him þou scholdest þe croune of þorn : & þe nayles three,

Hwych þou & þyne away han born : of Rome is owe Citee ;

& ek ys barouns þat þou hast y-take : þou scholdest hem sende a-gayn,

1885

& ys amendes fayre make : for pilke þow hast a-slayn :

And ellis for þy wronge : or come þus monþes twayn,

Wel heze þou werst an honge : he sendeþ þe þus to sayn."

Balan is  
frightened at  
him,

¶ þe Amyral herknede hym ful wel : how he tolde ys tale :

1888

A-fryzt he wax of hym sum del : so grym a was in gale :

"þow semest bet," quap Amerel : "a deucl gonde in dale,

þan a man of flesche & fel : so grym þou art a fale.

and asks him  
what sort of  
a man is  
Charles.

Ac nopeles woldy of þe fayn : wyte wyþ-oute strif,

1892

Wat maner man ys Charlemayn : & how he let his lif."

Terry him ansuerede þan : at schorte wordes & rounde :

Terry tells  
him that he  
is a noble  
and religious  
man,

"Charlis ys a noble man : nys nowar is per y-founde :

He loueþ god almiȝty wel : & eke al holicherche.

1896

þat day come neuere ne schel : þat [he] ne wil almys werche.

Gode knyȝtes wil he haue : goyng with hym aboute.

Were a her so god me saue : þan wer þou brozt in doute ;

and that  
with one  
blow of his  
fist he could  
knock out  
a man's  
brains.

With ys hond a wolde þe ȝyue : a such on on þe luste

1900

þat al þy breyn scholde clyue : al aboute ys fuste."

[leaf 25, back]

¶ Wan þe Amerel herd him sigge so : in ys herte wax he wroþ :

Balan is  
angry,  
vows to hang  
Terry,

"þou ferly freke," saide he þo : "of o þyng say me soþ :

And y wer now on þy mastrye : as þou art her in myne,

1904

Tel me be waye of companye : how wostou þan do by me."

"By þe cristendom þat y fong" : quap Terry þanne sone,

"þou scholdest be ful heze an-honge : þis day zut or none."

"So schalt þow beo þe self" : saide þe Amyrel þanne :

1908 and calls the  
sixth.

"Go stand ther in þat other helf : & let come þe sixte manne."

¶ þan com forþ a dopþepeer : Erld Ogier þe Deneys,

Then comes  
Ogier, and  
delivers the  
message.

& to þe Amyral he nezeþ neer : & til him þan he seys :

"Charlemayn, kyng of fraunce : sente þe word be ous,

1912

þow scholdest, wiþ-oute more distaunce : zelde him his barouns,

& þe scherpe croune of þorn : & þe opere reliques dere,

þat þow & þyne away han born : of Rome ther þay were

& cristendom þou scholdest fonge : & leue þy foule entent ;

1916

& amendie hem of þy wronge : of al þyng þou hym hast offend.

& if þou tariest ozt to longe : þan certis ert þow schent,

He þe wil don heze an-honge : & such word he þe sent."

"y haue y-hurd .vj. of my fon" : saide þe Amyrelle,

1920 Balan calls  
for the  
seventh  
knight.

"Do let come þe .vij. anon : and is tale let hym telle."

¶ Wyth þat com sterte þe gode Gy : þat duk was of Borgoygne,

Guy of Bur-  
gundy next  
delivers the  
message,

þat bore was in normaundy : y-norschid in Sessoyngne.

He comeþ by-fore þe Amyrel : & ys message abed him þere,

1924

Riȝt as y ȝow now telle schel : ȝif ȝe me wollep here :

"Charlis, þat is of fraunce kyng : & of Rome Emperour,

Hoteþ þe þorw alle þyng : to leuen : þyn error ;

& hoteþ þe þat þou for-sake : þy false god Mahone,

1928

& to cristendom þat þow take : and belyue on godes sone.

Such word al-so he sendeþ þe : Charles þe Emperour,

þat þou him scholdest sende aȝe : ys knyȝtes of honour<sup>1</sup> ;

And ȝelde aȝe þe croune of thorn : and the naylles three,

1932

War-wiþ cristis flech was torn : on þe rode tree ;

& þe other relyqes ryche : wyche þow him hast y-raft ;

Oper ellis certis he wil þe syche : whar þou euere be laft ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. hononour.

- & take þe as a proued þef : an do þe wel heze an-honge. 1936
- and advises  
him, if he  
loves his life,  
[leaf 26]
- & þer-for if þy lif is lef : ne tarie þou nozt to longe :  
Y wil þe techen how þow may : abaty al þys strif ;  
& loke þou do as y þe say : if þou wilt haue þy lyf.  
Al þy clopes þou schalt of don : with wyche þou art y-shrid, 1940  
& eke þyn hosyn & þyn schon : let don of þer myd ;  
Lef þou sengle on þy scherte : & bar-fot þou most go,  
Al open-her, & eke ounge : and be-for Char[les] com þow so,  
Wyþ a rop aboute þy nekke : to Char[les] so wend an hye, 1944  
& loke þat þou þan mukly speke : & to hym mercy crye.  
& þus schalt þou gete þy pees : & esye al þy lond :  
& elles ne wol he neuere cees : til þow beo brozt to schond."
- The Emir is  
fearfully  
angry, and  
swears
- ¶ þe Amyral gan waxe wonder wroþ : wan he herd him speken : 1948  
By Mahoun þanne swer he ys oþ : þat sone a wolde be wreken  
Of hymen þat hadde ys kynges slayn : & dryuen him so to schonde.  
He swor he scholde neuere beo fayn : til þey were alle an-honge.  
¶ þe zeates were þanne sone y-schet : & þe draht-brige vp y-drawe ;  
Sone he pozte wiþ-oute let : þus barouns lete don of dawe : 1953  
þe Amyral bende ys browes rowe : & clepede is consaile :  
Kyng Sortybrant & oþre ynowe : ther come wyþ-oute fayle.  
"Barouns," sayd he, "þanne sone : telleþ me ȝour purpos : 1956  
What is þe beste wyþ hem to done : þat buþ now her enclos,  
þat habbeþ þus my kynges slone : & foule oundo my los ?  
Whar-for to ȝow y make my mone : eniugieþ ȝe my foos."
- They advise
- ¶ Sortybrant spak þat word for alle : wan þat þay were assent : 1960  
"Sleep hem wat so þer-of by-falle : þat is our iuggymment.  
Hastely doþ þey be to-hewe : & sleep hem wyþ such turment ;  
& so þow schalt hemen alle schewe : þat þay buþ al mys-went.  
& þar-after schalt þow wende : to Morymond wiþ þyn host, 1964  
And take þe kyng þat is ounhende : Charlys for al þis bost ;  
& discoumfitye þar his ferde : þat wiþ hym dar abyde.  
þan do an-honge him wyþ þe berde : Char[lys] for al ys pride.  
& þus þow schalt a-wreke þe : of alle þyn enymys." 1968  
"By Mahoun," þanne sayde he : "þys ys a god deuys.  
To my Gayhol goþ anon : & þe fyue þat buþ ther  
Bryngeþ hem out euerechon : to hure falawes her.
- He will hang  
them all.
- He and his  
Council
- consult what  
is to be done  
with the  
knights.
- death by  
torture,
- and after-  
wards to go  
to Morymond  
and attack  
Charles.
- Balan is  
pleased, and  
orders Oliver  
and the others  
to be brought

- bys day ne wol y on myn halle : drynke whit wyn ne red, 1972 that they may  
Til y [haue] seen þe glotouns alle : on schentfule deþe be ded." all be hanged  
together.
- F**Lorippe, his doȝtre þe cortoyse : in chambre þar sche was, Floripas  
In the paleys y-hurde noise : & þyder sone she gas ; hearing the  
And er sche cam strauȝt in-to halle : neuere heo ne stente, 1976 noise  
comes to the  
[leaf 26, back]
- & forþ sche þraste among hem alle : & to hur fader ryȝt heo wente.
- By þ<sup>e</sup> hond she tok him euene : & drow hym by þ<sup>e</sup> opre helue,
- & askede of him what were þay seuene : þat stode þar by hem-selue. and asks her  
father who  
the knights  
are.
- ¶ "Doȝtre dure," þan saide he : "as Mahoun me auauunce, 1980 Balan tells  
her,
- Hit beþ kniȝtes y-sent to me : fram charlis kyng of fraunce ;
- Myne kynges þay han a-slawe : hyderward as þay come,
- & avoweded wel wiþ hure sawe : & presented þe hedes to me.
- And ȝut were þay noȝt apaid þer-by : bote wolde me greue more, 1984
- Hure message þay abode dispitously : & schamede me ful sore,
- Now, dure doȝtere, myn Al-one : wat ys þy gode red and asks her  
what she  
advises him  
to do with  
them.
- Wyþ myn enymys for to done : þat habbeþ ido pis qued ?" She recom-  
mends that  
they be
- ¶ þan him ansuerede þat faire mayde : sleȝ sche was & sad : 1988
- "So þat ȝe þer-of be a-paide : my red schel sone be rad ;
- Doþ þat hy be faste y-bounde : sonderliche euerechon,
- & supþen y-cast to þe grounde : euerech by hym on ;
- & þanne wyþ swerdes sherp y-grounde : let hewen hem flesch & bon, hewn to  
pieces.
- þat no lym be laft y-sounde : & chaste ȝe so ȝour fon." 1993
- ¶ "By Mahoun, doȝtre," saide he : "parforny y wol þy red,
- Ne schal no mete synke on me : or þat þaye beo ded.
- & ek hure felawes for wham þay come : of pryson y wil do fecche,
- & þay schulleþ haue þe selue dome : nel y no lenger drecche." 1997
- ¶ "Fader," quap sche, "let beo þyn haste : it is wel neȝ þe non, Floripas says,  
'It is now  
near noon,
- Hit were ful longe ȝow to vaste : or pis were al y-don.
- Takeþ hem to me al þe hepe : and goþ ȝe to ȝour mete, 2000
- And sykerliche y wil hem kepe : þe wyle þat ȝe doþ ete.
- After [þe] mete fol wel moȝe ȝe : al þys þyng ful-fille. I will take  
care of them,  
and after thou  
hast eaten it  
can be done.'
- Now, fader, as ȝe louyep me : doþ ȝe as y telle."
- ¶ "Doȝtre," saide þe Amyrel : "þy counseil ys god & hende ; 2004 Balan agrees,
- So tak hem to þe & kep hem wel : til y to þe sende."
- þan him spak kyng Sortybran : wordes wel ourkende : but Sortybran
- "þow ert a-sotid, as y am man : þy doȝtre wil þe schende.



- By-penk þe wel of þat brayde : þat touchide duke Myloun ; 2008
- How ys doȝtre hym betrayde : þat hyȝte Saramoun,  
 Wan sche tok out Godefrayde : þat was in his prysoun.  
 þe Duk þanne þay yuele arayde : to deþe þay duste him doun,  
 & she hym wedede after þan : þat was hure fader fo. 2012
- Many ys þe manlich man : þat þorw womman ys by-go."
- ¶ Wanne þat mayde y-hurde þys : for wrappe she was neȝ wod ,  
 For angre sche wax al pal y-wys : & spak til him with mod ;  
 "Say, þow gadelyng horesone : lecher, & stronge þef ! 2016
- To speke yuele euere ys þy wone : Mahoun ȝyue þe euele þref !  
 Wy woldest þow letten wiþ þy speche : þat ys my fader lef ?
- If y may lyue y wol þe teche : a torn þat schal þe gref."
- ¶ "Doȝtre," quap Balan, "y þe pray : now let al þat be stille, 2020  
 & tak þys prysouns & go þy way : for haue þou schalt þi wille."  
 "As ȝe willeþ," sche gan say : þe barons sche wendeþ tillle :  
 "Now comeþ wyþ me," quap þat may : "ȝut haue ȝe her non ille."  
 ¶ Wyþ hure þan way forþ þay nome : þorȝ-out halle & bour, 2024  
 Til þay in-to hure chambre come : þat y-buld was on a tour.  
 Wan þay weren alle yn y-paste : þe mayde & þay yfere,  
 Florippe het schitte þe dore [faste] : & welcomedem with gode chere.
- ¶ Roland y-saw erld Olyuer : & ys herte wax glad anon, 2028  
 Wel sone þo he neȝed him ner : & to hym gan he gon.  
 Ro[land] kuste him louelich ther : & þonked god al-on,  
 þat he haþ founde him hol & fer : thar among his fon.  
 Olyuer þanne gan a-spye : what is fader doþ ; 2032  
 & Roland sayde ; "sykerlye : for þe he ys ful wroþ.  
 þer nis no murgȝþe þat may him gayne : y say þe verament,  
 Til he may hure word certayne : by þe al how it stent."  
 ¶ Wan þay were ther alle y-same : þes doȝopers xij. of fraunce, 2036  
 Florippe þat maide hadde ioie & game : to sen hure contynance.  
 To hem com þan þat iantail may : & corteisly spekeþ hem tillle :  
 'Lystep now, Lordes, wat y schal say : & perfonyeþ ȝe my wille.  
 ȝif ȝe þynkeþ to askape away : þat my fader ȝow ne spille, 2040  
 To me ȝe mote sykery ȝour fay : my purpos to fulfille :  
 & þat is : to do me haue a þyng : þat al myn herte ys on."  
 "We wolleþ," quap Naymes, "be heuene kyng : so þat we mowe it don ;

warns him  
that Floripas  
will betray  
him, for

[leaf 27]

women are  
not to be  
trusted.  
Floripas  
becomes pale  
with rage,  
abuses  
Sortybran,

and threatens  
him.  
Balan quiets  
her.

Floripas leads  
the knights

to her  
chamber.

Roland sees  
Oliver,  
runs to him,  
and kisses  
him.

Oliver  
enquires after  
his father.

Floripas says,  
that

if they wish  
to escape,  
they must  
promise to do  
one thing for  
her.  
Naymes  
promises to

- So þat þou ous sykerye affore : to help ous in this clos, 2044 do whatever  
þat non of ous ne beo for-lore : her among our fos." she wishes.
- þar-to sche sykerede þanne hure fay : to help hem be hure miȝte,  
In alle wyse þat sche may : to daye for þar riȝte. [leaf 27, back]
- ¶ & þanne tok sche þat swete wyȝt : duke naymes by þe honde : 2048
- "Tel me," sche saide, "þy name ariȝt : as þow art freo to fonde." She asks  
þe duk aunswerede þat mayde free : humelich & fayre : Naymes his  
name.
- "Damesel, certis me clepeþ me : duke neymys of Bauayre. He tells her.
- Char[li]s consailer am y pryue : y-sent on his message." 2052
- "By Mahoun, sire," saide sche : "þou madest an hard vyage."
- ¶ þanne to Richard of Normandy : wente þat burde briȝt, Then she asks  
& prayedem faire & corteysly : to tel hure what he hiȝt. Richard's  
name ;
- "Certis y wol ȝow telle my name" : sayde he, "with-oute lye, 2056
- In fraunce men calleþ me, ma dame : Richard of Normaundye."
- "ȝe : Mahoun," quap sche, "ȝyue þe schame : for þyn oncortesye ! and re-  
proaches him  
for having  
slain her  
uncle.
- Myn vnclē þow slowe a kniȝt of fame : Corsible of Mantrie.
- Ac suppe þou art now on þis clos : among þes fair ferede, 2060
- y wol þe kepe fro þy fos : haue þov none drede."
- ¶ To Rolond þanne tornde þat mayde : þat was so gret of fame : She questions  
Roland next.
- "Ia[n]tail kniȝt," til him sche sayde : "tel þov me þy name."
- "Ful fayne," sayde þe noble knyȝt : "wil ich, swete dame. 2064 He tells her  
who he is,
- Ro[land]<sup>1</sup> my name is callid riȝt : wan y am at hame ;
- And Char[les] suster sone y am : y-comen of heȝ parage ;
- And to þy fader fro him y cam : to bryngen him message."
- þan hur spak þe<sup>2</sup> damesel : "myn herte now waxeþ liȝt, 2068
- þat þyng now hope y gete wel : on wham myn herte ys piȝt."
- Wel corteysly þanne aboȝede she : & to help hure gan him praye.
- "Tel me þy wil," þan sayde he : "& y wol do what y maye."
- ¶ þan hure spak þat burde briȝt : "herknyap my chesoun : 2072
- In Charlis companye ys a knyȝt : as fers as any lyoun ;
- Gwy of Borgoygne ys name ys riȝt : y-called in euery toun ;
- On hym for-soþe my loue ys liȝt : for he ys god baroun.
- Wan þat my fader sire Balan : be-segede Rome Citee, 2076
- þar saw y þat doȝty man : to done a dede free :
- Lucafer þe kyng of Bandas : a strong kyng of renoun,

<sup>1</sup> [Duk] Roland my name is riȝt.

<sup>2</sup> [þat] þe.

In a stede y-armed was : & rod to *pat* baroun.

Lucafer egrelich wyþ a spere : mette hym in þe feld, 2080

& Gy þe strokes away gan bere : manliche *with* ys scheld.

Gyoun þanne adrow is brond : & 3if him a strok *with* mayn,

þat hors and man a-doun it wond : & leye þer on þe playn.

Riȝt fro þat day in-to þis : myn herte hap he y-raft. 2084

[leaf 28] y-now y hadde of ioie & blys : were his to me-wārd laȝt ;

Wolde he be my worldly make : & wedde me to wyue,

For his loue wold y take : cristendom þanne blyue.

As þow art a trewe knyȝt : & for doȝty baroun y-knowe, 2088

Help me to haue þat worldly wyȝt : & y<sup>1</sup> wil ben is owe."

Roland laughs, says he knows Guy well, and that he is close to her at the moment. ¶ Rolond aunswerede hure & low : "dame, by god of heuene, y knowe Gyoun wel ynow : he ys my cosyn euene ;

Fuliche ne is he noȝt now fram þe : vj fet y-mete in brede." 2092

"For þy cortesy þan 3if hym me" : F[lorippe] to hym sede.

"Dame, þy wille schal be don : as y am trewe kniȝt.

He tells Guy to take her, but Guy refuses without Charles' consent. Floripas is enraged. Com now forþ, sir Gyon : & tak þys burde briȝt !"

þan Ansuerede þat baroun : þat wyuy nolde he noȝt, 2096

*With*-oute assent of kyng Charloun : þat had him vp i-broȝt.

¶ Wan þat maide hym vnderstod : on herte she wax ful wroþ :

For angre sche braid hure wel neȝ wod : & by Ma[houn] swor

hur oþ,

þat bote if Gy to wyue hure take : þat sche had loued so longe, 2100

Ecchone þay scholde for is sake : or euene beo an-honge.

Roland persuades Guy, ¶ þan hym spak duk Roland : to Gy<sup>2</sup> ys cosyn free,

"Tak thys damesele by þe hand : as þow louest me."

"As þow wolt y wol done" : saide þe kynde kniȝt. 2104

and they are betrothed. By þe hond þanne he tok hur sone : & be-treupede þat swete wiȝt.

þan wern þay glad boþe ȝonge & olde : & comforted wel apliȝt :

Floripas & Flo[rippe] hure handes gan vp holde : & þankede god almiȝt :

"Lord," sche saide, "y þanky þe : þat al þyng sest & wost, 2108

now þou hast y-sent to me : þat þyng i louede most.

says now she will be baptised. & now wil y for þe loue of hym : my false fay for-sake,

& eke my fader and al my kyn : and *cristendom* to me take."

Loueliche þay wente to-gadre þo : & cussede i-same an haste, 2112

<sup>1</sup> MS. & : & y.

<sup>2</sup> to [Gyoun].

To fermye loue by-twene hem two : & to makye hem stedeuaste.<sup>1</sup>

Wan þat F[lorippe] þat swete þyng : so y-comforted was  
A dore sche openeþ & let hem in : in-to a pryue plas. } a.

Then  
Floripas

War sche tok out of a shryn : araid of riche golde, 2116 brings out  
þe relyqes precieuse & fyn : þat y 3ow ere-of tolde.

Furst sche tok out þe croune sterk : þat crist on is heued let ;  
& suppe þe nailles þat wer scherp : þat percede him honde & fet ;  
þan after sche tok a cloþ of gold : þat was þer-for arayde 2120

the crown  
of thorns,  
and the nails,  
and lays them  
on a cloth of  
gold.

& oppon þat cloþ ase heo wold : þes reliqes fayre layde.

"Be-holdeþ, lordes," sayde sche þan : "& buþ now murie & glad ;  
þis ys þat tresour whar-for 3e han : trauayl<sup>2</sup> & tene i-had ;  
Which þat my fader let bere away : of Rome as 3e knowe, 2124

[leaf 28, back]  
'See here,'  
she says,  
'the relics  
for which  
you came.

& haueþ y-kept hit in-to þis day : euere as for ys owe.

Fyrum[bras] þat my broþer ys : to me þys þyng be-toke,  
& be-fore al þyng bad me kepe þys : & faste hit her by-loke.

& now 3e haueþ þar-of a siȝt : & whar hit is y-knowe. 2128

Wyþ 3ow 3e take hit be day or nyȝt : & holdeþ hit as 3our owe.

¶ þis barouns þanne hir þankede alle : wan pay y-knewe hir wille ;  
& Adoun pay gunne<sup>3</sup> falle : knelyng on þe erthe stille.

Take them  
now and keep  
them.  
The knights

pay worschepede hem þanne with al hure miȝt : & kussedem euerechone ;  
& þan wente sheo þe burde briȝt : & tok hem vp anone, 2133  
& laide hem in-to þe schryn aȝeyn : & dude hure þar sche was.

worship the  
relics,  
and then  
replace them  
in their  
shrine.

þan were þys lordes glad & feyn : & þankede godes gras,  
þat pay hadden founde þore : þe relyqes ryche and fayre, 2136

For whicche pay hadde þar byfore : ben in gret dispayre.

**N**ow leue wil y þis matere : of þys Barouns stille,  
And turne aȝeyn þar y lafte ere : & of þe A[myral] y wil telle.  
þus wyle was he on halle sittyng : with is puple atte mete,

Now I will  
tell of the  
Emir.  
While Balan  
is at meat,  
comes a  
Saracen  
King.

þan com þer an heþene kyng : rydyng atte zete ; 2141

A wykkeder man þan he was on : nas non on al hure lawe :

Many was þe cristene mon : þat he had broȝt of dawe.

Kyng Lucafer of Bandas : cleped was he of alle.

2144 Lucifer of  
Bandas, is  
his name.

he liȝt him down, & forþ a gas : spedilych in-to halle,

& byfore þe Amyral þanne he goþ : & by-gan him fort-affrayne :

<sup>1</sup> [þan was Florippe on hure bour : murther þan sche was, } b.  
þe barouns sche ladeþ wyþ honour : in-to a pryue plas.]

<sup>2</sup> [muche] trauayl. <sup>3</sup> Adoun pay gunne [ecchone].

- He asks  
Balan if it is  
true that
- "Sir," saide he, "ys þis soþ : on contre þat men sayne ?  
y hurde telle a wonder cas : supþen þat y slep uake, 2148  
þat þy son Fyrumbras : conquerid was & take.  
þe beste knyzt of is hond : oueral he was y-holde  
þat was knowed in any lond : for to do dedes bolde."
- Balan says,  
yes,
- "¶ "3ea, for-soþe," quap þe Amyrel : "& þat ys al my tene : 2152  
Taken ys he, y wot it wel : and y-lost for euere y wene,  
þys 3onder day at morymond : conquered for soþ was hee,  
With a þef, a cristene hond : þar many men dide hit see.  
Hys conquerour ys a bold baron : & on of Charlys route, 2156  
Ac now lyþ he in my prisoun rízt : & opre mo wel proute.  
And now buþ come opre al-so : vij bolde bachelers,  
þat han me mucche schame ido : & y-slawe my messagers,  
Fram kyng Charlis as þay were sent : to meward on message. 2160  
Ac alle þay schullen sone be schent : for hure foul outrage ;  
neuere ne wil y ete more : or þey be dede ecchone.  
þe opre al-so þat come bifore : þe same way schulleþ gone." 2163
- and are in  
charge of his  
daughter.
- "¶ "Whar buþ þe messagers, y wolde hem sen" : sayde þe heþen kyng.  
"In my do3tere bour þar þay ben : sche haueþ hem in kepyng."  
"By Mahoun," saide Lukafer : "þat ys wel gret folye ;  
For wommanes wyt goþ her & þer : in hymen ys no3tt affye.  
By þy leue y wol go ner : of hymen y wolde aspye, 2168  
Of Charlis purpos wat hit wer : þat makeþ so gret maistrye."  
"¶ "Go forth," saide þe Amyrel : "& gret wel my do3tre dere,  
& bid hure þat sche wardye wel : þe messagers þat buþ þere."  
Lukafer turnd him & faste gas : & spedde him til þe tour, 2172  
þar as Flo[rippe] chambre was : ibuld wiþ gret honour.  
He put him-seluen on a cas : whar-for agat a schour,  
þat turnd him þar after to harde gras : to schennes & dolour.  
¶ Kyng Lukafer of wham y spake : was a wykked man ; 2176  
To þe chambre so harde he rake : þat þyderward he ran ;  
Ac wan he com þe dore to : ys herte was so gret,  
þat he dedeynede to clepe, "oundo" : bot ran to wiþ is fet :  
So harde he bot here in þat haste : þe kyng þat was so strong, 2180  
þat þe henges boþe barste : & þe stapel þar-with out sprong.  
& þo3 þe dore were strong & huge : wiþ þe strok sche fle3
- but that his  
conqueror  
has been  
taken with  
others,  
[leaf 29]
- 'That is  
foolish,' says  
Lucifer, 'I  
will go and  
see them.'
- Balan gives  
him leave.
- Lucifer  
hurries to the  
chamber of  
Floripas ;
- he bursts the  
door in with  
his foot.

Out of þe Hokes & fram hir sege : x. vet y-mete wel neȝ.

¶ Wan Flo[rippe] y-saw þe dore vn-do : al chaungede hure hew & mod : Floripas in alarm tells Roland this is her intended husband. 2185

“ þis is he þat fader myn : ordeyneþ my lord to be ;

In al hepenis ys no Sarsyn : wikkeder þan is he ;

Wiþ is hond oppon o day : at rome in ȝoure Citee, 2188 At Rome, but for Guy,

he slow þer þat it y say : hundredes<sup>1</sup> mo þan þree.

nad<sup>2</sup> my spouse þat her is : þar i-born him doun

Lyues nolde he haue ilaft y-wys : no criste man in þe touz.

& now haþ he<sup>3</sup> my dore y-broke : ous alle in dispyte ; 2192 he would have killed every Christian.

y pray ȝow þar-fore al þus y spoke : ys trauail þat ȝe quyte.”

¶ Ro[land] answerde þat mayde anon : & bad sche scholde be stille, Roland says he'll make him suffer. [leaf 29, back]

“ For þat torn or þat a gon : ful sore him schal a-grille, 2196

neuere ne brak he dore non : þat dude him so mykel ille.”

With þat com he among is fon : with a ful wikked wille. Lucifer feels

¶ þar fond he þes lordes alle : in armure araid ariȝt ;

& F[lorippe] with þe middel smalle : þat þan was sore affriȝt, 2200 jealous because Naymes has Floripas by the hand.

Duk naymes stod next hur by : & had hure by þe honde.

þe kyng þar-of hadde envy : & comeþ by hymen stonde ;

& þoȝ duk naymes were al hore : he was ful wel ymaked, 2204 He seizes Naymes by the beard,

ys helm was don of by-fore : & ys heued was þo al naked ;

ys berd was huge & strazte along : & Lukefer þo gan taket,

And wyþ his fyngres þat were strong : harde gan he schaket.

By þe berde as he hym held : a askeþ wiþ-oute drede :

“ Wannes ert þow, olde cherld : & what makest þou in þis pede ? ” and asks him what brings him there. 2208

¶ “ Y am of Bauere,” þan saide he : “ & haue þar herytage ; Naymes tells him who he is.

And am Char[lis] consayller pryuee : y-sent hider in message.

& alle þus opre þat ȝe her see : buþ lordes of heȝ parage ;

Dukes, & erldis, & barons in fee : & holdeþ by baronage.

A message ous sente Charlis kyng : to þamyral þat is so bolde, 2212

& for we told it noȝt at is lekyng : he pot ous her in holde.

Let of my berd, y pray þe now : suppe y haue þe tolde.”

“ y nelle,” quap he, “ y make auow : to Ma[houn] þat stont in golde. Lucifer refuses to let go till he has told him how the Christians pass their time. 2216

Tel me furst by þy lay : wat doþ ȝour men of fraunce ;

Of hure disport & ek hure play : what is ȝour mest vsaunce ? ”

<sup>1</sup> MS. huddredes.

<sup>2</sup> nad [ibe].

<sup>3</sup> he [her].



- Naymes says  
first they  
hear Mass  
and after
- ¶ “þe manere of hem,” þan sayde he : “is erly gon to cherche,  
& after-ward ech man on his degree : after his stat þay werche.  
þo þat lordes buþ of þe lond : in som tyme of the 3ere, 2220  
pay takeþ hure facouns faire an hond : & fareþ to ryuere ;  
some go  
hawking,  
some hunting,  
some to  
jousts and  
tournaments ;  
others  
play chess,  
or draughts,  
& Summe a deer honteþ of hem þar went : & some to fox and hare ;  
& to ioustes and tornyment : wel mo þer wendeþ ofte þare.  
þo þat willieþ to leue at hame : pleyeþ to þe eschekkere, 2224  
& summe of hem to iew-de-dame : & summe to tablere :  
Summe þay vseþ a maner of play : to caste wel a spere ;  
and some  
fence,  
And somme for to sekyrme asay : with swerd & bokelere.  
þys buþ þe games of my contre : þat y þe telle here.” 2228.  
“3ea : alle pese buþ nozt worþ a stre” : þan saide Lucafere.
- ¶ “We haue a game in this contray : to blowen atte glede.  
þow schalt lerny þat ilke play : as Ma[houn] me helpe & spede.”  
þan was þer on a chymenay : a gret fyr þat brente rede, 2232  
þan duk drow he be þe berde gray : & to þe fyr a doþ him lede.  
[leaf 30] ¶ þan lawede Ro[land] on Olyuer : & to hym gan to saye :  
“þow schalt sen god game her : suffrie we hem to playe.”  
Lucafer þanne tok op an-haste : þe brennyngest bronde a coupe, 2236  
& to neymes-werd blew he so faste : þat þe fir ful on is moupe.  
“now tak þou þe brond,” saide he þan : “& blowe to me þou fonde.”  
“y wil,” quap naymes, “as y can” : & tok hym of his honde,  
Naymes þanne with-oute 3ede : & hadde þe kyng wiþ-inne, 2240  
& to þe schrewe he huld þe glede : & blew toward is chynne :  
So harde leid he þer-on is onde : þat sone þe lye out rende,  
and burns  
half his  
beard.  
Lucifer  
smites at  
Naymes,  
& in-to ys berd sone it sprong : & o syde þer-of hit brende.  
¶ Lucafer þanne wax nez wod : & drow out a schort fachoun, 2244  
& smot to neymys þar a stod : & þo3te haue born hym doun ;  
Neymes was war & sterte a-syde : & let þe strok to pace,  
who with a  
blow of his  
fi-t kills  
him.  
& with his hand 3yf him a strok ounride : wiþ-inne þe neckes space ;  
Such on a gurt him with is fuste : þat sondrede al þe liþ, 2248  
& ys necke þar-wiþ a-two to-duste : & ys e3ene flo3e out þar-wyp.  
þat bodi ful doun amidde þe fyre : with-oute any more delay :  
“now rest,” quap Naymes, “þou proute syre : þou playest a sory play.”  
¶ þan him lawede duk Rolond : & to naymes saide an haste : 2252  
“3ea faire hure falle þat ilke hond : þat so can foles chaste ;
- Roland  
laughs and  
compliments  
Naymes.

He wende wiþ is ferete : haue do þe vylonye,  
And now is fallen is nytyte : in-to ys owen eye."

¶ "Syre," quap Flo[rippe] "he louap þat fyr : let hym enchaufye ynne,  
zute nap he no desyr : to aryse and go þenne. 2257

For he hopede haf wedded me : of him he hadde enuye,  
þer-for in his iolyte : he cam to make maystrye."

To Duk naymes saide heo þan : "leue sir, faire þe falle, 2260  
þow hast delyuerid me of þe man : ich hatede most of alle."

[N]ow buþ þay delyuered of Lucafer : hur enmy þat was a schrewe.  
Byfore þes barouns þan Flo[rippe] ther : hure purpos gan thus  
schewe.<sup>1</sup>]

"Ac lusteþ now alle . what y schal say : & warny 3ow for 3our prow : 2265  
3e buþ her<sup>2</sup> in yuele aray : and in gret peril now. and then tells  
the knights  
her plans.

þe Amyrel my fader as he can : arayeþ him for þe nones,

She points  
out their  
danger,

To destruye 3ow sone euerech man : & for-hewe 3ow flech & bones. 2268

þys dom to day y demed<sup>3</sup> was : longe by-fore þe none.

now helpeþ 3ow silue on þes cas : or' ellis 3e buþ for-done.

3our helmes makieþ alle faste : hastilich on 3our heued,

and recom-  
mends them  
to arm,

& 3our scheldes on 3ow 3e caste : for noþyng 3e ne leuet:

Wan þay seþ 3ow armed wel : þe more þey wil 3ow drede. 2272

[leaf 30, back]

Gop out<sup>4</sup> of þis chambre snel : & doþ now as y rede ;

Secheþ þis paleys ouer al : boþe in lengþe & brede,

and kill all  
whom they  
can find.

& lokieþ 3e ne spare gret ne smal : þat he ne go to dede,"

¶ þat counseil þoʒte hem alle god : & þanked hur lasse & more. 2276 They

Hure helmes þay duden oppon hure hod : þey alle þat þer wore<sup>5</sup>

[Wherfor þay duden oppoun hure hod : hure helmes lasse & more ;<sup>6</sup>] arm them-  
selves,

Hure scheldes on hem fast pai caste : euerech of þes barouns,

& of þe chambre out þay paste : as hardy as any lyouns. 2280

and start off

Hure swerdes þan þay a-drowe : þat wern scharp y-grounde,

& alle þe Sarsyns þay a-slowe : þat þay afforn him founde.

and slay all  
whom they  
meet.

þan wente þay in-to þe heʒe halle : þar þat þe lordes sete,

& þoʒte þar to slen him alle : sitting atte mete. 2284

Roland cryede an heʒ "mountioye" : wan he be-huld þay scoute :

Roland cries  
out  
'Mountjoy ;'

<sup>1</sup> These 2 lines crossed through.

<sup>2</sup> MS. [Y warne 3ow] 3e buþ [now].

<sup>3</sup> MS. dememed.

<sup>4</sup> MS. out out.

<sup>5</sup> This line written over a line erased.

<sup>6</sup> This line in margin at bottom of page.

- Many sarsyn3 þan huld hem coye : þat raþer wer fers & proute.  
 Ac þis barouns laid hem on : wiþ swerdes al aboute,  
 And to-hewe hem boþe þar3 flechs & bon : þ<sup>e</sup> moste dol of þe route.
- he kills  
Corsyband ; ¶ Ro[land] 3af a strok with mayn : to Corsyband þe kyng, 2289  
 & clef ys body euene a-twayn : with þat stronge spryng.  
 Olyuer smot kyng Coudryn : & gert him in-to þe brayn.  
 and Oliver  
slays  
Coudryn. Many was þe proute Sarsyn : þat þar was þanne a-slayn. 2292  
 for Al so furde þis xij. barons : by þat foule<sup>1</sup> hepe,  
 Also wolde so many lyouns : among so many schepe.  
 þe mete þat was ful richly raied : in disches of golde fyn,  
 Wel sone it was a-doun i-leid : & schad was al þe wyn. 2296  
 þe coupes of gold were treden a-syde : al with manniss fet,  
 And alle þe sarsyns þat wolde abyde : þar þai lore þat swet.
- The Saracens  
jump out of  
the windows, þe Sarasyn3 þat þo wer laft on lyue : faste þay gunne fle,  
 & ful out at þe wyndowes blyue : be twye & ek be three, 2300  
 & summe fulle out ouer þe wal : in-to þe dupe dongoun,  
 & breke hure nekkes to pieces smal : so heze þay fulle adoun.
- over 100 fall  
into the  
dungeon, and  
break their  
necks. Wel an hundred out þar þraste : þanne in þilke wyse,  
 þat wiþ þe fallyng þai to-braste : & neuere ne miȝte aryse. 2304
- Balan flies, ¶ þe day hym was ful neȝ agan : & come was neȝ þe riȝt,  
 þan dude þe Amyral Balaan : turne him to þe flȝt ;  
 pursued by  
Roland ; Roland him folghede as wilde & wod : with is swerd a-drawe,  
 þat þo al bapid was on blod : of Sarsyns he haþ slawe. 2308
- [leaf 31] ¶ And heȝ dude hym þanne ascrye : & sayde : “ now kep þyn hed,  
 Torn to me, ich þe diffye : her riȝt þou schalt be ded.”  
 þe Amerel vm-til a wyndow ran : & þar lep out þat syre.  
 he jumps out  
of a window.  
He falls 20  
fathoms into  
the mud. Wel xx<sup>ti</sup> feþme ful he þan : of dupnisse . vmtil A myre. 2312  
 Duk Ro[land] after hym slent : with his swerd to slen him þanne,  
 Ac on a marbre ful þe dent : & smot þer-on a spanne.  
 Bote wan þ<sup>e</sup> A[myral] was scapid him so : þat Ro[land] hym<sup>2</sup> ne lauȝte,  
 Angry wax he þer-for þo : & þe deuele þan hym betauȝte. 2316
- Roland is  
wraht at his  
escape. ¶ “ Felawe,” saide sir Olyuer : “ ys he ous now a-scapid ?”  
 “ ȝe, for-soþ,” saide he ther : “ ac oþer-weys y hadde y-schape hit,  
 Miȝte ich him ones habbe araȝt : with my swerd y-grounde ; 2319  
 ys heued schold ich him habbe y-raft : ouþer ȝeue him deþes wounde.”

<sup>1</sup> þat [mykle].<sup>2</sup> MS. hyn.

- N**ow habbeþ þes frensche lordes stoute : conquered þe stronge tour, Now the French hold the castle;  
 And habbeþ a-slawe & dryuen oute : þe Sarsynz with vygour.  
 þay schutte þe gates & vp þay drowe : þe draȝtbrig al with gynne :  
 Wolde god þat þay had y-nowe : of vytailes þer wip-inne ; 2324
- For in þe contre þer with-oute : vitales geteþ þay none but they have no provisions.  
 Bot if þai moȝe be so stoute : to geten hem of hure fone.  
 ¶ þe Amyral þat was so riche : ys falle down fram an heȝ,  
 And walwede þanne on þe dyche : & was y-sowe wel neȝ. 2328 Balan is nearly suffocated in the mud, and cries for help.  
 Ase loude so he þanne miȝte : to ys men criede he there :  
 “Helpeþ me, myne men so wiȝte : & elles y daye here ;  
 Bote if ȝe me helpe vp to drawe : þe raȝere out of þis fenne,  
 Wip colde chile ich worþ a-slawe : ne go y neuere henne.” 2332
- ¶ Wip þat cam renne sire Bruyllant : þe kyng of mountmirree,  
 & þe kyng of combres, sir Sortibrant : is conseyler þat was pryuee ; He is drawn up out of the mud,  
 & op þay drowe . sire Balan : þe Amyral of þe dyche :  
 þat so on þe fenne þo was by-gan : þat a semede þe diuel ileche. 2336  
 Wanne þat he was vppe þo : & stod oppon ys fet,  
 for sorwe made he mucche wo : & mornynge eke gret ;  
 & saide : “ alas ! for Lucafer : þat was so strong a kniȝt,  
 & for my barons þat wern her : so noble men &<sup>1</sup> wiȝt ! 2340 and laments for the loss of his knights.  
 þe flour of Chyualarie now haue y lost : [al] for þe loue of one,  
 In wham y trust to alre most : & heo me haȝ by-gone.”  
 ¶ “Sire,” þan saide Sortybran : “y-lif me betre eft-sone, ‘Believe me  
 Ho þat ne wol bi conseil dan : som tyme hym schal mone.” 2344 [leaf 31, back] another time,’ says Sortybran. Balan  
 ¶ “By Mahoun,” þan swer þe Amyrel : sykyng al for tene,  
 “Er xv. dawes y wil ful wel : of hymen y wreke bene.  
 doþ now & leteȝ myn hornes blowe : quiclich and anon,  
 þat myne men mowe iknowe : what þay schulleþ don. 2348 orders his men to  
 þe tour we wollap anon asaile : & awreke ous of our fon.”  
 “It is now,” quap he, “sanȝfaile : to late þer-to to gon,  
 þe day him is a-go ful ny : y rede ȝut þat ȝe leue  
 Til to-morwe þat þe sonne be hy : ne schal hit no-þyng greue. 2352 attack the castle, but Sortybran advises him to wait till the next day.  
 By þat þy barons wolleþ be come : & beo assembled here.”  
 “y grante,” quap þamyral, “al & some : god counsail is god to lere. Balan assents.  
 Alas : for my gode felawe : Lucafer þat me ys wo.

<sup>1</sup> & [so].

He vows  
vengeance  
on the  
French

and Floripas.

Next morning  
the Saracens  
assemble.

The Emir  
tells them  
what has  
happened.

The Saracens  
swear to  
avenge him.

Their camp  
is 6 miles  
round.

The French  
are not afraid,

[leaf 32]  
but they are  
short of  
provisions.  
Balan induces  
Maubyn

to scale the  
wall, and  
steal his  
daughter's  
girdle,

pes frensemen him habbeþ a-slawe : now wot y wel it ys so. 2356  
 Ac to Mahoun y make auov : to wham ys al my chere,  
 To morwe we wollep with strengþe y-now : by-gynne þe sege here ;  
 & fro þat time<sup>1</sup> she ys by-gunne : ne schal heo neuere be laft,  
 Til þe tour azen be wonne : wiþ strenþe ouþer be craft. 2360  
 & þan schulleþ þay þeues stronge : þat þus ine habbeþ agreued,  
 Beo to-drawe and eke an-honge : & al-so for-gon hure heued.  
 & my doȝtre þe foule scoute : þanne schal heo beo for-brent,  
 For hure couyne to-ward þat route : & hure anbettymment. 2364  
 þey mote nedes wiþ-oute faile : sone ȝeld op þe toure  
 For þay ne haueþ noȝt vytaile : to lyue with dawes foure.  
 Of Charlemeyn ne his ferede : nabbeþ þay non help, y legge ;  
 y knowe it wel he wol drede : Mantryble for þe brigge." 2368  
 Amorwe be non þyder wern .y-come : so many Sarsynȝ wyȝte,  
 þat þe feldes wer keuerid alle & some : with scheldes & helmes briȝte.  
 þe Ameral þyderward haþ him nome, to þ<sup>e</sup> feldeward þan ful riȝt ;  
 & wan he sawe þat huge trome : his herte anon gan lyȝte. 2372  
 þan þe Amiral hem tolde with tristour : by him how [it] is y-went  
 & of þis barons on þe tour : how þay him habbeþ y-schent.  
 þay sworn þanne ȝunge & olde : to hym by commun assent,  
 þe syȝe scholde be þer iholde : to ȝer ȝyf nede by stent. 2376  
 þe sarsyns þan gunne vaste bulde : hure paulyons þar with-oute.  
 þe logyng of þat gret host fulde : vj. mylen to gon aboute.  
 Now god helpe þe frensche men : þay aren in grete drede ;  
 y not how þay schul a-scape þen : þat hy ne goþ to dede. 2380  
**N**OW buþ þus barouns of honour : al-one þer enclos ;  
 Wyþ Sarsyns biseged<sup>2</sup> in þe tour : an .C. þousand fos ;  
 Of hem alle þat þar were : drede had þei none,  
 [Ac] þe vytailles lacked there : hwyche were neȝ agone. 2384  
 ¶ þe Amyral clypede to him þan : Maubyn of egremolee ;  
 A s[uch] þ[er]ef as he was an : was non in his regnee.  
 "Maubyn," saide þe Amyral : "wolt pou hit vndertake,  
 To steȝe out ouer þe castel wal : wanne þe nyȝt gynt blake, 2388  
 & priuyliche stalke in-to hur bour : my doȝter þat lyþ þere,  
 & stele þe gurdel of honour : þat she ys woned to were ?

<sup>1</sup> MS. tine.

<sup>2</sup> bisegeged.

- & brynge him me hol & sound : wan þov hast don þy dede ;  
 And þov schalt haue an hundred pound : of golde for þy mede. 2392  
 for if y may þat gurdel dure : fro hure so take away,  
 To wynne þe tour þan am y sure : *with-inne* þis þridde day.  
 for whyle heo haueþ þat gurdel fyn : no hunger ne may hem deere. which is a talisman against hunger.  
 Stel me þe gurdel, gode Maubyn : ne spare þov for no fere." 2396  
 ¶ "Sire, my lord," þan saide þe þef : "let me þar-wiþ al-one ;  
 y wol do þe haue þat þe ys lef : *to-morwe* or it be none.  
 þis nyzt wil y my myster kyþe : & do an hardy dede."  
 þe A[myral] þankede him þanne swyþe : & sayde "Ma[houn] þe spede!"  
 ¶ WAnne þe day him was afalle : & tyme was come to walke, 2401  
 Maubyn toward þe Castel walle : pryuyliche gan hym stalke : At night he scales the wall  
 Sone he cam out ouer dych : wiþ wyles þat a couþe,  
 In al þe werld nas þef him lych : by norþe ne be souþe. 2404 (never was there such a clever thief);  
 Wan he cam to þe castel wal : oppon wend he by sleþþe,  
 Wyþ a laddre of lethere & crokes smal : sone had he þe heþþe.  
 Comen ys he wiþ-inne þe tour : þe paleys he þorw saþte ;  
 Atte laste he cam to Florippe bour : as þe deuþ [þan] him taþte, he reaches the chamber of Floripas ; and opens the door with a talisman,  
 þe chambris dore þat was y-schyt : sone he haueþ oundo. 2409  
 Wyþ a charme oundude he hit : and in he<sup>1</sup> wente þo.  
 And fyndeþ þe barons in bedde ibrozt : & hymen he charmeþ so, with which he also charms the knights to sleep.  
 þat hy ne myzte a-wakye nozt : for wele ne for wo. 2412  
 Wyþ a charme he makeþ fyr : & a candlee he attendeþ ;  
 And to haue is desyr : to Floripe bour he wendeþ.  
 þanne þe þef by-gan be-holde : þe chambre al aboute,  
 And fond hure þer þat burde bolde : liggyng vnder shroute. 2416 He searches for the girdle,  
 Slepþyng was þat ladi softe : þe þef him bar ful stille,  
 And to & fro wende he ofte : or he hauede ys wille :  
 Ate laste þan gurdel he fond : liggyng at hure hede.  
 Mahoun he þonkede þan of is sond : & gurd him *with* þat wede, and finds it lying at her head.  
 ¶ Gy of Borgoyne hure druwerþe : wakyng þe zute was hee, 2421 He puts it on,  
 & out at a wyndowe þan gan lye : þat lay to-ward þe see ;  
 Of þat host to be-holde þe huge aray : & of sarsynþ þe semblee.  
 þe wyle þe þef þo dude is pray : þat yuele moste he þee ! 2424  
 ¶ Wan he haueþ þat gurdel so : mo maystries wold he fonde ;

<sup>1</sup> MS. he [ys ago].



- [leaf 82, back] To lye be þat burde þoȝte he þo : & to don hure schame & schonde.  
 and then attempts to ravish Floripas. þe cloþes þat wern on hure bed ilaid : araid al wiþ þe beste,  
 Alle haþ he wiþ is hondes braid : doun be-nyþe hure brēste. 2428  
 þan lip sche þer, þat swete þynge : as whit as wales bon ;  
 ys feye blod him gan to pyngre : and ful on hure anon,  
 And hent hure by þe middel faste : & gan to kisse þat free. 2431  
 Florippe a-wok and cryde an haste : “ now, lordes, helpeþ me ! ”  
 Floripas awakes and cries out. “ Al þy crying is on waste ” : saide þe þef aȝee ;  
 “ y nam of hymen noȝt agaste : þei mowe noȝt helpe þe.”  
 Her maids run to her, ¶ Hure damesels with þat cry a-wakede : & vp of hure bed þay ras,  
 Al affraied þay sterte al nakede : til hure þar sche was : 2436  
 but are frightened and run away. þe þef to hem þan tornd is fas : þat was so blac so cole.  
 þan runne þai away & saide alas : & wende þat deuēl he wore.  
 By þat had he hur legges oundo : & saide, “ so Mahoun me saue,  
 Wheþer þov wile now ouþer no : þy maydenhed schal y haue.” 2440  
 Guy hears her cries, ¶ Gyoun þat on þe turet was : þorw grace iherd hure crye,  
 he torneþ him sone fro þat plas : & þyderward gan hym<sup>1</sup> hye ;  
 & wan he saw him wyþ yule gras : how he on hure gan lye,  
 hurries to her assistance, “ þef,” saide he, “ by godes fas : aȝeld þe, þov schalt dye.” 2444  
 ¶ þan wax maubyn sore afferd : & lep out of þe bedde ;  
 Ac Gy wiþ þat adrow is swerd : & a strok on him a ledde,  
 and cuts Maubyn down. þorw is heued, chyn, & berd : þat swerd adounward fledde,  
 & in-to þe breggurdel him gerd : þan ful he adoun & bledde. 2448  
 Floripas thanks him. ¶ þan sche spak þat burde briȝt : þat al naked was saf hir cerke ;  
 “ Wel worþ þat hond, my swete wiȝt : y þankie þe for þy werke,  
 ne haddeþ þou come to me now riȝt : & mad him of þy merke,  
 A schame for euere had he me diȝt : now her al on þe derke.” 2452  
 Guy tells his companions what has happened. ¶ His felawes awakede he þan & tolde : how he haþ founde a þef  
 þat was come in-to þat holde : hem alle to repref ;  
 & how þe þef þer riȝt scholde : haue leyen by ys lef,  
 Nad he come þo as god wolde : & disturbed þat myschef. 2456  
 & how he haþ sleyn him a tolde him al : þan wondrede þai myche þer  
 They all wonder how he got in, and what he came for. How he miȝte come oun þe wal : & into hure chambre,  
 Ac [sikernesse] nad þey non : his comyng whi yt was,  
 But vp þey sterte euerechon : & be-held him on þe fas. 2460

<sup>1</sup> hym him.

þan lai he þar so blac so pych : ys bodi was neȝ to-hewe.

“þes ys,” quap Ro[land], “þe deuel ilych : delyuery we ous of þ<sup>e</sup> schrewe.”

þai leid on him hande þan an haste : & to þe water gate him bere  
& into þ<sup>e</sup> see þer him caste : & bede pleye þere.

2464 They cast  
him into the  
sea ; but, alas,

Alas : þe tyme þat he was bore : for þe damage þat þer was þo :

For þo was þe gurdel þat he com fore : y-lost for euere-mo.

the girdle  
was on him,  
and is lost.

þat gret damage ho may restore : þat þanne was þar ido.

þoȝ he kyng ouper Emperour wore : to litel had he þar-to.

2468

¶ Bote wan þe frensche men vnderȝyte : by þe gurdel how it was,

[leaf 83]

Sory þai wern, ȝe mowe wel wyte : for þat foule cas.

They are  
grieved, but  
since there is  
no help,

Ac wan þai seȝe þat of þat þyng : recuuerer non þar nas,

þay lefte þanne hure mornyng : & þankede godes gras ;

2472

And confortede þat maide gent : þat was so faire of siȝte,

And to hure beddes aȝen buȝ went : & rest hem þer al niȝte.

they return  
to bed.

¶ þan erlich oppon þe morwe : wan þe sonne hure schon,

In the  
morning the  
Saracens  
prepare to  
attack the  
castle.

þe amereȝ & is host with sorwe : armede hymen ecchon,

2476

In gode & wel sykere wede : y-mad of fair entayle ;

And ȝurne þo þai ȝurȝne hem spede : þe frensche men for tassaille.

¶ þe A[miral] calleȝ sir Bruyllant : þe kyng of mountmyrreeȝ,

Balan calls  
a Council.

& þe kyng of Comble, Sir Sortybraunt : & othre of his pryueȝ :

“Herkenȝaȝ, lordes of honor” : saide he, “what is my þoȝt.

2481

Our þef ys slawe on þe tour : now he ne comeȝ noȝt,

If he wer now lyues man : afore þis had he come.”

“ȝea, for-soȝ,” saip Sortybran : “he is ded or nome.

2484

Let blowe þyn hornes riȝt anon : we wollep assaille þe tour.”

“now to,” quap þe A[miral], “euerechon : myne barouns of honour.”

Hure hornes þai ȝurȝne þo to blowe : ful many at one blaste,

The attack  
begins.

þe Sarsyns þanne þyderward drowe : to assaille þe tour an haste.

2488

Hure engyns þanne þay arayde : & stones þar-wiȝ þay caste,

They hurl  
stones at the  
castle.

& made a ful sterne brayde : wiȝ bowes and arbelaste.

Wel scherpe doȝ þay by-gynne : to assayle þe grete tour ;

Ac þes barons þat buȝ wiȝ-inne : defendieȝ hem wyȝ vygour.

2492

The knights  
fear nothing  
but want of  
food.  
They kill  
more than  
100 Saracens.

With stones & tres þat þay cast out : oppon hure fon þat day,

Mo þan hundred of hure rout : þay affulde ded on þe clay ;

Of noȝyng certis doȝ (?) þay drede : bot of liflode one.

Ac now failed boȝe wyn & bred : vatailles habbeȝ þay none.

2496

Hunger  
begins to be  
felt :  
Guy of  
Burgundy  
proposes to  
his com-  
panions

þe damesels þat woren of gret honour : for hungre þai fulle y-sowe,  
So dude Flo[rippe] brizt on bour : whar-for was sorwe ynowe.  
¶ G[y] of Borgoyne hure nywe spouse : confortede hir wat he maye ;  
for hure is herte was angwischouse : & to his felawes gan he saye :  
“Lordes,” said he, “3e wyteþ wel : þat we buþ her enclos, 2501  
Herde by-syged wyþ þ<sup>e</sup> Amyrel : & of opre þat buþ our fos :  
And now is this þe þridde day : þat oure vytails failed ;  
Our bred, our wyn ys al away : & harde we beþ asailed. 2504  
On myn herte me ys wo : þat þys wymmen waxeþ feynte,  
þey buþ so mate þay mowe nozt go : so hongre haþ hem teynte.

[leaf 33, back]

& if þat hy among ous here : for hungre scholde dye,  
For ous a gret repref it were : in euery companye. 2508  
Leuere me were, bi god almizt : in my body be wounded sare,  
þan to sen þys burdes brizt : for hunger þus forfare.  
Teche we þar-fore in dede : þat we buþ men of myzte,  
and do we now on our wede : & araie we ous to fize. 2512

to make a  
sortie against  
the Saracens,  
to obtain food.

& wende we out of þis stronge tour : to-ward þe Sarasyns ;  
And gete we ous vytailles with honour : among our enymys.  
Certis, come we hymen among : somme [vytaille] schulle we haue ;  
Ouper þey schullen don ous wrong : al so god me saue. 2516  
Wat so þei ben þat letteþ ous ozt : vytailles þar to vacche,  
non of ous ne sparie him nozt : strokes þat þai ne lacche.  
Teche we þar to oure fos : þat vytailles gete we konne,  
And cesse we neuere of our purpos : or we ha summe y-wonne, 2520  
Wer-wyth þes damesels of honour : hure lif þar-with mown lede,  
Til we haue other socour : of Charlis and is ferede.

Better it is to  
die fighting  
than from  
hunger.

Then says  
Floripas :

For betere is ous forto die : amonges our fos in fize,  
þan her-inne clynge & drie : & daye for hunger rizte.” 2524

¶ þan spak Flo[rippe] þat burde brizt : to hymyn euerechone :  
“Ful litel ys 3our god of myzt : þat vytailles ne sent 3ov none ;

‘Had ye  
worshipped  
Mahomet, ye  
would have  
had food ere  
now.’  
Roland asks  
to see her  
gods.

Hadde 3e worschiped our godes free : as 3e 3our han done,  
Of vytailles had 3e had plente : maugre al 3our fone.” 2528  
¶ Roland hure ansuerede & saide : “damesele, were þat soþ,  
We wolde þanne do be rayde : 3e þo3 þay ben ous loþ.  
Damesele if 3e wolde ous lede : to þe godes of wham 3e spake  
þanne scholde 3ee seen in dede : what worschip we wolde he[m] make.”

- ¶ Of þat word was sche wel paid : & þe keys sone sche hente, 2533 Floripas  
& with þis lordes þat buþ for-said : to þe maumerye þo sche wente.  
To þe Synagoge wan sche cam : þe dore heo haueþ oundo,  
þan wei by-fore þan sche nam : & þay come after þo. 2536  
leads them to the shrine,
- ¶ Flo[rippe] drow a ridel þan : þat stod be-fore þe frount,  
þan sawe þay þar Sir Ternagan : & eke hure god Mahount :  
Iubiter al-so & iouyn : stode þar hymen by-syde,  
& eke hure god appolyn : araid wiþ grete pryde. 2540  
draws a curtain and shows them Ternagaunt, Mahomet, Jupiter and Iouyn and Appolyn,
- ¶ þe mametes þat þai seȝen þare : bi-fore hure aldre siȝt,  
Euerchone y-maked ware : of gold þat schon ful briȝt,  
y-poured wiþ stones preciouſe : þat wern þer-on i-piȝt.  
þay schyne þer in tal þat house : so doþ þe candelizt. 2544  
all of gold and precious stones.
- þan was þar at hure fete : of encenȝ a fair dentee,  
And of balme þat smylleþ swete : & spycery gret plentee.  
¶ "Thesu lord," quæþ Olyuere : "fro wan comeþ al þis gold ?  
now wold it god þat it were : þar as me self it wold." 2548  
[leaf 84]  
Oliver wishes he had all that gold.
- ¶ þan hym spak sir Richard : þe duke of normaundie,  
"I kepte no more to my part : bot iouyn wyþ-oute lye,  
y wolde do þar-with to werche : in Rowan my Citee,  
And make newe þe heȝe cherche : in worschip of þe trynitee." 2552  
Richard says one would satisfy him.
- ¶ þanne sayde Duk Roland : "þe tale to fulfille,  
Char[lis] scholde haue þe remenant : miȝt it be at my wille,  
Tharwiþ miȝt he þanne an haste : restore Rome Cytee,  
þat þamyrall Balan waste : somtyme wiþ ys meȝnee ; 2556  
Roland thinks that if Charles had the rest he might
- & do make vp Seynt petris churche : þat þe Sarsynȝ han yule arayd,  
And othre gode werkes werche : þat god schold ben on apayd." 2558  
rebuild St Peter's.
- ¶ Florippe to hymen saide þen : "ȝe spekeþ gret folye,  
If ȝe doþ as wyse men : mercy ȝe hem crye, 2560  
Floripas tells them they should pray to the idols.
- & prayeþ hem ȝerne þat hy ȝov spede : as þay buþ gode and hende,  
& alȝyng þanne what ȝe ha nede : to ȝow wolleþ hy sende."  
¶ "Damesel," saide duk Gyoun : "my prayer ys now ido."  
"For gode," saide erld Ogeroun : "so ys myn al-so ; 2564  
Ogier says they are asleep, so
- Ac þay slepeþ alle so vaste : þay mowe ous noȝt y-here :  
y wil þar-for teche a caste : to a-wakye hem alle yfere."  
Ogier Deneys adrow is brond : & smot to sire Mahound,  
þat al to pieces he to-wond : & ful doun on þe grou[n]d. 2568  
he'll wake them. He breaks Mahoun to pieces.

- Oliver  
 sinashes  
 Termagaunt, Olyuer tok vp ternagan ! & casten aȝe þe wal,  
 þat legges & armes brek him fram : in-to peces smal.  
 and Richard Richard, þe duk [of] normandye : a drow is swerd wel fyn,  
 the other two. & al to-hew þe opre twye : iubiter & appolyn. 2572  
 Roland says ¶ "Parfay," þan saide duk Rolond : to þat maide briȝt,  
 those gods  
 are not very  
 strong. "þyne godes buȝ naȝt in hond : Wel litel ys hure miȝt,  
 for now þay buȝ a-down afalle : þay mowe noȝt vp aȝene."  
 Floripas is  
 converted and "þat is soȝ," saide þat briȝt in halle : "& þat is now wel y-sene,  
 If ich hem worschpie after þis : maugre mot y haue. 2577  
 for þay mowe noȝt her y-wys ' hem-selue fram herme saue ;  
 begins to pray  
 to Jesus, Ac y by-seche þat god of miȝt : þat diede on þe rode,  
 Hwich of marie þat mayde briȝt : while tok flechs & blode, 2580  
 Ase wisly as y lyue riȝt : a[nd] dayde for mannys gode :  
 þat Sone sum socour to ous diȝt : & helpe ous of liflode."  
 but faints  
 with hunger. nad sche þer noȝt of hure bone : fulich y-mad an ende,  
 Or heo for hunger had forgone : hir wit & ek hur mende. 2584  
 [leaf 84, back] A soȝenyng þanne ful hure oppone : & gan to walwe & wende.  
 "Alas !" saide þay euerechone : "wo is ous for þis hende !"  
 Roland lifts  
 her up, ¶ Ro[land] tok hure vp wel softe : & confortd hure wat he maye,  
 & for hure þanne sykede he ofte : & til þe opre gan to saye : 2588  
 "In myn herte me ys wo : þat our frend gynt feynte ;  
 Sche is so mat sche may noȝt go : so hunger hur haueȝ enteynte,  
 & if sche þus among ous here : for hunger daye scholde,  
 For ous for euere repref hit were : for heo is trewe & holde. 2592  
 Me were leuere, be swete iesus : beo iwounded neȝ þe dede,  
 þan to sen hure fare þus : for defaute of brede.  
 & now is þe pridde day a-gon : þat our vitaille gunne to slake,  
 & bred ne wyn ne haue we non : þat we hure mowe take, 2596  
 and proposes  
 to adopt Sir  
 Guy's advice,  
 and sally out  
 in search of  
 food. Hure to conforty wiȝ-in þis nede : ne non of þe burdes alle,  
 þer-for do we by Gȳ is rede : & vitailles ous schulleȝ falle.  
 ¶ Fare we out of þis castel her : vnto þe Sarazyns,  
 Ous to gete vytailes ther : amonges our enymys. 2600  
 & wan we comeȝ hem among : somme schulle we haue,  
 Ouȝer elles þay schulleȝ don ous wrong : al-so god me saue.  
 What so þay be þat letteȝ ous oȝt : our purchas for to maȝe,  
 for godes loue ne sparieȝ noȝt : hure crones þat ȝe ne crake. 2604

& if y þys day forþward spare : Sarasyn ouþer torke,  
for euere mot y þan for-fare : for my dayes werke.  
þer-for, lordes, on þys porpos : let ous now so by-gynne,  
þat we mowe þar of our fos : such vytailes ous y-wynne, 2608

Wer-with þis damesels & we : mowe oure lyues lede,  
Or we mowen bet y-socoured be : wiþ Char[li]s & ys ferede."

Alle þe opre barouns free : assentieþ to þat dede :

Now dure god in trynhte : grantye hem wel to spede ! 2612

**S**One þanne were þes barouns diȝt : in ful sykere wedes,  
In aketouns, helmes, & brynnes briȝt : & on styþe stedes.

þe Castel ȝate was opened þo : & þe draȝbrigge lete adoun,

& were in poynte forþ to go : þan spak Ro[land] to Naymoun, 2616

& prayde hym tabide þare : to kepe þat entree,

þe wyle þay made þat ilke fare : & þyder wer comen a-ȝe.

¶ Neymys answerede & sayde, "nay : why wiltou me mysbede ?

ȝut am y bold in myn aray : to don a mannys dede." 2620

"ȝe," quap Ro[land], "by my fay : þou art wel god at nede,

þow schalt forþ wiþ me þis day : þe betre þat ous may spede,

And duk Terry her schal leue : for he ys doȝty man."

Wan Terry hit herde, him gan greue : bot noȝt ne saide he þan. 2624

Wan Ro[land] hit a-perceuede & seȝ : þat he gan waxe wroþ ;

In is doynge he was ful sleȝ : & til him sone he goþ.

"Terry," saide he, "as þou art me lef : ipraye þe on godes name

þat þou ne take it noȝt to gref : þoȝ þou be laft at hame. 2628

Our on mot nedes leuen her : to kepe þis entree ;

y pray þe kepet gode vere : til þat we comen a-ȝee."

Ouneþe Terry wolde assente : to Abiden for þat nede ;

Noþeles þis lordes buþ for y-wente : crist of heuene him spede. 2632

¶ Forþ now prikeap þis bolde barouns : wiþ a wel hardy chere,

Al so fers as any lyouns : was euerech on is manere ;

Wel y-armed on sikere stedes : hure armure schon ful briȝte ;

Don þay þenkeþ doȝty dedes : longe or come þe nyȝte. 2636

Toward þe Sarazynȝ þay prykede faste : & þe sonne schon ful liȝte.

¶ þe A[myral] a-perceyuede hem þan an haste : & awondrede him of  
þat siȝte ;

Til him þan clipede he Sortybran : and Bruillant of mountmyrrecȝ :

All the  
knights  
approve of  
the advice,  
and quickly  
arm them-  
selves, and  
mount.

Roland  
wishes  
Naymes to  
remain and  
guard the  
gate,  
but Naymes  
refuses.

[leaf 35]  
Then Roland  
orders Terry  
to remain ;

he agrees,  
but with  
reluctance.

The knights  
sally out.

The Emir  
sees them,



"Telleþ me," quap þe A[myral], "if 3e can : what maner men buþ þee3,  
þat comeþ hiderward so boldely : prykyng on þis grene." 2641

"Hit buþ," quap þay "ful sykerly : frenschemen wiþ-oute wene,  
þat buþ new comen out of þe tour : & þenkeþ with ous to fi3te,  
& for to do þe deshonor : or we hen fullych di3te." 2644

and orders  
the assembly  
to sound.

¶ "Let blowe oure hornes," quap þe A[myrel], "y hote 3ow ri3t a-non,  
þat myn host may come with-oute dwel : to fi3te a3en my fon."  
þan mi3te men many hornes here : of latoun y-mad, & bras :

The Saracens  
arm in haste,

Wel sore þe Sarysyns affraid were : wan þay herde þat blas. 2648  
Hure armes þai toke to hem for fere : to aray hem in þat cas :  
A schrewed lessoun scholde þey lere : somme of 3am sone þas.

but are not  
ready for the  
French,

¶ þus Barouns fulle on hem ful sone : or þay wern y-di3te :  
& Ro[land] cride "mont-ioye," anon : & smyteþ on wiþ mi3te. 2652  
þay laid on þanne wiþ herte & wil : sturne strokes & grete ;

who kill  
more than  
1000 of them.

& to hewe þe Sarasyns boþe bok & bil : here herte blod mad þey swete.  
With hure swerdes sherp y-grounde : þai kuld hem & dude hem wo ;  
A þousant þay aslowe with-inne a stounde : & 3ut y wene wel mo.

¶ Wel fau3t þanne duk Rolande : wyþ durendale ys swerd adrawe :  
He hew of heuedes, armes, & haunde : of þe Sarasyns þat were on mawe.  
And so hym dude þe erld Olyuer : alle þat he mi3te a-reche,  
A kulde hem doun afforn him ther : & was hure laste leche. 2660  
& euerech of al þe frensche ferde : þar þay bere him so

[leaf 35, back]

þat euerech hap slawe wyþ dent of swerde : an .C. with-oute mo,  
So þat þe furste schak was ouercome : of hure enmys.

Clarion, king  
of Gryes,  
comes up  
with 15,000  
Saracens.

Ac þanne com frechs a ferly gome : Clarioun þe kyng of Grye3, 2664  
xv þousant in-to þe feld : bro3te he of Sarsyn,  
Wel araid wyþ sper & scheld : and in armure god & fyn.

Cosyn was he to Balaan : ys soster sone a was,  
In paynye was þer þan no man : þat in wrappe þerst sen ys fas. 2668

Roland cries  
for help,

¶ Wan duk Ro[land] y-saw him come : with so many men of mi3tes,  
To is felawes a cride al & some : "now helpeþ, hende kny3tes,  
Teche we now wat men we byþ : & gete ous vytailes here,  
þat we mowe ous fede þar-wyþ : & þe wymen þat buþ our fere." 2672

cleaves his  
skull,

With þat drow he ys gode swerd : and to Templar gan he ryde,  
& þor3 þe heued he him gerd : wyþ a strok þat tyde :  
A-noper a smot þat was him nez : & wel him gan a-rede,

- And gurd him fro þat heued an heȝ : in-to þe gurdel-stede. 2676  
 þan laid he on wiþ miȝt and mayn : in eche syde aboute ;  
 So many he haueþ of Sarsyns slayn : þat þe opere by-gunne hem doute and puts his  
 & floȝe þanne out of is way : wan þay knewe ys miȝte ; men to flight.
- So doþ þe larke on someres day : þe sperhauk þat is in flizte. 2680  
 ¶ þan assriede duk Roland : sir Berard of moundisdier : Roland then  
 “Berard,” said he, “let go þyn hand : & tech hem þat þou art her, perceives  
 And by my trowþe fande y schel : to don al my power, Berard, and  
 & ho-so wil noȝt now do wel : for-sake he þys myster.” challenges  
 him. 2684
- ¶ þe speche þat Ro[land] to Berard made : gerte here hertes sprynge,  
 þay laide on þe Sarsyns strokes sade : as herde as þay miȝt flynge.  
 Faste þay foȝte þanne euerechon : & laide hure fon to grounde,  
 & to hewe hem boþe flechs & bon : & ȝaue hem deþes wounde. 2688  
 So many of hem thar had for-heawed : Roland & is route,  
 þat al þe feldes þoȝte y-strawed : of dede men al aboute.  
 ¶ þan turde hymen þys bachelers : & seȝe comynge there  
 xxiiij<sup>th</sup> of faire somers : whiche þat heuy bere, The French  
 2692 see 24 pack-  
 horses  
 loaded with  
 provisions  
 of all kinds,
- Wyþ vytaylles boþe gode & fyne : icharged alle þay worne ;  
 Boþe wiþ bred & wiþ wyne : wiþ flour & eke wiþ corne ;  
 Wyþ grys, & gees, & capouns : wyþ veneȝon & wyþ oyle,  
 Wiþ motoun, & bef & bakouns : and othre gode vytayle. 2696  
 Kyng heruer of Goran : þe vitailles hadde y-sent  
 To þe heȝe Amyral sir Balan : þyder þanne to present,  
 Be neȝtentene vitailers : þat of þat syde were,  
 þat þanne dryuen þey somers : to þe A[miral] as y said ere. driven by  
 19 attendants. 2700
- ¶ Wanne þe frenschemen y-seȝe hem come : aȝen hem hy toke þe waye, They slay the  
 & by-trappede hem þanne al & some : to wyte what ladden paye. escort and
- Ac wanne þe barouns it i-knewe : what þay in lode hadde, 2703  
 þe Sarsyns þanne þay alto-hewe : & þe vytailles with hem þay ladde. carry off the  
 provisions.  
 ¶ Wyþ þat come out þe Sarasy[n]ys : þat rathere were noȝt a-raid ; [leaf 36]  
 xxx. þousant of stoute paynymys : in armis wel a-said. Then come  
 30,000  
 Saracens.  
 þey wern y-armed in-to þe tep : & araid wel for þe fiȝt.  
 Wan þis barouns hymen seep : somdel þay wern afriȝt. 2708  
 To Duk naymes & Scot Gwylmer : þan Ro[land] gan to crye :  
 “Dryueþ forþ þe vytailles ther : [ȝond] to dure an hye,<sup>1</sup>  
 Roland tells  
 Naymes to  
 drive on the  
 convoy

<sup>1</sup> to [þe tour] an hye.

- while he and Oliver  
protect them. And y me-self and Olyuer : wyþ þys oper part  
Wolleþ come be-hynde her : & kepe þe rereward. 2712  
now spede 3ow þat 3e were : as 3e loueaþ 3our honour,  
Wyþ hors & al þat ilke gere : wyþ-inne þe 3onder tour."
- The Saracens  
rally and  
pursue them. ¶ Alle þe Sarsyns þat were þanne : by-gunne hem to relye  
& after hem faste come renne : & by-gunne hem to ascrye ; 2716  
Ac Ro[land] tok his companye : & let þe Somers pace,  
And torneþ to hem-ward boldelye : to mete hem in þat place.  
Nov help hem þe he3 kyng of heuene : þat art of miztes most !  
Ne were þer þo bot kniztes nezene : to fize a3en þat host. 2720  
¶ þey fulle to-gadre atte laste : & by-gunne a newe fize ;  
þe barouns layde on hem vaste : wiþ swerd faire & brizt ,  
Of alle þe route was þar non : þat þe frensche a-razte arizt,  
þat þai ne cloue hym flechis & bon : & dryuen hem down with mizt :  
In a playn þat was ful fair & grene : þat lay þar nez þe tour, 2725  
þe frensche men to muche tene : was mad þat harde schour.  
¶ þe Sarazyns þanne atte laste : wan þey seze þat cas,  
Glayues scherpe þai gunne caste : & dartes y-feþered wiþ bras. 2728  
Duk' Basyn, a doppeper of fraunce : þor3 þe heued i-gerd þer was,  
& ful doun ded þar by chaunce : þan saide þe frensche "alas !"
- The French  
are hard  
pressed. ¶ Duk Ro[land] & erld Olyuer : þan þay bleynte a syde,  
& so he dude þe gode Ogeer : & Gy wolde nozt abide, 2732  
For drede of the lancyng þat com ther : of speres þat fulle ounryde  
þor3 þat so war-of þe frensche wer : dyscomfyted nez þat tyde.  
¶ þan cam Clarioun þe sturne kyng : & loude hem gan ascrye : 2735  
"Falleþ on hem þai buþ fleoyng : we schulleþ hem haue an hye."  
Gyoun turde til him hys stede : and sayde þo, "þow schalt lye,  
Arst y schal þe make blede : her riht ich þe diffye."
- Basyn is  
killed. ¶ þe while þat Gyoun drow ys brond : & þat word had spoke oneþe,  
þar com a dart to hym fleand : & herte his hors to deþe. 2740  
þe gode knyzt þanne him ful a-non : and eke ys stede of prys ;  
& wel sone þer fulle him vpon : an hundred of Sarsyns.
- They begin  
to give way. þan was þar þat stronge baroun : among is fon y-take.  
þe Sarasyns dude his helm a-doun : & maked is hed al nake, 2744  
His handes þanne þay toke riht : & layden him be-hynde,
- Guy chal-  
lenges  
Clarion. He is bound, And ase faste as tweyne mizt : wiþ a corde þay dude him bynde,
- His horse is  
killed;
- he is taken  
prisoner.

- And suppe þe schrewes toke a clout : to don him more tene, [leaf 36, bk]
- & byndep ys ezene þar-wip about : for he ne schold noȝt sene. 2748 and blind-folded.
- ¶ þanne made sir Gy. a dulful mon : & sayde, "welaway,
- A, Ihesu lord, wat schal y don : y am i-lost þis day !
- Alas ! Char[les] vncle myn : & kyng i-crowned free,
- Now y knowe wel-a-ffyn : þy message schendeþ me." 2752
- Clariounz saide to þe kniȝt : " þow syngest an ydel songe,
- þis day schaltou ben yuele y-dyȝt : & to morwe heȝe an honge."
- ¶ Wan þe oþre barons it wyste : þat Gy was so y-take,
- Wat þay miȝte do þay nyste : bot gret sorwe þay gun make. 2756 The knights
- Alle þe vitaylles þay hauede nome : þan þai lete hem gon,
- & gadrede hem to-gadre alle & some : to help ech oþer anon. let the convey go, but Oliver throws
- Ac arst erld Olyuer him<sup>1</sup> bi-þoȝte : wan he hem leue schel, 2760 a barrel of wine, 3 loaves,
- Of a somer þan he cauȝte : of wyn a ful barel,
- & of<sup>2</sup> bred loues three : y-mad of flour of whete ;
- & Capouns y-bake al-so tok he : foure in pilke hete,
- & iij. pecokkes y-bake on past : & a syde of venyȝoun ; four capons, three peacock pies, and some venison, inside the moat.
- & þese vytailles ther hap he cast : in-to þe dych adoun, 2764
- & to his felaschipe him is adrawe : wip hymen for ta-byde,
- Hwich þe Sarazyns þat were ourmawe : angryde in euery syde. The Saracens drive them back,
- þe frensche men þai hadde y-dryue ; wel neȝ þe tour þat stounde,
- So hard batail þai hadde hem ȝyue : with wepnnes scherp y-grounde.
- ¶ Ac wan þay neȝede soneȝ hure strengþe : hure hertes spronge vp ageyn, but they rally.
- þay dryuen hem aȝen an aker lengþe : þe Sarazyns in þe pleyn ;
- & in þe reculynge þat þay made : an hundred of hem wer sleyn,
- Wyþ sturne strokes þe frensche hade : ȝyuen him in-to þe breyn. 2772
- þe Sarsyns þan lefte þat discoumfit : & to þe tour þay buþ ago.
- Olyuer þ<sup>e</sup> vitails noȝt for-ȝyt : bot after wente þo.
- To þe tour þai come to-gadre an haste : & spedilich in þey wente,
- & After hymen made þe gate faste : & þ<sup>e</sup> draȝbrig vp þay bente. 2776 They retire inside the castle, and draw up the bridge.
- Sory men þay alizten alle : of hure stedes þan adoun,
- For þe meschef þat was by-falle : on Basyng and Gyoung.
- ¶ Of þe paleys þan com adoun anon : Flo[r]ippe þat burde briȝt,
- & to Rolond sche ys agon : & askede of him ful riȝt : 2780 Floripas enquires after Sir Guy,
- " War is he, myn owene spouse : Gyoung, þe gode kniȝt ?

<sup>1</sup> him [wel].

<sup>2</sup> of [i ulted].

Now y sen hym noȝt in þis house : a-gon ys al myn hiȝt."

and when she ¶ "Damesele," said he wiȝ-oute faille : "to sayn soȝ of þy make,  
Hit ne may beo no consail : þe Sarazyns him habbeȝ itake, 2784  
& Duk Basyn we han y-lore : among þe Sarsynȝ blake.  
& ȝut for Gy me greueȝ more : certis for þy sake."

[leaf 37]  
hears of his  
capture,  
faints, and

¶ Wan Flo[rippe] of ys takyng herde : for sorwe sche saide, "alas !"  
Sche wrong hur haundes & foule ferde : & sowened in þat plas : 2788  
And wan sche out of sowenyng ros : loude sche gan to crie :  
"Alas ! ys Gyoun wiȝ is fos : alas ! for sorwe y dye.

threatens,  
if Guy is not  
within 2 days  
rescued, to  
give up the  
castle.

Certis bot y haue Gy aȝen : wiȝ-inne þis dawes twye,  
þis ilke tour schal izelde ben : þe þridde day be Marye. 2792

Alas ! heo saide, & welawo : to longe y lyue in londe,  
Now is he . fram me ago : þat scholdbe myn hosbonde.  
Alas ! loue, wo dost þou me : þow sturest al my blod.  
Alas ! Gyoun þe loue of þe : wil do me waxe wod." 2796

Wiȝ þat ful sche þat burde briȝt : in sowenyng doun aȝeyn,  
And wanne þat maide speke myȝt : wepyng sche gan to sayn :  
"Now ic certis neȝ for-ȝete : þe Angwys þat i hadde  
thre dawes for defaute of mete : so sorwe me haueȝ be-stade." 2800

Roland  
promises to  
rescue Guy.

¶ þan had Ro[land] þe noble kniȝt : gret pite of þat mayde,  
And confortede hure wiȝ al is myȝt : & tok hur op & sayde :  
"Now damesele, by god almiȝt : so þow be wel a-paide,  
þow schalt him haue to-morwe or niȝt : þat þe cok hym graide." 2804

Oliver pro-  
duces the  
provisions he  
had taken.

¶ To Ro[land] þan sche gan abowe : almost doun til his fete,  
& þankede him wel faire i trowe : of is confort swete.  
þanne him saide erld Olyuer : "we buȝ in yule aray,  
þat we ete any mete her : þis ys þe þridde day ; 2808

& þus damesels for-werneȝ al : þat me greueȝ werst :  
& we ous self buȝ feynt & pal : for hungre & for þerst.  
Al ȝour mornyng leteȝ now ben : & murȝhere let ous make,  
of þys vytailles þat ȝe sen : whyche y haue y-take. 2812

Her-of mowe we take our fille : þa wile þai wollep leste,  
& mo þer-after gete we schulle : & take we her-of þe beste."  
þe othere him þankede þanne anon : for he was so hende,  
And toke þe damesels wiȝ hem ecchon : & in-to þe paleys gunne þay  
wende. 2816

To þe mete þay set hem þere : & ete & dronke hure fille.

Now torne we aȝen þar we were : & of Gy y wil ȝou telle.

**P**E Sarasyns ledeþ forþ Gyoun : harde & faste y-bounde,  
To þe Amyralis pauyloun : þei come wiþ-inne a stounde ; 2820  
& by-vore Balan, þe Ameral : þay hym broȝte an haste,

The Saracens  
conduct Guy  
to Balan's  
tent.

And Gyoun þanne was teynt & paal : so longe he hadde yuaste.

Ac of body was he a seemly kniȝt : of fair schap & of free ;

nas þer nowar yfounde in syȝt : a fairer man þan hee.

2824

þe Amerel het hym sone þere : to tel him al þat cas,

Balan asks  
him his  
name and  
race.

Of wat kyn come he were : & wat ys name was.

¶ And Gy Answerede wiþ-oute ensoyngne : as he him stod afforn.

[leaf 37, bk]  
Guy tells  
him.

“Ma calþ me Gyoun of Borgoygne : in þ<sup>e</sup> contre þat y was born.

þe kyng of fraunce Charlemany : he ys myn vncle riȝt,

2829

Cosyn al-so y am Germain : to Roland, þe gode kniȝt.”

¶ þan þe Amyrel saide an haste : “y knowe þe wel ynow :

Balan  
recognises  
him

Hit is twelmonth and more apaste : to Ma[houn] y make avow ! 2832

þat my doȝtre hure loue to þe caste : & euere suppe haueþ y-dow.

Hure loue ys mored on þe ful vaste : & þat me semeþ now,

By-cause of þe now haue y lore : myn men of heȝe kynne.

as the cause  
of all his  
trouble,

& þe ȝond tour me ys wers þer-fore : & al my tresour with-ynne :

By þe haue y þat deshonour : tel me þer-for anon,<sup>1</sup>

2837

and enquires  
the names of  
the others.

Wat men buþ þat buþ on my tour : & hure names euerechon.”

¶ “Sire,” quap Gyoun, “by myn hand : þat schel y · þe telle fawe :

Guy tells  
him,

Ther ys ferst Duk Roland : & Olyuer his felawe,

2840

And ther ys Berard of mountdisdier : & Richard of normandye,

And Duk Naymys, & erld Ogier : & Alorys þe erld of Brye,

& Geffray þe lord of langeuyn : & eke þe erld Aubry ;

Ther ys al-so the Scot Gwylmyn : & of Ardan þe duk Tery, 2844

Basyn was þe elleueþe : þat ȝe han slawe there,

& y me self was þe twelþe : y-take amonges ȝow here :

Ac ȝut or come oȝt longe : & Charlis may ride & gon,

and threatens  
him with  
vengeance.

Abigge þow schalt þis wronge : þat þow ous hast y-don.”

2848

¶ Wyþ þat a Sarsyn cam forþ sterte : þat souȝte is owene deþ,

A Saracen  
gives him a  
blow  
on the mouth.

& wiþ ys fuste harde a gerte : Gyoun agayn þe teþ,

þat endelonges is berde riȝt : þan<sup>2</sup> ran adoun þat blod ;

<sup>1</sup> tel þer-for [blif] anon.

<sup>2</sup> [þat rede blode.]



- And þan him wax þat man of miȝt : for wrappe wel nez wod, 2852  
 þar-fore to ben alto-hewe : to wreke him wolde he fonde ;
- Guy dashes By þe nekke hent he þan shrewe : & heuid vp ys honde,  
 & þar-wip an þe heued him duste : & harde gan hit layn,  
 out his brains þat al aboute is grete vuste : þan wend out al þat brayn. 2856  
 with his fist. Balan orders him to be bound, but ¶ þe Ameral þanne gan loude crye : wan he soȝ him falle :
- “Byndeþ þan þef,” gan he seye : “þat schameþ þus ous alle.”  
 þe Sarsyns þanne on him fulle : alle wip herte grete,  
 & shrewed-liche þai dede hym kulle : bope *with* honde & fete ; 2860  
 His cote armure þay alto-drowe : þat he had him oppon,  
 & dude him sorwe & schame ynow : þer ne spared him neuer on. .
- ¶ þe A[meral] þanne gan crie an haste : “y hote ȝe sle him noȝt,  
 Bote byndeþ hym herde & faste : til y haue my consayl soȝt.” 2864  
 þe Sarȝynȝ after his heste dide : <sup>1</sup>Sir Gwy<sup>1</sup> so harde bynde  
 þat þe blod barst out þar mide : at euery nayles ynde.
- Balan calls a council. ¶ To hym þan clepede sir Balan : þe Ameral of nubbee,  
 Kyng Bruyllant and kyng Sortybran : ys counseilers pryuee, 2868  
 & opre ynowe he dude al-so : þat come to him wel sone  
 By þe prysoun he askede þo : wat was best to done.<sup>2</sup>
- ¶ “Sire,” sayde kyng Sortybran : “hast þou gode chere  
 þy faire tour to gete aȝan : wyþ-oute any where, 2872  
 And þe frensche distruye þat buþ þer-aan : and þees þat is here ?”  
 “By Mahoun, ȝea,” quap balaan : “þer-of wold y here.”
- Sortybran advises him to take 20,000 men, ¶ “þou schalt haue consail god” : saide þe Sarsyn þo ;  
 “Tak xx<sup>ti</sup> þousand men of mod : ate leste way or mo, 2876  
 þat ben doȝty on hure dedes : & y-diȝt in god armure ;  
 & loke þay haue faire stedes : þat ben gode & sure,
- and place them in ambush during the night, þanne do þat þaye in-buched beo : to-niȝt how so be-tyde,  
 In þe wode þat þow miȝt see : ȝond her fast be-syde : 2880  
 & þan scholtou don þe forchys there : by-fore þe castel riȝt,  
 So þat þay wyþ-ynne there : y-sen hem vp y-pyȝt,
- Then in the morning hang Guy in front of the castle : if the French try to rescue him, þan wollap þay wel vnderstonde : why þat þay buþ diȝt  
 And to-morwe let þes be þar an honge : by-for hure alre siȝt. 2884  
 Y wot ful wel þay buþ so prout : & of hure dedes ounmawe,  
 þat þay willeþ þanne come out : to rescuwy hure felawe.

<sup>1</sup>— [þe gode kniȝt.]<sup>2</sup> [of hymen] wat was to done.

¶ þan schullap our men of hem be-war : & breken out of þe bossche,  
 & þov wyþ þyne, & be-trappe hem þar : & take hem at one russche. they will be taken in the ambush.  
 & þus schalt þov wreke þe of þy fon : & gete þy tour aʒeyn." 2889  
 "þus conseil is god & schal by don" : þe Amerel þan gan seyn.

¶ Wel sone dude þe Amyrel : after ys counseil riʒt : Balan follows the advice.  
 xx þousand Sarsyns araide he wel : & to þat wode he haueþ him diʒt.  
 Hure ledere dude he þanne make : Cornyfer an heʒene kyng ; 2893  
 & pay hit habbeþ vnder-take<sup>1</sup> : to parfornye wel þat þyng.

**E**Rly on þe morwetyde : after þat þay were there,  
 þe Amyral wolde no leng abyde : bot þe Galwys let arere ;  
 By-fore þe tour y-set þay were : a litel by-syde a cost, 2897 In the morning the gibbet is erected, in front of the castle.

Noʒt fer fro þen buchymment þere : & neʒ to ys owen host.

And þanne ordeynde he for drede : an hundred of Sarsyns stronge,  
 þat scholde Gyoun þyder lede : sickerliche,<sup>2</sup> & hym an honge. 2900

þay hundred Sarsynʒ after his heste : harde han him bounde, Guy is led bound  
 And þanne aboute ys nekke þay caste : a rop ful harde y-wounde. [leaf 38, back] with a rope round his neck.

¶ And wan þat aperceuede þe gode kniʒt : þat a scholde ben an honge,  
 ʒerne prayhede he to god Almiʒt : scholde ys soule auonge. 2904

þys schrewede Sarsyns þat wern ounwraste : þan ladde forþ Gyoun,  
 To þe Galwis-ward wel faste : þay enchacede þan baroun ;

& wyþ sturne staues þay him bute : as þay þo dryuen him forþ,  
 þat after euerech of hure strokes grute : ys body al swart y-worþ. The Saracens drive him along with blows.

Ac wan Gy y-saw þe galwe tree : þan gan he wepe stronge : 2909

"Alas !" saide he, "þat y schold see : þat day to ben an honge.

Alas ! myne felawes war buþ ʒee : wy tariþ ʒe so longe ?

Certis bot if ʒe helpe me : y her daye now wyþ wronge." 2912

¶ Duk Ro[land] þat ys cosyn was : at a wyndowe out gan lye, Roland sees the gibbet

Sone saw he be-fore ys fas : þe Galwys arered an hye,

And many Sarsyns stonde aboute : araid on hure gere ;

Wel y-armed was al þe route : þan wondrede he wat hit were. 2916

Sone clipede he erld Olyuer : & ys oþre felawes wyʒte ;

And prayed hem alle come neer : to seen a<sup>3</sup> selcouþ siʒte. and calls his companions.

And þanne of hymen he gan enquer : wat þat amounty myʒte,

And wham þay þoʒte an honge ther : on þe galwys þat þer were diʒte.

¶ þanne answerede duk Naymoun : & saide on his entent : 2921 Naymes guesses for

<sup>1</sup> MS. vnder-takake.<sup>2</sup> MS. sirkerliche.<sup>3</sup> a [wonder].

whom the  
gallows is  
prepared.

"þay wollep an honge þar Gyoun : sone þay han y-ment.  
Ys clopynge þai han alle of i-don : & al naked þar a stent,  
Bote we him þe rathere helpe mown : thar he worth y-schent." 2924  
¶ Wan Duk Ro[land] þat soþe y-knew : þanne stured al ys blod,  
ys colour changed & ys hew : for angre wax he neȝ wod.

Floripas begs  
Roland to  
rescue Sir  
Guy.

Afforn him sone com knely þat may : Flo[rippe] þat was so god,  
Hym to helpe sche gan him pray : for his loue þat daiede on rod :  
" & harneyscheap ȝow with-oute lette : hastelich þat ȝe be diȝt, 2929  
And we wymmen willep ȝow fette : ȝour stedes araid ariȝt."

Roland calls  
his com-  
panions to  
arms.

"Dop þanne, damesele, as ȝe sede : " quap Ro[land] þat was so wyȝt,  
" & we nullep spare for no drede : to help him with al our miȝt."

¶ "Asarmes !" þanne cride Rolond : "asarmes, euerchon ! 2933  
Gowe army ous wyȝ ayþer hond : þat we wer þar anon."

Hastily they  
arm.

Hasteliche buȝ þay wel y-diȝt : in gode & syker wede,<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup>syker [armure]  
hwyȝ was clene & fayr of siȝt : and fyn ynow at nede. 2936

To ech of hem tok þat swete wiȝt : sunderly þanne ys stede,  
And wan Ro[land] was on his alyȝt : to is felawes þanne a sede :

[leaf 39]  
Roland warns  
them, as they  
are so few,

¶ "Lordes vnderstondep ȝow : of wat y am be-thoȝt ;  
We ne buȝ [but] ten her now : & mo ne beo we noȝt. 2940

And of þus Sarasyns þer nys no numbre : þat ous hauep by-set,  
& hy ous wollep foule encombre : bote we ous bere þe bet.

to keep  
together.

þer-for dop by counsayle : y pray ȝow in godes name,  
þat non of ous to oper faile : bot hold ous to-gadre y-same ; 2944  
& þat ech of ous on his helue : do al þat a may,

To helpe ys felawe euene him-selue : among our fon to day,  
& anpeyny we ous our felawe to fette : þat ys among ys fos.  
& slee we hymen þat willep ous lette : to don þar our purpos, 2948  
For to ben þar alto hewe : our non him fancy noȝt.

And egreliche y schal hem schewe : somdel of my þoȝt.

And euere drawep to-ward me : wanne ȝow nedep meste,  
And y wille ȝour warant be : þe whyle my swerd wil leste. 2952

And whar any of ȝow be in stour : haue ȝe þar-of no doute,  
Y schal ȝow come to socour : maugre al þe route,

And dop ȝe al-so euery man : helpep other att nede."

Floripas  
urges them  
to start,

So þey wolde : þai sayden þan : " crist of heuene ous spede !" 2956

¶ "Lordlynges," saide Floripe þo : "ȝe dwellep her wel longe ;

- Bote 3e þe rathere ben a-go : my lemman worth an honge.”  
 In-to hure chambre sche renneþ faste : & þat shryn sche broȝte adoun,  
 And openede hit bi-for hem an haste : & tok out þat comly croun and brings  
 þat was on cristes heued y-set : on his passyoun ; 2961 down the  
 & þay hit cussede wiþ-oute let : wiþ god deuocioun. Crown of  
 And suppe þay blessedede *per with* hure face : & set hit hure helmes oppon. Thorns,  
 And þan þay hopede by godes grace : þe sykerloker þay miȝte gon. which they  
 þe ȝeates wern y-oppened wyde : þe draȝtbrigge þay lete falle, 2965 and they  
 Euerech þanne by oprys syde : wenten<sup>1</sup> out fair *with*-alle. pass out,  
 Floripe, þat maide briȝt & schene : þe ȝeate þan made faste, and Floripas  
 & þe draȝt-brigge drow op aȝene : wan þay were apaste. 2968 shuts the  
 ¶ þus Frenschemen of douce fraunce : euene þay toke hure pas, gates after  
 þe Sarazyns þo to yuele chaunce : þar þat þe fourchys was. them.  
 By þat was Gyoun vp a-stoȝe : oppoun þe laddre an heȝ, Guy is on the  
 & þe rop y-knyt þe tree aboȝe : & he y-pult out wel neȝ. 2972 point of being  
 ac Ro[land] *with* þat cam pyder renne : sodeynliche on is stede, hanged,  
 And criede<sup>2</sup> to þe Sarsynȝ þenne : “aȝeld ȝow, ȝe buȝ dede !” but Roland  
 Wanne þe Sarsyns y-sawe him come : ful sore þay were affrizt,  
 þe hardieste þat were of al þe trome : polte hem to þe flizt. 2976 puts the  
 And þan was Gyoun þar y-laft : in the ladre him-self al-one, Saracens to  
 Al ys cloþes were him by-raft : *with* Sarsyns þat buȝ a-gone. flight.  
 ¶ þe Sarasyns þanne *with* yule grace : wel faste þey floȝe away, [leaf 39, back]  
 And our barouns hem gun chace : as harde as þay may. 2980 The French  
 So harde hy hem þanne quaȝte : fleoyng toward hure host, chase them,  
 þat þe moste part of hem hy caȝte : & sone abatede hure bost. and slay  
 Somme of hem þanne þay gerte : þorȝ þe heued in-to þe tonge,  
 And summe of hymen þay wer herte : þorw lyure & þorȝ longe. 2984  
 Alle þat þo miȝte ben of-take : wyþ-oute tales mo,  
 Wel sone hur bred was y-bake : hure lif-dawes wern ago.  
 Al þat company was so by-fraped : among þes frenschemen,  
 þat among hem alle þar ne ascaped : ouneþe bote ten. 2988 all but ten.  
 ¶ þanne þe Sarazynȝ at arst brek out : þat were on þe enbuchyment ; The others  
 Kyng Cornyfer & al ys rout : aȝen hem þanne þay went. break out of  
 Cornyfer hem gan ascrye : “cowardes, what hav ȝe ment ? ambush.  
 For ȝour outrage & ȝour maystrye : ȝe schulle beo now y-schent. 2992

<sup>1</sup> [þay] went.<sup>2</sup> MS. And [ascriede].

- Alle 3e schulleþ beo an honged hye : wiþ him þat 3under stent,  
 & hasteliche 3e schul dye : a3eldeþ 3ow, 3e buþ hent!"
- Roland ¶ Wan duk Ro[land] yhurde hym speke : for angre a wax ne3 wod,  
 By-fore ys felawes he gan out-breke : & modyly til him rod, 2996
- smites at  
 him, but the  
 sword glances  
 off his helmet. And *with* durenal ys gode swerd : a strok til him a sente.  
 Ac Cornyfer is helm was herd : & mad þe strok to glente ;  
 þan Cornyfer to Roland werd : a sturne strok gan slente :
- Cornyfer  
 cleaves  
 Roland's  
 shield, but  
 does not  
 wound him. Ac Ro[land] kepede hym fram ys berd : & *with* his scheld him hente ;  
 bot þor3 is scheld þe strok him sprong : and þe schild to-chon, 3001  
 ac ys habryioun was ful strong : it ne mi3te no ferrer gon.  
 God þan þankeþ duk Roland : þat harm hauede he non.  
*With* þat heuede he an he3 ys brand : & sone a 3af hym on ; 3004  
 Oppon is heued *with* egre mod : a strok til him he ledde,
- Roland  
 cleaves  
 Cornyfer's  
 skull, And þo3 is helm were fyn & god : þorw-out is heuid it fledde.  
 þe dynt was smert & forþ him glod : & endelong is chyne hym spedde :  
 At ys breggurdle þat swerd a-stod : he ful adoun & bledde. 3008
- seizes his  
 horse,  
 and gives it  
 to Guy. ys stede he sayseþ sone þas : & forþ-wyþ him awente,  
 & til he cam þar galwys was : neuere he ne astente.  
 Gy of Borgoyngne þar afond : y-blyndfalled, and by-bounde,  
 Hondes & e3ene he him ounbond : þanne *with-inne* a stounde. 3012
- Guy puts on  
 his [leaf 40]  
 clothes His cloþis leyen þer faste by : þat Sarsyns him hadde by-nome :  
 he shridde him *per-with*<sup>1</sup> þan hastely : & cloped him al & some<sup>2</sup>  
 Ro[land] þan tok him *with-oute* lak : þe stede he haueþ y-wonne,  
 and mounts. And Gyoune sterte oppon ys bak : & faire þankedem þanne: 3016  
 ¶ "Cosyn," saide duk Roland : "hold þe by my syde,  
 Til þow haue armys at hand : to defendy þe wiþ pryde."  
 "Sir," said he, "as 3e me bereþ : y wol do loude & stille."  
 þe Sarazyns sone þat cry arereþ : in tal þat host ful schille, 3020  
 And þanne þay prykede<sup>3</sup> among our men : as þay were wode ;  
 Ac hymen<sup>4</sup> duste doun on þe fon : wiþ swerdes & axes gode.  
 þanne comencede þat harde fi3t : scharper mi3te non bene ; 3023  
 Many was þe helm & brynye bri3t : þat þar was cloue *with* tene ;  
 & many a scheld was þar y-cleued : & many a man was to-hewe.

<sup>1</sup> [And duden oppon him.]<sup>2</sup> Over this is written, & Ro[land] to hym ys come & tok him þat stede.<sup>3</sup> MS. prykedede.<sup>4</sup> MS. hy hymen.

- of legges & armes honde & heued : sone þan lay ful þe rewe.  
 Ro[land] hente kyng Saladyne : & duden a dede bolde, 3027 Roland dismounts Saladin,  
 for his armure was riche & fyn : on is lift arm he him gan volde,  
 & plyzte him of is sadel with mayn : & let go way þat hors :  
 & wip is riȝt hond a-brak is necke a-twayn : & to Gy tok he þat cors : breaks his neck,  
 "Dispoille þis body," þan gan he saye : " & arme þe on ys wede, and tells Guy to take his arms.  
 & þanne hast þou armes gode & gaye : to helpe þe on þis nede, 3032  
 And y wil kepe þe if y maye : þe whyle þow dost þy dede."  
 þan was he sone in his araye : & aȝen oppon ys stede.  
 ¶ Wanne Gy was armed & wel an horce : þan sprong vp is herte ;  
 "Leggeþ on, Lordes," said he, " wyþ force : & smyteþ strokes smerte ; Guy declares  
 And techep hem a lessoun of our lay : for þai buþ neȝ be-vapid, 3037  
 And y schal tech hem wel þis day : þat ych am askapid."  
 Wan þay herde what he spak : grete strokes to hymme þay rauȝte, he will teach the Saracens a lesson.  
 With strengþe þay reculede þat host a-bak : more þan a boȝe-draȝte.  
 So many of hem þay han for-hewed : as þay reculede aȝeyn, 3041  
 þat al þe feld semed y-strewed : of Sarȝyns þat þo were sleyn.  
 Ac þe wyle þat þys was don : opere araid hem vaste,  
 xx<sup>ti</sup> þousand of hure fon : to fiȝte with hem an haste. 3044 20,000 more come on.  
 ¶ Now buþ þus furste discourmyt : þe frenschemen doþ abyde.  
 Duk Naymes þan behuld a syt<sup>1</sup> : & saw war þay come ryde, Naymes advises his companions  
 Al frechs out of hure paupylouns : to hymen-ward wip pride.  
 þan spak Naymes to þus barouns : & saide til hem þat tyde : 3048  
 "Lorlynges, drawe toure strengþe bet : & lete we al thys ben,  
 Ouper with þus Sarsyns we worþ y-let : þat ȝe her come y-sen.  
 Were we a litel ner þe tour : þanne nere we in none doute, [leaf 40, back] to retire towards the castle,  
 þar miȝte we take god socour : & þe Sarsyns holde with-oute." 3052  
 ¶ þan spak Ro[land] þe werreour : wordes þat dude auaille :  
 "What scholde we now don on þe tour : with-oute sum vytayle?  
 We ne lafte to day þar wanne we wende : neyþer wyn ne bred,  
 Were we ther we wern y-schende : for hunger we scholde be ded.  
 Betere ous ys to daye her : worschippy agayn our fos, 3057  
 þan schamly for to asterue þer : for hungre on þat clos :  
 & þer-for abyde we ase men : & fiȝte we with hem ȝeare,  
 & vytaylles we wollap maugre hem : gete ous or we fare." 3060  
<sup>1</sup> siȝt altered to syt.



"Wel depardieux," quap þis barouns : "ounþank habbe þat spare,  
& þat we ne prikie to þe pauillouns : to chalangie ous summe þare."

They charge  
the Saracen's  
tents,

¶ þanne þay gunne to pryke vaste : toward hure logyngge,  
And þe Sarsyns azen hem anhaste : as harde as þay may flynge 3064  
& þan þus dopþepers of fraunce : torndem to þat ferde,  
Boþe wiþ swerd, axe, & launce : þe[y] mette hem in the berde.

and a fearful  
struggle  
follows.

Faste þay layde þe Sarazyns on : wiþ swerdes & axes gronde,  
& dussched a-doun to deþe hure fon : a þousand with-inne a stounde.  
þar was cloue ful many a scheld : & many an helm to-flent, 3069  
And many an haberke þat arst wel held : þan was þer to-rent.

Guy slays all  
round him.

¶ Gy of Borgoygne þanne a droȝ : þat swerd þat Saladyn oȝte ;  
Many a Sarsyn þar-with a sloȝ : & is takyngge þanne aboȝte. 3072  
He leid on Sarsyns al aboute : strokes styþe and sterke,  
Wham so he smyteþ of þe route : he ȝyff him deþes merke.

Floripas sees  
the battle  
from the  
Tower,

¶ Flo[rippe] with hure damesels stoute : in þe tour þan sche lay,  
And at a wyndowe loked oute : & al þis batail y-say. 3076  
Wan sche saw hure lef Gyoune : þat þanne delyured was,  
And doȝtyliche dynged ys foes adoun : amonges hem as a gas,

and cheers on  
Sir Guy.

Hure care was gon þanne euerydel : & toward him sche cryes :  
"Wel worþ þat hand þat can so wel : chastye ys enymyes, 3080  
Wer þou, leman, with me her : riȝt now y wolde þe kysse.  
Nopeles now y se þe ther : recuuered ys al my blysse.

ȝut schal my fader þe Amerel : in þy donger falle y-wisse,  
& þan schalt þov him acquyte wel : of al ys shrewidnesse." 3084

¶ "Gy," said ogier þe Deneys : "herkne a lytel wyȝt ;  
Hurst þou noȝt what sche says : Flo[rippe] þat burde briȝt ?  
Al hure herte on þe sche lays : Gyoune, by god almiȝt,

[leaf 41]

Bote þov hure louye wel always : certis þou dost ounriȝt." 3088

¶ "My herte," quap Gy, "gan vp-sprynge : wanne ich herd hure speke,  
y wot it were hure lekyngge : miȝt y-me selue a-wreke.

& so schal y or þe sonne go doun : haf at hem her an hye."

þan saide iantail ogeroun : "smyt on & ich þen-vye." 3092

With þat þay prikede forþ on þe pleyn : toward þe pauyllouns.

þe Sarsyns relied hymen ageyn : & metep with our barouns.

& þanne be-gan þe furthe fiȝt : a sherper was þer non ;

The fight  
becomes still  
fiercer.

þe Sarsyns were to-hewe þar riȝt : boþe þorȝ fleschs & bon. 3096

þe frensche laid<sup>1</sup> on wiþ swerdis briȝt : & laiden a-doun hur fon,  
Alle þat þai þan alacche miȝt : þer na ascapedem non.

¶ Ro[land] laid on wyþ herte god : in euery syde aboute,  
And baþede is swerd in hure blod : þay gunne him sore doute. 3100 The Saracen  
fly before  
Roland.  
Alle þai floȝen out of is way : by wich side so he wente,  
for non nas founde þat ilke day : þat miȝte *with*-stonde is dente.

¶ Gy of Borgoygne to a Sarsyn rod : þat hiȝte Cursegreyn,  
& wyþ ys swerd þat wel bot : a gert him in-to þe brayn. 3104 Guy slays the  
Saracens in  
every  
direction.  
Anoper a slow sone on þe plas : & þan þridde he smyteþ so,  
þat helm & heued & al þat þar was : he clef hit euene a-two.

þan ferthe he smot þan on ys yre : & set him *with* al ys mayn,  
þat ys hed fleȝ þerfro þe swyre : ten fet on þe pleyne. 3108

¶ "Cosyn," sayde duk Rolond : "now þou berst þe wel,  
y-blessid be þy gode hond : & eke þy Damesel.  
For suppe þe tyme þat hure<sup>2</sup> steuene : com to þyn ere ariȝte,  
Hit was no ned, be god of heuene : to bidde þe for to fiȝte." 3112

Wel longe haþ þys batail dured : & mucche murdre of men þer was,  
Al þat þay smyteþ wiþ ax or swerd : sone to deþe it gas.

¶ Flo[rippe] þat mayde fair & slegh : at a wyndowe þer sche lay,  
To þys barouns sche gradde an hegh : as ich ȝow telle may. 3116 Floripas from  
the window  
reminds the  
French that  
the pro-  
visions are all  
gone.  
"Of<sup>3</sup> oþyng, lordes, beo ȝe war" : til hymen gan she say,  
"Newe vytaille to gete ȝou þar : þe olde buþ al away."

¶ Olyuer herde þe damesel : & to his felawes he saide a-non :  
"Certis þat maide ous redeþ wel : our profyt for to don." 3120

"Parfay," saide duk Rolond : "y hurde wel what sche saide.  
Go we þer-for wiþ strengþe of hond : we willen make a braide.

Prike we Euene to þe paupylous : ne spare we noȝt for fere,  
Vytailles for to gyten ous : if þar buþ any þere." 3124

þanne þay prykede forþ with pride : þis frensche men echone ;  
þe Sarsynȝ nold hem noȝt abide : bot duden hem for to gone.

[leaf 41, back]

Ac þus lordes hem gunne to chace : euene by-fore hire syȝt,  
& duste to deþe riȝt on þe place : al þat þay atake miȝt. 3128 The French  
chace the  
Saracens,

þis barons enchacede hur fon so faste : *with* swerdes igronde briȝt,  
Til þay kemen atte laste : to Amyral ys paupyloun riȝt.

as far as the  
Emir's tent

¶ By þat wern þe feldes alle : of þe Sarsyns y-vewdid wel,  
<sup>1</sup> [hew] on.      <sup>2</sup> suppe hure [murye].      <sup>3</sup> [Byþynkeþ] Of.

& were a-flozen grete & smalle : and eke þe Amerel ; 3132

In-to hure paulyons þay floze for fere : & þe barouns þozte after fare,  
& maugre hem alle þat þar were : haue i-had vytailles thare.

when they  
see 32 pack-  
horses

Bote þanne be-hulde þus bachelers : by-forn hem & sezen come

Two & þyrty grete somers : y-charged alle & some 3136

laden with  
provisions,

Wyþ fair flour y-maked of whete : & wyþ bred and flechs & wyn,  
& oþre vytailles smale & grete : þat were bothe god & fyn.

escorted by  
24 Saracens  
of Mantrible.

xxiiij. Vytaylers : of Mantryble þat Sarsyns were,

By-fore hymen dryue þay somers : þat þanne come there. 3140

¶ Smerthly wan þay sey3 hem come : azen hem þay toke þe way,  
& by-trapd hem ther al & some : to wete what ladden þay.

Ac wanne þay it wiste & knewe : what þay in lode hadde

þe vytailers þay alto-hewe : & þe vytailles with hymen þai ladde.

Roland bids  
Naymes and  
Terry to  
drive the  
convoy  
within the  
castle,  
while he and  
Guy protect  
them;

To duk Naymes & to duk Terry : þan Ro[land] spak & badde, 3145

To dryuen hem by-fore him spedily : & nopyng þay ne adradde.

þey twyne hit habbeþ vndernome : þe somers to brynge enclos,

And þei othere to after come : & to kep hem fram hure fos. 3148

To þe tour-ward þey dude hem drawe : þes lordes þanne with pride,

& Basyn þay founde þat was a-slawe : on þe way as þay gun ryde.

þe somers buþ alle forth a-paste : & at þe tour zeate a-stente.

þus othere toke þat cors an haste : & to þe tour zeate þar-wiþ buþ wente.

Floripas  
admits them.

Flo[rippe] redely was thar-ate : & let in þuse lordes gente, 3153

And schutte faste azen þe gate : & þe dra3brigge vp sche bente.

**N**OW habbaþ þus lordes of honour : y-maked a fair iornee,

And habbeþ wyþ hem þar on þe tour : of vytails gret plente.

They have  
provisions  
sufficient for  
three months.

Mete and drynke þay han y-brozt : ynow for monþes thre,

þan Amyral þanne ne dradde þay nozt : for al is grete poste.

þe castel þay þozte þanne holde : boldelich with honour,

Til Charlis wyþ is barnye bolde : come hymen to socour. 3160

¶ To is pauillon y-floze was : þe A[miral] & huld hym there,

& Til hym he clepede in þat cas : of ys conseyl þay þat were,

& sayde, "lordes of muche honour : what is 3our best consayle

Of þes frenschemen on þe tour : þat habbeþ oure vytaille? 3164

Balan holds  
a council.

[leaf 42]

Bred & wyn þay haue y-now : & flour al-so y-bake,

& fleschs al-so as y trow : iij monþes hem mury to make.

Wyste Char[lis] þat ys her ny : by hem nov how it stent,

Wel sone he wolde hem socoury : & þanne were we schent." 3168

¶ "Syre," saide kyng Sortybran : "assemble þow þyn host,  
3onder to-ward þe Barbygan : in þyn nexte cost.

Sortybran  
advises

þy castel of tre þat hiȝt hrysour : þyder þou do him fette.

the employ-  
ment of a  
wooden  
tower.

& let bryng anon him byfore þe tour : with-oute more lette ; 3172

& pote þer-on · vj hundred men : þat kunne boþe launce & caste,

& othre þat kunne<sup>1</sup> demayny hem : wiþ boȝes & arbelaste,

& let þyn opre Sarasyns : wan þou hast by-gunne so,

beo be-nethe wyþ þyn engyns : & teche what þay kunne do. 3176

& þan let þow þyn hornys blowe : a þousant at o blaste,

& wanne þe frensche men it knowe : þay wollep beo sore agaste.

þe tour schaltou þanne assaille : wyþ schot & cast of gynne,

& sone wynne him with-oute faille : maugre hem al wyþ-ynne, 3180

& slen hem ther with strengþe of hant : & so of hem þe wreke."

¶ þan him answerde kyng Bruyllant : "of folie dost þow speke.

Bruyllant  
reminds  
them that the  
French are  
not ordinary  
soldiers,  
but the pick  
of France,

Hit ne buþ," he said, "none Vauasers : þat buþ þer on þe tour,

Ac it buþ noble bachelers : of al france þay bereþ þat flour : 3184

þar is with-inne duk Rolond : on batail þat is so wyȝt,

And Olyuer wyþ þe harde hond : þat Fyrumbras ouercom in fyȝt :

Thar ys Duk Berard of mondisdier : on of þe beste of fraunce,

And Terry hys fader þat is wel fier : a man of gret bobaunce : 3188

In his forest þat hatte ardane : muche schame ofte he deþ,

He haþ y-beo many a man ys bane : & a-strongled hem with ys tep.

þar is Oger Deneyys þe hardy : & Naymes wiþ þe lokkes hore,

& Richard þe Duk of Normaundy : þat ofte haþ greued ous sore,

& chacede sum tyme þe Amerel : in rome byfore þe playn, 3193

& herte him so þer on þe chel : þat he was neȝ y-slayn.

And Gy of Borgoyne he is þer : þat slow Corsebrayn,

And oþer þat buþ noȝt nempned her : þat wollep ous stonde agayn.

Of þe doȝtynisse of pilke men : ech man ys a-wondred, 3197

hwych þat ys þe worste of hem : of ous ys worþ an hundred.

the worst of  
whom is  
worth 100  
Saracens.

Ro[land], Charlis suster sone : he ys a noble kniȝt,

Ne douteþ he non er[þ]lich gome : ne be he noȝt so wyȝt : 3200

Muche he hermeþ þe Ameral : wiþ assautes he hym makeþ.

By oure it is<sup>2</sup> þai libbeþ al : & maugre our tep hit takeþ.

<sup>1</sup> kunne [wel].

<sup>2</sup> is [þat].

Were þer such an hundred ther : as þay buþ now<sup>1</sup> to fonde,  
 By Ma[houn] we ne derst noȝt duelle her : but fle we moste of londe ;  
 Hure god doþ euere helpe hem wel : and þat we sore auynde ; 3205  
 Ac oure ne helpeþ ous no del : þe se[h]rewes buþ wax al blynde.

Moreover  
 their God  
 helps them,  
 [leaf 42, back]  
 while  
 theirs are  
 asleep.

Wel y-fern þay holpe ous noȝt : y trowe þai slepe vchone,  
 In al þe anger þat we buþ broȝt : hylp on hem nys none." 3208

The Emir is  
 enraged,

¶ þan wax þe Amyral wroþ & sede : " what ! traitour art þou wod ?  
 Go out of my siȝt anon y rede : þow trechour, þow wykked blod !"

but is  
 appeased by  
 Sortybran,

A strong staf tok he vp anon : & smyte hem þanne he þoȝte,  
 Ac betwene hem wente kyng Sortybron : & a-paysede hem as he moȝte.

¶ " Sire," said he, " let ben al þys : as þou louest me ; 3213  
 & if þer ys oȝt spoken amys : yt may amended be :

who  
 recommends  
 an assault on  
 the castle.

& by-þenk how þyn assaut schal gon : & of þyng þat may þe vaile.  
 Let blowe þyn hornes, y rede anon : þe tour we wollaþ a-saille : 3216

þys frenschemen ne andurieþ ous noȝt : beo we y-broȝt þer-to,  
 Wel dulfulliche it worþ aboȝt : þe scaþes þay han ous do."

¶ Sone þer-after þay gunne to blowe : hornes y-mad of bras :

The Saracens  
 assemble ;  
 they cover  
 two square  
 miles,

þe Sarasyns with-inne a litel þrowe : come as þykke as gras : 3220

Wel two Mile to loke aboute : a stryde void e þer nas,

þat of þat ilke heþenene route : al ful was euery plas.

¶ þe Amyral made his engyneour : þe engyns to-sette & bende,  
 þer-with to breke þe grete tour : & is fon with-inne to schende. 3224

The assault  
 begins ;  
 arrows and  
 stones fly  
 thick.

þanne by-gunne þay to grede & houte : þe Sarsynȝ sherp & wikke,

And to be-sette þe tour aboute : & to schete þykke ;

And he þat was engyneour : stones to caste grete,

þat foule verde with þe tour : so harde þay gunne him mete. 3228

The French  
 cast trees and  
 stones back.

Ac þe frensche þat wiþ-inne ben : defendede hem for þe nones,

& caste out among hem grete tren : & wonder heuy stones ;

& sloȝe of þe heþemen : twenty sum tyme at ones, 3231

þat fullen down ded þer on þe fen : to-broke boþe body & bones.

The maidens

¶ þe dameseles were boþe kynde & gode : & armedem in syker wede,

And at þe kernels be hymen stode : & holpe hem in þat nede ;

throw stones  
 from the  
 battlements.

& cast out stones gret & sade : oppon hem þat wer with-oute, 3235

& gret slauȝt of Sarȝyns made : with þe help of þe lordes stoute.

þan gan Flo[rippe] þat ientail maide : Gyon hure lef a-scrye ;

<sup>1</sup> now crossed through.

- "Kys me, gode lef," þanne sche sayde : "ones for al þys nuye."  
 Al y-armed as þay wer þan : a kuste hure as a myzte : 3239
- "Grant mercy," said sche, "swete lemman : now am y prest to fize."  
 ¶ þan at þe furste þe Assaut by-gan : sterk & strait to be :  
 þengyneor cryde to Balan : "Sir Amyral, lyst to me : The Engineer  
 says if he had  
 Let leue al þys balaunsyng : & castyng of speres & stones :  
 y-magened y haue a-noper þyng : to conquere þe tour at ones. 3244 [leaf 43]  
 Vyfty þousand of Sarasyns felle : raply to me þow dizte,  
 And loke þat þay be y-armed, wel : & þat hy be sur & wyzte." 50,000  
 Saracens he'd  
 soon take the  
 castle.  
 "Hit schal be don," quap Balaan : "anon her in þy sizte." Balan agrees.  
 Hastely het he kyng Sortybran : to arayen hem as he spihte. 3248  
 ¶ þe Sarazyn dude ys heste son : no lengre nolde he duelle,  
 So many Sarsyns ches he anon : & brohte hem þyder snelle. He picks out  
 the men,  
 þe engyneour, yuele most he þeo : so narwe he him by-þohte !  
 To þe castel þat was ymad of treo : al þat host he brohte ; 3252  
 þat haluendol þan dizte he : wiþ-inne forþ to stonde,  
 & þat oper dol wyþ-oute to be : to schute & caste with honde.  
 ¶ In þat same tre castel : weren maked stages thre ;  
 þe hegeste hiht mangurel : þe middel hiht launcepre, 3256  
 þe nybemest was callid hagefray : a quynte þyng to se,  
 & was diht for ys owen aray : for þer-on wolde he be,  
 þan þe hegest stage of al : fulde he wiþ men of armes,  
 To schelde hem by-nyþe wel : fram stones & othere harmes. 3260 The topmost  
 story he fills  
 with men ;  
 þat wanne þe frensche þyderward : caste stones oper tre,  
 þay scholde with hure scheldes hard : kepe þe dent aze ;  
 & summe scholde schete to þe frensche rout : with gunnes & bozes  
 of brake,  
 þat þay ne beo hardy to lokie out : defense azen hem to make. 3264  
 And on þat oper stage amidde : ordeynt he gunnes grete,  
 And oper engyns y-hidde : wilde fyr to caste & schete.  
 þyder þanne he putte y-nowe : & tauhte hem hure labour,  
 Wilde fyr to schete & þrowe : azen þe heze tour. 3268  
 In þe nybemest stage þanne : schup he him selue to hove,  
 To ordeyne hure fyr þar-inne : & send hit to hem above.  
 To him-ward þanne tok he Sarazyns : an hundred atte leste,  
 To come & go to þe engyns : and seruy hem in þe beste : 3272  
 100 are to  
 attend to the  
 engines,



while the  
others shoot.

Al þe remanant of þe numbꝛe : he ordeyneþ to schute & caste,  
þe grete tour fort encumbꝛe : in þys wyse atte laste.

¶ Now by-gynneþ þay wiþ wrake : glyues to casten wykke,  
And wyþ bozes eke of brake : for to schute þykke.

3276

By-fore þat was mad a sterne schour : ac þe werste was comynge,  
þey schute wilde fyr to þe tour : as faste as þay miȝt flynge.

The fire takes  
hold on the  
walls.

¶ On þe wal þat fur him hent : wiþ-inne a lytel space,  
þat he be-gan þar-wiþ be atend : in an hundred place.

3280

[leaf 43, back]

þat fyr þat setlede so on þe walle : ȝerne hit gan to brenne ;  
þe peces faste gunne schaly & falle : & þat fyr to renne.

The French  
are alarmed,

Wanne þis barons loked out : & sawe þe wal brennyng  
Alle þay saide *with-out*e dout : “her ys hard dwellynge,  
Bote we þe rapere don ous henne : & flen out of þis tour,  
Sone ous tyd her for-brenne : wyþ sorȝe & deshounour.”

3284

but Floripas  
cheers them.

¶ þan saide þat maide : “leteþ of ȝour pleynt : & nabbe ȝe none drede,  
þys fyr wel sone schal be aqueynt : ȝe schulleþ it sen in dede.”

3288

She throws  
hot camel's  
milk, mixed  
with vinegar,

& þer-wiþ sche mellede vynegre anon : no lenger sche ne abod ;

on the fire,

þar þat fyr was setled on þe walle : oueral þer-with sche spreynthe,

and puts it  
out.

& wel sone þar-after þay seȝe it alle : how þat fyr a-queynte.

3292

¶ Wan þe Amyral a-perceuede þys : how þat þe fyr ys fare,  
Al ys hope was agon y-wys : ys herte was cast in care.

“Certis, syre,” quap Sortybraunt : “þys ys þy doȝter dede ;

In þat sche may sche ys vsaunt : to do þe yule to spede.”

3296

“Wel know y,” quap þe Amyrel : “þat ofte sche doþ me gyle,  
Y hope to Mahoun þat ȝute y schel : ones a-ȝyte hur wyle.”

Sortybrant  
recommen-  
ds an assault  
at the breach,

¶ “Sir,” quap Sortybrant, “do by my red : & let þyn hornes blewe,<sup>1</sup>  
& hot þat þyn assaut be noȝt aled : and let by-gynne hit newe.

3300

By-hold þe places on þe toure : war þat fyr haþ hente,  
þer ne wanteþ noȝt enches foure : þat þay ne buþ þorw brente ;  
Sone he falleþ me þenkeþ wel : & þer-for go we þer-to.”

“As þow wilt,” quap þe Amyrel : “anon let it be do.”

3304

¶ With þat þe same kyng Sortybran : to þe walles haþ him nome,  
& þanne he hoteþ euery man : to þe assaut aȝeward come.  
Sone þas men miȝte y-here : hornes loude blowe ;

<sup>1</sup> blowe *altered* to *blewe*.

- L. þousand Sarazyns were : y-come wyþ-inne a þrowe, 3308 and leads 50,000 Saracens to the assault.
- þat summe to þe engyns wente : & caste stones sterke ;
- And summe springols stiþe bente : & schute gleyues scherpe ;
- And summe þay schuten arwes wykke : as faste as þai miȝt fle.
- & þe quarels floȝe out þikke : of arbelastes y-mad of tre. 3312
- Grete slabbes of styl & yre : to þe walles þo wern y-slente ;
- þe kernels þat arst wern strong & suyre : þer-with wer broke & schente, The battlements are broken.
- & þe brytasques on þe tour an heȝe : dulfully a-doun wer caste.
- Wan þay with-inne hit perceuede & seȝe : dedlich þai were agaste.
- ¶ þan saiden hy þus lordes alle : “ her ys noȝt god to abide, 3317 [leaf 44]
- þys tour is now in poynt to falle : wyþ-inne a litel tide.”
- Floriþe þat mayde fair and hende : to þys barouns sede : Floripas recommends them to use her father's gold instead of stones.
- “ Ne drede ȝe noȝt, myn leue frende : ȝe ne schulþ haue no nede ;
- My fader let make þis ilke tour : strong ynow to kepe ; 3321
- To putte þar-inne hys tresour : þat he wold leyn to hepe.
- On þys tour ys more gold : y wot riȝt wel to wisse,
- þan half þe kynges han in wold : þat buþ in al heþenisse. 3324
- þoȝw þys asaut wolde y-laste : þys forty dawes ryȝt,
- her with-inne ys gold y-maced faste : to cast out day & nyȝt ; There is enough, she says, to last them for 40 days.
- And supþe ȝe now þat soþe y-knoweþ : on defaute ȝe han of<sup>1</sup> stones,
- Takeþ þer-of ynowe and þroweþ : & to-brekeþ hem body & bones.”
- ¶ “ ȝea, faire þe falle, my wete wyȝt ” : to hure Ro[land] saide. 3329
- Gyoun wente to hure ful ryȝt : & swetly kuste þat maide : -
- þanne sche lad þaym by þe hond : þar þat tresour lay,
- & þanne saide duk Rolond : “ her ys a ryche aray.” 3332
- þay toke op slabbes grete & þykke : of þe gold þat þar lys,
- And caste among þe Sarsyns wykke : ne sparede þay noȝt þat prys ;
- Many was þe Sarazyn prout : þat þar-with was affulled, 3335 They take great bars of gold and cast them amongst the Saracens,
- þe<sup>2</sup> opere drowen hem ferþer out : for drede þat þay nere kulled.
- ¶ Wanne þe Sarasynȝ had aperceued ariȝt : þat gold þat briȝte schon,
- To gadrie þat gold þay dude hure miȝt : & leued þe assaut anon :
- On þe gadryngge þat þay made : þan þay by-gunne to fiȝte who give up the assault, and begin to fight over it.
- And ȝyue eche opere strokes sade : wyþ axes & swerdes briȝte. 3340
- Ech on opere gan to hewen : & euerech other afulde,
- Mo þan a þousent of þe schrewen : wel sone þer were y-kulde.

<sup>1</sup> [in þe] defaute of.<sup>2</sup> [&] þe.

Balan, in  
alarm for his  
gold,

¶ Wan þe Amyral þat y-seȝ : on ys herte him gan to greue ;  
To ys barons he cryede an heȝ : & het hem þe assaut be-leue : 3344  
“ And ellis schal her al my gold : & my tresour beo for-lore,  
þat y haue gadred in-to þat hold : long tyme her by-fore.”

causes his  
men to retire.

þan wende þe<sup>1</sup> grete to wiþ þat : among þe communes alle,  
And made hem cessen of hure debat : and fro þe asseege falle. 3348  
þe sunne by þat was neȝ a-doun : þe Assege þanne þay y-lafte.  
þe Amerel goþ to ys pauylloun : al murghe was him by-rafte.

The French  
make merry.  
[leaf 44, back]

**N**OW ys þe Amyral aȝen y-wend : wyþ ys baronye ;  
With sorwe was is herte be-trend : wiþ care & eke anuye.  
And þe barons of honour : murye gunne hem make, 3353  
And ete & dronke on þe tour : of þe vytailles þay han y-take ;  
For of vitailles þai hadden þo plentee : & burdes briȝte & bolde,  
To ete & drynke & murie bee : & to layky hem wan þay wolde.

Roland from  
a window  
sees the Emir  
at supper,

¶ At a wyndowe as<sup>2</sup> Ro[land] lay : lynynge & lokede out, 3357  
þan Ameral atte is soper he of-say : sittynge vnder shrout.  
Wanne he haþ aperceuede apertely : þan Amerel & his aray,  
To hem he clepede ys company : & þus he gan to say : 3360  
“ Lordes, be-holdeþ þan Amerel : ȝounder out on þe grene,  
At is soper ys he me semeþ wel : it doþ myn herte tene.

and proposes  
an assault.

Hit were me þynkþ a fair viage : to letten him of his purpos.”  
þan saide þe other barnage : “ fonde we to greue our fos.” 3364

They arm,  
and start.

¶ Sone were þys noble barouns : y-armed in sykere wedis,  
& as fers as any lyouns : þay sterte vp-on hure stedis.  
þe damesels duden vp þe ȝeate : & þe draȝtbrigge lete adoun,  
And þay fareþ out þer-ate : stoutelich ech baroun. 3368

Balan sees  
them,  
and calls for  
help.

Balan hymen aperceyueþ anan : as þai come on a mede ;  
Of þe siȝte agrise he gan : and wax neȝ wod for drede.  
Aspayllard of nubbye clepede he þan : & þus til him he sede :  
“ Do Cosyn anon þyn Armys aan : & aray þe in syker wede. 3372  
Lo whar þay comeþ stout & bold : þe frensche men of þe tour ;  
þay þenkeþ make our soper cold : þai casteþ hem to þat labour.”  
“ Al redy, sire,” Aspaylard sede : and armede hym þanne anon,  
And sone haþ he take ys stede : & smertly he was oppon : 3376  
Ys scheld he takeþ in þat nede : launce ne kepede he non,

<sup>1</sup> þei (?).

<sup>2</sup> [þanne] as.

A dart takþ he in his hond for drede : & forþ he ys a-gon.

¶ Roland was þe furste of alle : þat rod afforeward,

þe Sarsyn þoʒte him for to quelle : & launceþ til him þe dart ; 3380

Aspayllard  
charges  
Roland.

þe dart was cast *with* such a mod : þat þorw ys scheld it schet,

Ac ys haberke was fyn & god : & ellis he had be ded.

Ro[land] brak þe schaft away : & smertliche to hym arod,

Roland aims  
a blow at  
him,

And þoʒte him smyte on þe hed an hey : ac þe dent a glod ; 3384

On ys stede ful þe dent : by-side þe for arsoun,

þorw þe necke þat swerd him went : & þe Sarsyn ful adoun.

which  
wounds his  
horse.

¶ þe Sarsyn was doʒty ynow : sone he vp aros,

& hasteliche ys swerd adrow : and aʒe til him a gos. 3388

To han i-broched Ro[land] þorw : a-caste þo his porpos,

Ac Ro[land] þanne til hym a-bowʒ : & fuld him on is armes clos.

Roland seizes  
him,

Wan he had him on is armes lauʒt : wiþ-oute more a-do

Vp a draweþ at o drauʒt : & set him by-for him þo.

3392 sets him  
before him,

¶ Roland tornd hym þanne aʒeyn : & ys felawe dude al-so,

[leaf 45]  
and rides  
back to the  
castle.

Toward þe tour al on þe pleyn : as harde as þe hors may go.

Wan þe Amyral þys of-seʒ : his herte was cast in care,

To is baronage he criede an heʒ : & prayede hymen after fare : 3396

"If my neuewe goþ þus a-way : by Mahoun ʒe buþ to blame ;

Helpeþ þer-for now wat ʒe may : þat y ne take no schame."

Op a-sterste þe route anon : & hure stedes þai be-strydeþ,

And as faste as þe hors may gon : after hem þay rydeþ.

3400 The Saracens  
pursue them ;

¶ Ac wan þe frensche baronage : y-saw hem after haste,

þey turnde to hemen wiþ sturne vysage : & adrowe hure swerdes they turn

faste :

& *with* hure fon þan þay fouʒte : & ʒeue hem strokes sare.

þilke companye þo ful dere aboʒte : þat þay come þare ; 3404

Mo þan .v. hundred þar þay sloʒe : of þat foule maynee,

and slay more  
than 500,  
and put the  
rest to flight.

& þe remanant hem wiþ-droʒe : & for drede tornde aʒee.

þus barons toke þan way ful riʒt : aʒenward to þe tour ;

Ate ʒeate fond hy þat burde briʒt : þat let hem in wyþ honour : 3408

þe ʒeate þanne þay made faste : þe draʒtbrigge vp droʒ sche.

þe Sarazyns þay habbeþ sore agaste : & þay buþ in sauete.

**N**ow buþ þus bārouns of honour y-come aȝen in-to þe tour;  
 Flo[rippe] þay gunne calle, 341  
 To hure þay by-toke Aspayllarde, And prayede hure kep him  
 in syker warde For þyng þat miȝt be-falle.

Aspayllard is  
 given in  
 charge to  
 Floripas.

To þe soper þan wente þay alle þen, þe lordes, & eke þe ientail wymen  
 And made hem murie þat niȝt. 3416

A-morwe wanne þe sonne hure schon, To-gadre þay assemblede hem  
 euerechon, Lordes and burdes<sup>2</sup> briȝt.

¶ þanne spak Richard of Normaundy To þe barons þat stode hym by  
 “Herkenyaþ for ȝour honour; 3420

Wel ȝe wyteþ we buþ her enclos, Hard by-seged wyþ our foes,  
 & wyth strengþe & gret vygour.”<sup>3</sup>

of o þyng lordes<sup>4</sup> beo ous sure, Her mowe we noȝt longe dure,  
 Bot ous come socour. 3424

Richard  
 advises to  
 send to  
 Charles,

Sende we þer-for to þe Emperer, þat he come *with* his power  
 & delyuery ous of þe tour.”

but Naymes  
 thinks it is  
 impossible.

¶ Naymes ansuerede in his avys: “Hit nere bote folye, be seynt Dynys,  
 A Messager til him to schape, 3428

For al þe contre wyþ-uten lys So ful by-gon wyþ enmys,  
 þat non ne schold hem scape.

[leaf 45, back] þer nys non her ich vndertake, þat þilke Message ne wil for-sake

þat of ys lyf ys fayne, 3432

& ho-so nolde · a dude folye; For neuere we ne scholde him sen wiþ ye  
 Til ous come aȝayne.”

Floripas  
 recommends  
 them to enjoy  
 themselves,

¶ Til hymen þanne þat mayde sede: “Of ȝour enmys haue ȝe no drede,  
 þys tour ys strong & god; 3436

And ȝe han her boþ day & nyȝt, Fiftene damesels fayr & briȝt,  
 And comen of kynges blod;

Euerech of ȝow chuse his owe, And lyue we our lyf on murȝe aprowe,  
 Wyle we buþ her enclos.” 3440

and Roland  
 agrees with  
 her.

þanne saide Roland to pat fry: “Damesele, þow spekest ful cortesly,  
 Maugree habbe alle our fos!”

<sup>1</sup> In the MS. the lines are arranged thus:

Now buþ þus bārouns of honour

Y-come aȝen in-to þe tour

To hure þay by-toke Aspayllarde

And prayede hure kep him in syker warde

} Flo[rippe] þay gunne calle.

} For þyng þat miȝt be-falle.

<sup>2</sup> [among þys] burdes, <sup>3</sup> & wyth[-uten any socour]. <sup>4</sup> [Ac] of o þyng.

¶ Roland of hure gan asky þan, Of wat kynde was comen þat ilke man  
 þat on hure warde was, 3444

Wham þay toke þe niȝt before & wat done (?) man þat a wore,  
 To telle hym þat cas.

¶ "Sire," quap sche, "y wil þe telle : Neȝ sibbe is he to þe Amyrelle, Floripas proposes to put Aspayl-lard to death,  
 Ys soster sone he ys ; 3448

þif ȝe my fader willeþ greue ariȝt, Al to-heweþ hym on ys siȝt,  
 & þan lest he ys blys."

¶ "Nay, noȝt so" : þan saide Naymoun, "So ne schal it noȝt be don, but Naymes says to keep him as a hostage,  
 no profyt to ous it nere : 3452

He schal be kept, by swete iesous, For to a-quytye on of ous,  
 If he wer take there."

¶ þanne sayde þe<sup>1</sup> duk Terry : "To ligge þus her ys gret anuy,  
 & be-seged as we bene ; 3456

Sende we þer-for, ich ȝow rede, To Charlis ase Rychard sede,  
 To help ous out of þis tene."

¶ þanne sayde Ogier þe Deneys : "Hit nys bote trufle þat þou seys,  
 So god me mote auauunce, 3460

For among ous alle her ys non, þat in þat message now darste gon  
 for al þat gold of fraunce."

¶ "Ȝus," quap Roland, "y wil it do, If ȝe rewardieþ it shel be so, Roland is willing to venture on message to Charles,  
 & take my way or none. 3464

Y nel spare for no fere þat y ne schal þat erant bere  
 & make hym come sone."

¶ þan spak Naymes and sayde, "nay, Certis, syre, þov noȝt : ne may [leaf 46]  
 Gon out of oure ferede : 3468

And þe Sarazynȝ wern<sup>2</sup> y-ware þat þov were fro henne afare  
 þey wolde ous noȝt adrede."

¶ þanne saide þe Scot Gwylmer : "y wolde fayn, by seynt Rycheer, Gwylmer says he will go,  
 Wende on þat vyage." 3472

"Nay," quap Berard, "verement, But leteþ me fare be ȝour assent, and then Berard,  
 & do þat ylke message."

¶ þanne hymen bad þe duk Gyoun þat he moste wende to Charloun  
 And beo hure messagere. 3476

Flo[rippe] aunswerede þar-to anon, "nay : leteþ anoþer þat message don, Floripas refuses to let Guy go

<sup>1</sup> þe [olde].

<sup>2</sup> wern [þar-of].



For he schal leue here."

Richard says  
he will go  
himself,  
as he is of  
little use,

¶ And þan spak Richard of Normandie, & sayde þus to þe companye

"Sirs, 3e knoweþ wel

348

þat y am sumdel stryken on age, And haue a sone of my parage  
þat is boþe wys & fel :

þoȝ þe Sarazynȝ smyte of myn hed, He ys myn ayr after my ded

To broke myn heritage.

3484

& þerfor yf 3e assentiap to, At al perils wil y go

To Charlis in ȝour message.

and, besides,  
Charles

¶ þer ys al-so anoþer thyng War-for y scholde do þis doying

By-fore a-nother man :

3488

had promised þe furste tyme þat Charlys kyng Made me to hymward beo leuyng,

Charlys be-het me þan,

to rescue him  
if he should  
be taken.

þat if me happede þorw any cas þat y wer prisoned in any plas,

wyle ich wyþ him were,

3492

A sholde delyuery me out of prisoun Wyþ strengþe of hand ouper  
raunsoun,

Coste hit noȝt so dere.

And therfor am y bold ynow, By þis two skyles þat y say ȝow,

To faren on ȝoure message :

3496

For þoȝ y be taken he schel me ȝelde, And eke my sone ys neȝ of Elde

To fonge myn herytage."

They all  
agree,

¶ Of Richardis skyles pay toke rewarde, & alle þanne assentede at

nessche & hard,

þat Richard scholde wende,

3500

Supþe he hadde desyr þer-to ; No man betere miȝte it do,

for he was triwe & hende.

To him þanne saide Duk Roland : " Supþen þow wilt þus take an hand

þyn op þow schalt ous<sup>1</sup> make,

3504

þat þou ne schalt spare nyȝt ne day Til þow ha don þy iornay,

Bot þow be ded or take."

[leaf 46, bk]

¶ Richard hit graunteþ with-oute let, And sone þe relyqes wern y-fet,

& Ri[chard] swer his op.<sup>2</sup>

3508

and consult  
how he is to  
get away  
unseen.

þan pay be-speken how he myȝt Slezlych a-scape out of þe syȝt,

þat þe Sarsyns ne dud him loþ.<sup>3</sup>

¶ Richard hym-self sayde þan : " þe beste red ys þat y can,

þat we be on armes diȝte,

3512

<sup>1</sup> schalt[her]

<sup>2</sup> [& he swor at hure deus].

<sup>3</sup> [of hure enmys].

& to-morȝe on þe spryng<sup>1</sup> of þe day Euene to þe pauyllounz take þe way  
 As we wolde fize,  
 & wanne we comeþ among hem þare, ȝee scholleþ ȝeue hem strokes sare,  
 & sodeynlych falle hem on. 3516  
 þe wyle þay entendiap to ȝowward Y schal take out to anoþer pard  
 & prykie fro hem<sup>2</sup> anon :  
 And þe wile ȝe fizeþ with þat host y schal ben a-passed al þat cost,  
 & al out of hure sizte ; 3529  
 & þan schal y holde my iornee, þe wayes y knowe of þe contre,  
 boþe be day and nizte.  
 And so þat god me graunty grace, þe brigge of Mantrible saf to pace,  
 Wher-of ys most my drede,<sup>3</sup> 3524  
 þan schulle ȝe be wel certayn þat y schel brynge ȝov Charlemayn,  
 To socurry ȝow on þys nede."  
 ¶ For pyte þan wepte ȝong & olde, þe wyle þat Ric[hard] ys tale tolde,  
 of hem þay wern wel fayne. 3528  
 To ihesu crist þay gunne to praye Scholde sped hym wel on his iornaye,  
 An send him saf aȝayne.  
 þan Ri[chard] araid hem al þat day, On þe morȝenyng to wende is  
 way, Wanne þe day hym sprunge.<sup>4</sup> 3532  
 ¶ Duk Roland & Erld Olyuer, þilke nizt kepte þe wacche þer  
 Til þe larke sunge.<sup>4</sup>  
 By þat wern þay alle y-dyzt, And wel araid in armis brizt,  
 To horce þan wente þay bolde. 3536  
 Bot wan þay wiste how it stod, Clene þanne þay turnde hure mod,  
 hure purpos þay myzt nozt holde.  
 For þe Amyral was y-come with-oute And had be-set þe brigge aboute  
 With strengþe and with gynne ; 3540  
 And had ordeynt him þer to lyn Wip .xxx<sup>ii</sup>. þousant of Saraȝyn  
 To holde hymen þo with-inne.  
 ¶ Wan þay knewe al þat cas, Sory ynow hure euerrech was,  
 þan nyste þay wat do more ; 3544  
 Bote stablede hure stedes vp aȝeyn, And in-to þe paleys þan tornde  
 ageyn & kepte hem-selue þore.

Richard suggests that the others should make an attack on the Saracens,

and mean-while he will steal off in the other direction.

In the morning they prepare to sally out,

but find the bridge beset with 30,000 Saracens.

[leaf 47]

<sup>1</sup> & [erlich in] þe spryng[gyng].  
<sup>3</sup> [hwych ys wel mucche to drede].

<sup>2</sup> [a-way fram hymen].  
<sup>4</sup>—<sup>4</sup> [spronge] & [songe].

panne dude þus barouns of honour Holde hem so wyþ-inne þe tour,  
Y-armed as þai were. 3548

They are kept  
in the tower  
■ weeks.

Viiij. wykes boþe nyȝt & day þat host by-fore þe ȝeate lay,  
& kept hem *with-inne* þere.

One day the  
Emir goes  
hawking,

¶ þan fel þar-after as it be scholde, Oppon a fair day þat þe A[myral]  
wolde To þe ryuer an haukyng fare; 3552

He takeþ wiþ him his grete barouns, þat host he lefte ate pauyllouns  
þe assege to kepe thare.

He made him murie al pilke day, For vilentyne he fond ynow & play  
On ryuer and on lake. 3556

To ys host a droȝ hym aȝen þe nyȝt, Glad in herte, & murye, and lyȝt,  
for þe game he haþ y-take.

so that no  
watch is set.

þat nyȝt as it ful by cas, þe brigge-warde for-ȝete was,  
þorw<sup>1</sup> murȝþe of ys play. 3560

The French  
seeing this,

þys barons were ful sone i-dȝt, & out ate ȝeate þey rydeþ ryȝt,  
In þe sprynggyng of þe day;

By þat þe Amyrel was aryse, And cryede faste to alle hyse,  
þat þay scholde hem dȝte, 3564

& let hem spede for his honour, & go to þe briggewarde of þe tour  
þat was for-ȝyte þat niȝte.

¶ Sone þer-after *with-inne* a þrowe, þe Sarazyns by-gunne hornes  
blowe, & dude on hur armes faste; 3568

attack the  
Saracens  
who are  
unprepared,

Ac er þay wern oȝt helf y-dȝt, þus barons come oppon hem ryȝt,  
& hymen ascryede an haste.

On hymen þay gunne to falle anon, And delte strokes ful god won,  
Wyþ swerdes sherpe ygronde. 3572

and kill  
300.

Wel iij. hundred þay habbeþ a-slawe, & y-broȝt of lyues dawe  
of sarsyns wyþ-inne a stonde.

¶ Sone þar come aȝen hem route xxx. þousant of Sarasyns proute,  
Araid þo for to fiȝte. 3576

þe frensche þanne hem droȝe apart, And made a bekenynge to Richard,  
To take ys way forþ riȝte.

[leaf 47, bk]  
Richard  
seizes the  
opportunity  
and starts.

¶ Ri[chard] tok leue & rod a-way. Now god him helpe þat best may!  
þay by-tok him god almyȝte. 3580

& sone þer-after þay gunne *with-draȝe*, Lytel & lytel as þay mawe

<sup>1</sup> [þorȝ].

Of Rychard haue a siȝte.

þe Sarzȝyns comeþ after repe<sup>1</sup>, Al so harde as þay mowe lepe,  
To slen hem þey wolde be fayn. 3584

Ac a litel by-fore þe castel<sup>3</sup>eate, Wel neȝ þe brigge þat lay þer-ate,  
þys lordes tornde azayn ;

& þan þay by-gunne aȝen hem fiȝte, With sherpe swerdes y-bornsched  
brizte, & mad hem many a wonde, 3588

& layde hem an . boþe bak & syde, & with strengþe of strokes þat  
wer ourride þay slowe hem doun to gronde.

þar hadde þe Saraȝyns yule grace, For of dede men lay fuld þe place,  
& þopre<sup>2</sup> by-gunne to fle. 3592

þan were þe ȝeates y-opened wyde, þe frensche men hadde þe betre syde, The French  
re-enter the  
castle and  
shut the gate,  
& tornd hem to þe tour aȝe.

þe ȝeates schutte Duk Naymoun, & Ogier let þe brigge adoun ;  
& wan al was faste y-sperde, 3596

An heȝ þan wente þus barouns stout, And at þe wyndowe lokod out and watch  
Richard from  
the castle.  
By Richard how it ferde.

¶ þan seȝen alle þys barouns þat he was passed þe pauyllons,  
By a fer contraye. 3600

ȝerne þan prayed hy to god Al on, þat day to kepe him fram ys fon  
& spede hym in is waye.

¶ Wan Ri[chard] was so fer a-past, þan was he noȝyng agast  
Of þat host be-hynde, 3604

Ac sone þer-after, as y schal rede, Sykerly wende he to han be dede,  
nad he non oþer mynde.

¶ Richard prykede forþ an haste, Ase harde as he may þraste, He rides as  
fast as he  
can,  
nowar he ne abideþ ; 3608

Bot euere he prykeþ on ys way, Ne spareþ he mounteyne ne valay,  
Bot prykyng forþ<sup>3</sup> he rydeþ.

¶ As he was prykyng ouer an hul A wykked cas þer him byful, but his horse  
breaks down.  
ys sted wax al ateynte : 3612

Wan þe duk y-saw þat cas, A wrong his<sup>4</sup> handes & said, "alas !"   
& to god he made is pleynte.

"Ihesu lord," þan saide he, "þat syttest on þy maieste, [leaf 48]  
And seest boþe fer & hende ; 3616

<sup>1</sup> rape altered to repe.    <sup>2</sup> & oþre.    <sup>3</sup> Bot [rennyng so].    <sup>4</sup> MS. is his.

Saue me 3if þy wille be, þat no Sarazyn haue poste  
þys day me to schende.

As wys as y nobyng her ne craue, Bote fayne y wolde my felawe saue,  
After our commun deuys. 3620

As y am to hem treuþe ypliȝt Char[les] to brynge þider riȝt,  
To distruye þyn enmys."

Wyþ ys riȝt hond a blessid him þan, And prykeþ ys stede & forþ he  
nam Agayn þe hulle an heȝe. 3624

By this time the sun is shining,  
By þat þe Sonne hure briȝte schon, & Richard was noȝt so ferred ys fon,  
þat hy hym þo ne seȝe.

and Bruyl-  
lant spies  
him,  
¶ Bruyllant, þe kyng of mountmyrre, Toward þe montaynes lokede he,  
& aparceuede hym sone þas. 3628

To kyng Claryoun þat stod him by, hwych was þe Amerel ys cosyn ny,  
þanne he tolde þat cas :

"Sire," said he, "be seynt Mahoun, ȝonder out rydeþ a bold baroun ;  
To Char[les] he ys y-sent 3632

by þys maufesours of þe tour hem to fette to hure socour,  
þar for ys he went."

¶ Wanne þe kyng hym vnderstod, His herte wax angry & ful of mod,  
& was ful heghe y-pyȝt : 3636

Claryon arms  
himself,  
His armes he askede anon with cry, & hy were broȝt wel hastely,  
& sone þan was he dyȝt :

& þan him was broȝt ys gode stede, þe beste fole þan man miȝt fede,  
& sone he him be-strod ; 3640

On hym miȝt he on somers day Prikea an hundred myle of way,  
Rennyng euery fot.

and pursues  
Richard  
Ys scheld þan heng he aboute ys swyre, And forþ he prykede with  
gret yre After duk Rychard. 3644

with 30,000  
Saracens,  
After hym folwede & schoke bost xxx<sup>ti</sup> þowsant on an host,  
y-Armed with scherp & hard.

God of heuene Rychard kepe ! After him prykeþ al þe hepe,  
To slen him þay han hem tyȝt. 3648

Ac þe kyng hem passede with-inne a wyle, Forn hem þe mountance  
of two myle, So heȝe is herte was piȝt.

Richard  
¶ Ri[chard] forthward prikede vaste Al the wyle þat hors miȝt laste,  
Ne spareþ he him no þyng. 3652





Clarion  
cuts through  
his shield,

þorȝ-out ys scheld & is habreioun, Plates, & iakke & ioupoun,  
þorȝ-out al it ȝot.

[leaf 49]  
grazing his  
side.

By-Twene ys scherte & is syde Passeþ þe dent of þat sper oun-ryde,  
Of ys skyn a litel hit nam. 3692

Richard gan grope to þat gerse, And wan he felede hit was no werse,  
god he þankede þan.

¶ Ac wan þe duk y-seȝ ys blod, Egre he wax & heȝ of mod,  
& til þe kyng a wond, 3696

Richard  
smites  
Clarion on  
the helmet.

& smot hym on þe helm above, & þoȝt is hed han to-clove  
Wyþ ys gode brond ;

Ac þe helm was so hard y-wroȝt, þat he miȝt entamy him noȝt,  
Wyþ no dynt of swerde. 3700

Ac wan Ric[h]ard þat vnderstent, Sone azaf hym anoper dent,  
And on þe nekke him gurde,

He severs his  
head from his  
shoulders,

And smot hem þan *with* such an yre, þat helm & heued wyþ al þe atyre  
In-to þe feld it fleȝ. 3704

dismounts,  
and takes his  
horse, letting  
his own go.

þat body a putte a-doun god spede, & lefte his hors and tok þat stede,  
& lepeþ on him an heȝ.

¶ Now ne dar he noȝyng drede Of þat hyndere falurede,  
þat comeþ after gon ; 3708

for conquered he haueþ a stede, Ne saw he neuere no such at nede,  
To saue him fram ys fon.

þan lokede he on hym þat was hys, For þat stede ful wo hym ys,  
and saide þanne on is speche : 3712

“now Haue gode . my gode morel, On many a stour þou hast seruid  
me wel, Crist ich þe by-teche !

And god ȝut, if þy wille beo, Send me grace þat y mote þe seo,  
On crysten mannes welde.” 3716

With þat he prykeþ forþ on ys way, & þat host compþ after *with* gret  
effray, To encombry hem on þe felde.

The Saracens  
find the body  
of their  
leader.

¶ Ac as þes Sarsyns prykede faste þay founde hure lord þar ate laste ;  
His hed lay on a forwe, 3720

ys body was tornd ouer-thwart þe way, Fro þat heued ten vet fram hyt  
lay ; þan made þay muche sorwe.

They lament  
over him.

Wan þay seȝen hym so by-stad Alle þay waxen sore of-drad,  
An[d] gunne him sore be-mene. 3724

Ferrer ne draste þay noȝt for fere, Bote a-liȝte & wronge hure handes þere,  
And saide, "alas!" for tene.

"Alas," þay sayde, "why wolde he so Hym-self allone þus fonde ys fo,  
With-oute ous þat with hym were?"

Richardis stede þanne þay saye Renningge a-streyey þar on þe waye,  
To take him þan þoȝte þay þere. They try to catch Richard's steed,

¶ þan þay be-trappede hym alle aboute, Ac for non hem with-oute doute [leaf 49, back]  
ne wil he noȝt be cauȝte: 3732

Wan any of hem þat hors cam'nez, A caste be-hynde & arered an heȝ,  
And fulde al þat a rauȝte.

Fyfty stedes a-doun a fulde, & ten þer-of to deȝe a kulde, but he kills ten of their steeds, and escapes.  
On þat same out-rage. 3736

þe stede þan tornde him as he cam To þe tour of Egrymoygne þan  
way a nam, Maugre hure vysage.

¶ Wanne a cam þe paulyons nez, þe Amyrel wel sone him of-seȝ, Balan seeing him, thinks Richard has been killed.  
& sayde þan on his sawe, 3740

& swer til hem þat stode him by, þat Clarioun his cosyn sykerly  
þe messenger had a-slawe:

"Wel certeyn am y þar-of," he sede, "Lo! whar ȝond comeȝ ys stede;  
Let take hym ich ȝow praye." 3744

þanne Sarsyns ruȝne aboute him faste, Ac wan þay seȝe how he gan<sup>1</sup>  
caste, þay let hym gon ys waye;

þorw-out þat host þe stede him ran Al riȝt to þe tour þat he com fram, The horse comes to the gate of the castle.  
& at þe ȝeate a stente. 3748

þe lordes þat on þe toure were Wan þay seȝe hym þay hadden fere,  
& sone a-doun þay wente:

þe brigge<sup>2</sup> was sone y-lete adoun, þe ȝate openede duk Neymoun, Naymes lets him in,  
Ogier tok in þe stede. 3752

& wan þay had mad fast aboute & y-stablyd þe stede, þan al þe route  
Sore þay gunne hem drede,

For ech of hem wende on is part þe Sarsyns had sleyn duk Richart. The French fear that Richard has been slain.  
þey swere by Peter & paule: 3756

þat by hys stede þay knewe þat cas, Warfor þay prayde god kyng of gras  
haue mercy of is saule.

¶ Wan þat Flo[rippe] y-saw hem wepe, Gy, hure lemman, & al þe hepe,

<sup>1</sup> gan [to]; the to inserted, but crossed through. <sup>2</sup> þe [ȝeate draȝt] brigge.

In herte hur gan to greue. 3760

of wepyng ne miȝt sche abstene hur' noȝt, Til euerech fayre sche þan  
by-soȝt, þat nycete for to leue :

Floripas tries to cheer them. "Lordes," sche saide, "leueþ al þys, Ther is non of ȝow þat wot to  
wys. Wather he ys quyke or ded.<sup>1</sup> 3764

per-for leteþ al ȝour mornynge For ȝe hyre betere tydyng,  
& þer-to y leye myn hed."<sup>2</sup>

¶ þus Floripe, þat mayde of gret honour, Confortede þe barouns on þe tour  
With hure wordes gode : 3768

[leaf 50] Hure wordes lekedem euerechon, & fro þanne þay buþ an-heȝ agon  
& to a wyndowe þan þay ȝeode ;

From a window they see the Saracens ¶ As þay were thar & loked out, þay sawe þanne come at o rout  
þe Sarsyns faste ride, 3772

þat hadde y-chaced Richard down, Wan he aslow kyng Claryoun,  
þat was so ful of pryde.

bearing the body of Clarion þat body þay broȝte among hem þo, & Sarȝyns wente to & fro,  
And made a wonder deel. 3776

to Balan's tent. þat body forþ þai bryngeþ so, & euene<sup>3</sup> to þe pauyllouns þay gunne go,  
& metep with þe Amyrel.

¶ "What how now," saide he þan, "Haþ Clarioun my cosyn aslawe  
þe man ? þe messenger ys he ded ?" 3780

"Nay," quap on, "þe deucl him drawe, For he haþ my lord a-slawe,  
lo, her ys body and hed !"

Wan þe Amyral hym ded y-seȝ, Sorwe ȝede ys herte neȝ,  
& angry ynow he was : 3784

The Emir swoot ȝe four times, Four sithes he ful a-doun y-sowe, & oþre dules made ynowe,  
& ofte cryede, "Alas !"

"Alas," said he, "my cosyn dere, Al my confort for-soþ þow were,  
Wo ys me for þy sake ! 3788

For þow were euere god & kende, Y praye to Mahoun, as he ys hende,  
þat he þy saule take."

þe Sarazyns þat þanne aboute hym were A gret dul þay made there,  
For þat kyngis deþ. 3792

<sup>1</sup> Wather he ys ded [or quyke].

<sup>2</sup> [Tellen more sykerke]. (About 20 other lines in this page have been rewritten.)

<sup>3</sup> MS. eueuene.

þan stode þus barounz of honour, & lokede pyderward out of þe tour,  
 & al þys hyreþ & seeþ.

¶ Rolond askede þan ful riȝt, Of þat burde fair & briȝt, and Roland  
asks Floripas  
 Yf sche couþe hym telle, 3796

Whar-for was mad þat gret inornyng Amonges þe Saraȝyns olde & ȝyng, what it  
means.  
 As hy þar herden alle.

¶ Florippe ansuerede & sayde, “ȝys, Y can ȝow sayn wel why it ys, She tells him.  
 war-for y am wel fawe : 3800

Certys al ys for Clarioun kyng, þat was my fadres owe derlyng,  
 þat Rychard haueþ a-slawe.

He was a noble werreour, Of al heþenisse was he flour,  
 Me nyste nowar ys pere. 3804

Certis now waxeþ ȝour honour, He was my fadres beste socour,  
 & ys cosyn dere.

¶ Whar-for now buþ alle glad, Ri[chard] ys lyues, buþ noȝt a-dradd, [leaf 50, back]  
 And haþ y-don þys dede ; 3808

Conquerid haþ he of kyng Claryoun, An hors þat is worþ many a toun,  
 No-war nys such a stede.”

Wanne sche haueþ hure tale y-tolde, þan gunne þaye alle waxe holde,  
 þat wern þo on þe tour. 3812

Olyuer sayde to þe company : “ Now mowe we beo þe more hardy  
 To byden her socour.”

And alle þan þankede god almyȝt, þat Rychard was þat day so wyȝt, They all  
thank God.  
 þat doȝty kyng to slee, 3816

And prayede god, þe heȝe iustys, Scholde scheld him fram ys enymys,  
 & send hym saf Aȝee.

**R**ychard hym prykeþ on ys way, Ne spareþ he hulle ne valay,  
 Bot al-way ryȝd prikyng. 3820  
 Conquered had he such a stede, þat of ys trauayl ne doþ he  
 drede How fer a-go rennyng.

þe Ameral þanne ful angry was, He clepede til hym Malyngryas, Balan orders  
Malyngryas,  
his mes-  
senger, to go  
 þat was ys Messenger, 3824

And saide to hym, “ beo wys & snel, And tak þe dromodarye þat goþ wel,  
 & grayþe þe on þy ger ;

To Mantrible anon most þou fare, Quikly loke þat þou be þare, at once to  
Mantrible,  
 As swyþe as he may gon. 3828

byn spores loke þat þou ne spare, þe dromedary ys swifter þan þe hare,

He bryngeþ þe þar anon.

and caution  
Agolafre, the  
keeper of the  
bridge,

& go to Agolafre, þe Briggeward, And aske of hym on my part,

Why he dude so ille, 3832

To lete passye þe Messagers þat holdeþ my tour & my doȝtre fers,

Al agayn my wille.

If y may lyue, by myn heued, Hym schel beo betre han y-leued,

for þat was folye gret. 3836

Tel hym al-so al þat cas Of Clarioun þat my neuewe was,

In wat manere he is ded,

& how A Messenger haþ hym slayn þat <sup>1</sup>wendeþ to fecche<sup>1</sup> Charlemayn,

if he may pasye there; 3840

<sup>2</sup>& ys y-sent by þus glotouns Charlis to fecche & his barouns,

To schende ous alle here.

[leaf 51] For if he þe Messenger <sup>3</sup>leteþ pace,<sup>3</sup> Charlis <sup>4</sup>wol me of londe chace,<sup>4</sup>

& brynge ous alle ful lowe. 3844

not to let any  
stranger pass  
the bridge.

Thar-for say him þat he be-war, And lete noman pacye thar,

bote if he be knowe.

<sup>5</sup>And<sup>5</sup> if þar comeþ any ounknewed<sup>6</sup> man, Sone þat he ben take þan,<sup>7</sup>

& hyder to me y-send.<sup>8</sup> 3848

Say hym on payne of ys heued, þat þys þyng beo noȝt be-leued,

As he ne wil be y-schend."

¶ "Syre," sayde þe Messenger, "Sone certis y wil be ther,

& speke wiþ agolofre, 3852

& ȝour erand to hym<sup>9</sup> abeode: Ac ride wil y noȝt in thys neode,

y þank ȝow of ȝour profre.

To renne an .C. myle on my fete, Ne schal noman y-se me swete,

On hulle ne in valay. 3856

<sup>1-1</sup> [wende oute now to.]

<sup>2</sup> Added in the margin below:—

To socoury þys glotouns on my tour þat habep y-don me deshounour  
& ous to schende here.

<sup>3-3</sup> over 'thar pase may.'

<sup>5-5</sup> altered to (?) 'if þat.'

<sup>7</sup> over 'War-for in myn half hat hym þan.'

<sup>8</sup> Over this line, crossed through, is 'þat he be sone y-take,' and under-  
neath is 'to passe þat passage.'

<sup>9</sup> & [to hym] ȝour erand [wel].

The mes-  
senger say  
he can run  
faster than  
ride.

Or þe dromedarye scholde be diȝt, Y schal gon on my fote ryȝt,

Wel neȝ half þe way."

¶ þe Messenger ys sone forþ afare, & renneþ swyfter þan þe hare ;

He starts and soon over-takes Richard,

Rychard he haþ of-take.

3860

Malyngryas him drow a-part, & þus ascryede þar duk Richard,

"þow schelt noȝt ous a-scape."

& forþ he renneþ al so swyft, As foul þat fleþ on þe lift,

passes him,

Mantrib[l]e til he cam to.

3864

& þan to þe brigge tok he ys pas, Straȝt to þe brigge-ward þar a was,

On þe brigge stondynge þo.

¶ Wanne he afforn him was y-come, Ys erande abed he al & some,

and delivers his message to Agolafre.

Riȝt as y schal ȝow saye<sup>1</sup>.

3868

"þe Ameral me hauaþ to þe y-sent, To wyte what was þyn entent

To don hym such affraye,<sup>2</sup>

þe messagers for to leten þe brigge pace,<sup>3</sup> þat Charlys sente by manace,<sup>4</sup>

<sup>5</sup>Hyderward hym<sup>5</sup> to scape ;

3872

þat han *with* strengthe conquerd is tour, And holdeþ ys doȝtere wiþ

deshonour,

& hermyeþ hem late & rathe.

¶ And now comþþ on of hem prykyng, Fram þe othre y-sent to

Charlis kyng,

& ys by-stole awaye.

3876

By Mahoun, pautener, þe tyd abigge,<sup>6</sup> For<sup>7</sup> þay passede so þe brigge<sup>8</sup>:

He sent þe so to saye.

For Clarioun<sup>9</sup> þe kyng<sup>9</sup> he haueþ a-slawe And y-take ys stede aȝen

þe lawe,<sup>10</sup>

hys better nys nowar non.

3880

Toward Charl[es] wolde he wende, And bryng hym hider my lord to [leaf 51, back]

schende,

And to distruye ous ecchon.

Wharfor þe Amerel ys wonder wroþ, & by Ma[houn] haþ sworn ys oþ,

& þow him lete pace,

3884

Whar þow beo founde, fer or neȝ, þat þow schalt be an-honged heȝ,

þe tyȝd non oþer grace."

¶ Wan Agolafre haþ herd hym speke, Forange þat he nedrast him wreke, Agolafre is furious at the message,

A skuntede als a bore :—

3888

<sup>1</sup> over 'sigge'.

<sup>2</sup> over 'To kepe betere þus brigge.'

<sup>3</sup> '& whan þou letest pace' over.

<sup>4</sup> over 'Charlis messagers *with* yule grace.'

<sup>5-5</sup> 'þus ȝonder day' over.

<sup>6</sup> over 'ful wo.'

<sup>7</sup> For [þou].

<sup>8</sup> over 'for þou let hem pacy so.'

<sup>9-9</sup> 'hys newew' over.

<sup>10</sup> Other lines added, but are too indistinct to make out.



"Go out of my sizt," to him he sede, "How dost þow, harlot, þyn erand  
bede? & seo þou me no more.

and threatens  
Malyngryus.

By Mahoun, my lord, þat sit in trone, Bute þou þe rathere ben agone,  
Myn axe þou schalt y-knowe." 3892

Agolafre sone þo<sup>1</sup> tok an horn, & quiklich in-to a tour he orn  
& loude þan gan he blowe.

By þat he hauede y-blowe a blaste, On þe toun<sup>2</sup> þay bute tabours faste,  
& made noyse horryble. 3896

20,000  
Saracens  
assemble.

To armes<sup>3</sup> Sarsyns runne an haste, & xx. þousant sone<sup>4</sup> þer paste  
of þe Citee of Mantrible.

¶ þe draȝtbrigge was wel sone arered, Many a Sarzyn þar was a-stered,  
þat Ry[chard] wente azene.<sup>5</sup> 3900

Now god of heuene helpe Rychard! þar mot he pace þorw þe hard,  
for he not wyder fleene.

Richard from  
a hill sees the  
Saracens.

As Ri[chard] hym comeþ on an hulle an-heȝ, þat host of Sarasyns he  
of-seȝ, Houyng on a mede, 3904

In armes briȝte & sykere wedes, Sittyng e vechone on faire stedes,  
& þan hym gan a-drede.

He is in  
doubt what  
to do.

"Lord," he saide, "for þy god-hed, What ys now my beste red?  
of blisse y am al bare: 3908

If y come among þys fered, Wel y wot y lese myn hed;  
Wyder-ward may y fare?

And if y me take to þe ryuer ward<sup>6</sup> þe strem ys so stil & hard,<sup>7</sup>  
þat<sup>8</sup> þer me tyd adrenche: 3912

& if y to þe tour now torne agayn,<sup>9</sup> þe sarazyns me wollep sle certayn,  
y not now<sup>10</sup> wyder blenche.

Thesu, my lord ful of myȝt, þat al þyng canst boþe dele & diȝt,  
pyte of me þou haue<sup>11</sup>! 3916

[leaf 52] Al þat þou dudest on me make, <sup>12</sup>In-to þyn hondes ich her<sup>12</sup> by-take  
Fram combrymment þou me saue!"

<sup>1</sup> MS. þas, with þo over it.

<sup>2</sup> [In þe tounne].

<sup>3</sup> 'armes [þanne].'

<sup>4</sup> [of hem] sone.

<sup>5</sup> þat [come] Ry[chard] azene.

<sup>6</sup> And y me take to þe [wilde] ryuer.

<sup>7</sup> [Schamlich tyd me dye ther.]

<sup>8</sup> [for] þat.

<sup>9</sup> & if to þe tour [wolde] torne agayn.

<sup>10</sup> not corrected to now.

<sup>11</sup> Here follow 2 long and 2 short lines, almost illegible.

<sup>12-12</sup> over 'body & saule ich þe.'

- ¶ þan tornde him Richard al so hot, Toward þe Ryuer þat hiȝt Flagot, He turns  
& þyderward prikeþ faste. 3920 towards the river;
- þe Sarazynȝ of hym hadde siȝt, And ryde after as foul on fiȝt, the Saracens  
to taken hym þay þoȝt an haste.<sup>1</sup> ride after him,
- Ac furst and afforeward alle Prykede a cosyn of þe Amyralle, headed by  
Me calde Mandysee; 3924 Mandysee,
- Hys hors was lyȝt & faste ȝed<sup>2</sup>, And bar a sterre on his for-hed<sup>2</sup>,  
A noble sted was hee.
- ¶ þe Sarsyn þat<sup>3</sup> was ryche & prout, By-fore alle othere he prykeþ out,  
& <sup>4</sup>haueþ of-take Richard,<sup>4</sup> 3928
- & het hym abide & gan to crye, "Claryoun ys deþ þov schalt aby, who calls on  
Torn to me coward."<sup>5</sup> Richard to  
Richard tornde til hym anon, & adrow ys swerd, þat briȝte schon, Richard  
& gurde him on þe heued; 3932 cleaves  
Richard  
Mandysee's  
skull,
- Such a strok þat dupe wod, þorw-out helm, heued & hod,  
Al he haþ for-cleued.
- þe Sarsyn sone ful doun ded, & Ryc[hard] By þe rayne tok þat sted,  
To haue him was hym lef. 3936
- Til þe ryuer prikede Richarde, And þe Sarzȝns come prykyng after and hastens  
harde, Cryyng—"tak þe þef!"<sup>6</sup> towards the  
the river,
- ¶ Now y-come ys he to þe ryuere, By-syde a treo & a stod him þere, pursued by  
þat water to by-holde, 3940 the Saracens.
- & saw þe ryuer was dup & brod, And ran a-way as he were wod,  
ys herte gan waxe colde.
- ¶ Richard tok herte & þenche gan, þat nedelich a most entrye þan He deter-  
In & passe þat ryuere, 3944 mines to  
swim the  
river,
- Ouþer he moste turn azee, And fiȝte agayn al þat maygne,  
þat after him come there.
- To ihesu þanne he bad a bone:—"Lord, þat madest sunne, mone,  
Lond & water cler, 3948
- Kep me þys day fram my fone, & if y þys ryuer potte me one, and  
þat y ne a-drenche her: commends  
himself to  
god.
- & such grace þow me sende, þat y may saf to Charlis wende,  
& telle hym my porpos, 3952

<sup>1</sup> [& þan gan Richard haste.]<sup>2</sup> ȝede and hede marked for correction.<sup>3</sup> [for] þat.<sup>4</sup> [& a take Richardoun.]<sup>5</sup> [feloun.]<sup>6</sup> [with gret effray] (the line riming with this, altered.)

[leaf 52, back] So þat he may come wyþ socour, And delyuery ys barons of honour,  
þat liggeþ among þy fos."

A milk-white doe appears, ¶ Nad he noȝt þat word ful speke, Er þat þar cam an hert forþ reke,  
As wyt ase melkys fom. 3956

and swims across. Ryȝt euene by-fore duk Rycharð þat best<sup>1</sup> hym wente to watre-ward,  
& fayre by-fore hym swom.

Wanne þe duk þat wonder y-seȝ, & þe sarsyns þat þo wer come wel neȝ,  
With bost & noyse gret, 3960

Richard takes courage, and leaps into the river, Wyþ is riȝt hond þan blessedede he hym, And þoȝ þe ryuere were styf  
& grym, Wyþ boþe hors in a schet ;  
Ys stede was an hors of prys, & bar þe kniȝt at al dyuys,  
Swymmynge with ys felawe. 3964

the deer leading him. þe hert þat was so fair of siȝt Ouer þe Ryuer swam ful riȝt,  
& Ry[charð] doþ after-drawe.

¶ Ys fon hym folȝede to þe water cler, Ac wan þay come to þe dupe  
Ryuer, þat wilde was & thro, 3968

The Saracens are afraid, Entrye þanne ne darst hy noȝt, For þe ryuer him ran so toȝt ;  
Sory men were þay þo.

and turn to cross by the bridge. To þe Citee þanne þey prikede aȝeyn, & fyndeþ mandisee þat was  
a-sleyn, As ȝe hurde of are. 3972

þat body þay lefte stille ligge, & prykede ȝerne ouer þe brigge,  
To mete with Ry[charð] þare.

¶ Agolafre wax wonder wroþ, To þe drauȝtbrigge before<sup>2</sup> he goþ,  
& quȝclich let hur down : 3976

"Barouns," quap he, "now prikeap faste, þe Messenger þat ȝe hadde an  
haste, & sleþ þat foul feloun."

They hurry over the bridge. þan miȝte men many Sarsynȝ seen Ouer þe brigge an-horce fleen,  
prikyng as þay wer wod ; 3980

By þat was Richard þe ryuer past, And prykeþ hym fram ys fon an  
hast, As ys nede by-stod.

Nad he noȝt priked of þat contray, Fro þe ryuere a myle way,  
Er he a-liȝte a-doun. 3984

Richard sees them coming, þan saw he comyng on o valay þat host of Saraȝynȝ þe hol aray  
To take hem<sup>3</sup> were þay boun.

<sup>1</sup> [þe hert.]      <sup>2</sup> [sone.]  
<sup>3</sup> hȝ altered to hē?

Hastelich azen on ys stede he wond, þe sterrede he takeþ on ys hond,  
 & leteþ hem boþe renne. 3988

He prykeþ hem forþ wyþ such an eyr, þat at euery stape sprong out [leaf 53]  
 þat fyr, þat þay made þanne.

þe Sarazyns prykede after faste, Ac al hure trauail a-way þay caste, but is soon  
 For he passede hure sizt. 3992 out of sight,

& wan þay seze it nolde noȝt be, Wroþ & sory þay tornde aȝee,  
 As þay come ful riȝt.

**L** Forþ þanne rideþ Rychardoun, Stouteliche as a bold baroun,  
 ne douteþ he for no man, 3996  
 Prykyng euer hulle & pleyn, Til he cam to Charlemeyn,  
 neuere ne astente he þan.

and never  
 stops till he  
 comes to  
 Charle-  
 mayne.

Ete we Richard of Normaundy Prykye forthward on ys wey,  
 & of Char[li]s y wol ȝov telle, 4000  
 þat lyþ at Morymond with ys barons, Wel y-logged ther on  
 pauyllouns; now lystep to þis spelle.

Muche hym awondrep Charl[is] kyng þat he ne hureþ no tydyng  
 of his barouns hende, 4004  
 hwyche he had to þe Ameral sent; For hymen ys he in gret torment,  
 Sorwe hym gan betrende.

Meanwhile  
 Charles  
 wonders that  
 he hears no  
 tidings of his  
 knights;

¶ Charl[is] clypede ys barouns, And scheweþ til hymen ys resons  
 On þis manere & sede: 4008

and calls a  
 council.

"Lordes," said he, "me ys ful wo þat my doþpepers buþ þus a-go,  
 y drede lest þay be dede.

If þay lyuede<sup>1</sup> y wot to wysse Of hem y scholde ha herd or þysse,  
 & now y ha lost hem so. 4012

Alas þat euere y saw þis day! þe flour of chyualrye ys away,  
 & my worschip is a-go!

fayne y wolde þe croune op-ȝelde, Her by-fore ȝow on thys felde,  
 ne kep y hure bere nomare." 4016

Wyþ þat A wepte wyþ is eȝen, & wan þe frensche hit herde & seȝen,  
 Wel sory ys frendes ware.

They all  
 lament for  
 the knights

¶ Gweynes ys traytour þat þar was þo, Wanne he herde hym speke so  
 On herte him leked þat cas: 4020

save Gwenty-  
 lon, the  
 traitor,

<sup>1</sup> If þay [were] lyues].

Of ys sorwe a was ful fayn, And of þe barouns þat scholde be slayn,  
Glad ynow a was.

who advises  
Charles to

Affore þe kyng i-come ys he & sayde, "Charlis,<sup>1</sup> now herkne me,  
& do by my saying : 4024

[leaf 53, back] þyn host liþ her ful yuele araid, And holdeþ hym ful yule apaid  
Of þy longe bydyng.

retire to  
France

Let awarnye þyn barouns þat þay don vp hure pauyllouns,  
Euerech on ys side, 4028

because  
the Saracens  
are preparing  
to avenge  
Ferumbras,

And trussyam þis day & aredy make, & to-morwe let ous our iorne  
take, Hamward azen to ryde.

¶ þe Ameral haueþ y-gadred ys host In tal heþenys by euery cost, .  
And þenkeþ ryde on þe ; 4032

For ys sone, sir Fyrumbras, þat among ous her conquered was,  
He þenkeþ Auenged be.

þow ne hast no power now an-honde, His grete assemble to wiþ-stonde,  
Wan þay comeþ to fizte. 4036

And þoȝ þow woldest azen hym fonde, þay buþ on hure owene londe,  
þow gost to grounde rizte.

and Roland  
and the  
others are  
dead.

And namliche supþe þat þay buþ dede þat scholde ben our help at nede,  
Hardy ys he & feer, 4040

And wol come hider & on ous falle, þe to slen & eke ous alle,  
þat he may fynde her.

þer-for, sire, do by my rede, To-morwe erly a wel god spede  
Ham-ward let ous drawe. 4044

And þenk eft-sones to auenged be of þe Amyral þat haþ y-wreþþed þe,  
& þyne men a-slawe."

Charles  
cannot  
answer him  
for grief,

¶ Wan he haþ told ys resoun Char[lis] caste his heued adoun,  
& haþ al tornd ys mod ; 4048

So wo hym was on is þoȝt þat he ne myȝt hem answerie noȝt,  
for al þe worlde god.

Gret deel hit was hym to seen, How he gan þo to wepe azen,  
þat noble conquerour. 4052

Wan he by-gan to with-drawe ys mod, To him-self said he þar a stod—  
"now falleþ al myn honour,

<sup>1</sup> & sayde [to] Charlis.

þe whyle y hauede me aboute Myne doppepers bold & stoute,  
 Olyuer & Rolond, 4056 but laments  
over his  
knights.

In tal þe worlde men dude me doute : Whar þat y come wyþ my route,  
 y hadde þe heghere hond :

þanne me dradde me fer & ner,<sup>1</sup> And was ycleped conquerer,  
 In tal þe worlde aboute. 4060

And now buþ hy fro me gon, Whar-for waxeþ<sup>2</sup> bold my fon,  
 þat arst dude me doute : [leaf 54]

And yf y þuse viage leue þus, Men willeþ seyn, by swete iesus,  
 My myzt ys me bereued ; 4064

þan haue ich y-lost al my renoun : As lef me were her stope adoun,  
 & lete gurd of myn heued."

¶ þe Emperour stod & hym by-þoʒte, How þat he answeye moʒte,  
 & þus he sayde þo : 4068

"What sigge ʒe, lordes of renoun, By þe conseyl of Gweneloun?  
 Wat rede ʒe for-to do ? Charles asks  
the advice of  
his nobles.

If y me thus turne in-to fraunce, Wyþ-oute takynge of vengeance,  
 Hit is to me gret schame. 4072

Men wolleþ sayn þat buþ wyse þat it ys al my feyntyse  
 & putte on me þe blame."

¶ þan hadde þe traytour cosyns thare, Geffroun, Dautefuelle and Gwenylon's  
friends  
support him.  
 Malkare, Hardree and Alorys, 4076

Gerard, Hugoun and Gwylmare, And mo þan hundred othre þat ware  
 ys cosyns oper alyes,  
 & alle were traytours to Charlemayn ; þay come forþ & gunne to sayn  
 Afforn hym þar a stod : 4080

"Leue Syr kyng, as þow art free, Do now as Gweynes redeþ þee,  
 for it ys for þy god.

Gweneloun ys boþe god & wys, And haþ y-rad the at oure deuys,  
 As it wil best auayle. 4084

þer buþ .xx. þousent among ous her þat willeþ no ferþer wyþ þ<sup>e</sup> þis ʒer  
 Putte hem to trauayle,  
 And þat ys for þow hast y-lost þylke þat scholde help ous most,  
 Ro[land] and Olyueer, 4088

<sup>1</sup> [boþe] fer & ner.

<sup>2</sup> MS. waxex.



And þyne oþre barouns stoute, To wham alle we wern woned aloute,  
for þay were so feer."

¶ "By dure god," saide Charllys þan, "ȝe loueaþ me lytel euery man,  
þat redeþ me in þis maner. 4092

If y þus schamlich schal torne agayn, Luuere me were be ded certayn  
On þys felde her."

Rayner  
warns him  
not to trust  
them.

¶ þe erld of Genyue, syre Rayner, Sayde þanne to þe Emperer :  
"Syre, be my liegeance, 4096

[leaf 54, back]

þou ne dost noȝt ase þe wys If þow y-lyuest sir Alorys,  
oþer any of his lyaunce.

Ys consail dude þe neuere god, Ne non þat y knowe of al is blod ; .  
haue it wel in mynde. 4100

Hy buþ fals in dede & þoȝt, Hure consail to þe nas neuere noȝt,  
& þat þou schal wel vynde."

Alorys  
threatens

¶ þan hym spak sir alorys : "Rayner, þou spekest al amys,  
By god omnipotent ; 4104

And þat þow scholdest a-bigge sare, If þe kyng hem-self ne ware  
Her now in present.

and abuses  
Rayner.

What þow art ful wel we knowe ; Y-come þow art of kunne lowe,  
And Garyn þy fader also : 4108

In þe werld nad he lond ne rente, Saf þat þat he wiþ falshed hente,  
& dude men þer-for wo.

Neuere ne was he *with*-oute strif, Bot ay wykke[d]liche lyuede ys lyf,  
On þesþe & robberye : 4112

And al ys lygnage in euery syde, For robbours þai were y-kud as wyde  
As any man myȝte a-spye."

Rayner is  
enraged,  
and knocks  
him down.

¶ þe duk þan wax al ful of grame, Wanne he spak of is fader schame,  
And strok til hym *with* yre ; 4116

& on þe cheke gurd hym *with* ys hond, þat wyþ þe strok to gronde a wond,  
And tomblede on þe myre.

"þow lyeſt, rybaud," saide he þan, "My fader was kud a trewe man ;  
god ȝyue þe yule chaunce ! 4120

And alle þat buþ of ys blode Trewe men þai ben i-holde & gode,  
þorȝ-out þe realme of france."

Gwenylon's  
friends cry

¶ Wan ys proute kyn y-sawe þat cas, Hautefuelle, hardre, & Sir Malcras,  
& oþre a þousent nez ; 4124

What of alyaunce, wat of blod, þan þay ascryede hym as þay were wod, out for  
revenge.  
 "Asarmes!" swyþe an-heȝ.

þat kun was wykkede on him-selue & armede hymen blyue on eche helue,  
 - boþe ȝonge & olde. 4128

And so he dude eke þ<sup>e</sup> duk Rayner, And al is frendes þat he had ther,  
 þat þoȝte with hym to holde.

Mykel was þe noyse þat þan aras: Ac Gweynes partye þe more was, Gwenylon's  
party is  
the larger,  
 & miȝtyer of power. 4132

Ac wan þat hol host y-saw þat cas, Hit ful to þe duk Rayner þorw gras, but all the  
soldiers join  
Rayner.  
 For loue of Olyuer.

¶ þan þay þoȝte to-gadre han set, ne hauede Fyrumbras hymen y-let, [leaf 55]  
Ferumbras  
and Charles  
interfere.  
 þat hymen wente betwene; 4136

& þe kyng among hem went, & hoten hem by commaundyment,  
 þat þay lete it bene.

¶ Wan þys noyse al cessed was þe kyng stod vp in the plas,  
 & clypeþ til hym Rayner, 4140

Gweneloun, hardree & Alorys, And othre mo of þys partys  
 & sayde in þys maner:

"ȝe doþ me, lordes, wel muche ounriȝt, þat buþ hardy her on my siȝt, Charles  
 Do me þe vylonye, 4144

Her on my presence to profry fiȝt. Bote it be amended, by god almiȝt,  
 ȝour summe it schal abyen.

¶ Alorys," said he, "þys was þy werke, Cast of hasteliche þyn hauberke, orders Alorys  
to disarm and  
 & þyn helm of þe þou take, 4148

And by-fore Rayner sete þe on kne, And on hys mercye pote þou þe, apologize  
to Rayner.  
 and is amendes make."

¶ "Syre," quap Gweynes, "it schal be do, Siþþe ȝe hotep þat hit  
 beo so, We wollap make ys pays." 4152

"ȝea, be god," quap haufefuelle, "Do now Alorys wiþ-oute duelle,  
 Riȝt as þe kyng him says."

¶ Alorys ounarmed him þanne an haste, And on is knes andressede Alorys does  
so,  
 him vaste, Be-fore þe duk Rayner; 4156

þe amendes a profrede him for-to make, At heȝ & low what he wold take, and they are  
reconciled.  
 & so þay acorded ther.

¶ þe kyng gan asky aȝenward þo, Whaþer þay hym radde a-byde or go  
 Aȝenward in-to fraunce. 4160

"Ac wel y may wyte<sup>1</sup> if y do so y potte me-selue in sorwe & wo  
& to gret greuance."

Hauteville  
advises him  
to follow the  
counsel of  
Gwenylon,

¶ Hautefuelle hym answerede agayn : "Herkne, sire, what y schal sayn,  
y wil 3ou nozt be-swyke. 4164

Ful wel 3e know þys ech del þat euere y haue iloued 3ow wel,  
& Gweynes my sone doþ yke.

Ho-so consaile 3ow her to abide, He loueþ 3ow litel at þys tyde :  
þenchesoun y wol 3ow say. 4168

þy puple ys her enpayned stronge, For þay han y-laye her þus longe,  
y-armed boþe niȝt & day :

[leaf 55, back] Al our bodyes waxeþ sore, So longe we habbeþ armes bore,  
And buþ so heuy so led. 4172

Do<sup>2</sup> as Gweynes redeþ þe, And faire let ous turne aȝe,  
þys ys þe beste red.

And wan we comeþ in-to oure helue,<sup>3</sup> þan mowe we þar reste ous selue,  
An ten 3er ate leste. 4176

and take time  
to recruit his  
army.

By þat willeþ hy þat now buþ 3onge Be ful waxe & be bold & stronge,  
To helpe þe in þe beste :

Then he can  
return

& þan miȝt þou gadry a-ȝen þyn host, And come ageyn in-to þys cost,  
With nobleye & bobaunce, 4180

& do wreche for duk Rolond, & for þyn opre barouns strong,  
& take þy vengeance ;

and recover  
the sacred  
relics.

& eke þyn relyques wyne aȝee, þe croune of thorn & þe nailes three,  
þat buþ away i-bore ; 4184

& þe opre relyques al & some, Hwiche þay habbeþ þe be-nome,  
þat we buþ trauaild fore."

¶ þan was Char[lis] enchanted so With þees traytour, and othre mo,  
Gweneloun & hardree, 4188

Charles gives  
orders for a  
return to  
France.

þat he hem graunteþ þat same daye To trossy hur harneys & hem  
araye, To torn hem hom aȝee.

þo were þys traytours glad & blyþe, In tal þat host þay wente swyþe,  
And warnede mest & leste, 4192

Euery man to makye hym ȝare, & trussye his harneys hom to fare,  
After þe kynges heste.

<sup>1</sup> 'knowe' over 'may wyte.'

<sup>3</sup> 'contre' over 'helue.'

<sup>2</sup> Do [now].

- ¶ þan waxe sory þe gode barouns, þat þay scholde don op hure  
 pauillo[u]ns, By þe conseil of losengers: 4196  
 & namliche þe gode duk Rayner Muche bemenep̃. ys sone Olyuer,  
 & alle þe doþpepers :  
 Nopeles suppe þat it was so, After þe kyng þay moste do,  
 & gunne to trussye vaste. 4200  
 þay fulde sakkis, & trossede males, To Charyotes þay drowen þe  
 grete bales, & þykke hem in þam caste.  
 ¶ Wan þay were araid al & some, And an-horse wern þe grete gome, All are ready  
 to start  
 And þ<sup>e</sup> kyng an-horse was, 4204  
 þanne he be-þoȝt hym al aboute, & how he sente ys barouns stoute ;  
 ofte he sayde, " Alas !"  
 & " Alas ! " said he, by-forn hem þar, " þat<sup>2</sup> y euere y ȝut croune bar, Charles  
 laments over  
 the loss of his  
 knights.  
 þis is <sup>3</sup>a deeful þyng<sup>3</sup> ! 4208 [leaf 5d]  
 þat suppen myn barouns buþ þus y-slayn, & y thus<sup>4</sup> wrecchedly schal  
 torne a-gayn; Wiþ-oute <sup>5</sup>wrech takyng<sup>5</sup> :  
 þar as y ha be arst mykel of tolde, For a coward y worþ y-holde,  
 boþe in tour and bour<sup>6</sup>. 4212  
 Alas ! alas ! cold ys my red ; Why lybbe y now þat þay buþ ded,  
 þat huld vp myn honour ?  
 Alas ! for Roland, my Cosyn dere ; Were he lyues wiþ me here,  
 A wolde noȝt suffry þys, 4216  
 þat y thus scholde me torne aȝene, Wiþ-oute ve[n]iaunce of my tene,  
 Hit farþ now al a-mys :  
 For now y haue hym for-go, And myn oþre barons al-so,  
 þorw <sup>7</sup>my folye dede<sup>7</sup>. 4220  
 Whar-for certis me ys wo." Wiþ þat word sowenede he þo,  
 As he sat on ys stede ; He swoons  
 and nearly  
 falls from his  
 horse.  
 Of is hors had he falle adoun, Nadde y-ben þe socour of his baroun,  
 þat vp þer gunne him holde 4224  
 ys trewe baronye be-mend him sore, & Ro[land], & Olyuer wel mychele  
 more, & þe oþre barouns bolde,  
 ¶ Wan þe kyng of Sowenyng awoke, þe way to france þan he toke, They start.  
 As he lay forþ riȝt. 4228

<sup>1</sup> & [þan.]    <sup>2</sup> [Alas] þat.    <sup>3-3</sup> [a foule meschance.]    <sup>4</sup> y[now].  
<sup>5-5</sup> [any vengeance.]    <sup>6</sup> MS. tour.    <sup>7-7</sup> [myn oȝe fol dede.]

Richard appears galloping up at full speed, þe kyng gan loke þanne a-syde, & saw whar Ric[hard] com<sup>1</sup> þat tyde,<sup>1</sup>  
Prikyng by-fore his syzt,  
And sat on þat noble stede, þat al so swyftlyche þanne ȝede,  
So swolwe doþ on flyzt. 4232

with his sword drawn. þe sterrede on ys hand he ladde, þat he of Mandyse wā & hadde,  
þat<sup>2</sup> he hym slow in fyzt,  
& bar a naked swerd an honde. þe kyng made ys stede a-stonde,  
And by-huld hym faste; 4236

Hym semede þan it was a knyzt, þat was y-come out of fyzt,  
And sumdel was agaste.

¶ þan . clypede he hemen þat were most Worthiest barons of al ys  
host, of Ienyue<sup>3</sup> þe duk Reyner, 4240

Charles orders a halt. Raol Mountferant, & duk howelle, And bad him a-wyle with him  
duelle, & þat host a-reste ther :

“For y seo ȝunder comeþ a knyzt, Prykyng so doþ þe foul on flyzt,  
On a ful iolif stede; 4244

[leaf 56, back] Lord þe stede þat he goþ lyzt, Another a lede þan honde rīzt,  
þat semeþ god at nede.

He recognizes Richard. By ys rydyng it<sup>4</sup> semeþ me, Richard of Normandye it mīzte be,  
þat berþ þat swerd an hand. 4248

Now ihesu, þat ert heuene kyng, þys day sende me god tydyng  
Of my newew Roland,

And of Olyuer, my derlyng, þat þay mote be ȝute lyuyng,  
& my othre barouns wyzte.” 4252

By þat þat host arested was, Rychard cam prykande neȝ þe plas  
& by-fore hym þanne alīzte.

Richard rides up to Charles, ¶ Anon, rīzt as þe kyng hym seȝ, Quyklich þanne a rod hym neȝ,  
& sayde til hym<sup>5</sup> ful ȝare<sup>5</sup> : 4256

who asks him about the other knights. “Tantail knyzt, comen of kynde free, Of Roland my newewe tel þou me,  
How ys it by<sup>6</sup> hym afare ;  
& of Gy of Borgoygne, & of Olyuer, And of al myn othre doþþeper,  
buth ȝut<sup>7</sup> on lyue.” 4260

“ȝea, sire, wyþ-inne þis þridde day y lefte hymen murye & in god aray,”  
Said Ri[chard], so y thryue ;

<sup>1-1</sup> [prikyng] þat tyde.  
<sup>4</sup> [as] it.

<sup>2</sup> [Wan.]  
<sup>5-5</sup> [þare.]

<sup>3</sup> ‘Alre furst’ over ‘[&] of Ienyue.’  
<sup>6</sup> [of.] <sup>7</sup> [War þay beo.]

On þe stronge tour of Egremount, þar buþ þyn barouns alle hol & sond, Richard tells  
 Saf Basyñ þat is aslaye<sup>1</sup>: 4264 him how they  
 are besieged  
 by Balan, and

þe Ameral be-segeþ hymen þer-yn Wyþ an hundred þousant Sarazyn,  
 Be niȝtes & be daye<sup>2</sup>.

þe Amyrel haþ sworn by ternagan þat neuere ne wil he departie þan,  
 for noȝt þat may betyde, 4268

Til þay be-take in dispyt of þe, And an-honged heȝe on þe galwetre,  
 euerech by oþres syde.

þar ys with-ynne wyþ hymen there, Flo[rippe] þe Amyralis doȝtre dere, how Floripas  
 A burde on boure briȝt: 4272 has the relics  
 under her  
 charge,

Sche haueþ þe relyqes on hure warde, For whyche þou hast y-trauaild  
 harde, longe tyme day & niȝt.

¶ þyn barons þat buþ of gret honour, þat so buþ be-seged on þat tour,  
 þey sendeþ þe word by me, 4276

þat þow scholdest come with þyn host And <sup>3</sup>delyuery hem out of þat  
 cost, As þou art hende & fre;

& if þou wolt so: as god me saue, Al þyn relyqes þow myȝt haue, [leaf 57]  
 þat y spak of eere: 4280 which  
 Charles can  
 haue.

And discourfitye þow schalt þan Amyrel, And al ys Sarazyns, y wot  
 ful wel, þat now buþ with him þere.

And wan þou hauest so y-done, Conquere þou schalt after sone  
 þe reame of heþene Spaygne." 4284

þan was glad Charlis kyng, Ne herde he neuere no tydyng  
 War-for he was so fayne. Charles is  
 delighted at  
 the news,

**N**ow ys Charlis glad & blythe, And þonkeþ god an .C. sythe thanks God  
 Of þat gode tydyng. 4288

By seynt Dynys a swor ys oþ, þat Gweynes & hyse scholde be wroþ, and vows  
 for hure compassynge: vengeance on  
 Gwennylyn.

"Hit ys no þyng on hymen ylong þat y ne hadde y-lost Rolond,  
 & myn barons<sup>4</sup> hende. 4292

þay buþ wel ful of felonye, & þat þay schullen eft-sone abyge,  
 bote þay hemen<sup>5</sup> amende.

y þanke þe, Ri[chard], quap Char[lis] kyng, "For certis þow hauest  
 wiþ þy tydyng y-broȝt myn herte of care. 4296

<sup>1</sup> [aslawe.]

<sup>2</sup> [dawe.]

<sup>3</sup> And [wiþ strengþe.]

<sup>4</sup> 'oþre barouns' written over.

<sup>5</sup> bot [if] þay.



He deter-  
mines in the  
morning to  
start to  
Egremont.

Al niȝt we wollep reste ous her, And to-morwe, wan þe day ys cler,  
pyderward wille we fare,  
And y make auow to my lord seynt Ion, If y may lyue til moneday  
non, lyuerance wil y make; 4300  
And þe Amerel schal lese ys hed, & al his sarsyns schulle be ded,  
þat y may of-take."

Richard says  
the Saracens  
cover 12  
square miles,

¶ "Sire," quap Richard, "he ys ful strong, & hap be-set þe contre long,  
Wyþ Sarsynȝ al aboute: 4304  
four myle in lengþe spredreþ is host, And thre on brede by euery cost,  
With-inne & wyþ-oute.

and that he  
will have to  
cross the  
bridge at  
Mantrible,

And a thys syde Egrymoygne a iornee þar is a brigge of gret fertee, .  
A Citee <sup>1</sup>ys set þer-bye<sup>1</sup>: 4308  
Mantrible þe Citee ys y-called, Wyþ marbre fyn ys he walled,  
& abatayld with toures hye.

Vnder þe brigge þan flet flagot, On him ne may durye schip ne bot,  
So sterneliche he him renneþ: 4312  
Of brede ys he a gret boȝe-schot, & thre spere-schaftes dep ech grot,  
As many man it wel kenneþ.

[leaf 57, back] A þys syde þ<sup>e</sup> toun þat ryuer rend,<sup>2</sup> & þe brigge <sup>3</sup>þar ouer<sup>3</sup> stent,  
Whar forþ we moste pace. 4316  
Oþer passage ne ys þar non bote by þat brigge y-mad of ston,  
nys þer non oþer grace.

amydde þe brigge þar stent a tour y-buld aboze wyþ gret honour,  
Wyþ brytaskes many & fale: 4320

which is kept  
by a giant,

In þar on dwelleþ þe briggeward, A geant ys he of an yuel part,  
Many man he bryngþ on bale.

Vnder þe tour buþ zeates two, Whar þorȝ men mote nedes go,  
þat wollep pacye þere: 4324

þar stondeþ algate an hundred kniȝtes, þat passage to kepe by dayes  
& nyȝtes, With þ<sup>e</sup> geant þat ys portere:

Agolafre the  
bridge-ward.

Agolafre hatte þe proute geant, Fro hennes in-to Cyuyle grant,  
nys þar anoþer swych. 4328

<sup>1</sup>—*written over* 'by-ȝonde þer stonde' and *under* 'nas neuere Cyte strengre walled ymad with mannis hondes.'

<sup>2</sup> *over* 'þe ryuer ys red & raply rend.'

<sup>3</sup>—*over* 'ys peryllous þat.'

He ys <sup>1</sup>a Sarsyn of wonder gret strengþe,<sup>1</sup> xv. fet he <sup>2</sup>haueþ in lengþe,<sup>2</sup>

& ys as blak so pych :

Ne saw y neuere non hym lyke, He semep ful wel þe deuels chyke,  
y-sprong of þe pyt of helle. 4332

Alwey he haueþ · on ys baylye x. þousant knyȝtes ful hardye,  
To don al at ys wille.

Under him  
are 10,000  
knights.

Ac of o þyng, sire, by-þenk þe,<sup>3</sup> þou passest noȝt thar wyþ no  
strengþe, Bote sleȝþe helpe þar-to. 4336

Charles must  
use some  
stratagem to  
pass the  
bridge.

For non assaut helpeþ noȝt, þe brigge-warde ys so strong y-wroȝt,  
Hit were noȝt worþ a slo.

If we schullen pasye that ryuer, ȝe mote leue with ȝoure power  
On a-buchement as y schal sigge : 4340

In a wode þat ys þer faste by, Half a myle it ys ful ny,  
by-twene him & þe brigge :

And y schal take þe wey forþ riȝtes, And haue wyþ me of ȝour knyȝtes  
.V. hundred gode y-kudde. 4344

Ryȝt as marchantȝ wille we ryde, Wel y-armed an-vnder our gonels  
wyde, & swerdes sherpe y-hudde. Richard  
proposes a  
plan,

þe somers schulleþ by-forn ous gon, Wyþ grete pakkes euerechon,  
As it were marchaundyse ; 4348

And we wollep fayre after ryde, As marchauns scholde with litel pryde,  
And pacye in þis gyse.

& wan we buþ wyþ such a gynne þe brigge-ȝates al wyþ-ynne,  
þan wol y blowe myn horn ; 4352

þan come ȝe with ȝour company, And takeþ þe brigge with maystry, [leaf 58]  
& þe Citee þat stent afforn."

¶ "A ! lord," sayde Charlys þan, "þat Richard ys a noble man,  
god ȝyue hym gode chaunce ! 4356

Ho miȝte our passage betere araye ? No man for-soþ at my paye,  
by-twyne þis & fraunce.

Of ys counsayl am y apayd : Hit schal be don as he haþ sayd,  
Be dere god almyȝte." 4360

with which,  
Charles is  
pleased.

þan he het on : blowe an horn, And þat host abod be-hynde & forn,  
& logede hem þar alnyȝte.

<sup>1-1</sup> over 'myche in wonder strong.'

<sup>2-2</sup> over 'ys long.'

<sup>3</sup> [now] by-þenk þe.

The army  
halts for the  
night at  
Morymond.

O Ppon þe val of Morymond Abydeþ þat host hol & sond,  
Fayre oppon a grene. 4364  
A-morwe wan þ<sup>e</sup> day was liȝt, Charlys comandeþ þat euery wiȝt  
Sone beo y-armed clene.

In the morn-  
ing Richard  
picks out 500  
men.

Wan þay wer y-armed alle at riȝtes, Charles het Richard chuse his  
knyȝtes þat he wolde lede ; 4368  
And Richard dude as Char[is] saide & ches .v. hundred, & hem a-raide  
On gonels oppon hur wede.

Their arms  
are hidden,  
and they  
appear as  
merchants.

Hyre sarplers dud he *with* hay be fild, & bonde hem to hure sadels  
gyld, To keuery hure<sup>1</sup> ryche araye. 4372  
Hure swerdes durnely so ben y-hid, & ase Marchans þat wern ounkyd,  
So þey wentte hure waye.

Charlis takeþ wyþ hym his host, And folȝeþ after<sup>2</sup> wiþ-oute bost  
to mantrible-ward ful riȝt. 4376  
þat day ȝaf Richard or a ȝede To duk Rayner þe sterrede stede,  
þat was so god & liȝt.

Richard rides  
in front

¶ Rychard ryȝd forþ wyþ ys knyȝtes þat warn arayd after hure ryȝtes,  
Riȝt as marchans scholde. 4380  
By-fore þe kyng <sup>3</sup>þay prykede þere,<sup>3</sup> Y wol ȝow telle now what þay  
were, þe gretteste of þay bolde.

with Duke  
Howel, Duke  
Rayner, and  
Raoul of  
Amiens.

þe furste was Richard of wham y tel, þe secunde of Nauntes þe duk  
Howel, Duk Rayner þ<sup>e</sup> pridde was ; 4384  
þe furþe was Raol of Mans : þ<sup>e</sup> stronge ; To seche al fraunce brod &  
longe, A betre knyȝt þer nas.  
þuse prykeþ faste forþ by-fore, V. hundred knyȝtis in al þay wore,  
Hure somers lefte þay noȝt. 4388

[leaf 58, back]

[þat þay ne dryue by-forȝ hem euerechon]<sup>4</sup>  
þat ech of hem ne drof forþ on, *With* pakkes y-charged euerechon,  
Wyþ harneys y-fillid toȝte :

Each drives  
a packhorse  
laden.

Now Agolafre beo hym wel y-war, Bote he kepe him þe betre þar,  
At þe entree of þ<sup>e</sup> brigge. 4392  
For þe trew þat he wol craue, An yuel torn tyd þe haue,  
Myn hed þer-to y legge.

¶ þys knyȝtes prikeþ forþ on hure way, þe somers þei dryue be-forȝ  
hem ay, & vaste forþ þay wente, 4396

<sup>1</sup> To keuery [þat].

<sup>3-3</sup> [þan] prykede [þay] þere.

<sup>2</sup> after [hem].

<sup>4</sup> Crossed through.

And beren þ<sup>e</sup> pakkes on hure rig, Til þay come euene to þe bryg,  
nowar þay ne astente.

And Charlis ys to þe wode y-come, And enbuschedem<sup>1</sup> þar with ys  
trome, An hundred þousant kniztes. 4400

Charles  
places 100,000  
men in  
ambush.

þe opre were ate brigge þan & by-hulde how þ<sup>e</sup> ryuer ran,  
And opre ferly syztes.

¶ And wan þay hadden al be-holde, þe sturne Ryuer, & þe brigge  
bolde, & þe toures þat stode oppon: 4404

þey sayde þat terme of al hur age, ne hurde þay neuere of no passage,  
So grysly to lokye on.

Some are  
frightened at  
the river and  
the bridge,

Saide Richard—"þat is soþ, Ac loke on þ<sup>e</sup> medwe war Sarsynz goþ,  
A þousant<sup>2</sup> þer buþ<sup>2</sup> & mo, 4408

Wel y-armed on þe beste assyse, Hure purpos y can nozt deuysen,  
Ne wat þay þenkþ do."

¶ þan saide howel—"þys ys hard, Parfay ich am ful sore affard,  
god of heuene ous lede!" 4412

"Lordes," quap Ry[chard], "buþ nozt agast, Ac holdeþ forþ þour way  
an hast, & boldelich dop þour dede: but are  
encouraged  
by Richard,

And wan we comeþ to þe brigge-gate, Hwat so þay beo þat buþ þer-ate,  
Dop as y schal sayne. 4416

Holdeþ þow stille, and spekeþ nozt, but leteþ me telle as y ha þozt,  
What so þay speke agayne.

who tells  
them  
to keep still  
and leave  
everything to  
him.

And 3if we mowe pacye so, þe drazt-brigge & þe zeates two,  
þan ys tyme to flyte. 4420

þan Casteþ þour gonels<sup>3</sup> of anon, & drawe we to our wepnas euerechon,  
& let se ho can smyte."

¶ Raol Delamans sayde þan: "Muche maugre mote he han,  
þat any of hem spare." 4424

With þat þay gunne<sup>4</sup> hem for-to haste, And dryue forth þe somers faste  
Ouer þe brygge thare.

[leaf 59]  
They arrive  
at the bridge.

¶ Agalofre, þe voule gome, Ful wel of-sez þus knyztas come,  
Wyþ hure somers fayre. 4428

Out of þe tour þan cam he down, And set hym on an hey3 peroun,  
y-mad as a chayre.

Agolafre  
descends  
from the  
tower.

<sup>1</sup> enbuscheden [hem].

<sup>3</sup> Casteþ þour gonels [þanne].

<sup>2-2</sup> [Sarsyns.]

<sup>4</sup> MS. gunme.

An Axe had he þan an-honde, A shrewedere<sup>1</sup> wepene for-to fonde,  
Was neuere non yfounde. 4432

Three fet of brede was þe blad, Of style y-tempred ful wel y-mad,  
þe hylue wyþ yre y-bounde.

He is a  
hideous man

þe Sarsyn was an hudous man, By-twyne ys to browen was a span  
largeliche of brede ; 4436

with great  
eyebrows and  
deep-set eyes.

Ys browes were boþe rowe and grete, & ys nose cammus, ys eþene  
depe, & glystryd as þ<sup>e</sup> glede.

Supþe þe werlde furst by-gan, Nas neuer ȝut so lodly man,  
y-mad of flehs & felle. 4440

He seems a  
devil come  
straight from  
hell.

Was he noȝt a godes helf<sup>2</sup> þe deucl he semede al hym-self,  
y come þo riȝt of helle.

þe Amyral hadde y-loued hym long, For he was so wonderly strong,  
And doȝty þer-to of dede. 4444

Constable he mad him of ys lond, And tok hym þe briggewarde an  
hond,  
For al men schold hym drede.

¶ God saue þe crystene company ! Wan þay come þe Sarsyn ny  
Ry[chard] rod by-fore : 4448

þan Agolafre stert vp-on ys fet, And askede of Ry[chard] al so ket,  
Wyder-ward þat þay<sup>3</sup> wore :

Agolafre  
demands  
their  
business.

“& weþen art þou ? þov ladde prout ? And wyderward schal þis grete  
rout of Somers wiþ þ<sup>e</sup> ware ? 4452

And wanne buþ þaye þat comeþ her ryde, On heȝe stedes & gonels  
wyde ?  
Tel me what þay are.”

Richard tells  
him they are  
cloth  
merchants,  
on their way  
to the Emir,

¶ Ry[chard] ansuerede þe proute Sarsyn, On Arragounneys speche god  
& fyn, And saide, “we buþ Marchaund ; 4456

Of drapreye we ledeþ gret fuysoun, And wolleþ þer-wyþ to Agremoun,  
to þ<sup>e</sup> Amyral of þis laund.

He þenkþ hold an huge ryot, Of Mahoun, & iubiter, & Margot,  
Wyþ-inne þis fortениȝt. 4460

[leaf 59, back]

And cloþye he þenkeþ ys barouns fre, For þe loue of oure godes thre,  
þat buþ ful myche of myȝte.

And we han her scarletes & grene, & cloþes of tarse, & of sulk ful  
schene, & cloþes eke of golde. 4464

<sup>1</sup> MS. sherwedere.

<sup>2</sup> a godes [of godes] helf.

<sup>3</sup> ward [he].

- On al paynee buþ rycchere non þan we han her & þat god won,  
bygge hem he so wolde.
- Of such chaffar as we haue, So þat we mowe come saue,  
fro henne to þe Amyrel, 4468
- þanne schal he on þe beste chuse, And þoʒ we a-boute hym schullen  
luse, he schal haue ys del.
- Tel me, sire,<sup>1</sup> þerfor now, Of þys passage what ys þe trow,  
And how we moʒe ous quyte." 4472 and asks  
what toll has  
to be paid.
- Agolofre ansuerede hym agayn:—"Of þys brigge y am wardayn,  
& receuour of myche & lyte :
- Ac her passede wyþ-inne a wyle, Crystene men þat<sup>2</sup> dude me gyle, Agolafre says  
he has been  
cheated once  
by some  
Christians  
þat come fram Char[is] kyng; 4476
- To þe Amyral þay wente . on god aray, My trew þay sayde þay wolde  
pay At hure aʒen comyng.
- þay schulleþ beo an-honge<sup>3</sup> on helle, For þay be-trayede þan Amerelle,  
& dryuen him of ys tour; 4480
- And holdeþ hym ʒute aʒen þe riʒt, & ys doʒtre eke, a burde bryʒt,  
And doþ him deshounour.
- And now haþ þe A[meral] by-leyn hem þer, With an hundred þousand who are now  
besieged by  
the Emir,  
of Sarʒyns fier, Sherpe men at nede : 4484
- Ac on of hem þys ʒunder day, Ase a þef her be stal away,  
Oppon a noble stede. but one had  
escaped.
- My Cosyn a-slow, a man of mod, And tok ys stede sur & god,  
And passede þ<sup>e</sup> ryuere. 4488
- þe deucl him halp þat he nas dreynt ! By-for þat was neuere non so Devil take  
him !  
queynt, þat passeden on þat manere.
- Wolde it, Mahoun and ternagan, þat he were her þe same man !  
ys blod scholde sone a-kele : 4492
- Wiþ myn axe y wolde : ʒyue him on, And to-cleue hym þoʒ flechs [leaf 60]  
& bon, Down riʒt to þe hele.
- And now is þe A[myral] sore afryʒt, For þe doynge of pilke knyʒt,  
þat passed þo þes ende, 4496
- Leste he go to þe Emperour, & brynge hym hyder to socour,  
Hym & hys to schende.

<sup>1</sup> me [luue] sire.<sup>2</sup> men [seuene] þat.<sup>3</sup> an-honge [ʒute].



And the Emir  
has given  
orders to let  
no stranger  
pass,

Whar-for he sente me er þan, þat y ne lete her no man

Pacy þys passage,

4500

Were he erld oþer baroun, Bote if y seȝe ys facioun,

Oþer knewe him by vysage :

and therefore  
Richard must  
show his face.  
'Willingly,'  
says Richard.

& þar-for schawe me þyn anon." "Gladly," quap Richard, "so mot y

gon,

haue þou none doute.

4504

What do ȝe felawes? comeþ neer & ȝour vysages schewyep heer,  
euerechone aboute."

With þat Richard preynte ys eȝe, Oppon ys feleschip þat was him

neȝe,

Hure þurpos to by-gynne.

4508

He with  
Howel, Raoul  
and Rayner  
ride on to the  
bridge.

þe gate Ri[chard] hym neȝep neer, So dude Howel, Roal, and Reyner  
þ<sup>e</sup> draȝtbrigge ride with-ynne.

¶ Wan Ago[lafre] hit seȝ he sayde with cry : "Drawep ȝow abak, ȝe  
doþ folȝ,

oþer ȝe schullaþ a-bigge.

4512

Agolafre  
raises the  
drawbridge,

Y wil noȝt þer passye her no mo." Sone to þe cheyne sterte he þo,  
& vp adrow þ<sup>e</sup> brigge.

¶ Now buþ þay foure with-inne ther; With-uten houede þe somer,

& al hure<sup>1</sup> companee.

4516

Agolafre com forþ wiþ ys hache : "Ribaux," saide he, "ich ȝow attache,

Aȝeld ȝow anon to me.

and calls on  
them to  
surrender.

Ho made ȝow so hardy men, þe draȝtbrigge for-to come wyþ-yn,

& þe ȝeates bothe,

4520

Bot it were at myn assent? þer-for to prysoun ȝe schulle be send,

Ne beo ȝow noȝt so loþe.

& þay wyþ-oute schulle be dede; For ȝour folȝe þat ys hure mede,

Or ich euere reste.

4524

[leaf 60, back] And on þe morwenyng y wil ȝov<sup>2</sup> sende To Amyral balan þat ys my  
frende,

to don with ȝou is beste.

Doþ of ȝour govnes ech man a-sonder, & y wil se ȝour wede an vnder,

As Ma[houn] me helpe & rede.

4528

Me semeþ ȝe buþ wel ful of wyles, And habbeþ by-þoȝt ȝow of sum  
gyles,

to do sum wikked dede."

He seizes  
Howel.

To howel he sterte him þan with mod, & tok hym faste by<sup>3</sup> þe hod,

þer nas non oþer bote;

4532

<sup>1</sup> & [þat oþer].

<sup>2</sup> [morȝnyng y schal ȝow.]

<sup>3</sup> faste [þanne].

Bote thre syþes a bar hym þanne aboute And al is hod to-taar to cloute,  
& cast hym to ys fote.

¶ “Certis,” quap Roald, “y soffry to long, To se my cosyn haue þys  
wrong, So mot y þe & þryue!” 4536

Hasteliche he adrow ys swerd, And agolofre on þe heued a gerd,  
As harde as he may dryue : Raoul smites him on the head.

Ac for þat strok had he non hoze For he was þanne to-be-toze  
body & heued y-same 4540

With an hard crested serpentis fel, On which non eged tol ne may  
no del With no strok entame.

¶ Hure gonels þey cast of þan ecchon, & adrewe hure swerdes with  
þat anon raplych at o route : 4544 They all throw off their cloaks

And þan þay laid on þat foule wyzt Sturne strokes with al hure myzt,  
In tal ys body aboute. And attack Agolafre.

Ac al hure strokes ne greuede him nozt, þe serpente skyn was so harde  
y-wrozt, þat no man myzt hit pers. 4548

[þan hadde þay þerof wonder gret<sup>1</sup>]

& þan<sup>2</sup> þay awondrede of him ecchon, þat for al þe strokes þat þay  
gerde on, þat hym nas nozt þ<sup>e</sup> wers.

¶ Agolafre ful egre gan<sup>3</sup> to waxe, & wel anhez he heuede ys axe,<sup>4</sup>  
& <sup>5</sup>to Roal a smot with<sup>5</sup> mayne : 4552 Agolafre aims at Raoul with his axe, but

Ac he failede of ys stroke, & þe axe ful on a stilp of oke,  
þat bar <sup>6</sup>vp ther a chayne<sup>6</sup>; misses him,

þe strok was so herd yset, þat þorw þat treo & þe cheyne gret,  
vj. fold y-layd a-boute, 4556 and cuts through one of the chains of the bridge.

As liztliche as hit had ibeo wax, ran þe strok þanne. of ys ax  
Chayne & tre þoroute.<sup>7</sup>

¶ “A lord,” sayde Reyner þan, “þys ys a deuyl and no man,  
Certis as y leue : 4560 [leaf 61]

Ho scholde a-sonde ys sory strok, Wan he smyt her þorȝ an ok,  
& no strok may him greue?”

<sup>1</sup> crossed through.

<sup>2</sup> [Greteliche].

<sup>3</sup> [þan] gan.

<sup>4</sup> over ‘to Ro[al] agerte with ys axe.’

<sup>5</sup> over ‘stroke with al ys.’

<sup>6-6</sup> over ‘an yre chayn.’

<sup>7</sup> Added in the margin:

With þis on ys opre side he say A gret bar of yre.

- With þat <sup>1</sup>be-huld he faste bye,<sup>1</sup> A gret barre of yre saȝ he lye,<sup>2</sup>  
 neȝ hym þar be-syde.<sup>3</sup> 4564
- Rayner seizes  
 a great bar of  
 iron      Reyner þo <sup>4</sup>putte vp<sup>4</sup> hys brond, And tok vp þe barre with boþen  
 ys<sup>5</sup> hond,      & wente til hym þat tyde
- and knocks  
 him down.      & gerd hym þer-Wyþ<sup>6</sup> on þe molde, þat ys legges gunne to volde,  
 & bursten euene atwo. 4568
- The bridge  
 quakes with  
 his fall.      þat deablet ful with þat strok<sup>7</sup> So harde þat al þe brigge schok,<sup>8</sup>  
 And þ<sup>e</sup> ryuer dude al-so.
- ¶ Wel sone <sup>9</sup>was þys y-knowed wyde,<sup>9</sup> <sup>10</sup>& þe Sarȝyns armede hem  
 on euery syde,<sup>10</sup>      Boþe with scharp & hard<sup>11</sup>; 4572
- More than  
 10,000  
 Saracens  
 assemble.  
 Richard  
 sounds the  
 signal for  
 Charles,  
 whose men  
 break out of  
 the ambush.      & wypinne a wyle þer wer y-dyȝt, Mo þan ten þousant <sup>12</sup>of Sarȝyns  
 wyȝt,<sup>12</sup>      & drowe hem pyderward.
- ¶ Rychard tok þanne ys horn & blew, & Char[liſ] y-hurd hit & wel  
 y-knew      þ<sup>e</sup> auenture þat was befallē: 4576
- Of ys enbuschymēt þan brak he out, And cryede "montioye!" al  
 aloud,      & sone þai come out alle.
- Sone was ech man on ys stede, And prykede vaste to þat nede,  
 þe riȝt way as þay nome. 4580
- Richard lets  
 down the  
 bridge.      Ri[chard] þe brigge let falle þan adoun,<sup>13</sup> And hys falawes <sup>14</sup>beþ entrede  
 euerech one,<sup>14</sup>      or þat gret host hym come.
- ¶ þan come þe Sarȝyns of þe Citee route, And þoȝte wyþ force  
 dryuen hem oute,      & þe brigge aȝen vp-drawe: 4584
- Ac þay wyþ-stode hem al wyþ strengþe, And reculede hem þar an  
 acres lengþe,      & many þay habbeþ aslawe.
- ¶ Wan<sup>15</sup> Charlys to þe brigge ys<sup>16</sup> come, Wyþ ys hol host al and  
 some,      þe brigge þay toke a-rank. 4588
- þat day Gweynes bar hym wel, And ys kynnesmen, swykel and fel,  
<sup>17</sup>Of Char[liſ]<sup>17</sup> to gete hem þanke.
- þay were þe furste men of myȝt, þat potte þe Sarȝyns to þe flyȝt,  
 Al þoȝ þay come late.<sup>18</sup> 4592
- <sup>1-1</sup> over 'lokedē he vp a-syde þaar.'  
<sup>2</sup> over ' & saw þar liggē an yre wroȝte (?) bar.'      <sup>3</sup> over 'a gret on & ounryde.'  
<sup>4-4</sup> over 'dude yn.'      <sup>5</sup> ys added.      <sup>6</sup> [Wyþ þe barre a smot him.]  
<sup>7</sup> ful [doun at þat draȝte].      <sup>8</sup> brigge [quaȝte].  
<sup>9-9</sup> over 'þe tydyng gan to spryngē.'      <sup>10-10</sup> over 'In-to Cyte of þys doynge.  
<sup>11</sup> over 'Touchyng þe brigȝward.'      <sup>12-12</sup> [in armys bryȝt.]  
<sup>13</sup> [By þat let Ry[chard] þe brigge falle.]  
<sup>14-14</sup> [entrede euery manes buþ alle.]      <sup>15</sup> [By þat], and [Now ys].  
<sup>16</sup> [y].      <sup>17-17</sup> [for].      <sup>18</sup> crossed: So harde þay gunne sayle.

To þe Cite ȝeate þey chacedem riȝt, Ac þer<sup>1</sup> þey tornde &<sup>1</sup> ȝaf hym fyȝt, The Saracens  
make a stand  
in front of  
the gate.  
A litel by-fore þe ȝeate.

[Ryȝt to þe draȝt-brigge þat lay þar-ate<sup>2</sup>]

¶ Charlys<sup>3</sup> gan fiȝte þo<sup>3</sup> wyþ egre mod, And Gweynes al-so þat bi [leaf 61, bk]  
him stod, And sloȝe þe<sup>4</sup> Sarsyns kete. 4596

þat day schewede þat traytour To Char[liſ] ys lord ful mucche honour,  
for neuere a nolde hym lete.

¶ Char[liſ] lokedem be-hynde ys bak, And saw dele þar many a knak, Charles finds  
that Agolafre  
has re-  
covered,  
& myche noyse make. 4600

To þat doynge þan tornde he, What yt was he wolde y-se,  
& þyderward he gan take.

þan was Agolafre noȝt ded þe ȝet, Ac on his knes he hadde him set,  
For his legges nere noȝt soñde, 4604

& had<sup>5</sup> wyþ ys axe a-slawe An hep of frenschemen þat leye arawe, and with his  
axe has killed  
a number of  
the French.  
Afforn hym on þe gronde.

¶ Char[liſ] was wroþ and angry so<sup>6</sup>, Wan he seȝ what he had do,  
& þoȝte on þis manere: 4608

“Myȝte þys fend aryse and go, Mucche sorwe wolde he do  
Among<sup>7</sup> my mayne here<sup>7</sup>;”

With þat Char[liſ]<sup>8</sup> to hym wond, And gurd him a strok wyþ ys He strikes  
him with his  
sword,  
brond, & on þe heued him sette. 4612

Ac for þat strok had he no dere, For no strok myȝt hym Percy pere, but cannot  
wound him:  
<sup>9</sup>þat sory skyn<sup>9</sup> dude him lette:

¶ And þan was Char[liſ] wonder grym, And aȝeyn hym renneþ, & then he stabs  
him between  
the eyes, and  
stokeþ hym By-twene ys browes rowe: 4616

þan ran þat swerd in-to ys brayn, And whan he haueþ him so a-slayn throws him  
into the  
river.  
to þe ryuer was he þrowe.

¶ Now ys Agolafre<sup>10</sup> ded, & Char[liſ] turneþ aȝe þe hed,  
& ȝede þar he was aar. 4620

Alle þe Sarȝyns þat he wyþ mette, Bytere & sore he hym grette,  
& þoȝ thar<sup>11</sup> body hem bar.

þe paynymes þat were oppon þ<sup>e</sup> brigge, þar me miȝte y-sen hem lygge,  
bledynge at an hepe; 4624

<sup>1</sup>—<sup>1</sup> [þe Sarazyns.]

<sup>2</sup> crossed through.

<sup>3</sup>—<sup>3</sup> [fauȝt þanne.]

<sup>4</sup> MS. sloȝe þe sloȝe þe.

<sup>5</sup> & had [he].

<sup>6</sup> bo (?) Altered from bo to so?

<sup>7</sup>—<sup>7</sup> [ous þat buþ here.]

<sup>8</sup> Char[liſ] [þanne.]

<sup>9</sup>—<sup>9</sup> [þe serpente].

<sup>10</sup> Agolafre [þe wardeyn].

<sup>11</sup> þoȝ [out] hur.

- Summe were cloue in-to þe tonge, And somme were styked þorȝ lyure  
& longe, And many wer ouer y-lepe :
- The Saracens fly into the city. Sone was voydede þe brigge þere Of alle þe oþre þat lyues were,  
to þ<sup>e</sup> citee þaye gunne flee : 4628
- þe ȝeates wern opened aȝen hem wyde, & þay floȝe in : & nold noȝt  
a-byde, & spered he[m] faste aȝee.
- [leaf 62] [Boþe brigge and baly in-to þe toun-ȝeate, Now buþ þay comen alle  
þer-ate<sup>1</sup>]
- Charles besieges the city for two days. ¶ Charlȝs þe Citee þo gan asayle, Two dawes hole wyþ-oute fayle,  
Wyþ al ys grete route : 4632
- And þay wyþ-inne defended hem wel, Wyþ schutyng & castyng of  
stones fel, Many þay slowe with-oute.
- ¶ Sone . was . al þe contree war, xl. Myle<sup>2</sup> aboute thar,  
þat Mantrible be-seged was, 4636
- Saracens flock thither. & þe brygge conquered þat was stout : Sarȝynȝ þyder-ward þan gunne  
rout, to helpe hem in þat cas.
- Ere to dawes ful ended ware Fyfty þousant Sarȝynȝ<sup>3</sup> come thare,  
And entrede in þat Citee. 4640
- Bot if god helpe now Charlemoun, Wel late passeþ he þorȝ þat toun,  
To helpe ys barouns fre.
- Round the city the rocks are 100 yards high. And nowar myȝte he passe be-syde, For þe roche was heȝ an hundred  
stryde, Stondyng by þ<sup>e</sup> reuer, 4644
- And anclosed þat side so stronge & heȝe, þat bute it were for þe foul  
þat fleȝe, Passage was non saf þer.
- [¶ þe Sarȝynȝen power gan waxe gret<sup>4</sup>]
- And þe walles were of Marbreston, Wyþ pykes of yre y-set þer-on,  
oppon þe crest ful þykke. 4648
- Muche was þe noise & þat cry þat þo was maked in þat Cyty,  
Among þe Sarȝynȝs wykke.
- A great giant named Enfachoun comes out, armed with a mallet. ¶ þan was þar a geant ful of pryde, And openede þe water-gate wyde,  
Ys name was enfachoun : 4652
- A mayl of Ire he bar an honde, Ther-wyþ þoȝte he þanne to fonde  
The frensche to dynge adoun.
- 8 feet long. þat heued þer-offen was wonder gret, & þe hilues lengþe was viij fet  
of þat sturne staue. 4656

<sup>1</sup> crossed through.<sup>2</sup> myle [amyle].<sup>3</sup> [þer] come thare.<sup>4</sup> crossed through.

Ys wyf was lyggynge on chylbedde For two chyl dren þat sche þo hedde His 2 children,

Wyþ-inne þer-on a kauē.

þey were noȝt þe ȝut four mo[n]þes old, [A]c seuē fet of lengþe hur not 4 months old, are 7 feet 3 inches high.  
ayþer was told, & þre enchen more : 4660

& twey large fet wyþ-oute drede, Wel y-mete & more on brede,  
boþe þe childrene wore.

Amyote hure damme, a geauntesse, Had y-kept hem wiþ busynesse, [leaf 62, bk]

Algate in-to þat day : 4664

A lodluker damme þan sche waȝ on, of hide & hywe, of fleche & bon,  
neuere no man ne y-say.

¶ Enfachoun ys to þe ȝeate y-come, And haueþ þat mayl an-honde  
y-nome, & at þe barers he hym sette : 4668

And sayde, "Char[li]s, þou olde wrecche, Woldest þow oure relyqes Enfachoun threatens Charles.  
fecche ? By Mohoun y wol þe lette :

And bote þou þe rathere beo agon, þou schelt beo ded & þat Anon,  
Her riȝt þou schalt baslawe. 4672

And if Fyrumbras may beo taan, þat ilke false reneyed man,  
He worþ honged & drawe."

¶ þan laid he on wyþ myȝt & mayn, And slow al þat hym com agayn,  
With þat mayl quarree. 4676

Or Charlis tok oȝt myche kepe, Of frenschemen had he slawe an hepe,  
þat tilde vp til ys knee :

þanne come þe Sarȝynȝ out And defendede þe barres al about,  
& smyte strokes ourryde, 4680

& ȝyue þe frensche hard batail Ful many þar were with-oute fail ;  
A-slawe on ayþer syde.

¶ Charlys þanne of ys stede alizte, & ioȝous ys swerd out he twyȝte, Charles dismounts,  
& to þe geant sterte, 4684

And smot hym an-heȝ on þe pan, þat wiþ þe dynt þat swerd him ran and cleaves the giant's skull.  
Doun ryȝt þorȝ ys herte ;

þe geant fel to grounde an haste, þan were þe Sarȝynȝ sore agaste  
& lefte þe barrers clene, 4688

& to þe ȝeate þan þay wende, And hure ȝeate gunne defende, The Saracens retreat.  
Wyþ launces & gleues kene.

¶ þe power of hem enpayrede faste, & þe frensche to þam shute<sup>1</sup> & [1 a word erased here.]  
caste, & rebuked hem foule with-ynne. 4692



þan cryede þe kyng wel an heȝ : “ now helpeþ lordes, for we buþ neȝ,  
our *purpos* her to wynne.”

Four French knights drive them from the gate, ¶ Wanne kyng Char[liſ] had y-cryed so, Rychard and Reyner &  
tweyne mo, Roald was on þer-ate, 4696

& þe furthe was þ<sup>e</sup> duk Howelle, þat þo reculede þe Sarsyns felle,  
A gret way fro þe ȝeate.

¶ Now habbeþ þai y-dryue hem in wyþ strengþe Wyþ-inne þe ȝeate  
an acres lengþe, þ<sup>e</sup> kyng & þys barons foure. 4700

but are themselves shut in bot god now helpe þis lordes fyue In gret drede buþ þay of hure lyue,  
þis lordes of honoure ;

[leaf 63] For þay were be-set a-boute<sup>1</sup> With thre þousant at o route,  
and sur- rounded, fyȝtyng men ful gode<sup>2</sup> ; 4704

And an hundred to þ<sup>e</sup> ȝeate þan were y-diȝt To schutten it faste bote  
þay ne myȝt, So hard þ<sup>e</sup> frenche with-stode.<sup>3</sup>

Ful myche was þanne to done þere or þay moȝte þe barre arere,  
þe ȝate to make faste. 4708

Ac Ate laste<sup>4</sup> wyþ myche wo, þe ȝeate þay <sup>5</sup>closede & barred hit þo,<sup>5</sup>  
& þan Char[liſ] wax agaste.

Charles is almost in despair, ¶ To god kyng Char[liſ] prayde þo, Scholde hym saue . & his felawes  
al-so fram combyrment of þo felouns, 4712

& sende hym grace fayre to ascape, To do þe viage þat [he] haþ schape  
On helpynge of his barons.

but Richard cheers him. ¶ Wan duk Rychard y-herde hys fare : “ Sir Emperour,” said he, “ lef  
þy care, & tak þyn herte to þe : 4716

We buþ now her foule be-sterre, Bote if we ben þe betere of<sup>6</sup> herte,  
We buþ bot ded for soþe.

¶ Teche we now wat men we ben, For wel ȝe seep we moȝe noȝt flen ;  
ȝeld ous we mote or fiȝte. 4720

& ho-so þis day let take him quycke, In helle hadde he pynes wycke,  
Ay þer to brenne liȝte.”

Charles fights fiercely. ¶ þat confort dude Charliſ god, & gan to fiȝte as he were wod,  
& sone haþ sleyn a hundred. 4724

So dude þe foure as men of mod, Nas no Sarsyn þat hymen a-stod,  
þat nas to-hewe asounder.

<sup>1</sup> [al] a-boute. <sup>2</sup> [þat schute til hymen & caste]. <sup>3</sup> [it þraste].

<sup>4</sup> Ate laste [noȝeles]. <sup>5-5</sup> ‘barrede & wente þer fro.’

<sup>6</sup> ben [of] þe betere.

- ¶ "Montioye!" þan Charlis gan to crye With ys voys wel an hye, He utters his warcyry,  
 þat al men miȝte yt here. 4728
- Gweynes with-oute y-herde þat cry, And of ys lord þan tok pyty, which Gwenylon hears,  
 Ys treytour þoȝ a were,
- & hasteliche heȝede he him to þe ȝeate; Ys kynrede him folȝede &  
 stode þer-ate, A þousand ate leste; 4732
- Wel harde þat ȝat þay guzne assayle, And þay wiþ-inne with-oute and attacks the gate.  
 fayle, defended<sup>1</sup> hem in þe beste,
- And cast out trees & stones wikke, & þay fulle on hur heuedes  
 pikke<sup>2</sup>, & dust hem to þe erþe adoun. 4736
- Wan Alorys þe traytour þat y-seeȝ Anger ȝeode ys herte neȝ,  
 And sayde to Gweneloun:
- "Cosyn we doȝ gret folye her, To lete ous slen in þys maner, [leaf 63, bk]  
 A-mong our fon ounwreste; 4740
- ¶ And þer-for y rede go we hen, & tak we wyþ ous our kynnesmen, Alorys proposes to retire,  
 & let þe othre don hur beste.
- Our kyng ys now with-inne þe walle, And Reyner of genyue, þat and leave Charles to his fate.  
 yuel him falle! & al þat<sup>3</sup> falerede. 4744
- Now schulle we of hymen haue vengeance, Ne comeȝ þay neuere no  
 more in fraunce, bote þar þay schulle be dede.
- & beo we delyuerd of hymen þus, y wot ful wel, be swete iesus,  
 of þe oþre we buȝ awreke, 4748
- þat liggeȝ at Egremoyne on þe tour; for sorwe her-of and dolour  
 hure hertes wolleȝ breke;
- & þan mowe we wyþ-oute distaunce Habben al þe realme of fraunce  
 At oure comaundment." 4752
- "Godes for-bode," Gweynes sede, "þat ich assentede to such a dede, "God forbid," says Gwenylon.  
 To don hym such traysement;
- for þanne wer y wers þan any qued, If ich assentede to oure kynges  
 ded, Whar þat y miȝt hym saue.<sup>4</sup> 4756
- for Of hym we holdeȝ al our fees, We mote hym helpe in werre &  
 pees, <sup>5</sup>With þe power þat we haue.<sup>5</sup>"
- ¶ "Certis," said Alorys, "þow dost noȝ[t] wel, Bote if þou do as y þe Alorys tries to persuade him,  
 tel, & herkne þenchesoun: 4760

<sup>1</sup> [&] defended. <sup>2</sup> MS. pilke. <sup>3</sup> over 'þay.' <sup>4</sup> [þat ys my lord in lond].

<sup>5</sup> [On al þyng þat . . . . .]

If Char[li]s<sup>1</sup> be now þar<sup>1</sup> a-slawe, þe othre þanne y-worþe be don of  
dawe, þat liggeþ at Egrymoun ;  
& þanne buþ our enymys<sup>2</sup> alle dede<sup>2</sup> : & þar-for lef þys assaut y-rede  
& turne we aȝen to fraunce," 4764  
but Gweny- "y wil noȝt," quap Gweynes, "be seynt Rycher, y wol hym helpe by  
lon refuses. my power, As god me ȝyue god chaunce.  
As lef me were my hed for-go, As in þys cas to fondye hym fro,  
to wham we buþ y-swore." 4768  
Alorys ys<sup>3</sup> herte neȝ brak atwo Wanne Gueneloun had ansuerede  
him so, So wo him was þar-fore.  
þe kynnerede of hem to-gadres goþ, And euerech to oþerward waxeþ  
wroþ, & made disturbaunce. 4772  
The French Wanne þe frensche y-seȝe þys, þe seȝe þey lefte al clene y-wys  
fall back. þorȝ hure fol distaunce.  
¶ Wan sir Fyrumbras y saw þat cas

*(A leaf being lost here from the Ashmole MS. the missing lines are supplied as before from the original French, ll. 5006—5068.)*

[Atant es Fierabras, qui fu moult bien armés ; 4776  
A hautes vois escrie : 'Où est Karles alés ?'  
Et respont Aloris : 'Jamais ne le venrés ;  
Enclos est Karlemaines entre ces grans fossés.'  
Et respont Fierabras : 'Et vous ci c'atendés ?' 4780  
C'est moult grant mauvaisté que vous nel secourez ;  
Encore en porés estre de traison retés.'  
Il escria : 'Monjoie ! baron, or i venés.'  
Quant François l'entendirent, e les ravigorés, 4784  
Entresci au berfroï ne se sont arestés :  
Là troevent Guenelon, qui moult estoit navrés.  
Fierabras fu moult liés quant li pons n'est levés.  
A l'asaler s'est bien il et Guenes prouvé, 4788  
Et li autre François que il i ot menés.  
As haces et as mans ont les portaus fremez ;  
E les vous en Mantribe par vive poetés.  
Quant li traïtor voient que prise est la cités, 4792  
and they force their way into the city.  
Then the traitors join them.

<sup>1—1</sup> [wyþ-inne now ys].

<sup>2—2</sup> [ded ecchon].

<sup>3</sup> ys [his].

Après aus s'en entrèrent, les gonfanons levés ;  
Communaument i fierent o les brans acérés.

Du sanc qui ist des cors i est moult grans li gués.

Païen crient et braient et ument par ces prés,

4796

Lors maisonz ont guerpies et lor rices cités.

En plus de .C. parties fu Mahom reclamés,

Et l'amirans Balans huciés et regretés :

Mantrible  
is taken.

'Sire, c'or venés tost, et si nous secourés !'

4800

.I. Sarrazins s'en est de .i. grant estour enblés :

Desci à Aigremore n'est ses regnes tirés :

A l'Amirant sera cis affaires contés.

A messenger  
takes the  
news to  
Balán.

Humais orés chançon, s'entendre le volés.

4804

Au prendre de Mantrible fu moult grans la mellée ;

Maint cop i ot donné et de lance et d'espée.

Quant Amiete oï le cri et la merlée,

Amyote,  
the giantess,

Ki gist de .ii. enfans sous une cheminée,

4808

(Ce est une gaiande plus noire que pevrée ;

Grant ot la fourcéure, et la geule avoit lée,

Et si avoit de haut une lance levée,

Les ex avoit plus rouges que n'est flambe alumée ;

4812

Moult est de tout en tout laide et deffigurée).

De ses enfans se crient, dout ele est effraée ;

Se gesine avoit faite, nouvele ert relevée.

hearing of  
her husband's  
death,

Uns Sarrazins li a la nouvelle contée,

4816

Que ses sires ert mors, qui l'avoit espousée,

Et li fiers Karlemaines a la ville peuplée.

Quant Amiete l'ot, si est d'ire embrasée ;

Ele saut de son lit trestoute escevelée ;

4820 seizes a  
scythe,  
and kills  
several of the  
French.

Sa crigne li couvroit trestoute l'esquinée.

Devant lui esgarda, s'a une fauc trouvée.

Ja, taut com ele ert vive, n'est prinse cele entrée ;

De la gent qu'ele ocist a fait grant aünée.

4824

'He ! Diex, dist Karlemaines, sainte Virge honuerée,

Là voi une diable plus noire que pevrée.

De mes hommes ocist et fait grant lapidée ;

Charles with  
a bolt from a  
cross-bow  
kills her.

Grant damage i arai se longues a durée. 4828

Ki a nule arbalestre, tost me soit aportée.<sup>1</sup>

Li dus Hoel de Nantes l'en = une livrée

Et Karles l'a tendue, si l'a bien avisée;

Entre les .ii. sourcis a feru la dervée, 4832

Que parmi la ceruele en est la fleke entrée.

La gaiande versa, la fleke est tronchonnée;

Par la geule geta merveilleuse fumée.

Et François ont desus mainte pierre getée. 4836

Ains puis n'i ot pasage ne porte devée,

Ains s'en entra dedens la compaignie honnerée.]<sup>1</sup>

The French  
enter the  
city.

[leaf 64]

NOW hap Char[li]s<sup>2</sup> þe citee y-take<sup>2</sup> & sleyn echoñ<sup>3</sup> boþ whit &  
blake<sup>4</sup>, pat<sup>5</sup> noble was & feer.<sup>5</sup> 4840

To dawes sojourned he & two nyȝte, þe Citee<sup>6</sup> for to araye & dyȝte<sup>6</sup>,

After ys owe maner.

Alle þay habbeþ par-yinne aslawe<sup>7</sup> þat lyued on þe heþene lawe<sup>8</sup>,

þat þay moȝte of-take<sup>9</sup>: 4844

Muche was þe tresour þat þay founde þan, of gold & syluer & ryche  
stan, & monaye whyt & blake.

¶ A tour þar was of a gret Array, In which þe Amyral ys tresour lay,  
Gold wyþ-oute nombre. 4848

Char[li]s hit delede wyth ys hond Among ys barons al þat a fond,  
Aboȝen erthe and vndre.

<sup>10</sup>To alle men he delde<sup>10</sup> ynow plentee<sup>11</sup> to euery man after hys degre<sup>11</sup>

<sup>12</sup>On þe toun and there<sup>12</sup>. 4852

<sup>13</sup>& þanne þay soȝte þe toun<sup>13</sup> aboute, þay<sup>14</sup> founde þe Caue<sup>15</sup> þar-  
withoute<sup>15</sup> þe childrene were,

<sup>1</sup> On the top crossed through is:—

In-to ryuer ful þo þat qued þe remaynant of þe Sarȝyns ded  
Delyured of gret & smal.

<sup>2-2</sup> originally 'ytake þat Citee.'<sup>3</sup> [dryuen out alle].

<sup>4</sup> [Wyþ þe hilpe of ys baronee] 'þanne reste he þer & to refresschie his  
baroun.'<sup>5-5</sup> over 'erst were yn þe toun.'

<sup>6-6</sup> over 'to riȝte in his maner.'<sup>7</sup> over 'þan Charlis het to hys route.'

<sup>8</sup> over 'þe Citee to pyle al aboute.'<sup>9</sup> over 'þe pylage to hem take.'

<sup>10-10</sup> [Al þay hadde].<sup>11-11</sup> ['Of þe tresour þat founden hee.']

<sup>12-12</sup> over '\* In-to þe leste \* aknam(?).'<sup>13-13</sup> [þan as þay wente þat tour].

<sup>14</sup> [And].<sup>15-15</sup> with-oute [doute].

\*—\* [he leste noȝt].

Charles  
remains in  
the city two  
days.

In it he finds  
a large  
treasure,

which he  
divides  
amongst his  
knights.

Whyche þat ȝzte þe geauntesse, þat Char[liſ] aſlow in diſtreſſe,  
 & ſchet hure þorȝ þ<sup>e</sup> molde. 4856

þe chyldren þat were boþe gret & touȝt, By-fore þe kynges þay were  
 y-broȝt, to don with hem what a wolde. They bring  
the giant's  
children  
to Charles.

¶ Wan þay come to Charliſ ſȝȝt, A bleſſede hym-ſelue anon ryȝt,  
 As he to batail ſcholde; 4860

& ſayde þanne on ys ſawe, He nolde noȝt þay were a-ſlawe,  
 for a ſomers charg[e] of golde :

þe kyng het anon riȝt þan, To an archebiſſchoþ þat hiȝt Herman, They are  
baptiſed,  
 y-folled þat þay were. 4864

þe Archebyſſchoþ fullede boþe anon, & Roland þanne he het þat on, under the  
names  
of Roland  
and Oliver.  
 & þat other Olyuere.

¶ Þys was don on þe moneth of May, Wan þe foules ſyngeþ on þe ſpray, All this  
happened on  
 & erbes waxeþ grene : 4868

after þe ȝer . þat our lord was bore, Nyȝen hondred & four ſcore, the 20th of  
May, A.D. 980.  
 þe twentyþe day y wene.

þat þe toun of Mantribre conquerid was, And þe brigge <sup>1</sup>y-wonne  
 þorwe hiſ<sup>1</sup> gras. & þanne þe þridde day, 4872

After þe kyng had take ys reſte,<sup>2</sup> Of ys barons clepede he þe beſte, [leaf 64, back]  
 & þus til hem gan ſay :

¶ “ Lordes, & frendes, what redeþ ȝee? Wham ſchal y leue<sup>3</sup> þys Citee On the third  
day Charles  
proposes to  
 to kepe : of al myn hoſt, 4876

þe whyle y wende on my vyage To ſocoury myn othre baronage,  
 þat lyp on þe ȝondre coſt ? ”

“ Sire,” quap Richard, “ be ſeynt Ion, þay buþ rewarded riȝt anon,  
 Hy þat ſchullap duelle. 4880

Roald Delamans þat on ſchal bee, And howel of Nauntes anoþer ys he, leave Raoul  
and Howel at  
Mantribre  
 Certys by my wylle.”

¶ Char[liſ] ſayde, “ by god almyȝt, þow it haueſt dyuysed ariȝt,  
 After myn owe lykyng. 4884

þus barouns buþ gode and ſuffyſaunt For-to take ſuch þyng an hant,  
 god ȝyue þ<sup>e</sup> hiſ bleſſyng ! ”

Sayde þay þanne to þe kyng : “ If we her ſchulleþ beo leuyng,  
 more folk moſte we haue, 4888

<sup>1-1</sup> [al-ſo þorw godes].

<sup>2</sup> 14 lines added very indistinctly in the margin.

<sup>3</sup> leue [in].



- of 3our baronage & 3our gret power For-to leue wiþ ous hoer,  
þe Cite for-to saue."
- with 700 knights and "3e schul haue," quap Charlemayn. Vij. C. he<sup>1</sup> delyuerede to hem  
þayn, Til hem wiþ-ynne a-stonde.<sup>2</sup> 4892
- all the wounded. And eke þe wondede men al-so, To soiurny there wyþ hem tho,  
Til <sup>3</sup>þay were hol & sounde.<sup>3</sup>
- ¶ þe Emperour þanne het an haste<sup>4</sup> þat ys host were arayd faste<sup>5</sup>.  
To <sup>6</sup>wende on ys iornee<sup>6</sup>. 4896
- þan were þe tabours faste y-bete,<sup>7</sup> As þat host him lay in euery strete<sup>8</sup>  
of þat faire Citee<sup>9</sup>.
- The army prepares to start; they Hure harneys þay gunne to trossye þan<sup>10</sup>, Baroun, & knyzt, & euery  
man<sup>11</sup>: bote nozt with hem þay nadde<sup>12</sup> 4900
- take provisions, but Bot bred, & wyn, & flechs, and oten, þer-of þay toke as þay wer hoten,  
god plente þer-of þay ladde.
- no baggage. Ac al hure harneys leuede þay þer, Cloþys, & paupylouns, and oþer ger,  
And armedem<sup>13</sup> on hure wede.<sup>13</sup> 4904
- And fayre þay ryde out of þe toun: Oppon blanchard rod<sup>14</sup> Charloun,  
<sup>15</sup>þat was ful god at nede.<sup>15</sup>
- ¶ þan Char[lis] gan to loke aboute, And be-holdeþ al ys fayre route,  
þat spradde þo al þat cost: 4908
- On ys herte god<sup>16</sup> þankeþ hee, þat sent hym on erthe such postee,  
To gouerny such an host.
- "Glad," hym þozte, "may ich bee, Suppen y haue al þys barnee,  
At my commandymnt." 4912
- [leaf 65] <sup>17</sup>þan þankeþ he god eft of ys sond, & croycede ys fysage with ys hond,  
& rod forþ in þat entent.
- Balan has gathered over 100,000 men from 15 different countries. **N**ow hap þe Amyral gadrid ys host On fyftene londes of dyuers  
cost, To C. þousant and mo.<sup>18</sup> 4916
- <sup>1</sup> vij. C. [knyztes]. <sup>2</sup> over 'til hem of knyztes gode & kene.'  
<sup>3-3</sup> over 'he come aȝene.' <sup>4</sup> over 'Charlis het blowe hys bugle þen.'  
<sup>5</sup> over 'forto awarny þer-wyþ ys men.' <sup>6-6</sup> over 'remuwe þan an haste.'  
<sup>7</sup> over 'Sone þan were his hornes blowe.' <sup>8</sup> over '... puple heȝe & lowe.'  
<sup>9</sup> under 'gunne to diȝt hem faste' over '[Araid hem forþward faste].'  
<sup>10</sup> over 'Forþ ward þay diȝt hem þo with he e.'  
<sup>11</sup> over 'In hure viage smale and gret,' <sup>12</sup> [ladde]. <sup>13-13</sup> [hymen at riȝtes].  
<sup>14</sup> [ys stede] and [þe stede]. <sup>15-15</sup> [Amidde-ward alle ys kniȝtes].  
<sup>16</sup> [þane] god. <sup>17</sup> over '& euere he þewede to blowe best, and [þan by-gan he].  
Til he hadde tydyng.'  
<sup>18</sup> over 'to hundred þousant \*of Sarȝyns wel fyttyng' and ('\*of dyuerse cost\*').

And Charllys wyþ þe hore berde An hundred þousant hadde on herde, And Charles has 100,000 men.  
    þanne with hym to go.

Duk Richard þe Auauntwarde ladde, And Reyner of Genyue þat oþer  
    hadde,     As þ<sup>e</sup> kyng it wolde.     4920

Richard þe contree y-knew ech del, þat host he ledeþ & gyeþ hit wel,  
    þyderward þat þay scholde

¶ <sup>1</sup>A Sarazyn þer was & to þe Amerel<sup>1</sup> ys he come & telleþ<sup>2</sup> þys  
    doynge al & some,     & saide on his resoun,<sup>3</sup>     4924

In Mantryble how Charllys háþ by gunne Agolafre aslawe and wip  
    strengþe y-wonne     þe brygge & eke þe toun.

¶ Wan þe Amyral y-herde of þat cas Almost for sorwe wod a was, Balan, in a rage at the capture of Mantrible,  
    & wep & gan to crye,     4928

And sayde, “Mahoun, þow art myswent, for now am y vndon and  
    schent,     þou art noȝt worþ a flye.

Wyckede god, þou dost amys, Supþe þow wilt suffrye þys,  
    My worschip to wyþdrawe.     4932

Fyrumbras my sone dude ful wel Wan he for-sok þe euery del,  
    þer-of may he beo fawe.

þow schalt abyge, so mot y go, For þow woldest consentye to  
    to do me þat vylonye.”     4936

An axe a sez afforn hym stonde And tok hur anon on ys honde, smashes his idols.  
    And goþ to þe Maumerye :

þe ymage of Mahoun y-mad of golde Wip þe axe smot he oppon þe  
    molde,     þat al þat heued to-flente.     4940

Sortybran of Combles com wyþ þaat, “Let of,” sayd he, “þou oundost  
    þy stat ;”     & of hym þe Axe he hente.

¶ “Sire,” he said, “þow dost folye, To do Mahoun such vylonye Sortibrant stops and reproaches him.  
    Ase þou dadest here ;     4944

For þou hauest y-schent ys face, Do makye hym betere þan a wace,  
    & amendem in þat manere.”

Saide þe Amyrel, “me þenkeþ ille þat he suffreþ my worschip spille  
    in tal þys countre wyde,     4948

& suffrede Char[*lis*] þe brigge to pace, Mantrible to take & myn men  
    to chace,     & to slen hem be euery syde.”

<sup>1</sup>—*over* [þan to hym þer cam].

<sup>2</sup> [at] tolde [hym].

<sup>3</sup> & saide [hym] on his [sawe].

[leaf 65, back] ¶ Sortybran sayde to þe Ameral þan : "Hastelyche, syre, let sende a  
Sortibrant  
advises Balan  
to send a spy  
to find out if  
the news is  
true :

man þat soþe for-to aspye, 4952  
þat or þay nezȝy to nez þys cost þat þow mowe come wyþ þyn host,  
& fize with hem an-hye.

þan schal þov þy worschip gete aȝe, And slen þe beste of þat meygne,  
& take þe Emperour, 4956

& lete don hym þanne an-honge,<sup>1</sup> & wyþ hym þus þeues stronge  
þat lyggeþ on þy tour.

And yf Fyrumbras may be take, þat haþ ys fayþ & ous for-sake,  
let hym þat hed for-gon. 4960

& Florippe þy doȝtre þat ys ounkynde, To a stake þan let hure bynde,  
And bren hure þanne anon."

¶ þan þe Amyral hym vnderstod þat ilke consayl þoȝt hym god,  
& saide it scholde be don. 4964

Toward Mahoun he humbled him þan, And after þe conseyl of  
Sortybran An aspye he sent anon.

and after to  
make another  
attempt on  
the tower.

To þe A[myral] Sortibran þo cam & sede "Let assembly þyn host, y rede,  
ȝond be-fore þe tour ; 4968

& we schul fonde wyþ strengþe & gyne, If we mowe þe tour y-wynne,  
or þaym come socour.

And if hit<sup>2</sup> falleþ so by cas, þoȝ Ma[houns] help . & ys gras<sup>3</sup>,  
þat we mowe him wyne : 4972

Or þe comyng of Charlemayn þe traytours þer schulle be sleyn,  
& we be-leue with-ynne.

And beo þov on þy tour aȝee Of Char[lis] schalt þov noȝt ȝyue a stre,  
for noȝt þat he may do." 4976

"By Ma[houn]," saide he, "þou sayst ful wel, And by þy counsail do  
y schal, How so it euere go."

Balan orders  
another  
general  
assault.

¶ þe Ameral het his hornes blowe,<sup>4</sup> & þanne wente to armes heȝe &  
lowe, Sarsynȝ & persaunt ; 4980

& þyder þan fette þe grete engyns Wel two hundred of Sarsyns,  
by heste of þe Amerant.

A gret saut pay<sup>5</sup> gunne to make, Summe þar schute wyþ boȝes of  
brake, & summe wyþ gunnes grete ; 4984

<sup>1</sup> [h. 3.] an-honge.

<sup>2</sup> [yt] hit.

<sup>3</sup> [þoȝ þe help of Ma[houn] & þoȝ ys gras].

<sup>4</sup> [þanne] blowe.

<sup>5</sup> [þanne] þay.

& *with* pengyns summe caste stones, Mo þan twenty sum tyme at ones

floze out at one hepe.

The Saracens  
make a  
breach in the  
wall.

So harde þay þrewe azen þe wal þat þe stones percede þorȝ-out al,

forty *with-inne* a stonde, 4988

And succh a gappe þay made þer-on þat a cart onlade myȝt yn gon,

[leaf 66]

had it beo neeȝ þ<sup>e</sup> grounde.

¶ Ate þe wyndewes þanne stod Rolond & ys felawes by-syde him on

The French  
begin to fear  
for their  
safety.

eyper hond, Wel y-armed at o rout; 4992

& þay seȝe Sa[r]ȝyns myne þe wāl, Wyȝ pykoys & howes gret & smal,

& wern al-most þorȝ-out.

þus barouns by-gunne hym þanne to doute, And casten to-gadre al

aboute, To kepe hem wyle þay moun. 4996

<sup>1</sup>Stones & trees þan out þay caste & þe Sarsyns þer-wyȝ quelledede vaste,

& made hem tumbly adoun

¶ þe Ameral gan to crye þan: "Help now, Mahoun & Ternagan,

þat buȝ my godes of myȝte! 5000

And lordes," a sayde, "now helpeȝ ȝee, And sone we shulleȝ han god

Balan cheers  
on his men to  
the assault.

entree, As ȝe schul sen wyȝ siȝte.

ȝyf we mowe now þe tour conquere ȝour worschip ȝe wyȝneȝ & me

<sup>2</sup>for ere To be ȝour frend at nede. 5004

& þay þat doȝ me þys deshonoure Hy schulleȝ be an-honged or dazes

four, & þat schal be hire mede."

¶ þay assaillede hem þanne wyȝ many a gynne, & wyȝ strengþe þay

þoȝte þe tour y-wynne, of castynge & mynyng eke. 5008

And þaye þat þarto hardy were Laddres to þe walle bere,

for al þe dupe deke,

Some place  
ladders  
against the  
walls.

And sette þe laddres vp by þe walle þat was so broken & to-falle,

As ich ȝou raȝer tolde, 5012

Wyȝ þe dyntes of þe stones: & þar þay gunne gon op at ones

Two hundred of hem y-tolde;

Ac þus lordes defendede hem welle, And huld hem out *with* strokes

felle, y-ȝyue *with* swerd & launce. 5016

þan nyst þay noȝt what ys þe best for þ<sup>e</sup> Sarsyns wer eue<sup>re</sup> y-lyche

prest, to doun hem al greuance.

<sup>1</sup> [And caste out stones & heuy trees], *crossed through*.

<sup>2</sup> [& my loue].

Oliver pro-  
poses that  
they shall  
make a sally.

¶ "What wille we don, my gode felawes?" Said Olyuer panne on ys  
sawes, "We buþ on grete drede: 5020

We buþ her felawes tene, þat buþ doȝty men & kene,  
to don al mannes dede.

Wende we out of þys clos,<sup>1</sup> & go we fiȝte wyþ our foos,  
ȝonder out on þ<sup>e</sup> felde. 5024

[leaf 66, back] More worschip ous ys to daye þare, þan her by-twene þis walles bare  
With deshonour ous aȝelde."

200 Saracens  
scale the  
walls,

¶ By þat were stoȝen vp wyþ vygour An hundred Sarsyns oppon þe  
tour, þat þay ne miȝte noȝt flitte. 5028

þar þe wal was broke þay stode affrounte, And laide to frensche stroȝes  
rounde, þat hure haberkes ritte.

Ac þis barons hymen gunne mete, Wyþ scharpe swerdes & axes grete,  
& ȝeuen hem deȝes wonde; 5032

but are  
thrown down  
by the  
knights.

þer was non of hemen alle þat sone nas fulled doun of þe walle,  
Ded riȝt to þe gronde.

¶ Florippe, þat fayre mayde of prys, Clepede Neymes for he was wys,  
And Geffray of Laungeuyn, 5036

And Terry of Ardane sche dude also, & to hymen sayde þat burde þo :  
"Herknyaþ, frendes myne :

Floripas  
advises them  
to appeal to  
the Sacred  
Relics,

Wolle ȝe lordes," sayde sche, "þe ryche relyȝes eft-sones y-se,

þat y ȝow schewede ones. 5040

þe betere y hope ȝow may spede, & þe sykerer ben on al ȝour dede,  
Hab ȝe hem seȝe eft-sones."

¶ "ȝea, for gode," sayde þay þan, "Faire þe falle for alle wymman  
For þy gode profre!" 5044

and fetches  
the casket

þanne hure tornde þat mayde briȝt þar as þat schryn hym was ful riȝt,  
& tok it out of a cofre :

and shows  
them to the  
knights.

y-come sche ys aȝen wel sone, & afforn hem þer sche hit hap oundone,  
& schewed hymen Aparenly. 5048

They kneel  
to them and  
pray for help.

Wan þe barouns had y-seȝen hem alle, On hure knes þay duden falle,  
& cryde god mercy.

¶ þat burde bryȝt þanne tok hem out, & knelyng þay kussede alle about  
þ<sup>e</sup> relyȝes with gret honour; 5052

<sup>1</sup> [peryllous] clos.

& prayede god þorw vertue of hem Schold sauwe hem thar fro heþ<sup>e</sup>  
men,<sup>1</sup> & sende hem sone socour.

¶ And y-herde hure orysouns : þ<sup>e</sup> wyle þay were on deuociouns,  
Sarezyuns wer vp a-styze, 5056

Wel two . C. at o trome, & an-hez to þ<sup>e</sup> wyndowes wer y-come,  
& in y-lepe wel nyze :

Some 200  
Saracens  
scale the  
walls up to  
the windows,

þ<sup>e</sup> tour þay hauede y-take þo Nadde duk Naymes y-lope hem to,  
As hit ful þorw grace, 5060

With þe releques þat he þo bar Riȝt to wyndowes [þ]er þay war,  
& schewede hem on hur face.

þorw þ<sup>e</sup> vertue of þat syȝt þe Sarsyns þanne gunne waxe affriȝt,  
þat abide þay ne durste, 5064

[leaf 67]  
but  
at sight of  
the relics  
they fall  
headlong and  
are dashed to  
pieces.

Bote fullen a-doun of þe walle, & so heze þay fullen alle,  
þat hure bodies al to-burste.

“Lordlynges,” quap neymes, “now mowe we knowe, þat þys buþ  
crystes relyques owe, by þis myracle here : 5068

þat day we seep þys tresour fyn ne dar ous adrede of no Sarsyn  
to don ous any dere.”

¶ þys lordes were þanne confortet<sup>2</sup> wel, ne dradde þay noþyng þan  
Amerel ne non of al þe hepe ; 5072

For þe relyques þat þay haue Hem þoȝte þay were þan al saue,  
Hem-selue fram hem to kepe.

Duk naymys þys relyques custe aȝene, & bitok hem þat mayde [briȝt]<sup>3</sup>  
& schene, & sche hem gan vp volde 5076

Naymes  
returns the  
relics to  
Floripas,

On a cloþ of tarse, ryche & fyn, & suþe sche polte hem on þe schryn,  
& bar hem vp an-holde ;

who replaces  
them in the  
casket.

And þan sche turnd aȝe ful ryȝt, Y-cloped in golde þat schon ful briȝt,  
To þus lordes cam sche there, 5080

And Gyoun tok sche by þe myddel þan, & cust hym, & saide, “my  
dure lemman, beo now of gode chere.”

¶ At þe wyndowes as þay lokede out,<sup>4</sup> þe Amyral þat stod among his  
rout.<sup>5</sup> be-hulde hire<sup>6</sup> þat mayde fel. 5084

Wan he hur saw wel sore hym nuyde,<sup>7</sup> And sone þyderward<sup>8</sup> þus he  
cryde,<sup>8</sup> “Doȝtre, y-se þe wel ;

Balan sees  
Floripas at

<sup>1</sup> MS. for heþemen men.

<sup>2</sup> MS. corforted.

<sup>3</sup> crossed through.

<sup>4</sup> [þanne lokede þay].

<sup>5</sup> [ & by-hulde þan Amyral and al ys rout].

<sup>6</sup> [So dudeȝ].

<sup>7</sup> [Wan þe Ameral hure seȝ hym gan annuye].

<sup>8-8</sup> [he cryde anhye].



Certys y dude gret folye, Wan ich me dude on þe affye

To kepe my prysouns. 5088

the window  
and threatens  
her.

þe loue By-twene ȝou : schal y breke, And of þe y schal beo a-wreke

& of alle þ<sup>e</sup> ȝond glotons :

For þy dede þou schalt beo brent, And þay traytours schulleþ be schent,

Demembred lyme & lyþ." 5092

Floripas  
abuses him  
and shakes a  
staff at him.

Florippe a staf on hur hond sche tok, & hym aȝen hure fader schoke,

þywyng hym þan þar-wyþ.

¶ þe Amyral hys hornes let blowe þan, And þe assaut al nywe by-gan,

Sherply þanne an-haste. 5096

Eyȝte & fourty Sarazyns Made he go þo to þengyns,

Stones þer-wyth to caste.

Aȝen þ<sup>e</sup> tour þay þrewe stones, Mo þan twenty floȝe out at ones

of þen-gyns as we rede : 5100

[leaf 67, back]  
The Saracens  
make a  
breach 24 feet  
square.

Wyþ such an ayr fulle þay þan þat of þ<sup>e</sup> tour þay affulde a pan

four feþeme on lengþ<sup>e</sup> & brede.

¶ þe barouns þanne gunne waxe a-gaste, To þ<sup>e</sup> maumerye Ro[land]

wende an-haste, And Olyuer, and Ogeer, 5104

& to þe mamettes þay buþ a-gon, Of golde y-maked and ryche ston,

þat was briȝt & cler ;

The French  
throw the  
Saracen idols  
amongst their  
enemies.

With þe ymages grete & þykke Slen þay þenkeþ þ<sup>e</sup> Sarzyns wykke :

Ro[land] tok vp Mahoun, 5108

And Olyuer tok vp ternagan, & Ogier Margot tok vp þan,

& bere hem to caste adoun.

¶ To hure defense þay buþ a-gon, & euerich him dressede to caste anon,

& eymede þarto ymone : 5112

On þe þyckeste presse þat þanne was þere, þay cast out þe mamettes

alle yfere, & a-filde þerwip hure fone.

The Emir  
faints at the  
sight.

¶ Wan þe A[myral] y-saw ys godes to-flend, For sorwe was he ful

neȝ y-schend, Sykynges a made ynowe : 5116

And sowȝnede, & wep, & ys hondes wrong, "Alas !" & "welaway !"

was ys song, & ful a-doun ofte y-sowe.

¶ Sortybrant<sup>1</sup> confortede him þan,<sup>2</sup> And bad hym stonde vp as

a man, & lete of care and wo. 5120

<sup>1</sup> Sortybrant [of Combles].

<sup>2</sup> under, partly crossed through ; ' þan hym confortede kyng Sortibran.'

Tho<sup>1</sup> was þe assaut y-leuyd clene, for þe Amyral was so fol of tene, The assault  
ceases.

And ne miȝt noȝt tendy þer-to.

“Ay: Mahoun,” quap þe A[myral] “whar ys þy myȝt? Why wolt  
þou suffry þys ounriȝt, þat þay doþ þe pis<sup>2</sup> day? 5124

þyne fon me schendeþ & þe al-so, And þou ne takest no kepe þer-to,  
þy miȝte ys al away.”

¶ þan hym spak syre Sortybrant: “Wyt þat þe selue, syr Amyrant,  
y, schal þe saye why: 5128

Bred & wyn, & corn plentee, & gold, & syluer hap he send<sup>3</sup> þe,  
lordlyche to lyue þar-by;

Ac þou hym hauest foule myssayd, Whar-for he ne ys noȝt wel apayd, Sortybrant  
declares  
Mahoun is  
angry.  
of<sup>4</sup> þyng þat he þ<sup>e</sup> ȝaf. 5132

And ȝut nast þou noȝt amended his harm, Of þat þat þou breke him  
heued & arm ȝesterday wyþ a staf:

Suffre þar-fore til ate laste, þat ys malencolye ben apaste,  
þat he berþ to þe.<sup>5</sup> 5136

¶ þan schal þou<sup>6</sup> haue al þy wille Of hymen þat haueþ i-don þe ille,  
& þat þou schalt wel see.<sup>7</sup>”

¶ þe whyle þay speke of þys matere, Com þe deucl amonges hem there, [leaf 68]  
The devil, in  
the form of  
Mahoun, tells  
On lyknysse of Mahoun pere<sup>8</sup>; 5140

& sayde þanne<sup>9</sup> to þe Amerel<sup>9</sup> Wordes þat wern<sup>10</sup> y-her[d] ful wel<sup>10</sup>  
to alle þat<sup>11</sup> þar were<sup>12</sup>

¶ “Balaan, beo now glad & blythe, & tak þyn host to the swythe, Balan to lead  
his men again  
to the assault.  
& assayle aȝen þe tour; 5144

For þay wyþ-inne buþ neȝ of-praste: þe tour þou schalt y-wynne an-  
haste, & come to þyn honour.”

þan wax he glad & dude al-so<sup>13</sup> & his hornes het he blowe þo<sup>14</sup> Balan does so.  
And so þay dude anon. 5148

An hard assaut þo by-gan, non scherpere y-saw þer neuere man,  
y-mad of flesche & bon.

¶ Hure grete engyns þan þay bende, And grete stones þar-wyþ þay sende  
to þe heȝe tour: 5152

<sup>1</sup> [þan].      <sup>2</sup> þe [nyȝt &].      <sup>3</sup> [y-]send.      <sup>4</sup> of [al] þyng.

<sup>5</sup> [& þan schalt þou wel see].

<sup>6-6</sup> [þat þow schalt].

<sup>7</sup> [What so þay euere be].

<sup>8</sup> [þe] lyknysse of Mahoun.

<sup>9-9</sup> [al aloud].

<sup>10-10</sup> [y-ȝust about].

<sup>11</sup> MS. to alle þat al þat.

<sup>12</sup> [to þe A[merel] in his resoun].

<sup>13</sup> [þan wax Balant glad ynowe].

<sup>14</sup> [& het me scholde ys hornes blowe].

þe<sup>1</sup> walles to-breke, & al to-crusschede, Oueral þar þe stoness dusschede,  
comynge with vygour :

Some try to  
mine the  
walls; others  
bring up  
ladders.

Mynours<sup>2</sup> zude & mynede þe wal, þe<sup>3</sup> heze tour to maky hym fal,  
& summe laddres bere, 5156

& aboute þe wal þe laddres lede. God of heuene þe barouns spede !

In gret peril þan þay were.

¶ þe assaut was huge and perillous, And þe cry oryble and hydous,  
þat þe Sarzynes made. 5160

Sixtene pieces<sup>4</sup> wer fulled to ground Of þe walles þat er were sond<sup>4</sup>  
Wyþ stones & slabbes<sup>5</sup> sade.

Some 300  
Saracens  
scale the  
walls, but

Sarzynes on laddres<sup>6</sup> gunne vp steze,<sup>6</sup> Wel thre hundred<sup>7</sup> þan an heze,<sup>7</sup>  
To þe<sup>8</sup> gappes buþ þay<sup>8</sup> come, 5164

& castem to entry in-to þe tour. Ac þys barons of gret honour

Azeyn hem buþ ynome ;

With swerdes & axes scherp y-grounde þay affuldem<sup>9</sup> with depes  
wonde, þar-to were þay boun<sup>10</sup> : 5168

are thrown  
down and  
dashed to  
pieces.

Ech on oper þan gan doun falle, & breke hure nekkes to peces smalle,  
So dupe þay fulle adoun.

¶ "Lordes," sayde þanne þe gode Ogier, "We ne buþ bot ten<sup>11</sup> al-  
one heer, to defendye al þis flette : 5172

Ac of al fraunce her ys þe flour, Do we þat no man in deshonour  
of cowardyse ous moze<sup>12</sup> arette.

By-holdeþ þys tour, þat er strong was, To-broken ys now in twenty plas,  
wyþ gónnes & cast of gynne.<sup>13</sup> 5176

[leaf 68, back] Ac by hym þat flechs of Marie tok, þe wyle þat lyf syt on my bok,  
ne comeþ þer none with-inne :

þe whyle y may wylde with myn hond Corteyn my swerd, þat gode  
brond, so Sarsyns<sup>14</sup> schal y<sup>14</sup> so cloute, 5180

þat a cartful y schal sle me-self ; And dop þe al-so on þoure be-helf,  
& holde we hymen with-oute."

¶ Ro[land] ys swerd þan gan be-holde, And Olyuer hys þat was so bolde,  
þat bope bloody ware. 5184

<sup>1</sup> [þat] þe.

<sup>2</sup> [And þe] Mynours, &c.

<sup>3</sup> [Of] þe.

<sup>4-4</sup> [of þe walle þe engynnours hadde afiled al].

<sup>5</sup> [Wyþ hure stones].

<sup>6-6</sup> [wern vp a-stoze].

<sup>7-7</sup> [oun y-loze].

<sup>8-8</sup> 'holes were y-.'

<sup>9</sup> affuldem [& 3yue].

<sup>10</sup> over 'þay laid þo on þer helmes rounde.'

<sup>11</sup> ne bot ten [men].

<sup>12</sup> [eft].

<sup>13</sup> [& sone þay þenkeþ hym wyne].

<sup>14-14</sup> [wol y].

þan was þar non of al þe wacche þat ys herte ne by-gan to cacche,  
& to fizte mad hem ȝeare.

By þat were Saraȝyns stoȝen vp al frechs, And wer come inward at  
hard & neychs At a pan þat was broken ; 5188

Ac þys lordes hymen potte a-gayn, And habbeþ hem sone fylled & slayn  
& þat hole aȝayn y-stoken.

¶ "A lord," sayde Florippe þan, "Sone worth ych a lost womman, Floripas  
begins to  
lament,  
Wel neȝ þe tour ys take. 5192

Wo worth þe tyme he was arerd, Of my deth y am afferd,  
Lordes, for ȝour sake."

¶ Gwy of Borgoygne sayde þan : "Ne say þou so no more, lemman, but is com-  
forted by Sir  
Guy.  
Y pray þe for þyn honour." 5196

"Syre," sche saide, "y drede stronge For we dwelleþ her so longe,  
& <sup>1</sup>þar compþ ous no socour.<sup>1</sup>

Y hopede lemman, by my lyf, To han y-beo þy weddid wyf,  
& be cristned for þy sake. 5200

þan scholdest þow of al þis lond be kyng, And y þy quene, my swete  
þyng, & þy worldly make."

Tharwyth sche made a long sykyng, And hadde þan y-falle in sowen-  
yng, Nad olyuer hure vp y-take. 5204

þan was non þat mornynge nas Wanne þay hurde þat fayre of fas,  
How dulfully sche spake.

Duk Naymes þo gan loky out,<sup>2</sup> & saw comyng þ<sup>e</sup> grette rout Naymes sees  
Charles  
coming with  
his host ;  
of Charl[is] with his host 5208

On a mounteyne wyþ gret bobance; þe baner knew<sup>3</sup> he ful wel of  
fraunce þat drowe toward þat cost.

¶ "lordlynges," sayde Naymes þan, "bliþe beþ & glade euery man,  
& lustneþ god tydyng<sup>4</sup> 5212

þat host of fraunce y seo her come Ful wel y haue it vndernome, and tells the  
others.  
be þe baner þat y seo brynge.

þe baner ys yborn be-fore þe ferde, & þat host hym cometh afterwerde,  
Al armed on armes briȝte. 5216

þay spedeþ faste on hure maner, Wel fayne þay wolde þat þay wer her, [leaf 69]  
yt semeþ me be syȝte.

<sup>1-1</sup> over 'socour comeþ þer non.' <sup>2</sup> [AS] Duk Naymes þo loky[d] out.

<sup>3</sup> [saw].

<sup>4</sup> [god tydyng i wil ȝow schewe]

Of þat cost al þe feldes þay buþ al feld *with* spers & scheldes,  
And wyþ men of myzte. 5220

þe Saraȝyns schulleþ to-morwe haue A carful iornee, as god me saue,  
Longe or come þ<sup>e</sup> nyzte."

¶ þan hur spak <sup>1</sup>þat made ȝyng<sup>1</sup>: "y þonke god of þys tydyng<sup>2</sup>,  
& marie þy<sup>3</sup> moder dere<sup>4</sup>." 5224

Gwy tok sche be þe middel þan & custe hym: & sayde, "gode lemman,  
now am ich hol & fere."

¶ Now buþ þys barons alle blythe, & to þe wyndowes þay wente swythe,  
& þyderward gun be-holde. 5228

Char[li]s and ys host come<sup>5</sup> þay seȝe, þe<sup>6</sup> baner of france y-bore  
an-heȝe, þan waxen hy ful bolde.

The spy tells Balan that Charles is coming ¶ To þe A[merel] þe aspye aȝen ys went, <sup>7</sup>Of wam y tolde<sup>7</sup> þat was  
y-sent To aspyen how it ware, 5232

And telleþ hym how þat Charlemany Wyþ ys host hym comeþ agayn  
*With* hym to fiȝte ȝeare.<sup>8</sup>

¶ þanne hym askede þe Amerel: "Wyþ how many comeþ þe fauterel  
Wyþ þe hore berde?" 5236

with 100,000 men. "Sir," quap he, "þar buþ y-tolde An hondred þousand of knyȝtes bolde  
Comyng on ys ferde."

Sortibrant says they have twice as many. ¶ Sortybrant sayde, "þer-of no drede, þow hast þe doble on þy ferede,  
Ay<sup>9</sup> tweyne aȝen hem one, 5240

And þay habbeþ þe wrong & we þe riȝt; To-morwe we schulle wyþ  
hym fiȝt, & discomfytye hymen echone."

Charles halts in sight of the Saracen camp, C Harlys rod forth wyþ ys host, Til he cam neghȝ þe cost,  
Thar þe Amerel lay; 5244

& wanne a saw ys pauyllouns Abide bad he hys barouns,  
No ferþer nolde he þat day.

The nyȝt was come, þe day was gon, þe Emperour him liȝt a-doun anon,  
Vnder an Aychs y wene, 5248

and they pass the night under arms. þat stod þe same playn oppon, þer þat þe Amerel his<sup>10</sup> host lay on,  
y-logged on a grene.

<sup>1-1</sup> [Florippe þe free].

<sup>2</sup> [ȝea: ihesu god, now þank y thee].

<sup>3</sup> [ys].

<sup>4</sup> [of þys tydyng here].

<sup>5</sup> [þau] come.

<sup>6</sup> [And] þe.

<sup>7-7</sup> [þat ȝe hurde er].

<sup>8</sup> [þare].

<sup>9</sup> [euere].

<sup>10</sup> [ & ] his.

¶ Thar herborghede þe kyng & ys barouns, Wyþ-oute tentes oþer  
pauyllouns, Al þat ilke nyȝte. 5252

For at Mantrible þay hadde y-laft Tentis, pauyllouns, & al þat craft,  
þat þer-to scholde be diȝte.<sup>1</sup>

¶ Ne dude no man þar of ys gere, Bot al nyȝt leyen y-armed ther [leaf 69, back]  
On armes of god entaile. 5256

Hure stedis þai fedde *with* otes & bred, & hym-self dronke whit wyn  
& red, & eten of hure vytaile.

¶ On þe morȝnyng wan þe day him sprong, Charlis ȝeode ys host In the morn-  
among, & het þay scholden diȝte, 5260 orders his  
Boþe man & hors on such aray As þay wende at al asay men to  
þeo syker ynow to fiȝte; prepare for  
battle:

& þan behuld he aboute þe plas, & clepede til him sire Fyrumbras,  
& þus he spak him tille :— 5264

“Fyrumbras, y loue þe for-þan þat þou art bycome a criste-man  
by þy gode wille :

Wolde þy fader cristendom take y Wolde him kepe for þy sake,  
lost-les on euery syde : 5268

Harm ne schold he haue non, On body ne catel, by seynt ion,  
for al þe worlde wyde,

Notheles he haueþ y-do me wrong, My messagers i-holde in prysoun  
strong, þat y sent hym yore ; 5272

Ro[land] and othere þat buþ me luf ; & þoȝ y now do hym gref,  
Beo noȝt wroþ þerfore.”

¶ þanne hym ansuerede Sir Fyrumbras : “Send to my fader in þys  
cas, Ys wille to wyte & knowe, 5276

If he wolde assenty þar-to ; Leuere me were hit myȝt be so,  
þan al þat god y owe.”

¶ “Y grante wel,” quath þe Emperer ; *With* þat he clypede duk  
Reyner, & Rychard of Normaundye, 5280

<sup>1</sup> *In a faint hand at the bottom :—*

Wan þe Amyral hym haþ y-herd  
Of ys tydynges he wax afferd  
þe assaut he lefte sone.  
& gon aȝen to hir loughyng \*  
Til þay hadde† of hym warnyng  
What þay scholde done

\* & het ys host go to hure logyng.

† [herde].

Charles  
says that  
if Balan will  
become a  
Christian his  
treatment of  
the mes-  
sengers will  
be over-  
looked,

And askede of hem wham þay wil rede þat he schold sende on þat  
nede, To þe Amerel of nubbye :

and wishes  
Gwenylon to  
take this  
message to  
the Emir,

“If ȝe lordes willeþ assenty þar-to, Gweynes schal myn eraunt do,  
for he ys fers and fel ; 5284

At þe takyng of Mantrible toun He bar hym as a bold baroun,  
& prouede him þar ful wel.”

¶ Gweynes iherde þe kynges sawe, And sayde a wolde wende fawe,  
& performe wel þat nede : 5288

to which all  
agree.

& paye<sup>1</sup> assentede on hym ȝeare þat Gwenes schudde to Ameral  
fare, þat erand for-to bede.

[leaf 70] ¶ To hym<sup>2</sup> þanne saide þe kyng of fraunce : “Arme þe wel for alle  
chaunce, þyderward er þou wende ; 5292

Charles gives  
Gwenylon his  
instructions.

<sup>3</sup>For þoȝ þe<sup>3</sup> Amyral<sup>4</sup> be our fo, Til hym þe message þou most do,  
þat y schal þe sende.

Say hym þat he his lay for-sake, & to cristendom him-silue take,  
& lyue on god Almyȝte ; 5296

& þat he delyuery me my barouns bolde þat he haþ kept on ys holde,  
long tyme aȝe þe riȝte,

And<sup>5</sup> delyuery me vp on god aray þe Relyqes þat he bar away,  
In Rome my Citee gret ; 5300

þe nayles three, & þe croune, þat perschede cryst on ys passyoun, e,  
On hefd, honde, and fet :

And if he wil assenty þar-to, non harm þanne ne wyl y do  
To hym ne non of hys. 5304

And yf a wil noȝt : as god me saue, Vengeaunce of hym wil y haue,  
& loke þou say hym thys.”

¶ To Charlis þanne saide Gweneoun : “þy message schal be wel  
y-don, Sone with-oute drecche.” 5308

Gwenylon  
arms himself,

Ys helm on is hed sone he caste, And let him lacye wel & faste,  
& ys swerd me dude hym fecche.

A lep vp þanne on ys hors of werre, And takeþ til hym scheld &  
sperre, Strong & god at nede. 5312

and goes on  
the message  
alone.

Oþer felaschip ne takeþ he non, Bot rydeþ forþ hym-self al-on,  
To do þat hardy dede.

<sup>1</sup> [þanne] paye.

<sup>2</sup> [Gweynes].

<sup>3-3</sup> [To] þe.

<sup>4</sup> Amyral [Balan].

<sup>5</sup> And [al-so].



¶ As Gweynes hym prikede<sup>1</sup> ouer þ<sup>e</sup> feldes, He metep<sup>2</sup> Sarsyns with  
speres & scheldes, þat kepte þ<sup>e</sup> wacche þan: 5316  
þay askede of hem þanne an-haste, Why he prykede so wonder faste,  
& wyder he þoʒte gan.

¶ "Y am a Messenger," quap Gweneþoun, "Y-send to<sup>3</sup> þe A[meral]  
by Charloun;" & þanne þay lete hym fare. 5320  
Neuere ne astente he after þan, Bote prykeþ hym forth be-fore Balan,  
yn-to ys pauylloun ʒeare.<sup>4</sup>

Gweynes was boþe hardy & wys, To þe Ameral spak he his avys,  
ne sparede he for no doute. 5324  
"Balan,"<sup>5</sup> said he, "to me entende. Charlis kyng to þe me sende,  
to wham þou most aloute.

When he  
arrives at  
Balan's tent

he delivers  
the message.

Mahoun he hoteþ þat þow for-sake, And anon riȝt to folloȝt take,  
& by-lyue on god almiȝte. 5328

Ys barons als þou scholdist him ʒelde, And þe relyqes þat þou dost [leaf 70, bk]  
helde, Al agayn þe riȝte.

& if þou assentist to þys sonde, He ne wol no þyng of þy londe,  
bote lete þe in pes & reste; 5332

& euere he wol the worschip do, & Fyrumbras þy sone wol al-so,  
þe wyle ys lyf wil leste.

& bot þou her-of make þy fyn, He diffieþ þe and alle þyn,  
for with þe wil he fiȝte, 5336

& discounfity þe her & þy ferede, & putte þy body to schentful dede,  
for þy grete onriȝte."

¶ Wanne þe Ameral hym vnderstod, A clew ys heued, and riȝte ys  
hod, & starede with ys eʒene wronge, 5340

Balan stamps  
and fumes  
with rage,

& prauncede & blew as he were wod, & miȝt noȝt speke for his heȝe  
mod, or was after longe.

And þan saide he to Gweneþylloun: "How wer þou so hardy, stronge  
feloun, come armed on þy stede, 5344

and asks  
Gwenyllon  
how he dares  
bring such

By-fore me her on my pauylloun, & þus vylayn[i]che on þy resoun  
þy message to me abede?

a message,

By Mahoun, on wham my be-lyue ys an, þou ne comest nenere," saide  
Balan, "to Charlemayn aȝene." 5348

<sup>1</sup> pricked [þan].

<sup>2</sup> metep [wyþ].

<sup>3</sup> y-send [be] to.

<sup>4</sup> [þare].

<sup>5</sup> Balan [spak].

and orders  
his barons to  
kill him.

To his barouns þan cride he loud—"To-heweþ þes messenger þat ys  
so proud, Wyþ swerdes scherpe & kene."

¶ Gweynes þanne hym gan to doute, Wanne he saw to hym-ward  
route Sarazyns stronge & smerte; 5352

Gwenylon  
draws his  
sword,  
and slays  
Bruyllant,

A drow ys swerd & smot Bruyllant, þat was kyng of Mountmyrrant,  
euene in-to þe herte;

þe Sarazyn þat was of gret renoun At þe Amyral is fet hym fel adoun;  
& Gweynes turnde hym þanne, 5356

and then  
gallops away  
as fast as he  
can,

And rod out of þe pauylloun þorw al þat host with gret rendoun,  
As faste as he may renne.

¶ þe Amyral ran after hym on ys fet, And cryde to ys host with herte  
gret—"Takeþ þan þef an-haste." 5360

pursued by  
50,000  
Saracens.

To horse þanne wente at o trome Fyfty þousant of armede gome,  
& after hym prykede vaste.

Naymes sees  
all this,

¶ At a wyndowe of þe tour stod<sup>1</sup> Neymoun, And saw how þay  
enchacede Gweneloun, To slen him if þay myzte; 5364

and tells  
Roland and  
Oliver.

Ro[land] þan clypeþ he & Olyuer: "Sirs," quap Neymes, "comeþ ner,  
And seeþ a propre sizte;

[leaf 71]

Fro þe 3ond pauyllons prykeþ a knyzt, An-horse, y-armed, & weel  
y-dyzt, Wyþ a drawe swerd an-honde; 5368

& hym chaeyeþ Sarsyns, by god almizt, Wel fifty þousant y-armed  
brizt, To slen him doþ þay fonde.

They  
recognise  
Gwenylon.

Me symeþ it ys a Messenger, And Gweynes <sup>2</sup>hit semeþ<sup>2</sup> be sizte her,  
<sup>3</sup>þat rideþ þar<sup>3</sup> al-one." 5372

"Parfay," quap Ro[land], "þow saist þat soþe, þat knowe<sup>4</sup> hym wel  
& ys stede boþe, god kep hym fram ys fone!"

Alle þay gunne þan god to praye, þat scholde hym coundye on ys  
waye, & saflyche azen hym sende. 5376

Ac for þay wern for hym in doute, þey by-hulden him 3erne & lokede  
oute, Wyte þay wolde þan ende.

**F**Orth hym prykeþ sir Gweneloun Opon ys stede Chacebroun,  
To-ward ys strengþe an hye; 5380

And þe Sarazyn3 after him prikede. þanne Ase harde as hure  
hors mizt renne, With noyse & eke with crye,

<sup>1</sup> [lokede out].

<sup>2-2</sup> [as].

<sup>3-3</sup> [as he ry3d].

<sup>4</sup> [seo by.]

- Gweynes fleȝ forþ so wynd and rayn Til he cam neȝ amydde þe playn,  
 & wiȝtliche he turnd him þanne, 5384 Gwenylon turns and slays
- And smot a Sarsyn of Agrymoun, þorȝ ys hed he clef hym doun, <sup>10</sup>  
 In-to ys brest a spanne.
- Wyþ tenebre he metep & suppe anoþer, þat on was cosyn, þat oþer the cousin and the brother of Balan.  
 was brother To þe Amyral Balanne. 5388
- Tenebre gurde he þorȝ þe brayn, þat oþer in þe herte with miȝt &  
 mayn, And forþ he prykeþ þanne.
- ¶ Gweynes was boþ strong and feer, And ofte he tornde hym in þis  
 maner, & slow al þat he raȝte. 5392
- & eft he prikede on ys way, And wan Ol[yuer] þat al þys cas y-say  
 Y-saw how wel he faȝte,
- To Roland said he þanne ryȝt: "How þeynt þe, felawe, be þis knyȝt Oliver admires Gwenylon's prowess,  
 þat berþ hym þus wel al-one? 5396
- Ne saw y neuere o man with my syȝt, Saf þe: bere hym betere in fyȝt,  
 by god þat sit in trone.
- Now wold it god on þys nede, þat y were by hym on my stede, and wishes he was with him.  
 Baucyn of Melaunt. 5400
- þan schold y make hure sydes blede, An hundred of hem þer scholde  
 be dede, Of Sarsyns & persaunt."
- ¶ Of hys<sup>1</sup> doȝtynisse myche þay speke, Ac euere þe Sarazyns after When the Saracens  
 hym reke, To slen hym was hure mod: 5404
- Ac wan þay þat frensch host of-seyn, þay wern agast & tornde aȝeyn, [fol. 71, bk] see the French army, they turn and fly.  
 prykyng as þay were wod:
- To þe Ameral þay come sone þas, & tolde þat soþe how it was,  
 of þe Messenger & of þat host; 5408
- And þat Char[lis] hadde on his ferede An hundred þousant on<sup>2</sup> a mede,  
 þat lay thar neȝ þe cost.
- "Let ordeyn þyn host þar-for anon, þat þay beo<sup>3</sup> araid euerechon  
 In armes for-to fiȝte." 5412
- þe Ameral het þanne his hornes blowe, & þat alle wer y-armed in a  
 throwe, & to batayl y-redy hem diȝte.
- ¶ þanne com be-fore þe Amerel ther, Fro ys broþer a Messenger, A messenger tells Balan  
 & told hym þys tydyng, 5416

<sup>1</sup> Of hys [grete].<sup>2</sup> on [ys]<sup>3</sup> [araid] bco.

that his  
brother is  
coming

pat ys broþer, sir Bruyllaunt, þat was kyng of heȝ persaunt,  
Wyþ ys host was comynge,

with 100,000  
men.

Wyþ an hondred þousent persaunc<sup>3</sup>, To helpe him aȝen þe kyng of  
frauncȝ, And eke aȝeyn ys host. 5420  
þan wax þe Amyral glad & blythe, And þankede Mahoun an hundred  
syþe, & gan to blowe host.

Balan goes  
to meet him.

His stede tok he þanne an haste, & aȝen ys broþer wende he faste,  
With opre þat he gan banne. 5424  
& wan þay were to-gadre y-met, Spillyng of speche þar was gret  
y-mad bytwene hem þanne.

For Char[li]s þay saiden scholde be slawe, And Fyrumbras ys sone  
an-honged & drawe, & Flo[rippe] schold be for-brent, 5428  
And Char[li]s host discoumfyted & slayn ; Thus þay talkede be-twene  
hem tweyn, As þay to-gadre went.

Their united  
armies  
amount to  
over 300,000.

¶ Wanne hire hostes were to-gadre y-come, þanne was ther an huge  
trome, iij hundred þousent & mo. 5432

Four dyuers tonges of Saraȝyns, Persans, torkys, and Arrabyngs,  
And Affrycans al-so :

Ful huge was þanne þassemblee. On thyrtȝ partyes to-delede he  
Ys Saraȝyns þe Amerel. 5436  
now god to þe cristene take kepe, For þay ne habbeþ on hure hepe,  
bote þe þridde del !

Gwenylon  
tells the  
result of his  
mission.

**N**ow ys Gweynes come aȝeyn, & telleþ<sup>1</sup> ys lord, kyng Charlemeyn,  
to-gadre betre & werse, 5440  
þat þe Amerel ne dredeþ hym noȝt, Nouþer in dede ne in þoȝt,  
þe value of a kerse.

& þat wanne he spak of crystendom, How he spatte & fyede þar-on,  
& wolde hym hab y-sleyne.<sup>2</sup> 5444

[leaf 72]

<sup>3</sup> And how he slow kyng Bruyllaunt, þat was kyng of mount-myrrant

<sup>1</sup> telleþ [to].

<sup>2</sup> y-slayne corrected.

<sup>3</sup> In a faint hand at the bottom :—

þat host of Saraȝyns þan he beheld  
þar þo by-spradde þe large feld,  
iij myle yn lengþe & brede.

Al a-loud said he þen :

“ Her ys gret puple of heþene men,  
god of heuene ous spede !

Alþoȝ þay beo mo þan we yn numbere,  
Hure false fayth schal hem encombre,  
& ek hir false dede.

þay haue þe wrong & we þe riȝt,  
We schulleþ sle alle hem yn fyȝt,  
Haue ȝe none drede.

\* & if þou wilt ny . . . þat . . .  
Com out þe self y þe pray

. . . . .  
þanne kepe þe neuere . .  
Bote i<sup>e</sup> bere body . . .

\* at the top of leaf 72.

A-forn ys owen eyne<sup>1</sup>:

& þorȝ ys host al how he passedede, & how þe Sarazyns hym þanne  
chacede, & how he awayward rende; 5448

& how <sup>2</sup>ofte he<sup>2</sup> turnde aȝeyn, & slow of þe Sarazyns þat chacede  
hym þeyn, xxx<sup>u</sup> as he wende.

¶ Charlis swer by <sup>3</sup>Milde marye,<sup>3</sup> þat þe A[myral] & hyse <sup>4</sup>þus Charles vows  
scholde abyge,<sup>4</sup> or þe sonne hure fulle. 5452 vengeance on  
the Emir.

& þanne he clepede ys conseyll, And departede his host on .v. batail,  
to-Riȝt as y wil ȝow telle:

Richard he takeþ on to lede, Anoper to Reyner, god of rede, He divides  
his army  
into five  
parts.  
<sup>5</sup>to G[weneloun] tok he þat þridde<sup>5</sup>; 5456

Geffray Hautefuelle he tok þe furþe, þe fifþe to him-selue þat most  
was werþe, <sup>6</sup>& held hem þar amydde.<sup>6</sup>

¶ þe Amyral þan spak to þat kyng<sup>7</sup>: “ Broþer, said he, þow most do  
þyng, þat y schal þe saye. 5460

þow schalt beo þe furste þat schal gon Wyþ þyn host aȝen our fon, Balan tells  
his brother  
to lead his  
force first  
against the  
French.  
Ac o þyng y þe praye:

Ac if þou metest wyþ Charlemayn, Loke for noþyng þat he be slayn,  
As þou louest myn honour. 5464

For in-to Aufryke schal he be lad,<sup>8</sup> Wyþ þe oþre <sup>9</sup>þat me habbeþ  
sory mad,<sup>9</sup> þat liggeþ her on my tour.”

¶ þay ensemblede þanne to-gadre anon, þe Sarsyns blewe hure hornes  
ecchon, to batail or þay paste. 5468

<sup>10</sup>Ac by-fore alle prikede<sup>10</sup> Bruyllant, For prude & for-to make anaunt, Bruyllant  
Wel a stones caste;

And þanne he cryde and gan to sayn: “ Whar art þow, Char[lis], þow challenges  
Charles.  
vylayn? <sup>11</sup>Wat dost þov yn þis lond.<sup>11</sup> 5472

In yuel tyme duest þow pace Mantribrigge, & oure men chace,  
þou abiest it with myn hond.

þyn host þys day schal beo ded, And þow schal luse þyn hore hed  
for þy fol outrage. 5476

<sup>1</sup> A-forn ys eyne [tweyne].

<sup>2-2</sup> [he many tymes].

<sup>3-3</sup> [ys croune of golde].

<sup>4-4</sup> [abigge scholde].

<sup>5-5</sup> [þe þridde to Gweneloun].

<sup>6-6</sup> [þan takeþ Charlemoun].

<sup>7</sup> [þe Amyral spak to Bruyllant kyng].

<sup>8</sup> [send].

<sup>9-9</sup> over ‘y haue yment [y-send].’

<sup>10-10</sup> [& þanne by-fore alle priked out].

<sup>11-11</sup> [y chalange al þy lond].

& suppe schulle we *with* strengþe of hond, Wende in-to fraunce &  
conquere þy lond, & al þyn heritage<sup>1</sup>;

þorȝ-out þy lond schal beo no page þat ys xij <sup>2</sup>3er y-holde<sup>2</sup> of age,  
So Ma[houn] me mote amende, 5480

þat he ne schel ȝelde til ous truwage, Four floryns of gold of god  
coygnage Euery ȝer to rente."<sup>3</sup>

[leaf 72, back] ¶ Wan Charlis y-herde how he sayd, <sup>4</sup>He tok (?) as him ful wel arayd,<sup>4</sup>  
Charles runs him through with his spear,  
Blanchard he made sterte, 5484

And prykede to hym wyþ a spere; & þorw þe scheld & armure he hym  
gan bere, & þorw hys body him gerte.

þe schaft was god & *with*-oute lak, And huld forþ styf, and noȝt ne  
brak, & he hit drow out *with* strengþe: 5488

And rydeþ aȝen þe kyng Iustyn, Of Torkye was he a strong Sarsyn,  
then charges at Justyn, King of Turkey, and slays him,  
An<sup>5</sup> huge man of<sup>6</sup> lengþe;

Scheld ne haberke ne halp hym noȝt þat ys sper ys herte ne<sup>7</sup> soȝt,  
þorȝ ys body and al: 5492

þe kyng ful ded of ys sadel y-gylt, And *with* þat strok þat sper was  
spylt, & brak to peces smal.

and after him ¶ & þanne drow he ys swerd of Steel, & meteþ wyþ Gargayn & hit  
Gargayn.  
hym weel On þe nekke *with* mayn.<sup>8</sup> 5496

þoȝ ys auentaille were strong & god, He smot þo of boþe hefd & hod,  
þat al ful on þe playn.<sup>9</sup>

Roland hears ¶ Rychard ys horn <sup>10</sup>þanne herde blew,<sup>10</sup> Roland hyt hurde, þat<sup>11</sup> soun  
Richard's horn blow, <sup>12</sup>he knew,<sup>12</sup> & gan to busky hym þenne.<sup>13</sup> 5500

<sup>1</sup> MS. heritate.

<sup>2-2</sup> [3er old].

<sup>3</sup> At bottom, in a faint hand:—

þan Bruyllant brak him out afforn,

& To clypy host he blew an horn,

& þan þay come an-haste.

"Go we þer-for to þam affront,

& fiȝte we *with* þo lieþene hond,

& maugre habben þat spare."

"Amen," saide þay euerechon;

*With* þat hert was vp anon

& layn þay wel be þare.

þan Char[lis] þat host haþ y-nome

& esyly rydeþ at o trome

& aȝen þe Sarsyns

[&] an.

<sup>6</sup> of [brede].

<sup>4-4</sup> [He ne huld him noȝt þar-of apayd].

<sup>7</sup> [ground] ne.

<sup>8</sup> [Al] ys mayne.

<sup>9</sup> [playne].

<sup>10-10</sup> [gan to blowe].

<sup>11</sup> [&] þat.

<sup>12-12</sup> [gan knowe].

<sup>13</sup> [In þe tour þar he was ynne].

Ful wel wiste he by þat soun þat ys vnele kyng Charloun

Ys batayl <sup>1</sup>had by-gunne.<sup>1</sup>

Glad was Rolond þanne and blythe, Ys felawes clepede he tyl hym and tells his companions:

swythe, & telleþ hem so<sup>2</sup> anon. 5504

þan waxe <sup>3</sup>þayre hertes lyzte,<sup>3</sup> & sone þay buþ yn armes dyzte,<sup>4</sup> they arm themselves.

Sykyr ynow euerechon.<sup>5</sup>

**C**Harlys & hyse þat were wyþ-oute þe Sarazyns 3erne þay gunne  
to cloute, er þay come of þe tour. 5508

Al þat Charlis wyþ ys swerd arauzte Hit ful doun ded at o drauzte,

So gret was his vygour.

þanne by-gan muche<sup>6</sup> noyse & cry, <sup>7</sup>þe frensch fyzte to-gadre egrely<sup>7</sup>

Alle þat þar were,<sup>8</sup> 5512

Boþe of Sarsyns and frensche men, Alle þey wende to-gadre þen,

& fozte y-same þere.

¶ þat batayl þo by-gan wonder<sup>9</sup> fel, Ac<sup>10</sup> þat frenchs host bar hym wel, A fierce battle ensues,

Wyþ speres & swerdes y-grounde. 5516

To Sarsyns habbeþ þay 3yue anon<sup>11</sup> Of sturne strokes wel god won,

& mad hem grysly wounde.

Gret slazt was þar on hure syde, In<sup>12</sup> þe feld leye þay . with wondes  
wyde, þat arst wer prout on pres. 5520

Moche was þe blod þat þar was schad, And many a wydewe þar was [leaf 73]  
and great slaughter.  
mad, And many child faderles.

¶ With þat coms<sup>13</sup> in a Sarazyn fier, Tenebre, þat was kyng of Byer, Tenebre,  
King of Byer,  
On ys helm he bar þe croun,<sup>14</sup> 5524

& dude þe frensche host gret damage, Why hys puple þat was sauage, makes great  
havoc  
amongst the  
French.  
ful many þay <sup>15</sup>fulde adoun.<sup>15</sup>

<sup>1-1</sup> [dude þo by-gynne].

<sup>2</sup> [per-of].

<sup>3-3</sup> [& þan waxe þay glad an sone hem dizte].

<sup>4</sup> [And in fyn armure araid hem ryzte]. <sup>5</sup> [þys lordes] and [wel ynow].

<sup>6</sup> [boþe].

<sup>7-7</sup> [And þe batailles en-semblede hastely].

<sup>8</sup> At the bottom, in a faint hand:—

þe tweyn hostis assemblede þan

& ech til oþer þan layd an,

& farsly gan to fyzte.

þay þat wern a myle þerfro

Myzte y-hure þe strokes þo,

Y-3ouen on helmes bryzte.

<sup>9</sup> [smert &].

<sup>10</sup> [And].

<sup>11</sup> [þanne] anon.

<sup>12</sup> In [tal].

<sup>13</sup> [smot in (?)].

MS. cons.

<sup>14</sup> [& com forþ with ys fereede].

<sup>15-15</sup> [sloze to dede].



Oure cristen men hadde þay put abak Nadde þay comen þat y of spak,  
þe <sup>1</sup>barouns þat wer so preste<sup>1</sup>; 5528

Roland and  
Oliver and  
their com-  
panions sally  
from the  
castle.

Rolond, <sup>2</sup>Olyuer and Naymoun,<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>And alle þe doþþepers þan come  
adoun,<sup>3</sup> Al y-armed<sup>4</sup> in þe beste;

Stedes ne toke þay wiþ hem non, For ynowe þay founde<sup>5</sup> withoute  
gon, A-strayey on þe grene. 5532

þan out of þe tour þay goþ echon,<sup>6</sup> And euerech of hem <sup>7</sup>hap tak<sup>7</sup> on,  
& sone werþ<sup>8</sup> vp y wene.

Florippe begs  
them to take  
care of Guy.

¶ To þys barouns of gret honour Florippe, þat þanne lefte on þe tour,  
Cryinge gan to sayne! 5536

“<sup>9</sup>e lordes of fraunce þat buþ þe flour, Kepeþ wel Gyoun my paramour,  
& bryngeþ him me aþeyne.”

<sup>9</sup>To batayl faste þan<sup>9</sup> gunne fonde, With scheldes enbraced, & spers  
an-honde, <sup>10</sup>þay dude her hors to gone.<sup>10</sup> 5540

<sup>11</sup>Wan þay ynto þe batayl<sup>11</sup> entred were, Sone þus <sup>12</sup>habbeþ þorw  
gon<sup>12</sup> there þe scheldtromes of þaire fone:

<sup>13</sup>And alle þe Sarsynþ þat þay gunne mete <sup>14</sup>To gronde þay laid hem  
with dentes grete, y-zyuen with spers kene. 5544

þar was non of hure helue þat nadde a-slawe mo þan twelue,  
þat leyen þer on the grene.

They make  
great slaugh-  
ter of the  
Saracens.

¶ Wan hure speres by-gunne to faile, Hure swerdes þay drowe of god  
entaile, & laid on þan with mayne; 5548

Wyth strokes þat fullen as a foper þay laid down<sup>15</sup> Sarazyns ech on oþer,  
Ded ryzt on þat playne.

þe Sarzynþ flozen hem<sup>16</sup> for hure prow, Suche þat arst were hardy ynow  
to abide er þay come: 5552

For hure strokes fulle<sup>17</sup> so sare, þat Alle þat þay razte,<sup>18</sup> lasse & mare,  
Hure deþ þan<sup>19</sup> þay nome.

<sup>1-1</sup> over ‘[lordes] rapen yn my spelle.’

<sup>2-2</sup> over ‘wyþ ys company.’

<sup>3-3</sup> In the margin ‘þat pyderward come hastily [how] as y schal þow telle.’

<sup>4</sup> y-armed [alle]. <sup>5</sup> [sezen]. <sup>6</sup> [anon]. <sup>7-7</sup> [þar-of tok].

<sup>8</sup> [lup]. <sup>9-9</sup> [þus barouns faste forþ].

<sup>10-10</sup> [To þe batayl þanne, þay\* goes]. <sup>11-11</sup> [And wan þay amonges hem].

<sup>12-12</sup> [barons þorlede]. \* þay above the line.

<sup>13</sup> under is ‘Sone þay made hem lefe þat swete, of þam alle was þar non  
þat nad y-sleyn an hundred fon þan with-ynne wyle.’

<sup>14</sup> This line crossed through. <sup>15</sup> [adoun]. <sup>16</sup> [floze-hymen].

<sup>17</sup> [were]. <sup>18</sup> [smyte]. <sup>19</sup> [of hem].

- <sup>1</sup> Al-so floze þe Sarzȳns Rolond<sup>1</sup> Wan þay aparceuede ys heuy hond, The Saracens fly before them.  
 So<sup>2</sup> sperhauk : doþ þe lارke. 5556
- For al þat þorw his hondes crep To deþe he dyngede hem doun to heþ, [leaf 73, back]  
 With strokes sterne & sterke.
- Alle þe feldes þan wern y-fuld Wyþ þe Sarsȳns þat<sup>3</sup> wern y-kuld  
 In þat batayl wykke; 5560
- þorw-out al þe feldes wyde þat blod ran doun in euery syde,  
 In stremes grete & þykke.
- Discounfyt flowe þe remaynant, & after hem prikede duk Rolant, Roland and Oliver pursue and kill more than 100 of them.  
 & Olyuer his felawe; 5564
- Ac or þay afferrede hem oȝt myche þen Mo þan an .C. of þe heþemen  
 Had hy tweyne a-slawe.
- ¶ Wan þe Amerel þat cas y-seȝ Sorwe ȝeode ys herte neȝ,  
 To Ma[houn] he gan to mene: 5568
- “Ay :” saide he, “syre Mahonet, Lyte loue schewest þou me ȝet,  
 þow hast for-ȝete me clene.”
- He saw ys folk faste fleoynge, & frensche men after hem faste prykyng,  
 þat with swardes layde hem doun. 5572
- Ys sward adrow he anon riȝt þanne, & prikede ys stede : & he gan Balan charges at Howel,  
 renne  
 To howel of seynt Miloun.
- þe Sarzȳn, þat was fers & smert, howel oppon þe helm he gert  
<sup>4</sup> With his sward with<sup>4</sup> mayne; 5576
- þorw helm, & coyphe, & bacynet, þe sward goþ forþ wyþ-oute let, and cuts him down,  
 & sank in-to ys brayne;
- He ful doun ded þar al-so hot. & to Gauter beaufylȝ þanne a smot then cleaves Gauter's skull,  
 A strok þat was ys deþ, 5580
- Riȝt on þe heued anoneward, & clef ys helm þoȝ he war hard,  
 & ys hed in-to þe teþ.
- Geffrey of Parys smot<sup>5</sup> he als, And gurde his heued fro þe hals, and slays Geoffrey and Fourcheiere.  
 & Fourcheiere sloȝ he þanne. 5584
- Charlis it seȝ & wax ful wroþ, & prikede Blaunchard & to him agoþ, Charles charges at him,  
 As faste as he may renne.
- ¶ þan Char[lis] . a strok til hym gan mynte; Ac hym faylede of ys but his sword glances off Balan's shield,  
 dynte, for þat sward hym glente 5588
- <sup>1-1</sup> over ‘Ac by-for al opre þay floze,’  
<sup>4-4</sup> [A strok with myȝt &].  
<sup>2</sup> So [þe].  
<sup>3</sup> þat [þar].  
<sup>5</sup> [þanne] smot.

By-twene ys scheld & 'ys for arsoun ; Ac þe sadel & þe stede clef he  
al doun, þorw-out al yt wente :

and cuts his  
horse in two þe stede ful doun on peces tweye ; þe Ameral dradde þan to ben a-sleye,  
or he aryse myȝte, 5592

[leaf 74] Ac sone sterte he vp of þe forȝ, And Char[li]s stede a gerde þorȝ,  
þat was so fair of sizte.

Charles's  
horse is killed þe stede was ded & ful adoun, On fote stert vp þo Charloun,  
Raply al on hete, 5596

& wyþ ys drawe swerd an-honde Alayd on þe Ameral wyþ þat bronde,  
& ȝaf hym dyntes grete.

and they fight  
on foot. **O**N fote þanne foȝte þys princes boþe, And layde on strokes wilde  
& wroþe, With hure swerdes kene. 5600

þe A[meral] was heȝere þan Charlys was þe amountance of a fotes spas  
& sum-wat more y-sene.

Ac ay faȝt Charlis wyþ herte god, And þe Ameral egerliche him with-  
stod, & Foule with hym gan fare ; 5604

Such strokes Charlis of hym haþ hent þat scheld & haberke þer-with  
was rent, & he was wounded sare.

¶ þan Char[li]s by-gan to waxe wroþ, & ful sterneliche til hym agop  
& a strok on ys hed a-sett 5608

Wyþ ys swerd of<sup>1</sup> style broun : þe cercele on ys helm he bar adoun  
þer-wiþ : with-oute lette,

& of ys helm away he bar A quarter : & of ys cheke a schar  
Myche of þat oþer syde, 5612

& þan on ys schelde ful þe dent, & endelonges he hym to-rent,  
ȝut gan he ferþer glyde.

be ys iambeaus forþ he swarf & ys oþer spore þanne he carf,  
Adoun riȝt by the hele ; 5616

In-to þe erthe a fot and mare Ran þat swerd þat cam so sare,  
þat was y-mad of steele.

and calls on  
him to  
surrender. ¶ Charlis to þamerel þan gan sayn : “ȝeld me þe relyqes vp agayn,  
þat þou with-halst of myne, 5620

& beo cristned and þat Anon, Oþer elles þov schalt þyn hefd forgon,  
To morwen or y wil dyne.”

¶ Wanne þe Ameral hym vnderstod, For teone wax he almost<sup>2</sup> wod,

<sup>1</sup> [y-mad] of.

<sup>2</sup> over ‘wel neȝ wod.’

- & to hym<sup>1</sup> he sterte, 5624  
 And smot to<sup>2</sup> him a strok *with* mod *With* ys swerd ful scherp and god,  
 & on þe helm hym gerte.  
 Ac fram þe helm þat swerd him glente As þat Char[*lis*] cornel þar-wyþ Balan smites  
 to-flente, & þe dynt ful on ys schelde, 5628 Charles on  
 the helmet,  
 but  
 And þe stronge scheld þer-wyþ to-rente; Ac 3ut þe strok ys ferþer  
 wente, noþyng þe dynt ne athelde,  
<sup>3</sup>And ful<sup>3</sup> opon ys genyllere, & bar away ys chauceore, [leaf 74, back]  
 Of yre & styl y-mad. 5632  
 boþe ys spores a-doun he schar In-to þe erthe two fet & mar,  
 þe strok þat was so sad.  
 Wyþ þe schakyng þat he gan make þo Ys swerd to-brak on peces two, his sword  
 & þan gan he to doute. 5636 breaks in  
 two;  
 Ac al þat was of ys swerd y-leued Caste he þanne a3e Char[*lis*] heued,  
 & an anlas þo droȝ oute, he draws his  
 dagger,  
 And egerlyche to Charlis ran And hente hym by þe nekke þan, and seizes  
 & foygnede hym *with* þat knyf: 5640 Charles by  
 the neck.  
 Nad he be y-armed þe betere y wys, & rathe<sup>4</sup> to him<sup>4</sup> come socour of hys,  
 he had him be-nome ys lyf.  
 ¶ Ac<sup>5</sup> þer komen on companye, Roland & Rychard of Normandye, Roland and  
 others rescue  
 him,  
 Olyuer & Ogyer, 5644  
 And myche<sup>6</sup> of hys oþer baronye, And departede hymen twye:  
 & þan A[*meral*] þo toke ther, and take  
 Balan  
 prisoner.  
 & to þe erthe þanne hem caste; Olyuer wyþ a corde bond him fast,  
 Ac arst was muche ado: 5648  
 To Hardree had he a strok y-ȝyue Wyþ ys fuste, and al to<sup>7</sup>-dryue  
 Ys chekbon neȝ a-two:  
 Nad his auentaile y-beo þat heel, France had þo be delyured weel  
 of a ful traytrous man; 5652  
 For wyþ þe strok had he beo ded, & þan hadde muche harm be aled,  
 þat ful þo after þan.  
 ¶ With þat com prikyng sir Fyrumbras And saw ys fader on<sup>8</sup> þe Ferumbras  
 plas, y-bounde honde & fet: 5656 advises his  
 father to  
 submit.

<sup>1</sup> [& til hym þan].      <sup>2</sup> [til].      <sup>3</sup> <sup>3</sup> [bote sanke].  
<sup>4</sup> [y].      <sup>5</sup> [Ac þe laste þanne].      <sup>6</sup> [al] þat.  
<sup>7</sup> 'neȝ to' written over.      <sup>8</sup> [ligge] on.

"Fader," sayd he, "þow dost folye þat þow ne wolt þyn herte abyde  
To Char[*lis*] þat ys so gret;

Y rede þow do as he wil saye, & þanne for þe wol y praye  
þat he schal þe kepe & saue. 5660

& al þy londes & þyn honours, & alle þy castels & alle þy tours,  
Aȝeynward schaltou haue<sup>1</sup>."

Balan curses  
him, and threatens  
him.

¶ "Hold þe stille," sayde he þan, "Art þow bi-come a crystenman?  
Ma[houn] do þe wrake! 5664

& if y my power rekuuere aȝe, Wel heȝe schalt þou an-honged be,  
Whar þou mowe beo y-take."

[*leaf 75*] ¶ Wanne Fyrum[*bras*] y-herde how he tolde, For hym ys herte sat ful  
colde, Ac no more ne saide þo<sup>2</sup>: 5668

for<sup>3</sup> þat ys fader by hym wolde<sup>4</sup> noȝt, Ne of his counsail noþynge ne  
roȝt, On his herte hym was wo.

The Emir is  
set on a mule,  
and Charles  
leads him

Sone þas was þar a mule y-fet, And þe Amerel was ther-on y-set;  
To Char[*lis*] was broȝt a stede, 5672

þe kyng lep on hym fayr & wel, & ledeþ wyþ hym þan Amerel,  
þat dulful was þo for drede;

to Egremont. In-to Egrymoygne he hadde hym þen, Wyþ twenty þousant of frensche  
men, þe remanaunt by-lafte he þare, 5676

Fyȝtyng oppoun hure enemys, Affrycans, Persantz and tourkys,  
þat sone were broȝt in care.

The Saracens,  
seeing this,  
fly,

¶ Wanne þe Sarsyns y-seȝe þat cas þat þe Amerel yn þe feld y-take  
was, & so y-lad hem fro, 5680

þay floȝe away on euery syde, þar was non þat þerste abyde,  
Hure song was, "welewo."

but Roland  
and his

Ac Roland and hys companye<sup>5</sup> Broȝte hym in<sup>5</sup> aȝen an hye  
& faste þay sloȝe hure fon<sup>6</sup>; 5684

companionous  
pursue and  
slay them  
till night.

Fram was non til þe nyȝte Ne cessede þay neuere for to fȝte  
bot euere<sup>7</sup> so layd hem on.<sup>7</sup>

¶ By þat þe nyȝt hym was y-come, þe Sarsyns were slawe al & some,  
þat þay myȝt of take. 5688

þe frenschemen þanne to hure herburghes wende, And of þe mete and  
drynke þat god hemsende, Murȝe þav dude hem make.

<sup>1</sup> *over* for hym þan moȝt þou haue.

<sup>2</sup> [þat he hym ansuerede so].

<sup>3</sup> [&] for.

<sup>4</sup> [do] wolde.

<sup>5-5</sup> *over* a-druwe (?) hym yn.

<sup>6</sup> [& harde layde hem on].

<sup>7-7</sup> [sloȝe hure fon] and [til þay wer ded ecchon].

**O**N þe morwe wan þe sonne schon, Char[*lis*] of-sente ys barons Charles distributes all the treasure,  
 ecchon, And among hem departeþ þanne 5692  
 Of þat gold & of þat geryzoun þat he fond on þe tour & on þe toun,  
 Y-now to euery manne.  
 An Archebysschop he cæpede after þaat, And bad hym ordeyne an and orders the Arch-  
bishop to  
prepare a  
huge vat,  
wherein to  
baptise  
Balan.  
 huge vaat, Ful of water clere; 5696  
 And his orysouns saye oppon, As he wolde fully ther-on  
 þan Amyral þat was þere.  
 þe Bysschop wente aboute sone þe kynges heste for-to done,  
 for þat hym þoʒte god; 5700  
 & wan he had al aboute y-soʒt, To a gret holw marbre was he broʒt, A gret mar-  
ble vessel,  
 þat wyþ-yinne þe paleys stod;  
 Whych was wonyd beo fillid wyþ wyn At euerech gret feste of which was  
filled with  
wine at the  
Emir's feasts,  
 appolyn, þat þ<sup>e</sup> A[*meral*] holde wolde: 5704  
 Wyth water was fulled þo þat<sup>1</sup> ston, And<sup>2</sup> þe bysschop hit blessedde [leaf 75, bk]  
 anon, as Char[*lis*] het he scholde.  
 ¶ þe Emperour het come his baronage, That þer was þanne wel sauage, is prepared,  
 to<sup>3</sup> seen þat selcouþ syʒte. 5708  
 And suppe of-sente he after þan After þe Ameral, syre Balan,  
 be barons threo wel wyʒte,  
 Roland, Olyuer, and Ogyer; pilke thre þo fette hym ther,  
 & broʒt hym forþ anon, 5712  
 by-fore þe emperour þat hym abod And he het anon þar as he stod,  
 Dispoily hym by-fore þe ston. and Charles  
orders Balan  
to be un-  
dressed.  
 ¶ Wan þay by-gunne ys cloþys of-do Myche strif made þe Amerel tho, He resists,  
 And tornde & wende faste, 5716  
 Ac Roland and Olyuer hulde hym so, That whather he wolde oþer no, but in vain.  
 ys cloþys of thay caste.  
 ¶ þe Emperour sayde to hym þan—"þou schalt ben a crysteman,  
 & ben y-follyd here; 5720  
 And if þou wolt þer-to beo broʒt, Of þyne ne schalt þow lese noʒt, Charles tells  
him that if  
he will  
become a  
Christian his  
possessions  
will be  
restored,  
 þe worthy of a pere:  
 Ac arst þou most for-sake Mahone, And be-lyue on gode sone,  
 þat in maryl y-kened was; 5724

<sup>1</sup> fulled þat [*ilke*].<sup>2</sup> And [*þan*].<sup>3</sup> [for] to.

and repeats  
to him the  
articles of  
the Christian  
faith.

& suppe of hure body y-bore, Wyþ-oute wem & wyþ-oute hore,

As sunne goþ þorȝ þ<sup>e</sup> glas.

þow most al-so be-lyue thus, þat he suffrede deþ for vs,

To kepe ous fram helle pyne ; 5728

& þat he a-ros þe þridde day, And to helle tok þo þe way,

And delyuerede þar is hyne ;

And þat he þer-after to heuene steȝ, & syt on ys fader riȝt hond

an-heȝ, & ys in trynnytee : 5732

And suppe sente þe holy gost To ys decyples he louede most,

And het men y-fulled bee :

þou most byleue on holychurche, After hure lawe for-to wurchen,

And on for-ȝyft of synne ; 5736

And on þe dredful domes-day, Wan ech man schal rysen on such aray

As he<sup>1</sup> dayeþ ynne,

And come be-fore god present, And fonge ther ys iuggymment,

to ioie oþer pyne to wende, 5740

After þat : þat hy doþ heere, Body & saule to dwelle y-fere,

Euere wyþ-outen ende,

[leaf 76] ¶ Bylyf þou as y haue þe tauȝt, And on þys water tak fullauȝt,

& þys schal beo þy mede ; 5744

þy body and þy catel þan myȝt þou saue, And heuene blisse al-so haue,

If þou dost þat dede."

Balan swears  
nothing will  
induce him  
to be bap-  
tised, and  
smashes the  
vessel.

¶ Wan þe Amerel haþ iherd hym telle, Contenance made he fers &  
felle, & fram hym tornde away : 5748

And bytok hym-selue þe deucl of helle, If he wolde euere wyþ

folloȝt melle, Terme of ys lyues day ;

Ne Mahoun wolde he neuere for-sake, For drede of deþ ne for þe

wrake, to be ded þer for þe riȝte. 5752

For Angre sake þanne he swatte, & þan ston a cracchede & in a

spatte In dispit of god almyȝte.

¶ Wan þe Emperour y-hurd him speke so, Wonderly wroþ þan wax

he þo, Ys swerd þan gan he draȝe ; 5756

Ne hadde Fyrumbras ys sone y-ben þat þo wente hem be-twen,

A wold him haue a-slaȝe.

<sup>1</sup> [hem self].



- ¶ Fyrumbras huld þan Emp[er]our, And prayede him cesse of his  
 rauncour, & he wolde eft asaye, 5760  
 If he miȝte wyþ any colour Brynge him ȝut of his errour,  
 In-to þe betere waye.
- ¶ þanne spak Florippe, þat burde bryȝt—"Syr Emperour, þow dost  
 noȝt aryȝt, To tarye þus: for ys sake. 5764  
 ȝe hadde don wel, by god almyȝt, Had ȝe<sup>1</sup> do slen him ȝesternyȝt,  
 Wan þat he was take."
- ¶ þe Emperour huld ys swerd an-honde, And askede aȝen whar he  
 wil fonde to lyue on cristes lay, 5768  
 And Mahon ys false god for-sake, And crystendom þar by-fore hym  
 take Wyþ-oute more delay :
- & if a wolde, þat hit were so, A wolde be ys frend for euere-mo,  
 On what lond þat he lende ; 5772  
 And þat he nel by-nyme hym lond ne fee, Bot euere scholde<sup>2</sup> beo  
 to hym pryuee, In-to ys lyues ende.
- ¶ þan Fyrum[bras] ys sonne hym sette on knen By-fore ys fader: &  
 cryede aȝen—"Mercy, fader," he sayde, 5776  
 "Swete fader, do hys lykyng, And ne make þer-of no more taryyng,  
 for gode loue y pray þe. implores his  
 father to  
 consent.
- And þan myȝtou haue al þyn Awe, And libbe þy lyf on godes lawe [leaf 76, bk]  
 & kepe þe so fro sore ; 5780  
 And þilke þat buȝ now · þyn fon Wolleþ þe louye euerechon,  
 & worschypy þe euere-more."
- ¶ "Y graunte," quap he þan: "haue y-saied How þat þys water ys  
 arayed, þat y schal plungy on." 5784  
 þan was Fyrumbras glad & blythe, And þankede god ful many a sythe,  
 & broȝte hym to þe ston.
- Charlis þanne hym wax ful glad, And hopede a wolde be *christen* mad,  
 So wern þe opre barouns. 5788  
 þe bysschop stod þer: þo þat had Y-blessed þe fant, and ouer y-rad  
 Alle ys orysouns.
- ¶ þe bysschop sayde to þe Ameral þan—"If þou wilt ben a crysteman,  
 Mahoun þou most for-sake, 5792  
 The Bishop  
 tells him he  
 must before  
 all renounce  
 Mahomet.

<sup>1</sup> MS. he.<sup>2</sup> scholde [he].

Aller-ferst by-fore ous here, And suppe stape in-to þis water clere,  
þan schaltou fullozt take."

Balan nearly  
breaks his  
jaw-bone  
with his fist,

þe A[meral] þan wroþeliche hym gan beholde, And gurde hym with ys  
fuste y-volde, Ageyn ys cheke an-haste, 5796  
þat þre tēþ sterte out of þe bon, & nadde Ogyer þo by-twene hem gon,  
He wolde him habbe of-þraste.

and then  
spits on the  
font.

¶ þanne saide þe Ameral with egre mod—"Wat wenestow, glotoun,  
þat ich be wod, Schold y for-sake my driȝte, 5800  
And beo plunged on þys marbre ston?" In dispyt of cryst! þan spat  
he þer-on, by-fore hure Aldre syȝte.

¶ þo wax Charlys wonder grym, And clepede Fyrum[bras] & spak  
to hym, In þ<sup>e</sup> maner as y schal sayne:— 5804  
"Fyrumbras, as þow art me lef, Ne tak yt nozt to no<sup>1</sup> gref,  
þoȝ y putte hym to is peyne,  
Suppe he wil nozt christened be, Bot haþ now in dispyt of me  
My bysshop y-bete sore: 5808

Ferumbras  
begs on his  
knees for  
another  
chance.

And afterward, in þe dyspyt of crysst, Spet on þe fant as þow her  
sysst, ne pray þow for hym no more."

¶ Wan Fyrumbras herd hym speke so, For<sup>e</sup>ys fader þanne hym was  
so wo He nyste wat þo to<sup>2</sup> done: 5812

Bote by-fore hym on ys knes a cryde þat a wolde ȝut a-byde  
Wyþ hym til eft-sone,  
þat he hym hadde eft by-sozt, & bot if he þanne wold take fullozt,  
As he hym wolde abette, 5816

[leaf 77] Hys wille wyþ hym do a scholde & gurde of his heued ȝyf a wolde,  
No lenger wold he him lette.

Floripas says  
it is only a  
waste of  
time.

¶ To þe Emperour saide florippe þan—"Wy tariest þou so longe wyþ  
þat man, þat haþ þe & þyne agreued? 5820

Al ys for nozt! ȝe A-boute goes, ȝe ne bringeþ him neuere to ȝoure  
purpos, y leye þer-to myn heued."

Ferumbras  
remonstrates  
with her.

¶ Til hure þan saide sir Fyrumbras—"Sustre ne ys he þy fader;  
alas! Tak of hym pytee: 5824

He þe gat & forþ þe broȝte, Thar-for ert þow mys-byȝoȝte,  
To procury hym to slee.

<sup>1</sup> yt [now] nozt to.

<sup>2</sup> wat [myzt].

Wyþ wilde hors mot y beo drawe, Bot y wolde her riȝt fawe  
A lyme of me for-gon, 5828

Wyþ þat he y-folled<sup>1</sup> wolde bee On þat water þat<sup>2</sup> here [3e] see  
standyng her on þys ston."

Wyþ þat he wep & syȝte sore, As he þanne stod hym by-fore,  
& þus til hym gan telle— 5832

"Swete fader, chaunge þy þoȝt, And elles þow worst to deþe y-broȝt, Ferumbras with tears implores his father to give way.  
þan goþ þy saul to helle.

And if þow wolt be y-fulled heer þar-of þanne ert þow . skeer,  
& heuene myȝt þou craue. 5836

And leue lordlich on þyn owe, And habbe at þyn heste heȝe & lowe,  
As þou wer woned to haue.

And ther-for, swete fader myn, [Fo]rsak Mahoun and Appolyn,  
þat buþ noȝt worþ a flye ; 5840

And be-lyf on cryst, and cristned be, And þanne schalt þow þryue & þe,  
& god lyf schalt þou drye?"

¶ "Sone," sayde þe Amerel þan, "By Mahoun þou art a nycy man, But Balan says he will never consent to believe on a man who was crucified for his own misdeeds.  
þat þou dost me rede 5844

To by-lyue on such a mon þat was on a croys y-don,  
for ys owe mysdede.

Y diffye hym her and alle hyse, By Mahoun y nolde ȝyue a pyse,  
for cryst ne al ys myȝte. 5848

Nel y neuere on hym be-lyue, Ne beo y-fulled on my lyue,  
to dye þarfore her riȝte."

Wan þat Fyrumbras y-knew ys þoȝt, & þat he ne myȝt hym turnne  
noȝt, On herte hym lekid ille. 5852

To kyng Charlys sayde he þan—"Doþ now syre by thys man [leaf 77, bk]  
As it is þy wille ;

Certys y ne haue now no wonder þoȝ ȝe hym do hewe ech lyme on  
sonder, þorȝ-out flechs & bon, 5856

Supþe he wil noȝt for no pray Belyue on god : & for-sake ys lay  
Ne folloȝt take non."

¶ þan Char[li]s askede of ys men a-boute, Hwych of hem wolde of al Charles asks who will be executioner  
þe route Sle þat heþene hounde. 5860

Ogyer hym ansuerede—"y wil hym slo, For myche tene he haueþ Ogyer says he will ;  
me y-do, Her ys his bane y-founde."

<sup>1</sup> y-volled *corrected*.

<sup>2</sup> þat [stent].

Ys swerd a drow þat het corteyn, Wel many a Sarazyn had he sleyn  
thar-with thar by-fore. 5864

and with one blow cuts off Balan's head. Ogie in the nekke thar-wyþ hym gerte, þat þe heued fro þat body  
sterete, ys owen lengþe & more.

Roland calls on Guy to fulfil his promise. <sup>1</sup> Wan þe A[meral] Balan was a-slawe Florippe com forþ & was wel  
fawe, & [ . . asked (?) ] kyng Charloun, 5868  
& sayde, "syre kyng, as þou art wiȝte, And y haue ben trewe to þyne  
kniȝte (?), [Now] graunte to me Gyoune."

"Damesele," quap Roland, "þow sayst ryȝt, þow schalt hym haue by  
god almyȝt." þan spak he to þat hende— 5872

"Gy of Borgoygne, do as þow hyȝt, Ant tak þys lady fair & briȝt,  
In-to þy lyues ende."

'Willingly,' says Guy, 'if Charles will give his consent.' "Wel gladlyȝh," saide Gyoune þo, "So þat myn vncle assenty to,  
þe Emperour Charlemyne." 5876

þan saide Charlys—"god for-beode þat y anentes pilke neode

+ Any-þyng sayde a-gayne."

Floripas undresses herself. ¶ þe Damesele dispoilled hure þanne anon, Hyr skyn was as whyt so  
þe melkis fom, fairer was non on molde: 5880

Wyþ eȝene graye, and browes bent, And ȝealwe traces, & fayre y-trent,  
Ech her semede of gold.


Hure vysage was fair & tretys, Hure body iantil and pure fetys,  
& semblych of stature. 5884

She is so beautiful In al þe werld ne miȝt be non fayrer wymman of flesch & bon,  
þan was þat creature.

that all the lords fall in love with her. ¶ Wan þys lordes had seyȝen hur naked, In alle manere wyse weel  
y-maked, On hure þay toke lekyng. 5888

Was non of hem þat ys flechs ne-raas, Noþer kyng, ne baroun, ne non  
þat was, Sche was so fair a þyng.

<sup>1</sup> N, crossed through, the rest erased and written over.

+ Ponatur in loco isto ; pointing apparently to some lines on the opposite page, which is wanting, but probably referring to the following lines which are added in the margin below:—

"To . . . . y plizte my troupe ȝore To haue & holde for euere-more  
On wedlak fre

For was . . . . do my power To saue þe" . . . . .

[End of MS.; the missing lines are supplied as before from the  
French original.]

- [L'empereres méismes en a .i. ris jeté ;  
 Pour tant s'il ot le poil et canu et mellé,  
 Si éust il mout tost son courage atorné.  
 Ens es fons c'on avoit pour Balant apresté,  
 Ont donné la puciele sainté crestienté,  
 Et par nom de bautesme ont son cors generé.  
 Karlemaines le tint au courage aduré,  
 Li dus Tieris d'Ardane, ensi l'ont esgardé,  
 Il ne laisierent homme qui de mere fust nés.  
 Ne li ont pas son nom cangié ne remué ;  
 Après, a la puciele son gent cors conraé.  
 Tout droit enmi la plaice en sont avant alé ;  
 Iluec a l'arceveques l'un à l'autre douné.  
 La couronne Balant a Charles demandé,  
 Floripas en couronne et Guion le sené ;  
 Puis les a l'arcevesques benéis et sacrés.  
 A Guion de Borgoigne rent Karles le reingné,  
 A Fierabras en a l'une moitié donné ;  
 De Guion le tenra par droite loiauté.  
 Lés la tour d'Aigremore ot .i. palais listé ;  
 Là sont nostre François à grant joie mené,  
 Richement sont servi et à moult grant plenté.  
 .VIII. jours trestous entiers ont les noeces duré.  
 Karles i a .i. mois et .i. jour sejourné,  
 Tant qu'il ot le païs auques asseuré.  
 Quant Karles ot la tere auques asséurée,  
 Le païs ont cerkié et toute la contrée.  
 La gent paiene en ont tant qu'il pueent menée ;  
 Qui ne veut croire en Dieu s'ot la teste caupée.  
 Par .i. saint diemence, quant l'aube fu crevée,  
 Adont ot l'arcevesques une messe cantée ;  
 L'empereres en a Floripas apelée.  
 'Bele, ce dist li rois, je vous ai couronnée,  
 Si estes, Dieu merci, bautizie et levée  
 Au milleur chevalier estes vous espousée,  
 Ki soit jusques Aufrique, outre la mer salée.
- 5892
- 5896 Floripas is baptised,
- 5900 but her name is not changed.
- 5904 She and Guy are crowned,
- 5908 and Spain is divided between Guy and Ferun-bras.
- 5912
- 5916 At the end of a month Charles prepares to return to France.
- 5920
- 5924 He asks Floripas to show him the sacred relics,

as he intends to start the next day.	Et il et Fierabras tenront mais la contrée, .XX. <sup>m</sup> hommes aront de ma gent bien armée ; Bien sera, se Dieu plaist, vers Sarrazins tensée. Demain vaurai mouvoir par boine destinée ; Ne m'avés des reliques encor nule monstrée ; Alés, sel m'aportés sans nule demourée.'	5928
Floripas produces the casket :	' Sire, moult volentiers, puisque il vous agréé.' En la tour d'Aigremore est la bele montée, Venue est à la cambre, si l'a tost deffremée, Vint à l'escrin d'argent, s'en a la casse ostée, Et vint devant Karlon, si li a presentée. Et li rois s'agenelle et si l'a enclinée.	5932    5936
the crown of thorns	Trestout premierelement a la couronne ostée, Que Diex ot en son cief enbatue et serrée ; N'estoit d'or ne d'argent ne faite ni ouvrée, Mais d'espines poignans estoit entourtillée, Et d'aspres joins marages de lius en lius bordée.	5940
is exhibited to the barons.	Nos barons les monstra par boine destinée. Ha Diex ! adont i eut mainte larme plourée ; Cascuns s'i agenouille, s'a sa coupe clamée.	5944
The arch- bishop tests it, by leaving it suspended in the air without any support.	L'arcevesques fu sages, si l'a bien esprouvée : En haut desus le paille l'a contremont levée, Puis a retrait son brac, s'en a sa main ostée, Et la sainte couronne s'est en l'air arestée. Et dist li arcevesques, ' Je l'ai bien esprouvée, Que ce est la couronne que Dix ot espiné.'	5948    5952
A delicious odour comes from it.	L'arcevesques l'a prinse, si l'a jus avalée, Par de desus le paille l'a assise et posée. Plus flaire doucement que canele alumée ; La flairour qui en ist ne puet estre contée.	5956
	Environ la couronne fu moult grans li barnez ; Moult i avoit candelles et cierges embrasés, D'or estoit li palais, de soie encourtinés.	
The arch- bishop takes out the nails.	L'arcevesque a les claus fors de la casse ostés, Puis i avoit sa bouce et ses ex adesés.	5960

Et Karles les baisa et li autres barnés.

L'arcevesques fu sages, sils a bien esprouvés :

Par desure le paile, qui d'or est painturés,

Les en contremont et dreciés et levés,

Puis les baisa tous cois, s'en a ses mains ostés ;

Et li cleu sont tout coi, n'en est uns escapés.

Adont i ot grant joie, c'est fines verités.

' Seigneur, dist l'arcevesques, pour Dui, or m'entendés ;

Je vous di vraiment, se croire me volés,

Que ce sont li clau Dieu, qui ques ait aportés.'

Quant François l'ont veu, si les ont encliné.

' Ha Dix ! dist Karlemaines, tu soies aourés !

Moult par puis estre liés quant consenti m'avés

La couronne à avoir dont fustes couronnés,

Et les saintismes claus que tant ai desirés ;

Or en ert mes pais, se Dieu plaist, acuités.'

L'arcevesques les prinst, sils a jus avalés,

A nos François en a les ciés envolepés,

D'encoste la couronne les a mis et posés.

Puis a trait fors le signe, qui bien estoit dorés ;

Plus flaire doucement que bames embrasés.

Quant François l'ont veu, e les vous enclinés,

De pité et de joie fu cascuns esplourés.

L'arcevesques le prinst, qui bien fu apens's,

Puis le mist sur le paile, qui fu à or ouvrés,

O les autres reliques, dout il i ot assés.

L'emperere de France fist forment à loer ;

Il a fait une table sor .ii. trastres poser,

Et pardesus .i. paile, qui fu fais outre mer.

Ses fist li emperere partir et desevrer ;

Puis a fait les reliques moult bien envoleper,

Dedens son maistre coffre les a fait enserer.

Toutes ices reliques en vaura enporter.

Les petis espinons qu'il en fist esgrinner

De la sainte couronne qu'il ot fait desevrer,

5964 The arch-  
bishop tests  
the nails,

5968

and declares  
them to be  
the real  
relics.

5972

5976

5980 Then he  
draws out the  
inscription,  
which he  
shows, and  
lays on a  
cloth beside  
the other  
relics.

5984

5988 The relics are  
carefully  
wrapped up  
and placed in  
the king's  
coffer.

5992

5996 Charles places



the fragments  
of the thorns  
in his glove,  
which re-  
mains sus-  
pended in the  
air for over  
an hour.

Trestous les conquelli l'emperere au vis cler,  
Et les mist en son gant, canqu'il en puet trover.

.i. chevalier le tent, qu'i vit lés lui ester,

Mais il nel rechut mie qui ne l'oï parler

6000

Et Dix a fait le gant enmi l'air arester

Tant que une liue péust .i. hom aler ;

Ailleurs ot à entendre, ne l'en pot ramenbrer.

Karles a demandé de l'aigue pour digner ;

6004

De son gant li souvint quant il devoit laver,

Mais il ne sot à qui le bailla à garder :

Par de desus la gent le vit en l'air ester.

The arch-  
bishop points  
out this great  
miracle.

L'arcevesques le monstre à tout l'autre barné ;

6008

Ce fu moult grant merveille, bien en doit on parler.

Karles a prins son gant, si se sist au digné.

Charles and  
his barons go  
to dinner.

Challes nostre emperere est assis au mengier,

Jouste lui Floripas la bele au cors legier,

6012

Et d'autre part Guion, qui l'ot prinse à moullier.

Fierabras tint la coupe, devant le roi, d'ormier ;

Moult furent bien servi, n'en estuet pas plaidier.

Quant il eurent digné, les napes font sacier ;

6016

Cascuns sor son ceval s'ala esbanoier.

Karlemaines a fait la quintaine drecier ;

The revelry  
lasts till  
nightfall,  
when they  
separate.

Tout le jour behourderent desi à l'anuitier.

Quant il virent le vespre, mis sont au repairier,

6020

As osteus se repairent, si se vont aaisier ;

Quant assés sont deduit, si sont alé coucier,

L'emperere se dort ens un palais plénier,

Et a songié .i. songe mirabillous et fier,

6024

Que à Ais la Capele se devoit haubergier.

Charles  
dreams that  
he is at Aix-  
la-Chapelle,  
and a voice  
bids him  
return to  
Spain, to  
help Guy.

De la tere d'Espaigne ot une vois hucier,

Que il alast la tere et les pais aidier,

Et de paiene gent nostre Signeur vengier.

6028

Tout le monde véoit de grifons esragier ;

De sa gent li faisoient mervilleus encombrier :

A .i. seul jour en furent mort plus de .xx.<sup>ia</sup>

- En sa court à Paris avoit .i. lienier  
 Qui li voloit du ventre tous les boiaus sacier ;  
 N'avoit baron en France qui l'osast aprocier.  
 Pour le songe se print Karles à esvillier,  
 De Damediu de gloire se prinst à sinier.  
 Taut soufri Karlemaines qu'i prinst à esclairier ;  
 Devant lui fait venir Namle son consillier,  
 Le songe li conta qui l'ot fait esvillier.  
 'Sire, ce dist li dus, vous irés ostoier  
 Ains le cief de .iiii. ans sor la gent l'aversier.  
 Tel homme avés nourri qui point ne vous a cier ;  
 Damedieu nous en gart, qui tout a à jugier !'
- L'emperere de France s'est levés par matin  
 La messe a escoutée ens ou palais marbrin,  
 Puis, quant il l'ot oïe, si se mist au cemin,  
 Lors oïssiés grant noise et merveilleus hustin ;  
 Li os est aroutée, ne prist cesse ne fin.  
 Damedieu le garrisce, qui de l'iauve fist vin,  
 Le jour qu'il sist as noeces le saint Arcedeclin.  
 Challes est d'Aigremore partis et desevrés ;  
 Floripas la rouine le convoia assés.  
 'Bele, ce dist li rois, ariere retornés.'  
 'Sire, dist Floripas, si com vous commandés ;  
 Diex soit garde de vous, qui de virge fu nés !'  
 Floripas le baisa par moult grant amistés ;  
 Plourant s'en departirent, e les vous dessevrés.  
 Mais Guis et Fierabras ne sont pas retournez ;  
 Ains convoient Karlon et son rice barné  
 Jusque au pont de Mantrible, la rice fremeté.  
 Et Raous et Jehans lor sont encontre alé.  
 François se sont logié tout contreval les prés ;  
 Karlemaines n'i est c'une nuit ostelés.  
 Li rois Guis est de Karle partis et desevrés,  
 Et Fierabras o lui, li vassaus adurés.  
 Au departir des .ii. i fu grans deus menés ;

6032 And thrt a  
favourite  
lioness tries  
to tear him to  
pieces.

6036

6040 Naymes  
explains the  
meaning of  
the dream.

6044 Next morn-  
ing after  
mass the  
army starts.

6048

6052 Floripas  
accompanies  
them a short  
distance.

6056

Guy and  
Ferumbras  
go as far as  
Mantrible,

6060

6064 where Charles  
stays one  
night.

Mais li rois Karlemaines les a reconfortés.

Guy and  
Ferumbras  
take leave of  
Charles.

De Guion de Borgoigne s'est Karles departis,  
Et il et Fierabras, qu'est chevaliers gentis.  
Moult les a l'emperere baisiés et conjoïs  
Si lor a commandé que l'uns soit l'autré amis,  
Et s'ost s'est aroutée par puis et par larris.  
Taut vont par lor journées, si com dit li escriis,

6068

6072

On the eighth  
day the  
French arrive  
at Paris.

Que à l'uitisme jour sont venu à Paris.  
Cascuns s'en va ou regne dont il estoit nouris ;  
Karlemaines s'en va au moustier Saint Denis.  
Là manda arcevesques, evesques benéis,  
Les reliques lor monstre Damedieu Jhesu Cris.

6076

Charles goes  
to St Denis  
and exhibits  
the sacred  
relics,

Cel jour ot .x. evesques ensamble revestis,  
Si i ot arcevesques et abés .xxxvi. ;  
Li barnages i fu d'Orliens et de Paris.

6080

Au baron Saint Denis fu grans li assablée ;  
Au peron du lendi fu la messe cantée.

which he  
distributes :  
part of the  
crown and  
one nail he  
gives to St  
Denis :

Illuec fu la couronne partie et devisée :  
Une partie en fu à Saint Denis donnée,  
Et .i. cleu ensement, c'est verités prouvée.  
De la couronne fu partie et desevrée ;

6084

the inscrip-  
tion to Com-  
piegne.

A Compiegne est li signes à l'eglise honnerée.  
Des saintimes reliques fu la le desevrée ;  
Maint present en fist Karles par France la loée :

6088

He establish-  
es in their  
honour the  
fair of  
'Lendit.'

En l'onor Dieu en fu mainte eglise honnerée.  
La foire du lendi fu par ce estorée,  
Que ja n'i devroit estre cens ne taille donnée.

6092

Within three  
years came  
the treachery  
of Gwenealon  
and the death  
of Roland.

Ne tarda que .iii. ans qu' Espagne fu gastée ;  
Là fu la traïsons de Rollant pourparlée ;  
Gwenealon le vendi à la gent desfaée,  
Puis en fu à cevaus sa car detraïnée.  
Pinabiaus en fu mors sous Loon en la prée ;  
Là le tua Tierris au trencant de l'espée,

6096

Puis fu pendus armés par la geule baée.

Tous jours vont traitours à male destinée ;

U en près ou en loing, ja n'i aront durée.

A Dieu vous comman je, ma canchons est finée.

De cest roumant est boine et la fin et l'entrée,

Et enmi et partout, qui bien l'a escoutée ;

Ki cest roumant escrist il ait boine durée.

6100 Gwenelon is  
torn in pieces.

6104 My tale is  
done,  
God bless you  
all!

Explicit Li Rommans de Fierabras d'Alixandre.]

## NOTES.

---

p. 1, l. 4. So in the *Sowdone of Babyloyne*, ll. 25—29 :

“As it is wryten in Romaunce

And founden in bokes of Antiquyte, At Seinte Denyse Abbey in Fraunce.”

p. 1, l. 11. In the *Sowdone* we are told that Charles distributed the sacred relics as follows :—

“At our lady of Parys, He offred the Crosse so fre ;

The Crowne he offred at seynte Denyse, At Boloyn the nayles thre.”

which differs slightly from the account in *Fierabras* (see l. 6085).

p. 2, l. 56. “Poille.” In the Fr. “Coloigne.” In the side-note read “Apulia” instead of “Poland.”

p. 3, l. 65. “tolde 3ow of eer.” See p. 1, ll. 8—12. In the Fr. “les dignes reliques que je ne sai nommer.” The number of the nails used at the Crucifixion is a disputed point. The question has been fully discussed in *N. and Q.*, Series III., vol. iii. pp. 315, 392, whence I extract the following :—

“St. Gregory Nazianzen says of the taking down from the cross—

Γυμνὸν τρισήλω κείμενον ξύλῳ λαβών.

Clearly intimating that our Saviour was fixed to the cross with three nails only.

“Nonnus, the Greek poet, in the fifth century, describes the sacred feet of our Lord as placed one over the other, and fastened down with a single large nail.

“On the other hand, St. Cyprian, St. Augustine, St. Gregory of Tours, and Pope Innocent III., as also Rufinus and Theodoret,<sup>1</sup> reckon four nails. The earliest known representation of the Crucifixion is, I presume, that found in the cemetery of St. Julius Pope, or of St. Valentine, in *Via Flaminia*; in which our Saviour is clothed in a long robe, without sleeves, reaching from the shoulders to the ankles; and his feet are separate, and each one fastened by a nail to a piece of wood projecting from the cross.”

<sup>1</sup> This seems to be a mistake, for Calvin in his work referred to below says—“Si vera enarrant antiqui scriptores, ac præsertim *Theodorus*, veteris Ecclesiæ historicus, Helena unum filii sui galeæ inseri, reliquos duos equi freno aptari jussit,” p. 206, col. 2.

In the *Ancren Riwele*, p. 390, we find *three* nails referred to:—"pis scheld þet wreih his Godhed was his leoue licome þet was ispred o rode, brod ase scheld buuen in his i-streih t earmes, and neruh bineoðen, ase þe on uot, efter þet me weneð, sete upon þe oðer uote."

See also *Legends of the Holy Rood*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Morris, pp. xix, xx.

It is curious that the author of the Eng. version invariably omits all mention of one of the relics so frequently referred to in the French version, *le signe honneré*, the "title," which was placed over our Lord's head.

In I. Calvin's *Admonitio de Reliquiis*, ed. of 1667, will be found a very full and interesting account of the distribution of the sacred relics. It would occupy too much space to give his account in full, but I may briefly summarise the results of his investigations so far as they refer to the relics here mentioned. Of the nails he found no fewer than *fourteen* preserved in various churches and monasteries: of which *four* were in Italy; *two* in Germany; *one* each at Cologne and Treves; and *six* in France (p. 206, col. 2). In addition to these the monks of Glastonbury Abbey claimed to possess one. See *An History of the Abbey of Glastonbury*, Warner, p. lxii.

As to the crown of thorns, Calvin, p. 207, col. 1, gives a long list of places claiming to possess one or more of the thorns, and here again Glastonbury must be added. In the *Annales ordinis S. Benedicti*, III. pp. 699, 700, we read that Azan, a prefect of Jerusalem, presented to Charlemagne, "*Spinea corona, que caput amabile Redemptoris nostri complexa est,*" and "*unus de clavis qui delectabiles Christi articulos configebant.*" The Abbey of Glastonbury appears to have been especially rich in relics, for, in addition to the above, and others of minor importance, it possessed the spear of Longinus, presented by Audulphus, Count of Boulogne, to Athelstane, some of the milk of the Virgin, and some of the hairs of St. Peter's beard. See Knyghton's Chronicle in *Historia Anglicane Scriptores decem*, London, 1652, col. 2321, l. 28, and Warner's *History of the Abbey of Glastonbury*, Bath, 1826, p. lxii.

p. 3, l. 91. So in the *Coventry Mysteries*, ed. Halliwell, 183, "bragge or blowe."

p. 4, l. 101. Perhaps we should read, "[To] such þre," &c., *i. e.* "to three such men I would not give way."

p. 4, l. 102. "twelue." The Fr. is more moderate—"Ja n'en refuserai, par Mahom, jusqu'à vi.," with which the *Sowdone of Babyloyn* agrees.

p. 4, l. 120. "y knowe him wel to wisse;" I know for certain. In this phrase *wisse* appears to be an adj. (A.S. *gewis*, Old Sax. *wiss*, certain).

"I-wis, þenne seide william, i *not* wel to wisse."

*William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, 3397.

p. 4, l. 124. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xiv. 239.

p. 4, l. 128. "none kynnes þynge." See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, C. xi. 128.

p. 5, l. 144. "so most he þe;" so might he prosper. A common expression, for examples of which see Stratmann. One of the, if not the latest use of the verb to *the* (A.S. *þeon*) is in Tusser's *Five Hundred Points of Good Husbandrie*, 1580 (Eng. Dial. Soc., ed. Herrtage), p. 19, stanza 8.

p. 6, l. 161. Know that this is thine own fault.

p. 6, l. 167. See M. Gaston Paris' remarks on this incident, and the different causes assigned for it in various poems. *Histoire Poétique*, p. 263.

p. 6, l. 173. "Makes no account of me."

p. 6, l. 197. "doppeper." This spelling is most remarkable. Were it not for the fact that the original draught and the corrected copy are in the same handwriting, one would be led to suspect that the word had been dictated by some person who lisped. But in the original draught we find the word correctly spelt *dozepers* (see l. 423, and note to l. 259). A similar instance of *p* for *z* occurs at l. 1462, where we find *dopeyne* for *dozeyne*. At l. 2036 curiously enough the word is spelt correctly.

The various forms under which we find this word are very curious. In *Otuel* (Ellis. *Metr. Romances*, ii. 367) we have "*dussypere*," and "*duzze pieres*"; in the *Sowdone of Babyloyne*, "*dosiper*" and "*dosyperys*"; in *Rouland & Vernagu* (Abbotsford Club) "*dussepers*"; in *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, iii. 440, "*dukperis*" and "*Dutchpeeres*"; in *Wyntown*, v. 4350, "*dowch-sperys*." It is worthy of notice how entirely the original meaning of the word has been lost by the English poets; thus at the end of *Otuel* we read, "Here endeth Otuel, Roland, and Olyuere / and of the twelve dussypere." So too in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, l. 1853:—

"Ther come in a daunse IX. doseperus of Fraunce;"

and we frequently find a single knight (as in the present instance) called "*a dozeper*."

p. 6, l. 199. "to tristyng to." A corruption of the old gerundial form. Thus in the *Tale of Beryn* (Chaucer Soc., ed. Furnivall), l. 347, we find, "This nyzte that is to *comyng*;" and again in *P. Plowman*, C. xviii. 313, "Hopen þat he be to *comynge*." In the Wyclifite version of Rev. xii. 4 we read: "And the dragoun stood before the woman that was to *beringe* child," and in the next verse, "*to reulinge* alle folkes." Caxton, *Descr. of Britain*, 1485, has "Candred is to menyng a contrey that conteyneth a hondred tounes," p. 20. Cf. "Eart þu ðe to *cummene* eart?" Luke vii. 20.

p. 7, l. 209. "ofte sekede amonge;" sighed at frequent intervals, frequently. Compare the following from Mr. Wright's *Carols and Songs* (Percy Society):—

"Thys endys myzth  
I saw a syzth  
A stare as bryzt as day;

And ever amonge  
A maiden songe  
Lullay, by by lullay."

Compare also Mod. Eng. *all the while*.

p. 7, l. 213. "his mantel of say." In the Fr. "*son bliaut de soie*." Halliwell defines *say* as "a delicate serge or woollen cloth," quoting from Palsgrave—"Saye clothe, *serge*." See Du Cange, *Glossar.* s. v. *Seta*.

p. 7, l. 219. "þat toched mannes dede;" that was the part or duty of a man; compare l. 1435.

p. 8, ll. 234, &c. The process of arming is not so minutely described here as in *Sir Gawayne*, l. 567, *et seq.*, on which see Sir F. Madden's note in his edition for the Bannatyne Club, 1839, p. 314.

p. 8, ll. 246-7. In the Fr. version Oliver is more definite as to the reward he purposes to give Garyn:—



“Ferrant, dist Oliviers, bien ait qui te garda !  
Si je vif longuement, moult grant preu i ara,  
A Pasques, en avril, chevalier en sera.”

p. 8, l. 241. “hys styrop trepede he noȝt ;” that is, he did not place his foot in the stirrup, but vaulted into the saddle.

p. 8, l. 253. “K’au plus fier Sarrazin ancui se combatr  
Qui ains fust en cest sieucle, ne jamais i ssera !”

p. 8, l. 256. “blessed him ;” signed himself with the sign of the cross ; in Caxton’s version “blessyd hym in makyng the sygne of the crosse ;” compare—  
“blesce þe al abuten mid te eadie rode toene.” *Ancren Riivle*, p. 290. The act of making the sign of the cross is still called, “blessing one’s-self” by Catholics. See Myrc’s *Instructions for Parish Priests* (E. E. T. S., ed. Peacock), p. 9, l. 280.

“And blesse [hem] feyre as þey conne  
Whenne gloria tibi ys by-gonne.”

p. 8, l. 258. On the cover the following lines corresponding with ll. 258—261 of the corrected copy are legible :—

“As Charlys stod by chance at conseil with his feris,  
Roland . . . Whiche þat wern of france his oȝene doȝepers.  
& þan him for-þoȝte . . . he had” . . .

p. 8, l. 259. “doppeperen.” On this curious form see remarks on l. 197, above.

The names of the *douzeperes* are variously given in the MSS. Thus the present Romance gives them as—Roland, Oliver, Terry, Geoffrey, Ogier, Basyn, Naymes, Richard of Normandy, Berard, Aubrey, Gwylmer, and Guy of Burgundy.

The Lansdowne MS. gives—Roland, Oliver, Geryn, Gerer, Berenger, Otto, Samson, Engeller, Ivon, Ivoire, Anseis, and Girard<sup>1</sup>; while in *Otuel* and *Roland & Vernagu* (ed. for the Abbotsford Club, from the Auchinleck MS. in 1836) no regular lists are given. Caxton, following the prose *Fierabras*, says “the barons of themperour Charles and pyeres of Fraunce ben sayd comynly in nombre xij or xij . . . But of the lordes valyaunte capytaynes were more than xij after that I fynde” (sign. B viii, col. 1). He then gives the following names, sixteen in number :—Roland, Earl of Cenonia, Oliver, Richard, Garyn, Geoffrey, Hoel, Ogier, Naymes, Thierry, Basyn, Guy, Caudeboy, Ganellon, Sampson, Alorys, and Gwylmer.

In the *Sowdone of Babyloyn* also the *douzepairs* are sixteen in number :—Roland, Oliver, Regnier, Richard of Normandy, Garyn of Lorraine, Geoffrey, Hoel, Ogier, Lambert of Brussels, Naymes, Thierry (Terry), Basyn, Guy of Burgundy, Gaudeboys, Ganellon, Sanson of Burgundy. But at ll. 1680—1722, we find other names mentioned which do not appear in the foregoing list. Thus we have, Bery, Baliane, Aleroyse, Miron, Turpin, Bernard of Prussia, Bryere, and Naymes.

<sup>1</sup> Although Ogier is not included in the *Chanson de Roland* amongst the *douzeperes*, yet he is the most important personage after Roland.

M. Gaston Paris in his *Histoire Poétique de Charlemagne*, Paris, 1865, p. 507, gives the names as found in the French versions. See also his remarks, *ibid.* pp. 416—418.

- p. 8, l. 267. The following portion of the original draft corresponding with ll. 267-9 is legible on the cover:—

“Many was þe knyȝt þat him beheld : wan he spak his resoun.  
He said to þe kyng þer as he wes . ‘ y . . . . haue þe serued ȝore,  
. . . . . in werre & in lond of pes, wel vij ȝer & more’.”

- p. 9, l. 276. “neuere ous two to-sterre ;” we two have never been separated.  
p. 9, l. 286. “lome.” Generally found in combination as “oft and lome.” For examples see Stratmann. The comparative *lommere* occurs in *P. Plowman*, C. xxiii. 238, where it is glossed by the scribe *sepius*.  
p. 9, l. 302. “Gweneloun.” It is one of the signs of the popularity of the Charlemagne Romances, that this name should have become synonymous with the basest treachery. Thus Chaucer, *Monks Tale*, 3579, uses it as an epithet, when he speaks of “Genylon Olyuer, corrupt for mede ;” and again, *Boke of the Duchess*, 1121 :—

“Or the false Geniloun  
He that purchased the trayson  
Of Rouland and of Olivere.”

See also *Gesta Romanorum*, Tale lxxviii, p. 396.

- p. 10, l. 304. From this line we learn the date of the action of the Romance. See the Introduction, p. xvi, and note.  
p. 10, l. 307. “As the law decreed in the case of traitors.”  
p. 10, l. 311. “Rewardet,” agreed, determined : cf. l. 3452. “Tweyre ;” A. S. *twegra*, gen. of *twegen*, two. There are not many instances of its occurrence. In *Lazamon*, ed. Madden, ii. 312, ll. 17568-9, we have—

“þat hii wolde al þis lond : fette in hire *tweire* hond,”

and ll. 21436, “fette in ȝoure *tweire* hond.” See also *Ancren Riwele*, p. 406, “i pisse *tweire* monglunge.” The meaning of the line is—That that which is agreed upon by the consent of any two, any third person, upon whom they may fix, shall be bound to perform. Caxton’s version is, “ye haue ordeyned that it whyche by ij of vs is juged ought to be holden.” The French version runs—

“Que ce que li doi jugent, puis k’i l’ont affremé,  
Aler estuet le tiere, ensi l’ont creanté.  
Nous jujon Olivier, si l’avons esgardé,  
Qu’il fera la bataille au païen deffaé.”

- p. 10, l. 322. “Puis dist entre ses dens ; ‘Diex li doist courte vie.’”  
p. 10, l. 324. “dere herte.” Compare *Gesta Romanorum* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Herbage, 1879), p. 181 : “yf þou do welle, þow shalte be myn owne *dere harte* ;” and *Troilus and Creseide*, iii. 988 : “Lo ! *herte mine*,” and in the next stanza, “my *dere herte*.”  
p. 10, l. 325. “Qwhylyes he es qwykkeand in *qverte* vnquellyde with handis.”

*Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock, l. 3810.

See also note in *Cathol. Anglicum*, s.v.v. *Inquarte* and *Quarte*.

- p. 10, l. 326. “Were it not for thy grievous wound, I am sure thou wouldst fare well.”

- p. 10, l. 328-9. "Duk Reyner . . . . Olyuers fader." So we find in all the authors with the exception of one passage in David Aubert (chapt. 39): "Comment le roy Fourré fu occis contre le gré de l'empereur par Olivier de Viane, qui vengea la mort de son père *Gerier* que Fourré avoit occis," &c., but as the same author elsewhere gives the names correctly, this is doubtless, as pointed out by M. Gaston Paris, a slip on the part of the writer or the copier. (*Hist. Poét.*, pp. 263-4.)
- p. 10, l. 331. Here begins the legible portion of the original draught, which for convenience of comparison has been printed parallel to the corrected version.
- p. 11, ll. 334—337. These lines are an addition of the English translator: at least they do not occur in the surviving MSS. of *Fierabras*. As to the meaning of l. 335, I cannot offer any suggestion.
- p. 11, l. 351. Here the draught follows the original French more closely than the corrected copy:—

"Là ù voit Fierabras, si l'a araisonné:  
 'Sarrazins, d'ont es tu, tant nous as apelé?'"

The four following lines, 352—355, are not in the original French.

- p. 13, l. 381. "alre." See note on l. 2342.
- p. 13, l. 384. "raply;" quickly, hastily. For examples see Stratmann, to which add—"He ros vp *raply*:" *Arthur*, ed. Furnivall (E. E. T. Soc., 1864), l. 87; *P. Plowman*, C. vii. 383, and *Richard the Redeles* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Skeat), prol. 13.
- p. 14, l. 400. "ladde (harlot) on þy fote." In the Fr.—  
 "Fui t'ent fors de la tere, mar enmerras destrier,  
 A ton col .i. grant pel, à loi de *pautonnier*."

The word *pautener* occurs hereafter, l. 859, which see.

- p. 14, l. 404. "letest so lite of me." Cf. *Richard the Redeles* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Skeat), iii. 284, and *P. Plowman*, B. vi. 170, "leet list of þe lawe."
- p. 15, l. 408. "stondeþ aye." An old phrase meaning to stand in awe of, to fear. Thus in *Barbour's Bruce* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Skeat), iii. 62, we have "*stand awe*," and in *Havelok*, ed. Skeat, l. 277:

"Al engelond of him *stod awe*,  
 All engelond was of him adrad,"

where the prep. *in* has been incorrectly and unnecessarily inserted before *awe*. See also *The Wallace*, v. 929, vi. 878, &c.

- p. 15, l. 423. Notice that while in the original draught we have the ordinary form *dozepers*, in the corrected copy we have *doppeper*.
- p. 16, l. 433. "þe sonne hure sette." On the gender of the word *Sun* see Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 256, and my note to *Gesta Romanorum*, p. 12, l. 14.
- p. 16, l. 437. "Hym dredeþ noþyng," &c. In the original French—  
 "Tant fu fers et oribles et de grant cruautés  
 Ne prisà Olivier .ii. deniers monnaés."
- p. 16, l. 444. "Perigot." French, "Pieregort."
- p. 17, 447. "the kynges styward." French "Fius à un vavasour, c'avoit nom Ysorés."

- p. 17, l. 456. "Ogeroun þe wiȝte." The whole life of this celebrated hero is in the Royal MS. 15, E vi. 4. *Ogier le Danois, duc de Dannemarche*, was printed at Paris about 1498. His old Gothic Sword, Spatha, and Iron Shield are still preserved in a monastery in the north. Bartholinus, *Antiq. Domic.* ii. 13, pp. 578-9. For further notices see M. Michel's edition of *Charlemagne* from the Royal MS. 16, E viii. 7, written in the 12th century (Paris, 1836); and Warton, *Hist. of Eng. Poetry*, ii. 137-8.

"Who more couragious then *Renaldo*? who more invincible then *Roldan*? who more comely or more courteous then *Rogero*? from whom the dukes of *Ferrara* at this day are descended (according to *Turpin* in his *Cosmographie*). All these knights, and many more, Master Vicar, that I could tell you, were knights errant, the very light and glorie of knighthood."—*Don Quixote*, ed. Shelton, 1652, Part 2, chapt. 1, p. 139.

- p. 17, l. 458. "Spelie." For examples of this rare word see Stratmann, to whose references add *P. Plowman*, C. vii. 432.

- p. 18, l. 473. "cors of werre;" as distinct from a "cors of pees," or a jousting match, which was usually conducted with spears without heads of iron. Thus in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, l. 1215, we read:—

"Thou shalt be servid, or I sess,  
Bothe of werre and of pess,  
Of ayther cours thre;"

and again, l. 1261, we find mentioned "sperus of pese," which were the jousting weapons above alluded to. See Strutt's *Sports and Pastimes*, ed. Hone, p. 141, and Meyrick, *Antient Armour*, Glossary. In MS. Lansdowne 285, leaf 10, are rules for the proper conduct of "justes of pees."

- p. 18, l. 476. The horse of the vanquished became the property of the conqueror. There are numerous allusions to this custom. See, for instance, *Sir Degrevant*, ll. 1112, and 1119: "Syxty stedus he wan."

- p. 19, l. 498. "Et voit le sanc vermel a la tere couler,  
Car l'ahans du ceval li ot fait escrever."

- p. 20, l. 507. "þou blerest noȝt so myn eȝe." A common expression for *blind*, *deceive*, *delude*. Thus Chaucer, *Reeve's Tale* (*Cant. Tales*, A. 4049): "By my þrift ȝit schal i blere here ie;" and in *Ly Beaus Disconus*, l. 1432:—

"Wyth fantasme and fayrȝe  
Thus sche blerede hys yȝe."

See also *P. Plowman*, C. i. 72; *Seven Sages*, ed. Wright, 2952, &c.

- p. 20, l. 510. "Myddel": *sic* in MS., but probably we should read "my sadel", as in the draught. Caxton's version has, "two flagons hangyng on the sadil of my hors." "a costrel." French "voila .ij. barils."

- p. 20, l. 511. This balm is thus referred to in *Don Quixote*, ed. Shelton, 1652:—"Be not grieved, friend Sancho, replied the knight; for I will now compound the precious *Balsamum* which will cure us in the twinkling of an eye." The ingredients of this *Balsamum* were Rosemary, Oil, Wine, and Salt, mixed together in an old tin pot, and over it were said "eighty paternosters and as many *Aves*, *Salves* and *Creds* . . . [he] did easily persuade himself that hee had hapned on the right manner of compounding the *Balsamum* of *Fierabras*; and that having that medicine, hee might boldly from henceforth, undertake any

ruines, batailles, conflicts or adventures, how dangerous soever.”—Lib. I, Pt iii, chap. 3, pp. 31-2.

p. 20, l. 521. “by þis liȝte.” A proverbial expression equivalent to “during this life.” We have the same idea in different words at l. 1744, where we find, “by þys leem.”

p. 21, l. 525. “Rolandre.” A form apparently invented *metri gratia*; compare the reading of the original draught.

p. 21, l. 528. “fer & ner.” A phrase of common occurrence, and equivalent to, “all over, thoroughly.”

p. 22, l. 544. The translator has here omitted a few lines in the original French:—

“Et respont Fierabras : ‘trop me viels ore haster.  
Par foi, se tu me vois deseur mes piés ester,  
N’a si fier homme el siecle ne me doie douter.’  
‘Certes, dist Olivier, trop t’ai oï vanter.  
Miex vaut mesure à dire que ne fait sorparler ;  
A bon droit te devroit de ton cors meserrer.’”

p. 22, l. 545. “bente hym brymly as a bor.” A common simile in early poetry. Thus in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, Camden Society, 1844, l. 1240, we read—

“The eorl hoved and by held  
Brem as a bare,”

and in Shelton, *Works*, i. 187:—

“Your bragyng bost, your royal aray,  
Your beard so brym as bore at bay.”

p. 22, l. 548. “Had he ben,” &c. French:—

“Se il vauisist créir le digne roi Ihesu,  
N’eust tel chevalier dusques à Montagu.”

*I-volled* occurs in *Robert of Gloucester*.

p. 23, l. 580. Here the translator has passed over several lines descriptive of Ferumbras’s arms, &c., and particularly of his three swords, Plorance, Baptism, and Garbain, the whole pedigree of which is given. In fact the whole account of the combat is considerably altered in the present English version.<sup>1</sup> The author of the latter omits the incident of Oliver’s assisting Ferumbras to arm, and the long harangue of Oliver made in the hope of converting the Saracen to Christianity.<sup>2</sup> The French writer represents Ferumbras as then again offering the balm to Oliver, and its refusal.

The French knights who are witnesses of the combat are alarmed for their champion’s safety, and Charles, covering his head with his cloak, hurries to his chapel to pray for his success. Roland is anxious to join Oliver, but is prevented by the king, who reminds him of his refusal to accept the challenge. Both the combatants are wounded, and Ferumbras proposes, as he sees Oliver is pale from loss of blood, to leave off for a time, but the latter refuses. The prayer of Charlemagne to the Virgin then follows—a curious specimen, since in it he declares that if Oliver is conquered, he will destroy all the altars and

<sup>1</sup> The account as given in the *Sowdone* follows the French text exactly.

<sup>2</sup> Compare the very amusing description of the duel between Magog the Saracen and Rauf Coiljeare, ed. Murray, pp. 29—32.

crucifixes, words for which Naymes reproaches him. Then comes a long prayer of Oliver, who is again wounded, but refuses the balm which Ferumbras offers him with the assurance that it will make him as lively as a swallow in May. The Saracen is then wounded, but having drunk some of the balm, is quickly restored. Oliver with a stroke of his sword cuts away the two bottles containing the balm, which fall to the ground (l. 742, English version). He leaps off his horse, seizes one of the bottles, drinks its contents, by which he is restored to strength, and then throws both into the river. The weight of the gold with which they are set causes them to sink, but on the feast of St. John they rise to the surface. Ferumbras in a rage slays Oliver's horse (l. 591, English version). The French wish to assist their countrymen, but Charles insists on fair-play to Ferumbras. The latter offers Oliver his own horse, and as the offer is refused, he himself dismounts. Charles utters another prayer, and an angel appears to him, and tells him that Oliver will be the conqueror, but not without severe wounds.

Meanwhile the combat continues, and Ferumbras disarms Oliver: and advises him to renounce Christianity, offering him his sister Floripas in marriage. Oliver rejects the offer, and also refuses to accept his own sword back, but by a sudden spring seizes one of Ferumbras' swords, Baptism, with which he continues the combat. At length Ferumbras is seriously wounded and asks for mercy.

Here the two versions again correspond.

- p. 24, l. 583. in draught, "þylke": *sic* in MS., read "þykke", as in the corrected copy.
- p. 25, l. 601. "hir eyþer." See note on l. 677.
- p. 26, l. 623. "cercle." This is not the padded wreath worn from the time of Richard II. to Henry IV. on the bacinet, but the more splendid band of goldsmiths' work enriched with jewels. It is called *bordoure* in the *Awntyrs of Arthure*, xxx. 4, and said to be "alle of brynte golde"; and in the present poem, l. 5627, it is termed the "cornel". See Roquefort, *Glossaire, Supplément v. Helme*, Planche's *Hist. of Costume*, p. 160, &c.
- p. 26, l. 631. Compare l. 727.
- p. 26, l. 636. In the French version this incident occurs before the fight begins.
- p. 27, l. 652. "Y am Charlis Eemys sone." This would mean, "I am the son of Charlis' uncle," but I do not find that Reynier is in any other passage called the uncle of Charles.
- p. 27, l. 661. "beyne," both. This is the O. E. *begen*, which we find as *beizen*, *beien*, *beine*, *beyne*, in Lazamon. In the Vernon MS. we read—  
 "Well þou maiht ȝif þou wolt, taken ensaumpel of *beyne*,  
 Bothe two in heor elde children heo beore."
- p. 27, l. 677. "Vnder hure bopen fete:" under the feet of both of them. So we find, "*her neither may henten oþer*," *P. Plowman*, C. xvii. 81: "*her none*," *ibid.* B. xiv. 239. Compare l. 601, "hir eyþer," and l. 4146, "*ȝour summe*."
- p. 28, l. 679. Apparently the line means, in the excitement and thrusting of the moment, to the Saracen, &c. Cotgrave gives "*Entrelas*, m. A knot hard to be loosed, and intricate businesse, a work much entangled. *Entrelasement*, m. A setting, putting or thrusting in, between or among."



- p. 28, l. 681. "to donde." This form occurs in "A Prayer to Our Lady," pr. (from the Addit. MS. 27,909) in *An old Eng. Miscellany*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Morris, p. 123, l. 15—"to donde sunne awei fram him." It is a corrupt form of the infinitive arising from a confusion of the gerundial form *-nne*, corrupted into *-ing* (see l. 199), with the participial ending *-ende*. Thus in *O. E. Homilies*, ed. Morris, ii. 57, we read: "the rihtwise [man fasteth] for to witiende his rihtwisnesse."

It is worth noticing that in the French version the positions of the two combatants are reversed, so far as this incident is concerned.

- p. 29, l. 697. "many a schoure." We still speak of a "shower of arrows, or darts," and the word was frequently used in that sense; cf. *flana scuras*, showers of arrows, in the A.S. fragment of Judith. Compare ll. 771, 841.
- p. 30, l. 719. I know of no other instances of the forms *sot* or *soot* for the past tense of the verb to sweat. Chaucer uses *swot*.
- p. 31, l. 727. Compare l. 631.
- p. 31, l. 750. The following lines, corresponding with ll. 750-1 of the corrected copy, are at the back of the Fragment:—

"Of herte was F[erumbras] boþe hol & sond : & plenyde him no þyng,  
[Ac] ful him doun knelyng on þe grond, & þankede heuene kyng."

There are also a few other lines partly legible, running round the margins, and some, but for the most part illegible, on the other cover.

- p. 32, l. 753. "for Marie sone þat mayde;" that is, "for the love of the Son of Mary that Virgin." Compare l. 1270, "We buþ Charlis men þe Emperere." The construction, though singular-looking, is not at all uncommon in Old English: thus in *P. Plowman* we find several examples, e. g. "For marie loue þy moder," i. e. for the love of Mary thy mother; C-text, viii. 149; "Peers pardon þe plouhman," i. e. the pardon of Piers the Plowman; C-text, xxii. 187, 392; "For Peers loue þe plouhman;" i. e. for the love of Piers the Plowman; C. xvi. 131, xxiii. 77, &c. So again in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, l. 5437, "Thenperours moder william," i. e. the mother of the Emperor William. See also Chaucer, *Boke of the Duchesse*, l. 282; *Squieres Tale*, 209, &c.
- p. 32, l. 756. "Are not worth thinking of."
- p. 33, 766. "y-core." So in *Lazamon*, ed. Madden, 20971:—

"Alle hii weren i-core : and heze men i-bore."

- p. 33, l. 771. "Went him." See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. Prologue l. 7.
- p. 33, l. 774. "Goffanoun." "*Gonfanon*, m. A little square flag, or Penon at the end of a Launce; or (more particularly) an old-fashioned Banner, or square Standard, borne on the top of a Launce; such as, even to this day, is used in the warres made by the Pope." Cotgrave. See also Meyrick, *Antient Armour*, Glossary. The French version reads:—"Du pan de son bliaut li a les flans bendés."
- p. 34, l. 800. "v þousant of opre and mo." This gives a total of 15,000, but the French text has "L<sup>M</sup>." The "mo" in the English version seems to mean 3; cf. l. 815.
- p. 34, l. 813. "Mantreeblee." There appears to be some doubt as to the correct



spelling of this name. In the *Sowdone of Babylon* it is printed as "Moun-trible," and in the *Complaint of Scotland*, ed. Dr. Murray, p. 63, we have, "the tail of the brig of the mantribil." The same spelling appears in *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, iii. 455, where we find "Mantrybill." Shelton also refers to "Mantryble the bryge," *Poems against Gamesche*, ed. Dyce, i. 117, l. 22; and so it appears also in Caxton's *Lyf of Charles the Grete*, 1485, which follows the original French prose *Fierabras*; and in Shelton's translation of *Don Quixote*, Bk I, part iv, cap. xxii, p. 130, ed. 1675, where in the original Spanish the reference is to "*Fierabras, con la puente de Mantible*" (*sic*), part I. cap. xlix.

On the other hand, the editors of the French version of *Fierabras* and of *La Destruction de Rome* print the name as "Mautrible," and so it seems sometimes to be in the Ashmole MS. Considering, however, the slight difference between *u* and *n* in MSS., I have followed the reading which appears to have the weight of evidence in its favour.

p. 34, l. 819. "Hure commune horn," &c. In the French text—"Es très et as herberges ont olifans sonnés."

p. 34, l. 825. "þe woundede man þan he set adoun." In the original French this is done at Ferumbras' own desire, and Oliver, we are told,—

"Belement le couca desous le ramé pin;  
Ses espées li baille, li rois l'en fist enclin."

The latter part of this line is repeated at l. 838, below.

p. 34, l. 827. "iornay." The use of this word in the sense of *combat* is not uncommon; compare *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, xiii. 480:—

"Him war levar that *Journeye* wer  
Wdone, than he swa ded had bene;"

and again, xx. 494—

"He come nocht to the *Journee*,  
For his Arme was brokyne in twa."

We still use the expression "to win, or lose, the *day*."

p. 35, l. 833. "at arst;" *i. e.* "then for the first time." So in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, l. 1028:

"Panne alisaundrine at arst þan antresse him tille."

p. 35, l. 855. "Escaped from him by flight as best they might."

p. 35, l. 859. "pantener", read "pautener." This word occurs twice in *Barbour's Bruce*, i. 462, and ii. 194. Cotgrave gives "*Pautonnier*. A lewd stubborn or saucy knave;" and Burguy, "*Paltonier, pautonier*, homme sans profession ni demeure fixé; homme de mauvaise vie, méchant, hautain, misérable, queux, coquin." Halliwell quotes from *Guy of Warwike*, p. 113, "a feloun *pautener*." See l. 400, above. The word occurs again, p. 121, l. 3877.

p. 36, l. 876. "plate & maille." Plate armour was, as its name implies, formed of *plates* of steel or iron, while *mail* armour was composed of small *rings* or links. "*Maille*. Maile, or a linke of maile (wherof coats of mail be made); also a Hauther, or any little ring of mettall resembling a link of maile." Cotgrave.

p. 37, l. 928. "schake." So in *Lazamon*, ed. Madden, 13,246:—"Nes þer nan biscop þat forð on his weei ne *scoc*."

p. 38, l. 940. "Cornybourgh." French text, "Corsuble."

p. 38, l. 941. "persched." "To perche, *vbi* to Thirle," *Cuthol. Anglicum*. For other instances of this and similar forms of the word, see my *Gesta Romanorum* (E. E. T. Soc.), p. 47, l. 28, and note thereon.

p. 38, l. 953. "vewe." One of the instances of *v* used for *f*.

p. 38, l. 955. "chacyep forþ;" *i. e.* hurry along with them. See instances in Stratmann.

p. 38, l. 956. "rizdt:" for *rideth*; a very singular form.

p. 38, l. 966. "falsarȝ:" hand-bills, in the French *fausart*.

In the Chronicle MS. *Bertrand du Guesclin* we read:—"D'espees et de faussars ot sur lui plus de cent," and again—"Gettent dars et faussars, moult en vout ociant."

John, the Monk of Mairemontier, i. *Hist. Gauf. Duc Normand* says—"Imposita est capiti ejus cassis multo lapide pretioso relucens, quæ talis temperaturæ erat, ut nullius ensis acumine incidi vel falsificari valeret." Robert de Bourron, *Hist. Arthure et Merlin*, has, "Li haubert sunt si fort et si tenant qu'il ne puent maille fausser." Meyrick, *Antient Armour*.

p. 38, l. 969. "wel thre score & mo." French text, "plus de xlvj."

p. 38, l. 971. "wel an akers lengþe." I know of no other instance of the use of the word *acre* as expressing a measure of distance. See notes to ll. 2270 and 3040. A somewhat similar expression occurs in the amusing description of the fight between Rauf Coilgear and Magog, the Saracen, where the latter strikes the former so hard that—

"The lenth of ane rude braid he gart him remufe."

Ed. Murray, p. 30, l. 864.

The expression occurs again, l. 4699.

p. 39, l. 977. "supþen y-set alle an horce." French text:—

"Sur bons chevaus les montent, n'i ot onques roncis."

p. 39, l. 984. "At aualyng of a hulle;" *i. e.* at the descent from a hill, &c. French text:—"A l'avalier d'un tertre ont paiens consivis."

p. 39, l. 988. "þat schon so siluer briȝt;" that shone as bright as silver. French text—"dont li poins est burnis."

In the poems of Pulci and Boyardo the name of Roland's celebrated sword appears as *Durindana* and *Durlindana*. The possession of this sword was so coveted that Gradasso, a powerful Eastern king, invaded France with 150,000 men, in order to secure it and Rinaldo's horse.

We find this sword referred to in the *Roman de Horn* (12th Century), MS. Harl. 527, leaf 61, back, col. 2, v. 40.

"Unkes mielȝ ne trenchat Curtein ne *Durendal*."

One of the earliest authors who speaks of it is Rodulphus Tortarius, who lived at the end of the 11th century, between 1096 and 1145:—

"Ingreditur patrium gressu properante cubiculum,

Diripit a clavo clamque patris gladium;

Rullandi fuit iste, viri virtute potentis,

Quem patruus magnus Karolus huic dederat.

Et Rullandus eo semper pugnare solebat,

Millia pagani multa necans populi."

*Histoire de l'Academie Royale des inscriptions, &c.*, vol. xxi. 4<sup>o</sup>. p. 141.

All the celebrated warriors of romance appear to have given names to their swords: thus we find Charles' own sword termed *Joieuse* (see below, l. 4683, *Chanson de Roland*, ed. M. Michel, st. 179, ll. 6, 13); Turpin's *Almace* (*ibid.* st. 153, l. 7); Baligant's *Multet* (*ibid.* st. 227, l. 15); Richard of Normandy's *Escalidars* (Romance of *Ogier le Danois*, ed. Adenez); Oliver's *Hautecler*, Ogier's *Cortine*, and others. Ferumbras in the French version has three swords, *Plorance*, *Baptisme*, and *Garbain*.

The following account of *Durendal* is from *Le Premier Livre de la plaisante et delectable histoire de Gerileon d'Angleterre*, by Estienne de Maisonneufve Bordoilois, Paris, 1572, 8°. leaf 47, back:—"Après cela elle (la fée Oziris) tira du dit cabinet vne espee large, belle et bien trenchante au possible, le fourreau de laquelle estoit de la peau d'un grand serpent, qui fut occis par Hercule lors qu'il estoit encore bien jeune, laquelle estoit si proprement mouchetée qu'encore qu'elle n'eust esté garnie et conuerte de plusieurs diamans, rubis, et autres pierres precieuses, ayant esté mise a l'opposite du Soleil, elle eust rendu plus grand lueur et clarté que le mesme or . . . . s'appeloit *Duransarde*, que ledit Nabot auoit conquise sur le merueilleux et epouuantable Geant Scarafarab, qui estoit de la race d'Ancelede, vn de ceux qui voulant jadis monter au ciel furent foudroyez par Jupiter." In a work published at Paris in 1555, by Pierre Belon du Mans, entitled, *Observations de plusieurs singularitez et choses memorables, trouuées en Grece, Asie, &c.*, Bk. III. chapt. 42, leaf 204, we are told that, "La grand espée de Roland pend encore pour l'heure presente à la porte du chasteau de Bource. Les Turcs la gardent chere comme quelque reliquaire; car ils pensent que Roland estoit Turc, au moins s'il peut estre vray ce que le vulgaire en pense." In the French *Fierabras* *Durendal* is said to have been made by Munificans, one of three brothers who forged nine celebrated swords, three of which I have already mentioned as belonging to Ferumbras, the others being *Musagine*, *Courtain* (Ogier's) *Floberge*, *Hauteclere*, and *Ioieuse*.

Roland's dying address to his sword, in which he fully describes it, will be found in the *Chanson de Roland*, ed. Michel, st. 169, p. 90; and in Turpin's *Vita Caroli Magni*, Florence, 1822, chapt. xxiii. pp. 66-7. In this latter work will be also found, p. 147, a long and interesting account of an ancient sword corresponding in almost every particular with *Durendal*, as described by Roland himself.

- p. 39, l. 996. "on ys yre," *i. e.* on his ear. The form *ieare* occurs in the *Ayenbite of Inwyrt*, ed. Morris, 211; and *iare* in *An English Miscellany*, ed. Morris, p. 36.
- p. 39, l. 1000. "prysouns," prisoners, as frequently found in early writers. Similarly we have *message*, for a messenger, Chaucer, *Man of Lawe's Tale*, 333. See the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, ed. Morris, l. 2044; *P. Plowman*, C. x. 72; xxi. 59, &c.
- p. 39, l. 1001. "with rendouns;" *i. e.* at full speed. Cotgrave gives, "*Aller à grand randon.* To go very fast, or with a great and forced pace." So in *Bevis of Hampton*, p. 139, "He rod to him with gret randoun."
- p. 39, l. 1003. "potte an auenture;" risked, ventured. The *Catholicon Anglicum*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Hertridge, gives "to In Awntytr. *In eventū ponere.*"
- p. 40, l. 1034. "sechyng on þe playne." French, "le camp ont recherqué."

- p. 40, l. 1070. In the French text it is Roland and Ogier who disarm Ferumbras.
- p. 40, l. 1071. "sengle." Apparently the meaning is *undressed*; the French text reads—"Li rois est remens *sengles* on bliaut gironné."
- p. 40, l. 1072. Compare l. 1942. In the French text Ferumbras is thus described—  
 "Gros fu par les espaules, grailles par le baudré  
 Et ample ot le viaire, gentement figuré,  
 Les ex vairs en la teste comme faucons mué."
- p. 41, l. 1082. "an archebisschop." In the French text—  
 "Il apela Milon et Turpin l'alosés,  
 Deus rices arcevesques de moult grand saintete."
- p. 42, l. 1087. It was the custom for persons converted to Christianity to change their names.
- p. 42, l. 1094. "taste is wounde," i. e. examine by touch, probe. In a similar way we find the expression "to fele a savour." The translator has literally rendered the French original, which has—"Ils sont venus au roi, les flans li ont tastés." Cotgrave gives—"Taster. To taste; or take an essay of; also to handle, feele, touch, or grope for." The same expression occurs in *Horn Childe* and *Maiden Rinnild* (pr. in Ritson's *Metr. Rom.*, p. 309):—  
 "The maiden *tast* Hornes *wounde*  
 The kinges *douhter* in that *stounde*."
- See also *P. Plowman*, B. xviii. 84. Caxton's version reads "sercheden his woundes."
- p. 42, l. 1104. "atte frome:" at first. The expression occurs in the *Owl and Nightingale*, ed. Stratmann, 1513. Compare also the *Castel off Loue*, ed. Weymouth, 595:—  
 "Herkeneth now forþere *atte frome*  
 How vr Saueor wolde come;"
- and in the Anglo-Saxon Gospel of St. John i. 1,—"*On fruman* was word," &c.
- p. 42, l. 1109. This celebrated bridge is thus referred to in *Don Quixote*, ed. Shelton, 1675: "See what wit is there in the world so profound, that can induce another to beleeeve that the History of *Guy of Burgundie*, and the Princes *Floripes* was not true? Nor that of *Fierabras*, with the Bridg of *Mantible*, which befell in *Charlemaines* time, and is I swear, as true, as that it is day at this instant? And if it be a Lie so must it be also that ever there was an *Hector*, *Achilles*, or the War of *Troy*; *The twelve Peeres of France*, or King *Arthur* of *Britaine*, who goes yet about the world in the shape of a Crow, and is euery foote expected in his kingdome . . . . and in *Roncesuals* there yet hangs *Rowlands* horne, which is as big as a very great joyst."—Lib. I, Part iv, chapt. xxii, p. 130.
- p. 42, l. 1112. "prisouns." See note to l. 883, above.
- p. 42, l. 1115. "Carful;" full of care, wretched. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xiii. 103, and see Luke xiv. 13, and l. 5221, below.
- p. 42, l. 1118. "Amerel". The following are the various forms under which this word appears in the romances. In *Fierabras* we have *Amirans* and *Amirant*; in the Provençal version, *Almiran*; in the Sowdone *Admyrall*, *Amiral*; in Caxton *Admyral*.

- p. 43, l. 1146. "þes moste man;" this the tallest man, &c.  
 p. 44, l. 1159. "broȝt of lyues dawe;" killed: a common expression. Compare  
 l. 1588:

"Mani a bold burn was sone *brouȝt of dawe*."

*William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, 3817.

and

"Mani a bold burne sone *brouȝt of liue*."—*ibid.* 1159.

- p. 44, l. 1176. "noȝt for þat;" nevertheless. Compare the modern expression  
*for all that*. At l. 5265 we have the form *for—þan*.  
 p. 44, l. 1186. "stokkes of trow;" in wooden stocks, pillories. French text—  
 "En ma cartre profonde en *estroit* les metés."  
 p. 45, l. 1201. "Sche was a mayde fair & swet." Floripas is described as  
 follows in the French text:—

"Moult par ot gent le cors, escevi et molé,  
 Le car ot tenure et blance comme flours en este,  
 La face vermetlette comme rose de pré  
 La bouce petitete, et li dent sont seré,  
 Ki plus estoient blanc k'ivoire replané.  
 Les levres ot grossetes, dou rouge it ot assés,  
 Le nés ot bien séant, le front bel et plané,  
 Les ex vairs et rians plus d'un faucon mué."

- p. 45, l. 1206. "on & on;" one and one, that is of this one and that one, of  
 everyone. Compare our expression "of one and another," and see l. 1193.  
 p. 45, l. 1211. "in baile;" in custody, confinement. "*Bail*. A wardship,  
 tuition, government." Cotgrave. See *Kyng Alisaunder*, ed. Weber, 7532, &c.  
 p. 46, l. 1238. "preynte." According to Prof. Skeat from an A.S. verb *prinken*,  
 to wink, of which, however, we find but slight traces. In Halliwell we have  
 "*Prink*, to look at, gaze upon. *West*." The word occurs in *P. Plowman*,  
 B. xiii. 112:—

banne conscience curteisliche . a contenance he made,  
 And *preynte* vpon pacience . to preie me to be stille."

It occurs again in the present poem, ll. 1365, and 4507.

- p. 47, l. 1264. Note the change in the tenses.  
 p. 47, l. 1270. See note to l. 753.  
 p. 47, l. 1284. "at þy paye;" at thy pleasure, to please thee.  
 p. 47, l. 1289. "Doggedlich;" i. e. *dogtelich*, doughtily, valiantly.  
 p. 47, l. 1290. "helue." See l. 103  
 p. 47, l. 1291. "by hur selue;" with herself.  
 p. 47, l. 1294. "Moult vaut miex boins taisirs que solement parler."  
 p. 48, l. 1304. In the French text—

"Je quit c'as pucies sives moult bien juer,  
 En cambre sons cortine baisier et acoler.  
 Dist Guillemers l'Escos: 'Biens sapes deviner,  
 Juqu'en Jherusalem ne trouveriés son per.'"

Caxton's version has, "I byleue veryly that ye can wel playe with maydens of  
 eage in somme chaumbre vnder curteynes, & dysporte you in loue: I trowe ye  
 knowe how and what maner."

- p. 48, l. 1307. In the French text Floripas sends *Marmucet* (Maumecet) not for

a sledge-hammer, anvil, &c., but for a long rope with which she pulls the knights up from the dungeon ; and so in Caxton's version.

p. 48, l. 1311. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xiii. 117—

“Euery man help oþer, for hennes shulleþ we alle.”

p. 48, l. 1316. “zeate.” This pronounciation of *gate* still survives in Devonshire. The line is literally translated from the French—

“Par une gaste porte de viel antequité.”

p. 48, l. 1324—1331. This description of the chamber of Floripas differs altogether from that in the French text, in which only the ceiling is described as follows :—

“Desus la maistre vaute avoit par art posé  
Le ciel et les estoiles, et yver et esté,  
La lune et li solaus, qui nous donne clarté,  
Forers, teres et puis, i est tout painturé,  
Li oisiel et les bestes et li serpent cresté.”

The author then tells us that the chamber was built by king Methuselah, who he assures us (“*ce dist on par verté*”) died of grief because king Naaman desired to have it. Surely an extraordinary jumble of personages. The garden is then described, amongst the plants growing in which is the Mandrake, which will cure any wound or disease.

With the description of Floripas's room as here given compare that in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, ll. 1425—1500 (where amongst the wall-paintings we find one of “Grete Charlus with the crounne”), and the following from *Early English Miscellanies*, Warton Club, 1855, ed. Halliwell, p. 4 :—

“The towres shal be of every, Clene corven by and by,  
The dore of whallus bone;  
The cowpuls alle of galyngalle, The bemus alle of ryche coralle,  
Ryally begone ;  
The dosers alle of camaca, The bankers alle of taffaca,  
The quysschyns alle of velvet ;  
The wyndows alle of jasper stone, The pelowrs of coralle everychone,  
With joye joyned in gete,” &c.

p. 48, l. 1325. So in *Sir Guy*,

“The walls therof were of cristall,  
And the sommers of corral.”

p. 50, l. 1329. Compare *Lazamon*, 24,598 ; “mid golde bi-gon.”

p. 50, l. 1341. “sente.” Probably *sendal*, a species of rich thin silken stuff, highly esteemed. See *Strutt*, II. 3 ; *Guy of Warwike*, p. 421, &c. Or it may mean that the bedsteads were of *Sendal-wood*. “*Sendal*. Sandal, sendail ; Bois rouge des Indes.” Roquefort.

p. 50, l. 1359. “Or y ha told þy fader fore ;” before I have informed thy father. The *fore* appears to be superfluous.

p. 50, l. 1360. “chaunged was al hure blee.” In the French text—

“si a le sanc mué :

Son pere moult redoute et sa grant cruauté.”

p. 50, l. 1365. “preynte.” See note to l. 1238.

p. 50, l. 1368. “hur cast ;” French, *sa volente*.

p. 51, l. 1370. “þat olde trate ;” that old woman. An expression of contempt.



- Halliwell curiously enough quotes the word from the *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 150, misspelling it *crate*, and corrects Ritson for spelling it correctly. (See Halliwell s.v. *Crate*.) In the present instance the first letter of the word in the MS. is certainly more like *c* than *t*, but these are letters between which it is at times almost impossible to distinguish.
- p. 51, l. 1386. "Sche fet him a drench." In the French text Floripas gives Oliver a small bit of the Mandrake already referred to as growing in the garden, but the effect is the same.
- p. 51, l. 1387. "sone þas;" at once. See Introduction, p. xxvii.
- p. 51, l. 1388. "gropede;" felt. So Hampole, *Pricke of Conscience*, 6556, tells us that in Hell the darkness will be such "þat it may be *graped*, swa thik it es."
- p. 51, l. 1391. "tauzte þat sche was free;" showed that she had learnt politeness and courtesy.
- p. 51, l. 1407. "by is power;" according to his power.
- p. 52, l. 1450. "Myn herte me ȝifþ." Compare the modern expression—my heart misgives me.
- p. 52, l. 1463. "to don him sle ther;" to cause him to be slain there. See Introduction, p. xxiii.
- p. 54, l. 1512. "Vij." French text "xv."
- p. 54, l. 1525. "Myne amendes make;" that is, make amends, satisfaction to me. The expression occurs several times in the present poem. *Amendes* is singular, as in Pecoock's *Repressor* (Rolls Series, ed. Babington, p. 110), where we read, "a sufficient *amendes*," and in the *Catholicon Anglicum* we have, "an *Amendes*. *Emenda, emendacio, correccio*." See hereafter, ll. 1724, 1768.
- p. 54, l. 1527. "in fee;" that is as a knight held his land from his sovereign, or a vassal from his lord. Spelman defines *Fee* as "the right which the vassal has in land, or some immoveable thing of his lord's, to use the same, and take the profits of it hereditarily, rendering to his lord such feudal duties and services as belong to military tenure; the meer propriety of the soil remaining always vested in the lord."
- p. 55, l. 1579. See note to l. 197 above.
- p. 55, l. 1580. French text reads—  
     "Tels .x. en materoie ains soleil esconsé;  
     Mais envoie jouter .l. legier baceler,  
     Car trop avés cel cieſ et canu et mellé."
- p. 56, l. 1595. "þe hedes on þe tre by-lafte;" the heads remaining on the shafts.
- p. 56, l. 1602. "What halt it;" of what use is it to make a long story of it, to delay us in our tale?
- p. 57, l. 1621. "requilled hem alle;" drove together. In the French text:—  
     "Et aquellent Francois environ de tous les."
- Requilled* represents the Latin *recolligere* as *Aquellent* represents *accolligere*. "*Aqueillir*. Associer. *Accolligere*," Roquefort.
- p. 57, l. 1633. "seuen glotouns." French—"vii gloutons." We have already had the word as used by Charles to Roland on his refusal to accept Ferumbras' challenge: see l. 164.



- p. 57, l. 1638. "Hure wyle miȝt þow now wel ȝylde;" thou canst now well requite their treachery.
- p. 57, l. 1639. "Al quike y rede þan let hem hylde;" I recommend that thou cause them to be skinned alive.
- p. 58, l. 1653. "stent;" for *standeth*: as we say, How matters *stand*. See l. 2035.
- p. 58, l. 1666. "Al so mot y waxe;" so may I thrive, prosper.
- p. 58, l. 1667. "prensenty." French *prensenter*.
- p. 58, l. 1671. "vassalage;" conduct becoming to a knight. "Vasselage, *vasselaige*: Courage, valeur, action de valeur, action courageouse, prouesse, force de corps." Roquefort.
- p. 58, l. 1672. "an hed." In the French text, "Cascuns saisi .ii. testes."
- p. 58, l. 1674. "aferrom;" far off, from afar. So in *Morte Arthure* (E. E. T. Soc., ed. Brock), 856:—  
 "We folowede o *ferrrome* moo thene fyfe hundrethe."
- p. 58, l. 1678. "Richard;" in the French—Ogier li danois.
- p. 58, l. 1680. "þef." Sic in MS. Read *þes*. Compare l. 4315, below.
- p. 58, l. 1682. "Sixty pers." French "xxx. ars."
- p. 58, l. 1684. French text—  
 "X breteques y a, chascune sor piler,  
 Et peut bien sur cascune .x. chevaliers ester."
- p. 58, l. 1687. We are told afterwards in the French text that the river was 12 feet deep, and the lowest pier 30 yards high.
- p. 59, l. 1700. "Who, to look at, seems a fiend."
- p. 59, l. 1701. "Hache." French "mace."
- p. 59, l. 1705. Compare note on l. 1042.
- p. 59, l. 1708. "ther by-gynneþ luþer hanel;" that is—here is a bad beginning. *Hansel* is literally "the first money taken for the sale of any commodity, or taken the first in the morning."—*Bailey*.
- p. 59, l. 1711. "I will try to find out his intentions, and delay him a while, till you shall all have passed over."
- p. 59, l. 1715. "it miȝte be dure aboȝt." French text reads:—"Viels tu donner .i. cop pour .xv. recouvrer?"
- p. 60, l. 1729. It is singular that the author of the English version should omit here four lines in which Naymes accounts to Alagolofure for the heads which each knight carries at his saddle-bow, a point on which the Bridge-ward would naturally demand an explanation:  
 "XV. larrons trouvames là val enmi ces prés,  
 Si nous varent tolrir no destriers sejournés.  
 Mais, merci Diu de gloire, i l'ont cier comperé;  
 Vées ici les testes, se vous ne m'en créés."
- which, it will be seen, correspond with Roland's statement to the Emir, at ll. 1683—1687.
- p. 60, l. 1734. "It is not easy to get." Literally from the French, "n'est legiers à trouver."
- p. 60, l. 1736. "an hundred." French, "vii<sup>e</sup>."
- p. 60, l. 1739. French text gives:—

"Et .M. palefrois fors, .M. destriers sejournés,  
Et du pié du ceval .M. mars d'or esmerés,  
Après d'or et d'argent .iiii. sonniers trousés."

p. 60, l. 1741. "nemaþ gome;" take heed, notice.

"Son he seide, tak good gome,  
3yven þou hast þin owne dome."

*Cursor Mundi*, ed. Morris, l. 7937.

p. 60, l. 1748. "harneys;" baggage, *impedimenta*. The author follows the French text literally:—"Ci vient nostre harnois." "*Harnas*, Armure complète, ornement; meubles et ustensiles de ménage; bagage, outils; en bas lat. *harnesium*." Roquefort.

p. 60, l. 1750. "hertes of gresse;" fat harts; already, l. 1619, called "hertes refet at al." *Grease* or *greese* is the fat of a hare, boar, wolf, deer, &c.; and the season for killing harts and bucks was called *grease-time*, because they were then fattest. See *Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock, l. 658 and 1101.

p. 60, l. 1773. "on a grene erber." In the French text:—"Siet sous cel arbre ramé." O.Fr. *herbier*, Lat. *herbarium*, a garden. The spelling *erber* occurs in some MSS. of *P. Plowman*, B. text, xvi. 15, and in *P. Plowman's Crede*, l. 166, we find the plural *erberes*. The word was afterwards confounded with *harbour* (*herberwe*), and, still later, was misspelt *arbour* from an erroneous idea that it was connected with Lat. *arbor*, a tree. See Dr. Murray's note on *Thomas of Ercildoune* (E. E. T. Soc.), l. 177.

p. 60, l. 1793. "Roland." In the French text it is *Naymes* who speaks first, but the words and actions used are the same, and are certainly more appropriate to the reckless Roland than to the quiet *Naymes*.

p. 60, l. 1808. "By ous sente he þe to sayn;" by us he sent the message to deliver to thee. So in *Lonelich's Holy Grail*, ed. Furnivall, xiii. 48, "And thus the sente to seyne Ech del;" and xii. 187, "And therefore the sente to sein be me." See also below, p. 121, l. 1866.

p. 63, l. 1841. "his amendes." See note on l. 1525, and compare ll. 1885 and 4150.

p. 63, l. 1844. "abust;" tellest; a shortened form for *abeodest*. Wrongly explained in Halliwell.

p. 63, l. 1860. "Cil qui m'ocist Corsuble et mon oncle Mautrie.

p. 63, l. 1861. See note to l. 521.

p. 64, l. 1872. "3ea, trupt!" an exclamation of contempt. It occurs in a poem on the reign of Edward I., printed in Mr. Wright's *Political Songs* (Camden Society, 1839), p. 223. "*Tprot*, Scot, for thi strif!" on which the Editor remarks—"The word *tprot* appears to be a mere exclamation of contempt. In a poem on 'The Propertees of the Shyres of Engeland,' printed by Hearne in the Introduction to the fifth volume of Leland's *Itinerary*, we find it used, as here, against the Scots:—

'Northumbrelond hasty and hoot;  
Westmerlond *tprut* Scotte.'

In Sir Thomas de la More's *Chronicle*, it is applied to King Edward II:—"Tprut! Sire King!" It seems to be taken from the French: in Jean Bodel's *Jeu de S. Nicolas* (*Théâtre Français au Moyen-Age*, ed. MM. Moumerqué and

Michel) it is put into the mouths of the common gamblers in a public-house :—

*'Tproupt ! tproupt ! bevons hardiement :  
Ne faisons si le coc emplat'* (p. 183).

And again, immediately after (p. 184) :—

*'Tproupt ! tproupt ! où que soit passé, Diex !'*

It seems to be a word coined for the purpose of expressing visibly the sound made with the lips in uttering an ejaculation of contempt.

p. 64, l. 1890. I cannot explain this line.

p. 64, l. 1893. "how he let his lif;" how he spends (*ledeth*) his life.

p. 64, ll. 1895—1898. Are additions of the English translator.

p. 65, l. 1907. "bis day 3at or none." Fr. "ains l'eure de complie," which is a very different thing, bring the time for the last prayers of the day.

p. 65, l. 1913. "wipoute more distaunce;" without any further contest."

p. 66, l. 1942. "sengle." Compare l. 1071 : French text :—

*"En la pure cemise soit li tiens cors remés,  
Sor ton col une selle d'un destrier sejourné."*

p. 66, l. 1953. "lete don of dawe;" caused to be put to death. Compare l. 1159.

p. 67, l. 1976. Note the two forms "heo" and "sche" in this line.

p. 67, l. 1992. "let hewen hem flesch & bon." French text :—

*"Or leur faites les piés et les membres cauper,  
Et ardoir en .i. fu par dehors la cité."*

p. 67, l. 2007. "a-sotid." French text, *assoté*.

p. 68, l. 2008. "duke Myloun." French text :—

*"Du rice duc Milon vous devoit ramenbrer,  
Qui tant nori Girart, qu'il ot fait adouber ;  
Puis li tolli sa fille, Galiene au vis cler,  
L'enfant Garsilium en fist desireter."*

p. 68, l. 2016. "þow gadelyng horesone." French text :—

*"Fils à putain, fait elle, lecierres parjurés."*

p. 68, l. 2019. "y wol þe teche," &c. French text :—

*"Je te donroie ja tel de mon puing ou nés  
Que très parmi la goule te sauroit li sans clers."*

p. 68, l. 2021. "prysouns." See note on l. 883.

p. 68, l. 2027. The rime requires that we should read "het schitte the dore *faste*." The line is written over another erased.

p. 68, l. 2032. "aspye;" enquire.

p. 68, l. 2034. "may him gayme;" that may amuse him. Lines 2031 to 2036 are an addition of the English translator.

p. 68, l. 2035. "stent." See note to l. 1653.

p. 68, l. 2036. "do3opers." It is strange that here the author should spell this word correctly, while elsewhere we find "doppopers." See note to l. 197.

p. 69, l. 2053. "þou madest an hard vyage." French text :—

*"He Diex ! dist Floripas, or est Karles irés."*

p. 69, l. 2059. "Corsible of Mantrie." In the French version these two names appear as representing two distinct persons :—

FERUMBRAS.

P

- "Tu m'ocesis Corsuble ét mon oncle Matrie," as in l. 1860.
- p. 69, l. 2065. "Roland my name is callid rizt." French text:—  
 "Fix sui Milon d'Engler,  
 Et si ai nom Rollans, ensi sui apelés."
- p. 69, l. 2076. "Wan þat my fader," &c. Compare before, ll. 1412—1425.
- p. 70, l. 2085. "his;" probably an error for "he."
- p. 70, l. 2092. "vi. fet." French text, "deus iiij pies mesurés."
- p. 71, l. 2140. "þus wyle;" the while, while.
- p. 71, l. 2142. "a wykkedder man," &c. French text:—"N'ot tant felon paien  
 jusc'à la rouge mer."
- p. 72, l. 2174. "he put him seluen on a cas;" he risked himself in an situation,  
 from which he met with trouble.
- p. 73, l. 2187. "heþenis;" heathendom, l. 121, "heþenisse."
- p. 73, l. 2191. "Lyues;" the genitive sing. of the noun used adverbially. So in  
*Ancren Riwele*, p. 390: "Nu, þeonne, biseche ich þe . . . þet tu luuie me efter  
 þen ilke dead deaþe, Hwon þou noldes *liues*;" and *Havelok*, ed. Skeat, 509: "Y  
 if y late him *liues* go." Compare l. 2483.
- p. 73, l. 2207. "olde cherld." French text, *viellars*.
- p. 73, l. 2211. "barons in fee;" barons holding their land direct from the king.  
 See note to l. 1527.
- p. 74, l. 2221. "to ryuere;" go hawking at the river-side after water-fowl. So  
 in the *Life of St. Alexius* (E. E. T. S., ed. Furnivall, 1878, p. 65) we read how  
 the Saint was set  
 "To lernen chualrie,  
 Of hunting & of *Ryuere*  
 Of chesse pleieng & of tablere."
- p. 74, l. 2224. "pleyep to þe eschekkere;" play at chess or at tables (back  
 gammon). See an account of the old game of chess in the notes to the *Gesta  
 Romanorum*, chapt. xxi. p. 70.
- p. 74, l. 2225. "iew-de-dame;" draughts. "*Dames*. The play on the outside  
 of a pair of Tables, called draughts." Cotgrave. See Strutt, *Sports and  
 Pastimes*, 1810, p. 278, and Jamieson, s. v. Dams.
- p. 74, l. 2227. "sckyrme alay." I do not know the meaning of these words;  
 most probably there is some error in the text.
- p. 74, l. 2229. "All these are not worth a straw."
- p. 74, l. 2232. "chymenay;" hearth, fireplace. This was the original meaning of  
 the word from Lat. *caminus*. So in *Sir Degrevant*, ed. Halliwell, l. 1375—  
 "Damesel, loke ther be A fluyre in the *chymene*."  
 See Prof. Skeat's note to *P. Plowman*, B. x. 94.  
 Compare also the corresponding passage in the *Sowdone of Babyloyne*:—  
 "To the *Chymneye* forth he goth  
 And caught a bronde him withe to smyte" (l. 2009).  
 But in the same poem, l. 2351, the word appears to bear the modern meaning,  
 for we are told that Mapyne the thief,—  
 "Even in to Floripas boure, By a *chemney* he wente inne."  
 This is a very early instance of this use, as *chimnies* in the present sense of the  
 word were not common before the time of Elizabeth.

- p. 74, l. 2240. "with oute zede," &c. This seems to mean that Naymes moved so that Lucifer was between him and the fire, which is corroborated by the fact that when Naymes strikes the Saracen, the latter falls "doun amidde þe fyre."
- p. 74, l. 2242. "onde." Icel. *önd*, *öndi*, breath. "An Ande; *anelitus*." *Cath. Anglicum*. See *Prompt. Parv.* s. v. *Onde*.
- p. 74, l. 2244. "fachoun." "A faulchion: perhaps the sword was first so called when the inner edge was sharpened, in resemblance of the hand-bill, and afterwards the name was applied generally to any sword. The *Statuta Ecclesiæ Agnensis* say:—*Statutum fuit quod nullus canonicus, nullus clericus portare audeat cultellum armorum, falchionem pennatam, clavam ense, aut alia arma*." See Meyrick's *Antient Armour*, 1824, iii. Glossary.
- p. 74, l. 2253. "faire hure falle þat ilke hond:" fair befall it, that hand.
- p. 75, l. 2256. "let hym enchaufye ynne." French text:—"or le laisiés causer." In the *Sowdone of Babyloyne*, Naymes, we are told, "With a fyre-fork he helde him doune," while Floripas "bade him warme him wele" (l. 2018).
- p. 76, l. 2291. "Coudryn." French text, Cordroé.
- p. 76, l. 2303. "an hundred." French text, "M."
- p. 77, l. 2336. "þat so on þe fenne," &c.; that was so covered with mud. On *by-gan* see note to l. 1329.
- p. 77, l. 2342. "alre most;" most of all. *Alre* is the genitive pl. of the adjective, which we find under the various forms, *alre*, *aller*, *alder*, *aldre*, *alther*. See numerous examples in Stratmann and Halliwell. *Aldre* occurs in the present poem at l. 2541, p. 83.
- p. 78, l. 2376. "to 3er." French text, *jusque à viii. ans*.
- p. 78, l. 2377. "vj. mylen." French text, *iv lieues*.
- p. 79, l. 2392. "an hundred pound." French text, *une grant caretée*.
- p. 79, l. 2399. "myster;" craft, skill; l. 2425, "maystries."
- p. 79, l. 2413. "attendeþ;" lights. French text:—  
 "Une chandelle a prinse, au fu l'a alumée."  
 "þat he of þe holi gost so ure heorte utende." *An Early Eng. Miscellany*, ed. Morris, p. 52. A.S. *ontendan*.
- p. 79, l. 2421. "druwerye;" sweetheart, betrothed. In *Arthour and Merlin*, p. 312, the Virgin is styled "Cristes drurie." O.French, *drurie*, *druerie*, love, passion, from *drut*, a lover; O.H. Ger. *trút*, Ger. *traut*, dear. See *Rime of Sir Thopas*, 2085. "þe 3ute;" compare our expression, *all the while*, and see l. 2140.
- p. 80, l. 2429. "whit as wales bone;" that is, as white as ivory (the bone or tooth of the walrus). So in *Sir Eglamour*, ed. Halliwell, 801,—  
 "A man-chylde had Crystyabelle,  
 As whyte as whallys boon,"
- The expression is not uncommon in the old poets; thus in the *Squyr of Love Degre*, l. 537, we find—  
 "Lady, as whyte as whales bone,  
 There are thyrtý agaynst me one;"
- Compare also *Love's Labour Lost*, v. 2:—  
 "This is the flower that smiles on every one,  
 To show his teeth as white as whales bone."

See also the description of the house in *Early Eng. Miscellanies*, ed. Halliwell, from the Porkington MS. (Warton Club, 1855), p. 4, l. 8, where we are told that—

“The towres shal be of every  
Clene corven by and by,  
The dore of whallus bone.”

p. 81, l. 2475. “wan þe soune hure schon.” See note to l. 433.

p. 81, l. 2483. “lyues man.” See above, l. 2191.

p. 82, l. 2524. “clynge & drie;” pine away through thirst. So in *P. Plowman*, B. xiv. 50: “whan þou clomsest for colde, or *clynge*st for drye;” and *Metrical Homilies*, ed. Small, p. 88:—

“For pal and *clungen* was his chek,  
His skin was *klungen* to þe bane.”

Hampole, in describing the signs of man’s approaching death, says—

“His pouce es stille, with-outen styrynges,  
His fete waxes calde, his bely *clynge*s.”

*Pricke of Conscience*, 822.

Shakspere, *Macbeth*, v. 5, 40, has “Till famine *cling* thee,” i. e. pine, shrivel thee up.

p. 83, l. 2534. “maumerye.” From the false idea that the Mahometans were idolaters—a belief very general in the middle ages—arose the O.French *mahommet*, an idol; *mahumerie*, idolatry, or an idolatrous temple, as here. Chaucer, *Persones Tale* (De Avaritia), says:—“an idolastre peraventure ne hath not but o *maumet* or two, and the avaricious man hath many; for certes, every florein in his coffre is his *maumet*.” See *Mawmet* in Wedgwood’s Etymological Dictionary.

p. 83, l. 2538. “Sir Ternagan,” &c. French text:—

“Là estoit Tervagans, et Apolins levés,  
Et Margos, et Jupins, et des autres assés.”

p. 83, l. 2541. “aldre.” See above, l. 2342.

p. 83, l. 2543. “y-poudred;” interspersed. “A garment *poudered* with purple studdes.” Hollyband’s *Dict.* 1593.

p. 83, l. 2558. “þat god schold ben on apayd;” that God should be pleased with.

p. 84, l. 2603. “our purchase for to make.” Fr. *pourchasser*, to hunt after, chase; thence, to catch, seize, rob; thence, to obtain generally; and finally, to acquire in exchange for money. In old writers the word had the meaning of acquiring in any way, whether by force or not. We see it in its transition state in Shakspere, *Henry V*, iii. 2:—“They will steal anything and call it *purchase*.” Spenser uses the word in its original sense, *Faery Queene*, I. iii. 16:—

“On his backe a heavy load he bare  
Of nightly stelths, and pillage severall,  
Which he had got abroad by *purchase* criminall.”

p. 84, l. 2614. The cuirass called *broigne*. The word occurs in documents of the time of Charlemagne. The Anglo-Saxons termed it *byrne* and *byrnan*; the Normans *broigne*. Thus the *Roman de Garin*:—

“L’escu li perce, s’a la *broigne* faussée.”



Again :—

“ En son dos vest une broigne trestice.”

In *Le Roman de Ron* :—

“ Des haubers et des broignes mainte male faussée.”

And the *Roman de Roncevaux* :—

“ La veist-on tante broigne saffrée.”

From Meyrick's *Antient Armour*, 1824.

The *Brynne* was of *mail*, as appears from *King Horn*, 2740 :—“ Of his brinie ringes mo.”

“ And caste a brinie up-on his rig.”

*Havelok*, ed. Skeat, 177.

- p. 85, l. 2623. “ her schal leue ; ” shall remain here. So in *P. Plowman*, A. iii. 190 : “ þer I lafte wiþ my lord,” and *Gesta Romanorum*, ed. Herrtage, p. 401, “ he lefte still alone in the kyrke.”
- p. 85, l. 2629. “ our on ; ” one of us. Compare “ hure boþen,” l. 677, and the note.
- p. 86, l. 2647. “ latoun.” A kind of mixed metal, resembling brass both in nature and colour. We find it used for helmets (*Rime of Sir Thopas*, 2067) ; sepulchral monuments (*Way in Prompt.*) ; spoons (Nares, *Glossary*) ; lavers (*P. Plowman's Crede*, 196), &c.
- p. 86, l. 2648. “ blas ; ” blast. So in the *Ancren Riwele*, p. 82, we have “ þes deofles bles,” and in *An Early English Miscellany* (E. E. T. S., ed. Morris), p. 93 : “ winde**s** bles.”
- p. 86, l. 2654. “ boþe bok & bil.” French text, “ les flans et les costés.” Here the meaning appears to be, “ back & front.”
- p. 87, l. 2684. “ forsake he þys myster ; ” let him give up this profession (of a soldier).
- p. 87, l. 2692. “ xxiiij of faire somers.” Fench text, “ ix soumiers.”
- p. 87, l. 2695. “ capouns.” French text, “ boins paons lardés.”
- p. 87, l. 2706. “ xxx. pousant.” French text, “ plus de xx<sup>m</sup>. armés.”
- p. 88, l. 2719. “ þat art.” The change of person is curious.
- p. 88, l. 2728. “ dartes y-feþered wiþ bras.” Compare l. 966.
- p. 89, l. 2752. “ wel-a-Fyn ; ” well, perfectly, to good purpose. Compare Tusser, *Five Hundred Points* (E. Dial. Soc., 1878), p. 210, l. 5.
- p. 89, l. 2753. “ þou syngest an ydel songe.” French text, “ pour noient regretés.”
- p. 89, l. 2762. “ Hete ; ” time.
- p. 89, l. 2770. “ an aker lengþe.” See note to l. 971. French text, “ plus d'une grant ruée.” Compare l. 3040.
- p. 90, l. 2782. “ agon ys al myn hiȝt ; ” all my promised pleasure.
- p. 90, l. 2784. “ Hit ne may beo no consail ; ” there can be no concealment about it.
- p. 90, l. 2792. “ þe pridde day.” French text, “ Je rendrai ceste tour ains demains l'ajournée.”
- p. 90, l. 2804. “ to-morwe or niȝt þat þe cok hym graide ; ” before the cock crows to-morrow night. French text, “ demain ains l'avesprée.” “ *Avesprer*. To drawe towards evening to growe neare night.” Cotgrave.



- p. 90, l. 2808. "þat we ete ;" since we have eaten.
- p. 91, l. 2822. "teynt." French text, "il est estains et pailles."
- p. 91, l. 2832. "Hit is twel month and more apaste." French text, "plus de v. mois." From this line and ll. 304-5 it would appear that Charlemagne's stay in Spain extended over four years, but the *Song of Roland* states that he was in Spain seven years,<sup>1</sup> while in *Otuel* this is still further increased to twenty-seven years.<sup>2</sup> See *Otinel, Chanson de Geste*, ed. MM. Guessard and Michelant, pp. vi, vii, and Gaston Paris, *Histoire Poétique*, p. 268.
- p. 91, l. 2829. "he is myn vncler riȝt." French text adds :—  
"Et fils d'une des filles au duc Millon d'Aingler."
- p. 91, l. 2830. "Cosyn . . Germain." "*Germanus*, de eodem germine vel eadem genetrice manantes."—Dulange. "*Germain*. Germaine: come of the same stock, bred of the same kind, neare of kinne, of all-one race." Cotgrave. "For certis ye ne han no child but a doughter, ne ye han no brethere ne *cosines* *germains*." Chaucer, *Tale of Melibeus*.
- p. 91, l. 2834. "mored ;" rooted, fixed. A.S. *more*, a root, which occurs in *P. Plowman*, C. xvii. 250 ; xviii. 21 ; xxii. 340. See *Legends of the Holy Rood*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Morris, p. 28.
- p. 92, l. 2854. And yet we are not told that he had been freed from the bonds with which he had been "harde & uaste y-bounde."
- p. 92, l. 2860. "dede hym kulle." We cannot take *kulle* here literally, but as meaning "tried to kill." Caxton's reading is—"they al to-bete hym in suche wyse that he knewe not where he was."
- p. 92, l. 2872. "wyþ-oute any where ;" without any doubt.
- p. 93, l. 2919. "amounty ;" amount to, signify.
- p. 94, l. 2946. "euene him selue ;" equally with himself. So in *P. Plowman*, B. xvii. 134 :—  
"I hote þat þow louye  
Thyn euene crystene euermore, euene forth with þi-self."
- and Chaucer, *Knightes Tale*, 2235 : "emforth (= even forth) my might." See also *King Solomon's Book of Wisdom*, E. E. T. Soc., ed. Furnivall, p. 83, l. 33.
- p. 95, l. 2963. "blessede ;" made the sign of the cross. See l. 256.
- p. 95, l. 2969. "douce France." The Editor of the Roxburghe Club edition of the *Sowdone of Babyloyn* makes a curious suggestion arising from the epithet here applied to France. After remarking on the fact that *sixteen*, if not more, are enumerated as amongst the "douzepairs," he says :—"a reference to l. 170 will show that the epithet *dowse* is applied to France : it may, therefore, have been given to the twelve peers, much in the sense of gentle in the English word gentleman, *homo gentilis*." Introduction, p. vi.
- p. 95, l. 2976. "polte." So in *Robert of Gloucester*, 479, 7, "Hii pulte hem vorþ bivore þe oþere," and in *Lazamon*, I. 321, l. 7527 :—"And Nemnius pulte vp his scelde."

<sup>1</sup> "Set anz plains que en espaigne venimes :

Jo vos cunquis e Noples e Commibles,

Pris ai Valterne e la terre de Pine

E Balasgued e Tuele e Sezillie."—ed. Michel, p. 8, st. xiv.

<sup>2</sup> And so in *Gui de Bourgogne*, l. 59 :—

"Il a .xxvii. anz qu'en Espaigne venismes."

- p. 96, l. 2986. "Hur brede was y-bake." Compare l. 577.
- p. 96, l. 3019. "loude & stille." One of those proverbial phrases, with the meaning of "in every way, at all times," which so frequently occur in the old poets. Compare "oft and lome;" "hard & neychs" (l. 5187); "high and low;" "fer and hende;" "ál and some;" "late and rathe;" &c.
- p. 96, l. 3020. "schille;" shrilly, loudly. Not a mistake for *schrille*, as might be thought, but the true form of the word, from A.S. *scyll*. It occurs not infrequently; see, for instance, *William of Palerne*, ll. 37, 213; *Sir Eglamour*, 300, &c.
- p. 96, l. 3021. "our men." The pronoun here comes in curiously, this being the only instance in which the author identifies himself with either side.
- p. 97, l. 3037. "be-vapid." This may either be the same word as *by-fraped*, l. 2987, or, as Prof. Skeat suggests, it may = *be-wappid*, thoroughly *whopped* or beaten. See Halliwell, *s. v.* Wap. Halliwell also gives "Waped, stupified (A.S.)," but I cannot find the word in Stratmann, though Bosworth has "*Wapian*, to waver, to be astonished."
- p. 97, l. 3039. "hymme." Sic in MS. We should doubtless read *hymen*, the mark of contraction being misplaced.
- p. 97, l. 3040. "More þan a boȝe-draȝte;" French text, "plus d'un arpent de tere," which we have literally translated in ll. 971 and 2770.
- p. 97, l. 3053. "Roland." In the French text "Guy."
- p. 98, l. 3061. "ounþank habbe þat spare;" shame to him who keeps back, spares himself. French text, "dehait ait cui en caut."
- p. 98, l. 3063—3175. An addition of the English translator.
- p. 98, l. 3072. "is takynge þanne aboȝte;" suffered for having captured him (Guy).
- p. 98, l. 3083. "in þy donger." French text, "en vo dangier." Here we have the original meaning of *danger*, i. e. jurisdiction, the power which a feudal lord possessed over his vassals. "Dawnger: *domigerum, regnum.*" *Cath. Anglicum*. Chaucer says of the Sompnour,—

"In *daunger* hadde he at his owne gise  
The ȝonge gurlis of the diocise."—Prol. C. T. 663.

See further illustrations in my note to the word in the *Catholicon Anglicum*.

- p. 99, l. 3126. "duden hem for to gone;" set themselves to get away.
- p. 99, l. 3131. "y-vewdid;" voided, cleared. "*Vuider*. To void, evacuate, emptie," &c. Cotgrave. The original prose *Fierabras* reads "qilz vuiderent la place," and Caxton, "made them to voyde the place."
- p. 100, l. 3136. "Two & þyrtȝ grete somers." French text, "xv soumiers."
- p. 100, l. 3155. "iornee;" a day's work.
- p. 100, l. 3157. "monþes three." French text, "Enfresi c'à .ii. mois n'aront mais povreté."
- p. 101, l. 3170. "Barbygan;" rampart. "Barbican by-fore a castelle. *Antemurale.*" *Prompt. Parv.* See Dr. Weymouth's note *s. v.* in Glossary to the *Castel off Loue*.
- p. 101, l. 3170. "þy castel of tre." French text, *beffroi*. In the *Cath. Anglicum* we have "A Barsepay (Barfray); *fustibulum*," on which see my note.

- p. 101, l. 3184. "of al france pay bereþ þat flour." French text, "La flors i est de Franche, tout le plus alosé."
- p. 101, l. 3190. French text—  
 "I. viellart, i. cenu de moult grant cruanté,  
 Qui plus de .M. hommes mordris et estranlés.  
 En la forest d'Ardane, où il a conversé."
- p. 101, l. 3194. "chel;" perhaps for *chol*, jaw. The French text has *cief*.
- p. 102, l. 3202. "By oure;" on what is ours they live. French text, "Et vivent tout du nostre."
- p. 102, l. 3222. "heþenene." A relic of the old genitive plural ending in *-ene*: so in *P. Plowman* we have *kingenen*, of kings.
- p. 102, l. 3227. In the French text the engineer is named Mahon.
- p. 102, l. 3228. "Foule verde with þe tour;" it fared ill with those in the tower.
- p. 102, l. 3233. "armedem in syker wede." French text:—  
 "Cascune avoit vestu .i. hauberc fremillon,  
 Et lacié en son cief .i. vert elme réom."
- p. 103, l. 3263. "boþes of brake." Bows with a rack or winch, cross-bows of the largest size and strongest tension.  
 "With alblastis also [thai] atlet to shote,  
 With big bowes of brake byrkit full hard."  
*Troy Book*, ed. Panton and Donaldson, 5728.
- See the meaning of the term fully discussed in Prof. Skeat's note on *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 293:—  
 "Setteth bowes of brake, and brasene gones."
- A *gunne* was a machine for casting stones, a catapult.
- p. 103, l. 3267. "wilde fyr;" a combustible mixture, otherwise termed Greek fire. In *Richard Cœur de Lion*, 2463, we read of a vessel laden "with wylde fyr and other vytayle;" and at l. 5229, of the besiegers of a castle blowing "wylde fyr in trumpes of gynne." "Wylde Fyrr. *Spartus: ignis Pelasgus, vel ignis Grecus*." Prompt. Parv., on which see Mr. Way's note.
- p. 104, ll. 3280, 3281. Notice the different genders of the pronouns, *he*, *hit*.
- p. 104, l. 3282. "schaly;" to peel off, drop off like scales.
- p. 104, l. 3286. Soon it will be our lot (it will betide) to be burnt to ashes.
- p. 104, l. 3289. "Melk of þe camele," &c. Caxton in his *Mirroure of the world*, pt. II. cap. 21, speaking of "grekyssh fyre," says that "it can not be quenched with water, but with *ayssel*, *vryne*, or with sonde only. The Sarasyns selle this water right dere and derrer than they doo good wyne."
- p. 104, l. 3295. "þy doþter dede." So we find "suster sone; moder half," &c. See Introduction, and l. 3448.
- p. 105, l. 3310. "Springold;" or springal, an ancient military engine for hurling stones, arrows, &c.

"And sum þai went to þe wal

With bowes and with *springal*."—*Beres of Hamtoun*, p. 159.

A deed of Edward II, dated 1325, in Rymer's *Fœdera*, mentions "*Springaldos, balistas, arcus, sagittas, ingenia, et alias hujusmodi armaturas pro munitione*

*castrorum et villarum.*" See Meyrick's *Antient Armour*. Cotgrave gives "*Espringalle*. An ancient engin of warre, whereon stones, pieces of iron, and great arrowes were shot at the wals of a beleagured Towne, and the defenders thereof: (now out of use.)"

p. 105, l. 3323. "y wot riȝt wel to wisse." See note to l. 120

p. 105, l. 3324. "wold." So in *Sir Perceval*, ed. Halliwell, 2006—

"The geant stode in his holde,  
That *had* those londis in *wolde*."

p. 106, l. 3345. Here in the French text Balan begins to curse Mahomet and all his gods, but is rebuked by Sortybrant. In the *Sowdone* Balan seizes the image of Mahoun and smashes it, whereat all the priests and bishops fall on their knees and cry—"Mahoun thyn ore," which the editor has curiously explained as "thy golden image!"

p. 106, l. 3352. "be-trend;" involved. See note to l. 4006 below.

p. 106, l. 3377. "launce ne kepede he non;" he cared for no lance, did not care to take a lance with him.

p. 107, l. 3385. "for arsoun;" the fore saddle-bow. Each saddle had two *arsouns*, one in front and one behind. "*Arçon*, a saddle-bow," Cotgrave. See Halliwell, *s. v.* Arson.

p. 107, l. 3389. "i-broched;" spitted, transfixed.

p. 109, l. 3448. "ys syster sone." The sign of the genitive case is frequently omitted before words beginning with a sibilant.

p. 109, l. 3450. "& þan lest he ys blys;" and then loseth he all his pleasure.

p. 109, l. 3475. "þanne hymen bad þe duk Gyoun," &c. In the French text Guy offers of his own accord to go, but Floripas will not hear of his doing so.

p. 110, l. 3481. "y am sumdel stryken in age." French text—"je suis de grant aé."

p. 110, l. 3499. "at nessche & hard;" lit. in soft and hard. A proverbial phrase meaning "in every way, in every point." See note to l. 3019.

p. 110, l. 3511. "þe beste red ys þat y can;" the best plan which I know is, &c.

p. 112, l. 3555. "vilentyne." French text, "*Oisiaus et volatisses*." See the Glossary.

p. 113, l. 3600. "By a fer contraye;" by a great distance, a long way.

p. 114, l. 3625. "was noȝt so ferred ys fon;" had not got so far from his foes. See also l. 5565 below.

p. 115, l. 3657. "brochyng;" spurring. So in *Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock, l. 918: "*Brochez* the baye stede, & to the buske rydez," and *Langtoft*, p. 277: "Ther stedes *broched* thei fast." "*Brocher un cheval des esperons*. To spurre him, to strike him with the spurres; also to spurre him hard, almost to sticke him with spurring," Cotgrave.

p. 115, l. 3659. "Of quente entaille was is stede," &c. French text:—

"Sor .i. destrier d'Arabe, qui plus cort que levrierz,  
Couvert d'un rice paille, menu est entailliez . . .  
L'un costé avoit plus blanc que n'est flors en pré,  
Et l'autre avoit plus roge que charbon alumé,  
Le keue paonace, le bu en haut levé."

Plus menu que pietris est li cevaus gietés,  
 La cuisse grosse et corte, les piés plas et coupés.  
 Et ot droite l'esquine et les crins acesmés,  
 Petites oreilletes, maigre chief, ample nés.  
 Moult ot largue le pis, les ex et vairs et clers ;  
 Tout estoit comme pie par devant vaironnés.  
 La sele fu d'ivoire dont il fu enselés,  
 Et de .iiij. fors chaingles fu li cevaus chainglés ;  
 Li estrier furent d'or, rices fu li poitrés ;  
 .C. campanetes d'or i pendent de tous lés.  
 Quant li cevans galope, ki tant est abrievés,  
 Li sons de campanetes est tans dous et soués,  
 N'i vaut lai ne vielle .ii. deniers monnéés.  
 Li paiens l'esperonne par andeus les costés,  
 Et li destriers li saut .xxx. piés mesurés,  
 Et vait ensi bruiant comme foudre et oré."

- p. 115, l. 3667. "ket;" this word seems here to mean "quickly, furiously." It is a word of rare occurrence, but is found twice in *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, ll. 330, 3793, where we also find the adverb *ketli*, *ketly*, ll. 1986, 2105, and 3023. See Professor Skeat's note in the Glossary *s. v.* where he suggests that possibly it may be another form of the O.E. *skeet*, O.N. *skjótt*, sharp, quick, in the same way as we find the two forms, *moulder* and *smoulder*; *knap* and *snap*, &c. The word occurs also in *P. Plowman*, A. xi. 56, where the meaning seems to be *acute*, *sharp*.
- p. 115, l. 3686. "for a þousend pound of golde." French text, "pour .xiiij. cités."
- p. 116, l. 3693. "grope to þat garse;" felt the wound (*gash*). "A garse: *scara vel scaria*. To garse, *scarificare*," *Cathol. Anglicum*. Palsgrave has "Garsshe in wode or in a knife, *boche*," and Huloet, "Garse or cutte, *incisura*." "A garse or gash, *incisura*." *Manip. Vocab*.
- p. 116, l. 3699. "entamy;" make any effect on. French text reads "enpirier," which Cotgrave renders by "impaire, imbase, or make worse."
- p. 116, l. 3704. "In to þe feld it fleȝ." French text:—  
 "Le cief li a trencié près du bu, rés à rés ;  
 Plus d'une longe toise en est avant salés."
- p. 116, l. 3708. "þat comeþ after gon;" a curious expression, where the *gon* appears superfluous.
- p. 116, l. 3713. "morel;" properly a dark-coloured horse. See *Towneley Mysteries*, p. 9. French text reads, *Bauçant*. "*Morée*, a kind of murrey, or dark-red colour. *Cheval moreau*, a black horse," Cotgrave.
- p. 116, l. 3721. "ouer-towart:" athwart, across. French text, *en travers*.
- p. 117, l. 3735. "Fyfty stedes." French text, *xiiij*.
- p. 118, l. 3763. "wot to wys." See note to l. 120.
- p. 118, l. 3765. "For ȝe hyre," &c. Probably we should read—"For ȝe schal hyre," &c.
- p. 119, l. 3804. "Me nyste nowar ys pere;" nowhere was his equal known.
- p. 119, l. 3820. "ryȝd[t]." Compare l. 956.
- p. 119, l. 3825. "snel;" sharp, careful.

“Teche hem alle to be war and *snel*,  
That they conne sey þe wordes wel.”

*Mirc's Instructions for Parish Priests*, ed. Peacock, p. 4, l. 121.

- p. 120, l. 3835. “Hym schel beo betre han y-leued;” it will be better for him to have left it (not done so).  
 p. 120, l. 3851. “Messenger.” French text, “drugemans,” a dragoman, which Cotgrave gives as “*Drugement*, a Trucheman, or Interpreter.”  
 p. 121, l. 3863. “As foul þat fleþ on þe lift;” in the air, aloft.  
 p. 121, l. 3875. “pautener.” See note to l. 859.  
 p. 121, l. 3876. “He sent þe so to saye.” See note to l. 1808.  
 p. 121, l. 3878. “& ys by-stole awaye.” The only other instance of this word of which I am aware is in *Lazamon's Brut*, 28,422; “and *bistal* from þan filhte.”  
 p. 121, l. 3886. “tyȝd.” See l. 1817.  
 p. 121, l. 3888. “A skuntede als a bore;” he foamed like a wild boar. In the prose *Fierabras* the reading is—“il commenca à escumer come sil fust vng senglier eschauffe,” which Caxton translates—“he began to scumme at the mouthe lyke a bore enchaffed.” “*Escumer*, to foame,” Cotgrave.  
 p. 122, l. 3893. “orn;” ran. A.S. *rinnan*, *irnan*, *eornan*. *Orn* occurs in the *Ancren Riwele*, p. 188, and in *Lazamon* we have such forms as *irnen*, *urnen*, *eornen*. See also *P. Plowman*, C. xix. 165, and *Stratmann*, s. v. *Rinnan*.  
 p. 124, l. 3956. “wyt ase melkys fom.” Compare *Sir Degrevant*, l. 1386: “whyȝth as the seeys fame.” The French text reads, “fu blans comme nois.” See also l. 5879, below.  
 p. 124, l. 3968. “thro;” sharp, swift; “hur peinis were so þroo.” *Sir Triamour*, l. 405, and *William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, 3264; “wiþ þre M. of men þat þro were to fiȝt.”  
 p. 124, l. 3984. “Er he a-liȝte adoun.” French text, “il estoit descendus son ceval recengler.”  
 p. 125, l. 3987. “sterrede.” See before, l. 3923.  
 p. 125, l. 4006. “betrende;” to wind round, involve him. See Chaucer, *Troilus and Cresseide*, 4080, and l. 3352 above, which are the only other instances of the word of which I am aware, although the simple verb *trende* is not so rare.  
 p. 125, l. 4015. “fayne y wolde þe croune of — ȝelde.” French text:—  
 “Je vous rent la couronne dont je suis couronnés;  
Jamais jour de ma vie n'en tenrai l'ireté.”  
 p. 126, l. 4031. “þe Ameral haueþ y-gadred,” &c. French text:—  
 “De toute paienime a ses barons mandés.”  
 Gwenelon here, in the French text, makes the speech which is afterwards, ll. 4163 to 4186, attributed in the English version to Hautefulle.  
 p. 127, l. 4075. “Malkare.” French text, “Macaires.”  
 p. 128, l. 4109. “lond ne rente.” French text:—“n'ot de terre .i. arpent.”  
 p. 128, l. 4119. “rybaud.” French text, “glous.”  
 p. 129, l. 4146. “ȝour summe;” some of you. Compare l. 677.  
 p. 129, l. 4157. “þe amendes a profrede him,” &c. French text:—  
 “Au duc Renier de Genes a son gage donné.”



- p. 130, l. 4176. "An ten 3er ate leste." French text, "seul .xx. ans."  
 p. 130, l. 4187. "enchanted so;" persuaded, deceived. Literally translated from the French text:—

"Là ont li trāitour Karlemaine encanté."

"*Enchanter*; to charme, inchant, bewitch; bleare the eyes, deceive the understanding," Cotgrave.

- p. 132, l. 4241. "Raol Mountferant." French text, "Raoul le Ferrant."  
 p. 133, l. 4291. "on hymen ylong;" through them, by their help. The phrase is still common, though now become vulgar: "it is all along of you," *i. e.* "it is all through you." Chaucer uses it—

"I can not tell *wheron it was along*,

But wel I wot gret strif is us among," C. T. 16398.

- p. 134, l. 4327. "Cyuytle grant;" great Seville.  
 p. 135, l. 4338. "Hit were noȝt worþ a slo." So in *Havelok*, ed. Skeat, 2051: "Of hem ne 3eue ich nouht a slo." Compare ll. 4930, 4975, 5442, below.  
 p. 135, l. 4357. "at my paye;" to please me, to my mind.  
 p. 136, l. 4371. "sarplers;" sacks, packing-cases. "*Sarpilliére*, a sarpiar: a peece of canvas, cloth, or other stuffe to wrap or packe up wares in," Cotgrave. The French text reads—"Es sarpeillieres lient toursiaus d'erbe fenée."  
 p. 136, l. 4385. "Raol of Mans." French, "Raoul d'Amiens." Compare l. 4423.  
 p. 136, l. 4393. "tyd þe haue." The change of pronoun is curious.  
 p. 137, l. 4405. "terme of al hur age;" in all their life-time.  
 p. 137, l. 4423. "Muche maugre mote he han," &c. See note to l. 3061. French text—"Se bien ne m'i combat, recréans sui prouvés."  
 p. 137, l. 4435. Compare *Bevis of Hamtoun*, p. 91:

"His berd was bothe gret and rowe,

A space of a fot betwene is browe."

- p. 138, l. 4437. "ys nose cammus;" flat-nosed. So Chaucer says of the Miller, "Round was his face and *camois* was his nose." *Reeve's Tale*, l. 14, and again, l. 54, he describes the Miller's daughter as having "*camoys* nose, and eyghen gray as glas." Cotgrave gives: "*Camus*, flat-nosed. *Camuser*, to flatten, or quash down the nose, to breake the bridge of the nose, to make flat-nosed."  
 p. 138, l. 4463. "clopes of tarse," a species of silken stuff formerly much esteemed.

"In *toges of Tarsse* fulle richelye attyrede."—*Morte Arthure*, 3189.

This cloth was said to derive its name from *Tharsia* adjoining Cathay (China), whence it came. Ducange explains *Tarsicus* as "*panni preciosioris species*." See *P. Plowman*, B. xv. 163, and Professor Skeat's note thereon.

- p. 139, l. 4465. "god won;" good plenty. Cf. l. 3560.  
 p. 141, l. 4539. "non hoȝe;" no fear, alarm. *Hozheful* occurs in the *Ormulum*, 2902, and *hohfulle* in *Lazamon*, 14096. A.S. *hoga*. "be-toȝe;" dressed, covered.  
 p. 141, l. 4553. "stilp of ok;" a post of oak, *stub*. See Halliwell, *s. v.* *Stolpe*. The French text has—"un marbre encontré, Autresi le caupa comme un baston alé."



The Rev. Barton Lodge, in the Introduction to his edition of *Palladius* (E. E. T. Soc.), p. ix, says—"In the Corporation Rolls, preserved amongst the Colchester Records, we find that in the 3rd and 4th Richard II, a sufficient piece of land was granted to place three *stulps* to support a certain vine opposite the house of one Clement, a dyer in North Street; and 'in 4th and 5th Edward II, Hugh de Stowe raised two *stulps* under his vine opposite his tenement in Chero.'"

- p. 142, l. 4588. "a rank;" in a rush, with a charge.  
 p. 144, l. 4649. "Muche was þe noise & þat cry," &c. French text—"Moult par fu grans la noise et li hus et li cris;" great was the *hue and cry*.  
 p. 144, l. 4652. "Enfachoun." French text, "Effraons."  
 p. 145, l. 4663. "Had ykept hem wiþ busynesse;" had nursed them carefully. French text, "les avoit bien nourris."  
 p. 145, l. 4664. "Algate." A distinctively Northern adverb. See Introduction.  
 p. 145, l. 4668. "barers;" the bar, gate, barrier. Notice the other form of the word in l. 4679:

"The folk that assalþeand wer  
 At mary ȝet, to-hewyn had  
 The *barras*, and a fyre had maid."

*Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, xvii. 756.

- p. 145, l. 4678. "tilde;" reached. A.S. *teldan*, "*telded* on lofte," *Alliterative Poems*, ed. Morris, 2. 1342. Compare l. 59.  
 p. 146, l. 4707. "to done." The gerundial infinitive: see Introduction.  
 p. 146, l. 4721. "Ho-so þis day," &c. French text:—  
     "Honis soit li frans hom qui vient au couarder."  
 p. 147, l. 4751. "wyþ-oute distaunce;" without fighting. "A Distance, *Distancia*, & cetera: vbi Debate," *Cathol. Anglicum*; on which see my note.  
 p. 147, l. 4753. "Godes for-bode;" may there be God's prohibition.  
     "ix. tymes *Goddis forbott*, thou wikkyde worme,  
     Thet ever thou make any rystynge."

A charm for the tooth-ache, from the Thornton MS.  
 printed in *Reliq. Antiq.* I. 126.

In the Percy Folio MS., ed. Furnivall and Hales, *Robin Hood*, &c., p. 18, l. 59, vol. I. we read—"Now, Marry, *gods forbott*," said the Sheriffe, 'that euer that shold bee.'" The expression also occurs twice in Stafford's *Examination of Abuses*, 1581, New Shakspeare Soc., ed. Furnivall, p. 73, where it is spelt "*God sworbote*."

- p. 150, l. 4846. "& monaye whyt & blake." French text:—

"Fin or et blanc argent et pailles de coulour."

"*Monnoye blanche*, brasse or copper coin silvered over. *Monnoye noire*, brasse, copper, or iron coine, unsilvered," Cotgrave.

- p. 151, l. 4856. "molde;" the suture of the skull. See l. 4567, above.  
 p. 151, l. 4862. "for a somers charge of golde;" for a horse-load of money. "A charge; *Onus*," *Cath. Anglicum*.  
 p. 151, l. 4869. "After þe ȝer þat our lord was bore," &c. This line is an addition of the English translator. See the remarks in the Introduction, where it is shown that the date is almost exactly 200 years late, 980, instead of 775.

- p. 153, l. 4930. "noȝt worþ a flye." French text, "ne valés une alie."
- p. 154, l. 4974. "& we be-leue with-ynne;" and we remain, within. Chaucer uses *bileue* in the same sense, *Squire's Tale*, 583; see other examples in *Stratmann*, and compare ll. 1595 and 2623 above.
- p. 154, l. 4975. "ȝyue a stre;" give, care a straw for. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xvii. 93, and Chaucer, C. T., F Group, l. 695.
- p. 154, l. 4983. "saut;" assault. So we have *pele* for *appele*.
- p. 155, l. 4993. "pykoys & howes;" pickaxes and hooks. The modern *pick-axe* is simply a tautological corruption of the French *picois*, a mattock, pickaxe. In the *Paston Letters*, ed. Gairdner, l. 106, we find *pikoys* as here used as a plural, and so in the *Handlyng Synne*, ll. 940-1:
- "Mattok is a *pykeys*  
Or a pyke, as sum men seys."
- "*Forsorium*, a byll or a pykeys," *Medulla Grammaticæ*.
- p. 156, l. 5030. "hure haberkes ritte;" split, cut. So in *Sir Tristram*, p. 33:—
- "The breche adoun he threst  
He ritt, and gan to right:"
- and in *Havelok*, l. 2495:—
- "Sket cam a ladde with a knif,  
And bigan rith at þe to  
For to ritte, and for to flo."
- See l. 5339, below.
- p. 157, l. 5057. "Wel two C." French text, "M."
- p. 157, l. 5077. "cloþ of tarse." See note to l. 4463, above.
- p. 158, l. 5087. "Certys y dude gret folye," &c. French text adds:
- "Fols est ki fame croit, on l'a dit grant pieça."
- p. 158, l. 5092. "lyme & lyp;" limb and body. Compare the common expression, "body and bones."
- p. 159, l. 5127. "Wyt þat þe selue;" blame thyself for that.
- p. 159, l. 5133. "breke him heued & arm." French text, "brisastes son nés."
- p. 160, l. 5174. "Of cowardyse ous moȝe arette;" may accuse us of, or attribute to us, cowardice. So in Chaucer, *Knight's Tale*, 1871:—
- "It nas aretted him no vyleinye,  
Ther may no man clepe it no cowardye.
- "to Aritte. *Ascribere, deputare, imputare*," *Cath. Anglicum*, on which see my note. Wyclif also uses the word in 2 *Corinth*. v. 19, "not retting to hem her giltis."
- p. 160, l. 5177. "syȝt on my bok;" lit. sits on my back, *i. e.* remains with me.
- p. 161, l. 5185. "þat ys herte ne by-gan to cacche;" that did not pluck up courage. French text:—
- "N'i a celui d'aus tous n'ait vertu recouvrée,"
- p. 162, l. 5221. "a carful iornee;" a sad day's work, a hard time.
- p. 162, l. 5240. "Ay tweyne aȝen hem one;" quite two against their one.
- p. 163, l. 5265. "for-þan;" for this reason, because. The expression occurs in *Lazamon*, l. 989, and in the *Castel off Loue*, ed. Weymouth, l. 1072: "And he scholde neuer die for þon."
- p. 163, l. 5278. "þan al þat god y owe;" than all the goods, wealth I own.

- p. 164, l. 5301. "perschede." See l. 941, and note thereon.
- p. 164, l. 5313. "felaschip;" companion. The French text has:—  
 "Onques n'i vot mener ne per ne compaignon."  
 See note in *Cath. Anglicum*, s.v. Felischippe.
- p. 165, l. 5335. "make þy fyn;" pay the penalty, make amends.
- p. 165, l. 5339. "A clew ys heued," &c.; he scratched (*clawed*) his head and tore his hood. For *riȝte* see l. 5030, above.
- p. 165, l. 5341. "& prounced," &c.; and stamped about, and puffed and blew, as if he were mad.
- p. 165, l. 5342. "or was after longe;" lit. before it was long time after, *i. e.* for a long time.
- p. 166, l. 5353. "Bruyllant, þat was kyng of Mountmyrrant." In the French text no name is given to the Saracen slain by Gwenylon: Bruyllant, who is called Balan's brother, comes on the scene at l. 5417, below. It appears to be an oversight of the translator.
- p. 166, l. 5366. "a propre siȝte." The word *proper* is still used in this very phrase with the meaning of *worth seeing*, fine, but it has descended to the level of a slang term.
- p. 168, l. 5425. "spillyng of speche;" great telling of news, great talk. French text, "grant ioie."
- p. 168, l. 5437. "on hure hepe;" in their gathering, army.
- p. 168, l. 5442. "þe value of a kerse;" the value of a rush (cross). This very expression is still kept up: men say a thing is not "worth a curse," but the true meaning of the last word is quite forgotten. *P. Plowman*, C. xii. 14: "*Nat worth a carse.*" Compare ll. 124: "he douteþ he kyng ne Emperour, þe value of a rysshe;" and ll. 4338, "noȝt worþ a slo;" 5722, "þe worthy of a pere;" and 5847, "y nolde ȝyue a pyse."
- p. 168, l. 5443. "fyede þar-on;" expressed his disgust at it.
- p. 169, l. 5453. "v. batail;" five divisions. In the French text it is *ten*, the second five being entrusted to Alorys, Macaire, Hardres, Amaugis, and Sausés. "*Bataille*, any squadron, battallion, or part of an army," Cotgrave.
- p. 170, l. 5482. "Euery ȝer to rente;" every year as a tax.
- p. 170, l. 5484. "Blanchard." A common name for a *white* horse.
- p. 171, l. 5520. "prout on pres;" bold in battle. A not uncommon expression in alliterative poems.
- p. 171, l. 5526. Here the author of the English version has most unaccountably omitted no less than 125 lines of his original. This may have arisen from one or other of three causes:—

(1) He may have *intentionally* omitted the lines; or (2) he may have turned over two leaves; or (3) the lines may not have been in the MS. from which he made his translation.

As to (1), I do not think it at all probable that the translator would intentionally have omitted the passage: against such a view the strongest argument is the closeness with which he has throughout the remainder of the poem followed his original.

Neither do I think (2) more probable. When we consider the care with which he has revised his poem we can hardly conceive that he would be satis-

fied with only *one* reading of his original, and it is hardly probable that the same accident should have happened more than once.

We are, therefore, reduced to (3), which is not at all impossible.

As, however, the author may have intentionally omitted the passage I give it here instead of in the text.

' Par Mahomet, dist il, tous serés afolé ;  
Quant passastes Mautrible, musart fustes prové.  
Jamais en douce France ne serés retourné,  
Et anuit perdra Karles du miex de son barné.'  
Richars de Normendie a le Turc escouté,  
Le destrier laisse coure, si a à lui jousté ;  
L'escu li a percié et le hauberc saffré,  
Parmi le gros du pis li mist le fer quarré,  
Si souef l'abat mort qu'il n'a brait ne crié.  
' Outre, dist l'empereres, trop vous estes vantés.'  
Richars de Normendie trait le branc acéré,  
Tost en feri .i. Turc dusque au neu du baudré.  
Francois passent à force le grant val Josué ;  
Jusque au plain d'Aigremore n'i ot regne tiré.  
Là trouverent la force de Balant l'amiré ;  
En sa compaignie furent .xxx. roi couronné,  
Et .c.m. païen, que Persant, que Escler.  
Cil qui viennent fuiant li ont dit et conté  
Que ses freres est mors et la gent c'ot mené.  
Quant l'entent l'amirans, tout a le sanc mué.  
Dont s'ont li estandart li maistre cor sonné.  
L'amirans en apele son neveu Tempesté,  
Sortinbrant de Connibre, son consillier privé :  
' Baron, dist l'amirans, n'i soies oublié ;  
Je vous di et commant, s'entendre me volés,  
Tant me querés Karlon que vous le me trovés ;  
Et se jou ne l'ocis, poi pris ma poetés :  
Moi ne caut se je muir, quant je l'arai tué ?  
Quant Sortinbras l'entent, s'a de pité plouré.

He threatens  
the French.

Richard  
charges at  
and slays  
him.

The French  
force their  
way to the  
valley of  
Aigremont,

where the  
Emir is with  
100,000 men.

Balan la-  
ments over  
the death of  
his brother.

Li amirans cevaue, qui de corage ot fier ;  
Ricement fu armés ser le courant destrier.  
En toute païenime n'ot .i. si boin coursier,  
Si estoit trestous novis com meure de morier.  
Toutes ses armes furent ouvrées à ormier.  
Large ot la forcéure, le cors grant et plénier ;  
Par desus la ventaille fait sa barbe lacier,  
Plus est blanche que noif, quant ciet après fevrier,  
Contreval li pendoit jusque au neu du braier.  
Li amirans commande s'enseigne à despoier,  
Devant les Sarrazins se prent à eslaisier.  
Dont sonnerent ensamble .c. graille menuier.  
A bataille cevaucent et font lor gent rengier ;  
On premier chief devant estoient li arcier,  
Pour les nos desconfire as ars turcois mainier.  
Adonques véissies .i. estour commencer,  
L'un mort par desus l'autre verser et trebucier ;  
Moult i ot grant dolor au traire et au lancier.

Description  
of Balan.

He orders his  
standard to  
be unfurled,

and places  
his archers in  
front.

A fierce  
combat  
ensues.

As ars trucois commencent les nos à damagier ;  
 Plus menu que gresins font sajetes lancier.  
 Atant es vous poignant le preu comte Renier,  
 Celui de Genevois, qui fu pere Olivier.  
 Sortinbran de Conñibre a encontré premier,  
 Grant cop li vait donner, nel vaut plus esparnier,  
 Ses escus ne li vaut ne maille ne denier,  
 La maille a trespasé du blanc hauberc doublier,  
 La lance o le penon li fait on cors baigrier,  
 Des arçons l'abat mort, le cuvert losengier.  
 Quant Sortinbrans cai, la hante fist brisier,  
 Et Reniers trait l'espée, dont bien se sot aidier  
 Paien et Sarrazin commencent à hucier ;  
 Ki estui atendra moult ara mal loier.  
 .I. Sarrazins s'en torne, l'amirant va noncier  
 Que ' mors est Sortinbras, que tans aviés cier.'  
 Quant l'amirans l'entent, le sens cuide cangier.  
 ' Ha ! dist-il, Sortinbrans, tant vous avoie chier,  
 Quant je vous ai perdu, moult m'en doit anuier ;  
 Jamais ne monra Turs ki tant faice à priser ;  
 De duel erragerai se ne vous puis vengier.'

Renier  
 encounters  
 Sortibrant,

and slays  
 him.

The Sarasins  
 are panic-  
 stricken.

Balan's grief  
 at the death  
 of Sortibrant.

Moult fu pour Sortinbran l'amirans esmaians.  
 Par mautalent s'en torne coureciés et dolens,  
 Le morel laise coure, ki sous lui va bruiant,  
 Sour l'escu de son col fiert Huon de Milant.  
 Trestous est pourfendus, rons est li jaserans ;  
 Le fer li a conduit par ambe .ii. les flans,  
 Mort l'abat du ceval, ce fu damaige grans.  
 Quant la lance brisa, si a trait le nu blanc,  
 Mort a .xv. Francois et .xiii. Normans,  
 Souvent crie: ' Aigremore! vengiés ert Sortinbrans !  
 Or vous ferai connoistre venus est l'amirans :  
 Ancui sera destruius li barnages des Frans,  
 Jamais .i. en sa tere ne sera repairans ;  
 Karlon enmerrai prins par les grenons ferrans ;  
 Avoec lui ert pendus Oliviers et Rollans.'  
 A ce mot enforcierent li paien l'amirant ;  
 De nostre gent destruire est cascuns desirans.

He charges  
 at the French

and slays  
 Huon of  
 Milan,

and 15  
 French and  
 14 Norman  
 soldiers.

The Saracens  
 rally.

Moult fu grant la bataille et li cap e felon.  
 Atant es vous poignant le conte Guenelon,  
 Hardré et Alori, d'Autefoelle Grifon,  
 Et le pere Herviu, Macaire de Lion,  
 Et l'orgueilleus barnage brocant à esperon.  
 A l'abaisier des lances font tel ocision  
 Que plus de mil paien trebuent on sablon.  
 Atant es l'amirant sur le noir aragon ;  
 Amont parmi son heaume ala ferir Milon.  
 Ne li valut li cercles vaillant .i. augueton ;  
 Tout l'eüst pourfendu enfresi c'au menton,  
 Mais l'espée torna, por tant ot garison.  
 Le destrier li copa par devant son archon ;  
 Post trebueca à tere par desus le sablon.

Balan throws  
 Milo from  
 his horse,

Quant il ne l'a ocis ne se prise .i. bouton ;  
 L'amirans le saisi à l'aubere fremillon,  
 A .ii. mains le leva sur l'auferrant gascon ;  
 Ja l'en éust porté jusque à son pavillon,  
 Mais l'orgueilleus lignages li est tous environ.  
 Là ot as brans d'acier si faite caplison,  
 Ja fust li amirans detenus en prison,  
 Mais au secourre vinrent tantost mil Esclavun.  
 Là oïssiés grant noise et grande husion ;  
 Le feu gregois geterent tout ardent à bandon,  
 François menent ferant le trait à .i. boujon.  
 Ja fuissent desconfit sans nule raenchon,  
 Quant Fierabras i vint, qui moult amoit Karlon.  
 Iluec fist de paiens moult grant ocision,  
 Tenpesté a ocis, le neveu Rubion,  
 Et bien plus de .i. du lignage Mahon.  
 Mais de paiens i ot à si très grant fuison,  
 Se Damedieus n'en pense, qui souffri passion,  
 Ancui iront François à grant destruisison.

and tries to  
 carry him off  
 prisoner,  
 but is sur-  
 rounded.

1000 Saracens  
 come to his  
 aid.

The French  
 are almost  
 defeated,

but Ferum-  
 bras comes to  
 the rescue.

La bataille fu grans, longuement ■ duré.  
 Ja fuissent no François moult malement mené,  
 Quant de la tour sont tuit nostre conte avalé.

- p. 172, l. 5532. "A-strayey on þe grene." See l. 3729.
- p. 172, l. 5542. "þe scheldtromes;" battalions, regiments. Halliwell quotes from *Vegecius*, MS. Douce 291, leaf 5:—"How he schal have for knowynge and wys insyzt of all perellis and harmes that litzliche mowe bifalle in scheltromes or batailes." *Sceld-trume* and *sceld-trome* occur in *Lazamon*. See also *Octovian*, Weber's *Metz. Romances*, 1505; *P. Plowman*, C. xxi. 294; and Trevisa's description of the *Battle of Hastings*, "ar the scheltroms come to-gedders." A.S. *scýld-truma*, lit. ■ troop-shield, then an armed company or battalion of soldiers.
- p. 172, l. 5549. "foþer." See before, l. 641, and *Alisaunder*, Weber's *Romances*, 1809.
- p. 173, l. 5565. "afferede hem ozt myche;" got much distance from them. Compare l. 3625, before: "Richard was nozt so ferred ys fon." In the *Ayenbite of Inwyte*, ed. Morris, p. 178, we read—"to cachie and uerri þane dyuel uram him." A.S. *feorrian*.
- p. 173, l. 5579. "also hot;" at once. Compare the phrase *foot-hot*, with all possible speed, in Chaucer, *Man of Lawes Tale*, B. 438, and *fut-hate* in *Barbour's Bruce*, ed. Skeat, iii. 418.
- p. 174, l. 5601. "þe amountance of a fotes spas," &c. The original French is more moderate—"Li amirans fu graindres de Karlon demi pié."
- p. 174, l. 5615. "iambeaus." Armour for the legs, covering them both front and rear: in this particular they differed from the *greaves*, which only protected the shins. "*Jambiere*; a greave, leg-harnesse, or, armour for a leg," Cotgrave.
- p. 175, l. 5627. "cornel;" the circle of gold and precious stones round the helmet. See l. 623, above: "To-flente;" flew in pieces. French text:—  
 "Grant caup donna Karlon sur l'eame qui verdie,  
 Que les flours et les pieres tout contreval en guise."



- p. 175, l. 5630. "athelde;" restrained, kept back. See *Lazamon*, 10,970, 13,825, &c.
- p. 175, l. 5631. "genyllere;" knee-armour. "*Genouilleres*, pully-pieces (armour) for the knees," Cotgrave. "Chauceore;" the same as we have had before, l. 235, called "hosen of mayle." "*Chausseure*, a hosing, or shoeing; also, hosen, or shoes," Cotgrave.
- p. 175, l. 5638. "anlas." French text, "une misericorde," of which Meyrick, *Antient Armour, Glossary*, says—"said to have been so named because with this the knights obliged their antagonists to call for mercy."

"An *anlas* and a gipser al of silk

Heng at his girdel."—Chaucer, *C. T. Prologue*, 357.

- p. 175, l. 5640. "foygnede;" thrust at, tried to stab. So in *Morte Arthure*, l. 1898 :—

"Thare faughtte we in faythe, and *foynede* with sperys."

And Chaucer, *Knights Tale*, 796 :—

"And after that with scharpe speres stronge

They *foynen* ech at other wonder longe."

- p. 175, l. 5648. "Ac arst was mucche ado." French text :—

"Mais il i ot anchois moult grant tenchonnerie."

- p. 176, l. 5665. "Wel heze schalt þou an-honged be." French text :—

"Je te ferai ardoir ens en la poi boulie."

- p. 176, l. 5682. "Al þi song is wailawai." *Owl and Nightingale*, l. 219.

- p. 177, l. 5693. "geryȝoun;" treasure. The word occurs in *Lazamon* in the forms *gersume*, *gersume*, and *garsume*. For other instances see Stratmann.

- p. 177, l. 5694. After this line in the original French come the following :—

"Corsable de Valnuble son ceval trestorna,  
Desi jusque à la mer onques ne s'aresta,  
Au roi de Capadoce les nouveles conta  
Que Karles Aigremore et l'amirant prins a;  
Sacié's moult ert dolens quant il ice sara.  
Plus de .C<sup>m</sup>. Furs pour ice rasambla,  
Sor Guion de Borgoigne à force les mena,  
Sa tere et son país li destruist et gasta.  
Plus de .vii. mois entiers li sieges i dura;  
D'un roit trencant espiel ens ou cors le navra.  
Mais Karles l'emperere, qui Espaigne gasta,  
Quant il revint ariere, fierement li aida."

- p. 177, l. 5716. "wende faste;" moved, twisted himself fast.

- p. 177, l. 5722. "þe worthy of a pere;" the value of a pear. Compare *Richard the Redeles*, ed. Skeat, Prol. 73: "It shulde nat apeire hem a *peere*," and *Morte Arthure*, Globe edit. p. 377.

- p. 177, l. 5724. "y-kened;" conceived. Of this word there are not many instances. It occurs in the Anglo-Saxon Version of St. Matthew, i. 20 :—"þæt on hyre *acenned* was, hyt ys of þam Halgan Gaste:" in the *Ayenbite of Inwyrt*, ed. Morris, p. 12, "he wes *y-kened* of þe holi gost, and y-bore of þe mayde Marie;" and again, p. 263; and in *Lazamon*, 26,128.

- p. 178, l. 5725. "Wyp-oute wem & wyp-onte hore;" without spot or stain. *Hore* may perhaps mean adultery, as Halliwell explains it; probably it does



in the present instance, where the French text reads—"En la sainte Virge puciele s'aombra." Halliwell quotes from a MS. of Caius Coll. Camb. 107:—

"Syth the tyme that Cryst Ihesu  
Thorough hys grace and vertu,  
Was in this world bore  
Of a mayd withowt hore."

- p. 178, l. 5730. "hyne;" servants, followers. Compare *P. Plowman*, Prol. 39—"Qui turpiloquium loquitur, is luciferes hyne."
- p. 178, l. 5747. "Contenance made he," &c. Compare *P. Plowman*, C. xvi. 121: "A contenance he made, And preynte vpon pacience."
- p. 178, l. 5753. "cracchede." French text, *ecraca*. "*Escraser*, to squash downe, beat flat, crush in pieces with much pressing, or hard leaning on," Cotgrave.
- p. 179, l. 5761. "colour;" pretext, means. "*Colour*, a fayned matter," Palsgrave.
- p. 179, l. 5763. "þanne spak Florippe," &c. In the Provençal version Floripas joins Ferumbras in begging Charles to spare her father's life and in entreating Balan to consent to be baptised. In the *Sowdone* there is no mention of either of them interfering either for or against their father.
- p. 179, l. 5772. "on what londe þat he lende;" in whatever country he might settle.
- p. 180, l. 5809. "sysst;" seest. A form invented *metri gratia*. *Syxt* occurs in Wright's *Popular Treatises on Science*, p. 134, and in the *Castel of Loue*, l. 8.
- p. 180, l. 5815. "& bot if he þanne wold take fullozt." French text:—"Et se il ne puet estre à ceste fois matés."
- p. 180, l. 5819. "þat man." French text adds, "Ce est .i. vis diables."
- p. 180, l. 5821. "3e aboute goes;" you are labouring in vain, lit. going in a circle.
- p. 181, l. 5827. "wyp wilde hors;" with savage horses. *Hors* is here plural, as shown by the form of the adjective.
- p. 181, p. 5835. "skeer;" safe, free from. So in Wright's *Religious Songs*, iv. 78: "of blisse 3e beop *skere*."
- p. 181, l. 5840. "nozt worþ a flye." This expression has occurred before, see l. 4930. It also occurs in Chaucer, *Canons Yeomans Tale*, l. 1150: "Or some what else, was *nat worth a flye*." Compare l. 437. French text:—"Ja ne vaut Mahomet .ii. deniers monnés."
- p. 181, l. 5845. "þat was on a croys y-don." The usual expression for "crucified" in early writers. For examples see *Gesta Romanorum*, ed. Herriage, p. 179: "þey did him vpon the crosse, and spette on his face;" Myrc's *Instructions to Parish Priests*, p. 14, l. 437; Lonelich's *Holy Grail*, ed. Furnivall, xlix. 313, &c. "To do on crosse; *Crucifigere*," *Cathol. Anglicum*.
- p. 181, l. 5847. "y nolde 3yue a pyse;" I would not give a pea. *Pyse* or *pese* is a perfectly correct singular form (Latin *pisum*): the plurals *pesen*, *peses*, are frequently met with: see, for instance, *P. Plowman*, C. ix. 307: "of benes and of *peses*." A similar expression to that in the present line occurs in *P. Plowman*, C. ix. 166, "sette peers *at a pese*," accounted Piers at the value of a pea; i. e. set him at naught. See note to l. 5442.

- p. 181, l. 5849. "on my lyue." Here we have the Northern adverb *on-lyue*, alive, during life. See Introduction.
- p. 181, l. 5857. "for no pray;" for no entreaty.
- p. 182, l. 5877. "anentes þilke neode;" with respect to this necessary condition, *i. e.* of his giving his assent.
- p. 182, l. 5879. "þe melkis fom." We have already had this expression at l. 3956.

p. 182, l. 5881. "ezene graye," &c. In the French text, l. 2014, Floripas is described as having "les ex vairs et rians plus d'un faucon mué," while in the *Destruction of Rome*, l. 256, we read—"Les ves avoit plus *noirs* que falcon montenier." So Chaucer (?) writes, "His eyen graie as is a faucon," where the original French is *vers. Romaunt of the Rose*, 546. In *Sir Eglamour*, l. 861, we read of "eyen grey as crystalle stone," from which Malone, in his *Shakspeare*, iv. 118, edit. of 1821, conjectured that the term meant what we now call a *blue* eye. Thus in *Venus and Adonis*, l. 482, we have—

"Her two *blue* windows faintly she upheaveth,"

while at l. 140 the eyes of Venus are said to be "*grey* and bright." In the present instance there can be no doubt as to the colour intended. "*Oeil verd*, a grey eye." Cotgrave, "browes bent." See note to l. 4435, "*3ealwe* traces;" fair tresses. So Chaucer, *Knight's Tale*, 191:—

"Hire *3elwe* heer was browded in a *tresse*."

"y-trent;" perhaps plaited or curled.

p. 182, l. 5882. "Ech her;" each (every) part of them, *i. e.* of her tresses.

p. 182, l. 5883. "tretys;" slender and long. Cotgrave has: "*Traictif*, nez *traictif*. A pretty long nose, a nose of a graceful length. *Traictis*, *isse*, whence *Traictisses mains*; long and slender hands." "iantail," "*Gentil*, comely, sightly, pretty, neat, well-fashioned, goodly, faire," Cotgrave. "pure *fetys*;" perfectly well-proportioned, elegant. "*Faictis*, *isse*, neat, feat, comely, handsome, proper, well-made, well-featured, well set together," Cotgrave.

## G L O S S A R Y.

*Pr. (or pt.) s. = present (or past) tense, 3 pers. sing.*

*Pr. (or pt.) pl. = present (or past) tense, 3 pers. pl.*

*References starred are to the "original draught."*

A, 47/1282, *adj.* one.

A, 101/3180, *adj.* all.

A, 134/4307, *prep.* on.

A, *passim.* pron. he.

AAN, 24/594, *adv.* on.

ABATAYLD, 134/4310, *pp.* embattled, fortified.

ABETTE, 180/5816, *vb.* aid, assist.

ABIEST, 169/5474, 2 *pr.* as *fut. s.* shalt suffer for, shalt pay for.

ABIGGET, 41/1063, *vb.* pay, suffer for it.

ABODE, 67/1985, *pt. pl.* delivered, told.

ABOW<sup>3</sup>, 107/3390. ABO<sup>3</sup>EDE, 69/2070, *pt. s.* leant, stooped. ABO<sup>3</sup>E, 95/2972, *pp.*

ABO<sup>3</sup>T, 19/488, *pp.* bought, paid for.

ABO<sup>3</sup>TE, 98/3072, *pt. pl.* paid, made a return for. *See* ABYE.

ABUDE, 63/1833, *vb.* deliver, tell. ABUST, 63/1844, 2 *pr. s.* A.S. *abeodan.*

ABULD, 3/74, *pp.* built, constructed.

A-BYE, 4/107, *vb.* pay for, suffer for.

AC, 2/49, *conj.* but.

ACORDED, 130/4158, *pt. pl.* became reconciled. "To Acorde; *vbi* to make frende." *Cath. Anglicum.*

ACOUPEDE, 56/1594, *pt. pl.* struck, encountered.

ACQUITE, 30/713, *vb.* repay, requite.

A-FERE, 13/387, *vb.* frighten, terrify.

AFFEREST, 30/722, 2 *pr. s.*

AFFERREDE, 173/5565, *pt. pl.* distanced. AFFERROM, 58/1674, *adv.* from afar, far off.

AFFIED, 32/756, *pt. s.* relied, trusted. Fr. *affier.*

AFFORN, 41/1080, *prep.* before.

AFFROUNT, 59/1689, *adv.* face to face, in line.

AFFULLED, 105/3335, *pp.* killed, felled.

AFONGE, 46/1237, *vb.* receive, meet with.

AFRI<sup>3</sup>TE, 5/138, *pp.* frightened, afraid.

AFTERWART, 6/63, *adv.* after this, afterwards.

A-GAN, 76/2305, *pt.* gone, past.

AGASTE, 107/3410, *pp.* frightened.

AGRISE, 106/3370, AGRYSE, 54/1541, *vb.* be frightened. A.S. *agrisan.*

A-KELE, 139/4492, *vb.* be cooled. "To Kele; *frigidare, et cetera*; *vbi* to make calde." *Cath. Anglicum.*

AKER, 89/2770, *sb.* acre.

ALACCHE, 99/3098, *vb.* catch.

ALDRE, 180/5802, *adj.* of all. *Hure aldre syzte*, the sight of them all.

ALED, 175/5653, *pp.* put down, prevented. A.S. *alegan.*

ALI<sup>3</sup>T, 55/1548, *pt. pl.* alighted, dismounted.

ALI<sup>3</sup>TE, 46/1261, *vb.* light.

ALLE AND SOME, 54/1513, one and all, all.

- ALLER-FERST, 180/5793, *adv.* first of all.  
 ALMYS, 64/1897, *sb.* alms, deed of charity.  
 AL-ONE, 7/50, *adj.* alone, singly, by himself.  
 ALOUTE, 128/4089, *vb.* bow, give place.  
 \*ALRE, 13/381, *adj.* of all. ALRE MOST, 77/2342, most of all. *See also* ALLER, and ALDRE.  
 ALS, 18/474, *conj.* as. *Als so harde* = as hard.  
 ALYES, 127/4078, *sb. pl.* associates, friends.  
 AMAIEDE, 50/1377, *pp.* afraid, dismayed.  
 AMBLERE, 11/344, *sb.* amble, trot.  
 AMENDES, 54/1525, *sb.* reparation, amends. *See Note*  
 AMENDIE, 65/1917, *vb.* make satisfaction.  
 AMERAUNT, 21/532, *sb.* amiral, emir.  
 AMONGE, 7/209, *adv.* at times; *ofte amonge*, constantly.  
 AMORWE, 78/2369, *adv.* in the morning.  
 AMOUNTANCE, 174/5601, *sb.* amount, length.  
 AMOUNTY, 93/2919, *vb.* mean, amount to.  
 ANAN, 4/106, *adv.* at once, soon.  
 ANBETTYMENT, 78/2364, *sb.* abetting, helping.  
 ANBUSCHYMEN, 34/812, *sb.* ambush, ambuscade.  
 AND, 7/200, *conj.* if.  
 ANDRESSEDE, 130/4155, *pt. s.* set, placed himself.  
 ANDURIE, 102/3217, *vb.* endure, resist.  
 ANENTES, 182/5877, *prep.* concerning.  
 ANGER, 102/3208, *sb.* trouble, misfortune.  
 ANGRYDE, 89/2766, *pt. pl.* harassed.  
 ANGWISCHOUSE, 82/2500, *adj.* full of anguish, greatly grieved.  
 ANGWYS, 41/1080, *sb.* anguish, pain.  
 ANHEZE, 46/1240, *adv.* in haste, speedily.  
 ANLAS, 175/5638, *sb.* a kind of knife or dagger, usually worn at the girdle.  
 ANONEWARD, 23/622, *prep.* upon, along. *See also* AUNDWARD.  
 ANPEYNEDEM, 27/665, *pt. s.* exerted himself. ANPEYNY, 94/2947, *imper.*  
 ANUYE, 106/3352, *sb.* annoyance, grief.  
 ANUYLT, 48/1308, *sb.* anvil. A.S. *anfilt*.  
 A-NYED, 12/364, *pp.* harassed, troubled.  
 APAID, 9/271, *adj.* pleased, satisfied.  
 APERCEUEDE, 31/739, *pt. s.* perceived. Fr. *apercevoir*.  
 APERTELY, 106/3359, *adv.* plainly, openly.  
 APLYT, 27/644. APLYT, 50/1393, *adv.* indeed, certainly.  
 APON, 21/546. OPPON, 22/554, *prep.* upon, on, over.  
 AQUEYNT, 104/3288, *pp.* extinguished.  
 ARANK, 142/4588, *adv.* in a line.  
 ARAS, 2/46, *pt. s.* arose.  
 ARAUNDOUN, 34/824, *adv.* at full speed.  
 ARAUTE, 25/606, *pt. pl.* aimed, struck. A.S. *raecan*.  
 ARAWE, 143/4605, *adv.* in a row, in a line.  
 ARAY, 7/212, *sb.* condition, state.  
 ARBELASTE, 101/3174, *sb.* cross-bows.  
 ARECHE, 35/854, *vb.* reach, touch.  
 AREDE, 20/508, *vb.* guess, tell, judge.  
 ARERE, 93/2896, *vb.* rear, raise, erect.  
 ARERD, 7/210, *pt. s.*  
 A-RESTE, 132/4242, *vb.* stop, halt.  
 ARETTE, 160/5174, *vb.* accuse, impute. "To Aritte; *ascribere, imputare*." *Cuth. Anglicum*.  
 ARETE, 56/1597, *pt. s.* struck. *See* ARAUT.  
 ARSOUN, 107/3385, *sb.* saddle bow.  
 ARST, 28/675, *adv.* at first, before.  
 ARSMES, 94/2933, *interj.* to arms. Fr. *aux armes*.  
 A-SAYE, 51/1425, *vb.* try, endeavour.  
 ASCAPE, 146/4713, *vb.* escape.  
 ASCRIEDE, 30/720, *pt. s.* called to.  
 ASLAZE, 3/84, *pp.* slain.  
 ASOTID, 67/2007, *adj.* mad, besotted. "Assoté, *sotted, besotted*," *Cotgrave*.  
 A-SPYE, 68/2032, *vb.* enquire.  
 ASPYE, 154/4966, *sb.* spy.  
 ASSEEGE, 106/3348, *sb.* siege, attack.

- A-STAUICHE, 44/1179, *vb. imp.* restrain, moderate.
- ASTERUE, 97/3058, *vb.* perish, die. A.S. *asteorfan*.
- ASTOZE, 95/2971, *pt.* ascended, mounted. A.S. *astigan*.
- A-STREYEP, 117/3729, *adv.* A-STREYEP, 172/5532, *astray*, wild.
- A-STYNT, 63/1842, *vb.* stop, cease.
- ASTYJE, 157/5056, *pt.* climbed, scaled. See ASTOZE.
- ATEND, 104/3280, *pt.* set alight.
- ATENED, 4/114, *pt.* annoyed, vexed.
- ATEYNTE, 113/3612, *pt.* exhausted. The corresponding French word in this passage is *estancier*. "*Estainct*, extinguished . . . spent, lost, utterly perished," Cotgrave. See also TEYNT.
- ATTACHE, 140/4517, *vb.* 1 *pr. s.* arrest.
- ATTES, 36/881, at his.
- ATTEYNT, 11/333, *pp.* vanquished. See ATEYNTE.
- A-TWYNNE, 20/522, *adv.* apart.
- AUNDWARD, 59/1694, *adv.* upon, on top of. See also ANONEWARD.
- AUNTRE, 3/89. AUNTURE, 53/1479, *sb.* danger, risk.
- AUALYNG, 39/984, *sb.* descent, slope.
- AUANTAILE, 26/624, *sb.* See AUENTAILLE.
- \*AUAUNCE, 17/448, *vb.* promote.
- AUAUNTED, 2/42, *pt. s.* praised, puffed.
- AUAUNTWARDE, 153/4919, *sb.* van, front.
- AUELDE, 4/101, *sb.* yield.
- AUENTAILLE, 8/238. The moveable front of the helmet covering the face, through which the wearer respired: used also for the whole of the front of the helmet.
- AVENTURE, 39/1003, *sb.* danger, risk.
- AUONGE, 93/2904, *vb.* receive, take.
- AUOW, 62/1818, *sb.* vow.
- AVOWEDED, 67/1983, *pp.* acknowledged, avowed it.
- AUYNDE, 32/757, 1 *pr. s.* find out, discover.
- AUYSE, 7/195, *vb.* consider, reflect: *he wil him betre auyse*, he will think better of it, be more careful.
- AWE, 179/5779, *sb.* worship, respect. O.Icel. *agi*.
- AWOK, 43/1135, recovered, come to his senses.
- AWREKE, 49/1362, *vb.* avenge.
- AYCHS, 162/5248, *sb.* ash-tree.
- AYE, 15/408, *sb.* awe; *stondeþ aye*=stand in awe of. See Note. See AWE.
- AYPER, 145/4659, *pron.* each, either; *hur ayper*, each of them.
- AXETH, 43/1124, *pr. s.* enquires, asks.
- AJE, 27/647. AJEN, 4/100. AJY, 30/724, *adv.* again, against.
- BAD, 123/3947, *pt. s.* begged, asked; *bad a bone*, made a prayer.
- BAILE, 45/1211, *sb.* confinement, prison.
- BAKOUNS, 87/2696, *sb. pl.* pigs, hogs.
- BALAUNSYNG, 103/3243, *sb.* throwing of darts, &c.
- BALE, 36/903, *sb.* captivity.
- BAME, 20/511, *sb.* balm. Fr. *baume*; Lat. *balsamum*.
- BANE, 3/86, *sb.* ruin, destruction.
- BANNE, 168/5424, *vb.* summon together.
- BAR, 17/448, *pt. s.* bore, carried.
- BAR OF, 23/572, *pt. s.* warded off.
- BARERS, 145/4668. BARRERS, 145/4688.
- BARRES, 145/4679, *sb. pl.* barriers, rampart. "A Barras. *Antemurale, vallum.*" Cath. *Anglicum*.
- BARNAGE, 106/3364, *sb.* nobles, barons.
- BARNEE, 50/1373, *sb.* children, men.
- BARNYE, 100/3160. BARONYE, 2/48, *sb.* barons.
- BA-SCLawe, 6/179, *pt.* for *be a-sclawe*, be slain.
- BATAIL, 169/5453, *sb.* battalions, divisions.
- BATEDEDE, 32/749, *pt. s.* abated.
- BAYLYE, 135/4333, *sb.* orders, command.
- BE-BLED, 50/1380, *pt.* covered with blood.
- BEDE, 59/1709, *pt.* bidden, ordered.
- BEER, 3/64, *pt. s.* bore, carried away.
- BEHETE, 50/1402, *pt. s.* promised.
- BELAY, 5/134, *pt. s.* besieged, beset.
- BELEUE, 106/3345, *vb.* to leave off, desist from. A.S. *bilæfan*.

- BE-LEUE, 154/4974, 1 *pr. pl.* remain, are left.
- BE-LEUED, 120/3849, *pt.* neglected, left undone.
- BELAYN, 34/805, *pp.* beset, surrounded. *See also* BELAY.
- BELYFF, 51/1437, *pr. s.* believes.
- BEMENE, 116/3724, *vb.* lament, bemoan. A.S. *bimēnan*.
- BE-NOME, 175/5642, *pp.* taken, deprived.
- \*BEO, 22/548, *pp.* been.
- BEODE, 62/1825, *pt. pl.* delivered, told. A.S. *brodan*.
- BERD, 23/571, *sb.* beard, chin.
- BERE, 45/1201, *sb.* cry, lamentation. "Who makis sich a bere." *Townley Myst.* 109.
- BERST, 99/3109, *pr. 2 s.* bearest, be-havest.
- BESPEKEN, 110/3509, *pr. pl.* consult, talk over. "je habbeþ a-mong 3u bispeke þat ilome."—*Martyrdom of Thomas Beket*, ed. Black, 919.
- BESTADE, 90/2800, *pt.* seized, overcome.
- BE-STERTE, 146/4716, *pp.* beset (?).
- BE-SWYKE, 130/4164, *vb.* deceive. A.S. *biswican*.
- BET, 34/830, *adv.* better, faster.
- BETAKE, 33/763, *sb.* hand over to, give up.
- BETAUȝTE, 76/2316, *pt. s.* commended him to.
- BE-TOȝE, 141/4539, *pp.* strongly clad.
- BE-TRAPPEDE, 117/3731, *pt. pl.* surrounded, beset.
- BETRENDE, 125/4006, *vb.* surround, encircle.
- BETREUȝEDE, 70/2105, *pt. s.* betrothed, pledged himself to.
- BE-VAPID, 97/3037, *pp.* thoroughly beaten. *See Note.*
- BEYNE, 27/661, *pron.* both. *See Note.*
- BIL, 86/2654, *sb.* front. *Bok and bil*, back and front.
- BILEUE, 34/829, *sb.* belief, faith.
- BI-TID, 28/679, *pt. s.* befell, happened.
- BITOK, 157/5075, *pt. s.* gave, committed. *See also* BETAKE and BYTOK.
- BLAN, 57/1626, *pt. s.* stopped, halted.
- BLAS, 86/2648, *sb.* sound, blast.
- BLEE, 49/1360, *sb.* countenance, colour. A.S. *bleo*.
- BLENCH, 122/3914, *sb.* turn aside. A.S. *blencan*.
- BLEREST, 20/507, 2 *pr. s.* blindest, to blear one's eye, to deceive him. *See Note.*
- BLESSED, 8/256, *pt. s.* blessed, signed with the cross.
- BLEYNTE, 35/838, *pt. s.* turned, inclined. *See* BLENCH.
- \*BLIF, 91/2837. BLYF, 39/1002. BLYUE, 70/2087, *adv.* at once, quickly.
- BOBAUNCE, 13/383, *sb.* boasting.
- BOK, 86/2654, *sb.* back.
- BON, 25/617, *sb.* bone. A.S. *bān*.
- BONE, 84/2583, *sb.* prayer.
- BOR, 21/545, *sb.* boar.
- BORGEYS, 16/444, *sb.* burgess, citizen.
- BORWGH, 61/1767, *sb.* town.
- BOSSCHE, 93/2887, *sb.* bush, wood.
- BOT, 24/589, *pt. s.* bit, cut.
- BOT IF, 10/318, unless, except.
- BOTE, 14/401, *sb.* message.
- BOUN, 124/3986, *adj.* bound.
- BOURE, 49/1336, *sb.* chamber.
- BOȝ, 61/1761, *pt. s.* stooped, bent.
- BOȝE-DRAȝTE, 97/3040, *sb.* bow-shot.
- BOȝE-SCHOT, 3/90, *sb.* bow-shot.
- BOȝTEST, 43/1153, 2 *pt. s.* didst redeem, buy.
- BRAID, 70/2099, *pt. s.* started up.
- BRAIDE, 99/3122, *sb.* rush, sally. *See also* BRAYDE.
- BRAKE, 103/3263, *sb.* boȝes of brake, cross-bows. *See Note.*
- \*BRAND, 23/580, *sb.* sword. *See* BROND.
- BRAYDE, 28/684, *sb.* charge, rush, moment, of time; 68/2008, sudden fate.
- BRED, 4/103, *sb.* bread.
- BREDE, 59/1688, *sb.* breadth.
- BREGGURDEL, 80/2448, *sb.* middle, waist; *lit.* the waist-band; "Brygyrdyll. *Lumbare, renale.*" *Prompt. Parv.*
- BREN, 154/4962, *vb. impr.* burn.
- BRENNYNG, 47/1263, *adj.* burning. BREN-NYNGEST, 74/2236.



- BRENT, 12/371, *pp.* burnt.  
 BRESTE, 30/719, *vb.* burst out.  
 BRIGGEWARD, 59/1700, *sb.* keeper of the bridge; 112/35, watch on the bridge.  
 BROCHYNG, 115/3657, *pr. p.* spurring.  
 BROD, 123/3941, *adj.* broad, wide.  
 BROKE, 110/3484, *vb.* enjoy, possess. A.S. *brukan*.  
 BROND, 29/684, *sb.* sword.  
 BRONDE, 74/2236, *sb.* brand.  
 BRUSSCHET, 34/800, *sb.* thicket, under-wood. "*Brusc.* Butchers-broome, Pettigree, knee-holme, knee-hulver (a shrub)." Cotgrave.  
 BRUST-BON, 57/1623, *sb.* breast-bone.  
 BRUSTES, 41/1072, *sb. pl.* breast, chest.  
 BRYMLY, 21/545, *adv.* fiercely.  
 BRYNNE, 85/2614, 96/3024, *sb.* cuirass. See Note.  
 BRYTASQES, 105/3315, *sb. pl.* battlements. "*Bretesque*, a port, or portall of defence, in the rampire, or wall of a towne." Cotgrave.  
 BUCHYMENT, 34/798, *sb.* ambush.  
 BUDEþ, 46/1235, *pr. s.* offers.  
 BULDE, 78/2377, *vb.* build, erect.  
 BURDE, 70/2095, *sb.* maiden.  
 BUSKY, 170/5500, *vb.* get ready, prepare.  
 BUTE, 122/3895, *pt. pl.* beat.  
 BUþE, 4/100, *pr. pl.* are.  
 BYDYNG, 126/4026, *sb.* delay, remaining here.  
 BY-GO, 68/2013. BYGONE, 77/2342, *pp.* ruined, deceived.  
 BY-GON, 108/3429, *pp.* overrun, covered.  
 BY-GYNT, 24/602, *pr. s.* begins.  
 BY-LAFTE, 56/1595, *pt. pl.* remained, were left.  
 BY-LEYN, 139/4483, *pt.* besieged, beset.  
 BYLOKE, 71/2127, *vb.* look after, take care of.  
 BY-NYME, 179/5773, *vb.* take away, deprive.  
 BY-NYþE, 56/1607, *prep.* below, under.  
 BY-STOLE, 121/3878, *pt.* stolen, escaped.  
 BYTOK, 178/5748, *pt. s.* commended, wished himself with. BYTOKE, 108/3413, entrusted, gave in charge.  
 CACCHE, 161/5185, *vb.* take up, recover.  
 CALT, 59/1699, *pr. s.* call.  
 CAMMUS, 138/4437, *adj.* flat. "*Resimus.* That hath a camoyse nose crooked upwarde." Cooper, *Thesaurus*, 1584. See Note.  
 CAN, 110/3511, *pr. 1 s.* know.  
 CARE, 32/743, *pt. s.* cut.  
 CARFUL, 42/1115, *adj.* full of care, troubled.  
 CAS, 28/679, *sb.* chance.  
 CAST, 49/1368, *sb.* meaning, intention.  
 CAST, 59/1710, *pp.* determined, settled.  
 CATEL, 178/5745, *sb.* property, goods.  
 CAȚE, 95/2982, *pt. pl.* caught, captured.  
 CERKE, 80/2449, *sb.* shift, chemise. A.S. *serce, syrce*.  
 CHAFFAR, 139/4467, *sb.* merchandise, goods.  
 CHALANGIE, 98/3062, *vb.* claim, seize. "To Chalenge; *vendicare*." *Cath. Anglicum*.  
 CHAMBERERE, 46/1238, *sb.* maid, attendant.  
 CHASTE, 67/1993, *vb. impr.* chastise punish.  
 CHAUCEORE, 175/5631, *sb.* hose of mail.  
 CHECKE, 25/615, *sb.* cheek.  
 CHEKBON, 175/5650, *sb.* jawbone cheek-bone.  
 CHEL, 101/3194, *sb.* throat. A.S. *ceole*; O.Dutch, *kele*.  
 CHERE, 11/346, *sb.* face; hence eyes.  
 \*CHILLE, 14/389, for *ich wille* = I will.  
 CHILUELARIE, 2/46, *sb.* knights.  
 CHYKE, 25/615, *sb.* cheek.  
 CHYKE, 135/4331, *sb.* chick, bird.  
 CHYMENAY, 74/2232, *sb.* fire-place. See Note.  
 CHYNE, 7/212, *vb.* gape, open. A.S. *cēnan*.  
 CLEPEDE, 7/216. CLYPEDE, 5/142, *pt. s.* called. A.S. *cleopian*.  
 CLEW, 165/5339, *pt. s.* tore, clawed.  
 CLOS, 156/5023, *sb.* enclosure.  
 CLOUE, 6/179, *pt.* cut down.  
 CLOUT, 37/906, *sb.* piece of cloth.



- CLOUTE, 171/5507, *vb.* strike, knock about.
- CLOWE, 17/463, *vb.* ? cut away, ward off.
- CLYNGE, 82/2524, *vb.* pine away. A.S. *clingan.*
- CLYPEDE, 32/752, *pt. s.* called. A.S. *cleopian.*
- CLYUE, 65/1901, *vb.* cling.
- COLBLAK, 34/807, *adj.* coal-black.
- COLOUR, 179/5761, *sb.* excuse, argument.
- CONSAIL, 90/2784, *sb.* concealment.
- CONSAILER, 69/2052, *sb.* councillor.
- CONSELYNGGE, 61/1790, *pr. p.* in council, consulting.
- COPLES, 48/1328, *sb. pl.* beams, joists.
- CORAIOUS, 15/414, *adj.* courageous, brave.
- CORNEL, 175/5627, *sb.* circlet of gold round a helmet.
- CORS, 18/473, *sb.* course; *cors of werre* = a warlike charge.
- CORS, 10/303, *sb.* course.
- CORTEYST, 48/1298, *adj.* most courteous.
- CORTOYSE, 67/1974, *adj.* gentle.
- COSNEDE, 58/1683, *pt. s.* cost.
- COST, 55/1552, *sb.* country, region. Compare "they prayed him that he would depart out of their coasts." Matt. viii. 34.
- COSTREL, 29/510, *sb.* a small wooden bottle. "A Costrelle; *oneferum, et cetera; ubi a flakett.*" *Cath. Anglicum.*
- COTE-ARMURE, 22/552, *sb.* an upper garment worn over the armour, and generally ornamented with armorial bearings.
- COUNDYE, 166/5375, *vb.* conduct, guide.
- COUPES, 76/2297, *sb. pl.* cups.
- COUTHE, 79/2403, *pt. s.* knew, understood.
- COUYNE, 46/1227, *sb.* design, conspiracy.
- COWART, 24/593, *sb.* cowardly fellow.
- COYE, 76/2286, *adj.* quiet, still. "Coy. Quiet, still, husht." Cotgrave.
- COYGNAGE, 170/5481, *sb.* coinage.
- COYPHE, 36/898, *sb.* skull-cap.
- CRACCHEDE, 178/5753, *pt. s.* smashed, broke.
- CRAFT, 163/5253, *sb.* apparatus, baggage.
- CRAKE, 85/2604, *vb.* crack, break.
- CREAUNCE, 12/358, *sb.* renown, reputation.
- CREAUNT, 21/533, *adj.* recreant.
- CREP, 173/5557, *pt. pl.* passed.
- CRISTENTE, 12/364, *sb.* christendom.
- CROLLID, 49/1354, *adj.* curled, curly. "With lokkes *crulle* as they were leyd in presse." Chaucer, C. T. Prologue 81. Dutch *Krolle*, a curl.
- CROYCEDE, 152/4913, *pt. s.* crossed, blessed, made the sign of the cross.
- CROY3, 13/376, *sb.* cross.
- CURE, 55/1548, *sb.* charge, business.
- CUSSEDE, 70/2112, *pt. pl.* KUSSEDE, 71/2032. CUST, 157/5081, *pt. s.* kissed.
- DADEST, 153/4944, 2 *pt. s.* didst, hast done.
- DALE, 64/1890, *sb.* ?
- DAME, 74/2225, *sb.* draughts. See Note.
- DAWES, 144/4631, *sb. pl.* days.
- DAYE, 33/777, 1 *pr. s.* die. DAYE, 178/5738, *pr. s.* DAIEDE, 94/2928. DAYDE, 84/2581, *pt. s.*
- DEABLET, 142/4569, *sb.* ? devil.
- DEBAT, 106/3348, *sb.* fighting, quarrelling. "Debate; *contentio, &c.*" *Cath. Anglicum.*
- DEDE, 24/595, *sb.* death.
- DEDEYNGNEDE, 11/349, *pt. s.* disdained.
- DEEL, 118/3776, *sb.* lamentation. O.Fr. *doel.* See DUL.
- DEEL, 28/669. DEL, 2/44, *sb.* share, part. A.S. *dæl.*
- DEERE, 79/2395, *vb.* hurt, affect. A.S. *derian.*
- DEKE, 155/5010, *sb.* ditch, moat.
- DELEDE, 150/4849, *pt. s.* divided, shared.
- DELFOPLY, 8/232, *adv.* mournfully.
- DEMEMBRED, 158/5092, *pt.* dismembered, torn limb from limb.
- DEMEYNE, 13/382, *adj.* simple, lowly.
- DENTE, 25/617, *sb.* blow, stroke.
- DENTEE, 83/2545, *sb.* pleasing smell.
- DEPARDIEUX, 98/3061, *exclam.* by God.
- DEPARTEDE, 175/5645, *pt. pl.* separated.

- DERE, 157/5070, *sb.* harm, hurt.  
 DERE, 63/1852, *adj.* dear, precious, 19/488, *adv.*  
 DEREYNE, 9/265, *vb.* challenge, claim. "*Desrener.* To dereine; to justifie or make good." Cotgrave.  
 DERRE, 17/451, 2 *pr. s.* dare.  
 DEUYS, 66/1969, *sb.* plan, suggestion.  
 DIFFYE, 4/106, 1 *pr. s.* defy, challenge.  
 DISCOLOURID, 41/1079, *pp.* without colour.  
 DISCOUMFIT, 89/2773, *sb.* defeat.  
 DISPITOUSLY, 67/1985, *adv.* insolently.  
 DISPIȝTE, 17/457, *sb.* contempt.  
 DISPOILLED, 182/5879, *pt. s.* DISPOILY, 177/5714, *vb.* undress, strip.  
 DISTAUNCE, 65/1913, *sb.* contention, dispute. See *Gesta Romanorum*, Glossary.  
 DISTRYED, 12/365, *pp.* destroyed.  
 DIȝTE, 4/119, *vb.* prepare, dress, 7/214, *pt. s.* A.S. *dihtan*.  
 DO, 7/217, *vb. imp.* cause, see.  
 DOGGEDLICH, 47/1289, *adv.* doughtily, bravely. See DOȝTILICH.  
 DOL, 76/2288, *sb.* part. A.S. *dæl*. See also DEEL and DEL.  
 DOLOUR, 72/2175, *sb.* pain, suffering. Lat. *dolorem*.  
 DONDE, 28/681, *vb.* be done.  
 DOSSERS, 49/1340, *sb. pl.* curtains, hangings. See Prompt. Parv., s. v. Docere.  
 DOTOUSE, 59/1699, *adj.* dangerous.  
 DOUCE, 47/1269, *adj.* sweet, dear.  
 DOUTE, 127/4057, *vb.* fear, be afraid of.  
 DOUTE, 64/1899, *sb.* danger.  
 DOȝTILICH, 15/420, *adv.* doughtily, bravely.  
 DOȝTY, 17/458, *adj.* brave, valiant.  
 DOȝTYERE, 21/531, *comp.* DOȝTYESTE, 52/1448, *Super.* A.S. *dyhtig*.  
 DOȝTYNISSE, 101/3197, *sb.* bravery, daring.  
 DRAPREYE, 138/4457, *sb.* cloth.  
 DRAST, 121/3887, *pt. s.* durst, dared.  
 DRAUȝT, 107/3392, *sb.* lift.  
 DRAUȝTE, 29/703, *sb.* stroke.  
 DRAȝT BRIGE, 66/1952, *sb.* draw-bridge.  
 DRAȝb, 6/192, *pr. s.* draweth.  
 DRECCHHE, 67/1997, *vb.* DRECCHEN, 56/1602, delay. A.S. *dreccan*.  
 DRECCHYNGE, 15/377, *sb.* delay.  
 DRENCH, 50/1386, *sb.* draught, drink.  
 DRIE, 82/2524, *vb.* die of thirst.  
 DRIȝTE, 2/49, *sb.* Lord, God. A.S. *dryhten*.  
 DROGY, 59/1691, *vb.* draw, drag.  
 DROPEDE, 42/1103, *pt. s.* grieved.  
 DROȝ, 16/446, 1 *pt. s.* drew, betook.  
 DRURYMODE, 42/1103, *adv.* drearily, sadly.  
 DRUWERYE, 79/2421, *sb.* sweetheart, lover.  
 DUDEN, 3163, *pt. s.* did, caused; *duden hem sle*, caused them to be slain.  
 DUELLE, 27/648, *sb.* delay, hesitation.  
 DUL, 119/3791, *sb.* DULES, 119/3785, *pl.* lamentation. See DEEL.  
 DULFUL, 45/1201, *adj.* doleful, grievous.  
 DUP, 123/3941, *adj.* DUPE, 46/1257, deep.  
 DUPNISSE, 76/2312, *sb.* depth.  
 DURE, 21/535, *vb.* last against, stand against.  
 DURE, 128/4091, *adj.* dear, precious, 59/1715, *adv.*  
 DURNELY, 136/4373, *adv.* secretly, closely. A.S. *derne, dyrne*.  
 DURYE, 134/4311, *vb.* live.  
 DUSSCHED, 98/3068, *pt. pl.* dashed, knocked. DUST, 35/854, *pt. s.* O.Icel. *dusta*.  
 DWEL, 86/2646, *sb.* delay.  
 DYNGEN, 4/104, *vb.* dash, pound.  
 DYUYS, 58/1663, *sb.* plan, counsel. See also DEUYS.  
 DYUYSID, 58/1672, *pp.* proposed.  
 EEM, 8/261, *sb.* uncle.  
 EER, 3/65, *adv.* before, already.  
 EFT, 34/811, *adv.* again.  
 EFT-SONES, 156/5039, *adv.* again.  
 EGED, 141/4541, *adj.* edged.  
 EGRELICH, 19/496, *adv.* closely, eagerly.  
 ELDE, 110/3497, *sb.* age, years. Origin-

- ally age simply, but afterwards confined to *old* age.
- EMBROUDED, 22/553, *pp.* embroidered, worked over.
- ENBATAILD, 58/1684, *pp.* embattled.
- ENCENZ, 83/2545, *sb.* incense.
- ENCHACEDE, 93/2906, *pt. pl.* drove, hurried. Fr. *enchasser*.
- ENCHANTED, 130/4187, *pp.* persuaded, overcome.
- ENCHES, 104/3302, *sb. pl.* inches.
- ENCOMBRE, 94/2942, *sb.* cause trouble to, harass.
- ENDELONGES, 19/498, *adv.* all along, down.
- ENFORCE, 33/793, *vb.* exert. ENFORCEDE, 33/782, *pt. s.*
- ENIVGIEP, 66/1959, *imper. pl.* judge, sentence.
- ENPAYNEDE, 26/633, *pt. s.* exerted.
- ENPAYREDE, 145/4691, *vb. pt. s.* became weaker, failed.
- ENSERCHE, 42/1093, *vb.* examine, inspect.
- ENSOYNGNE, 91/2827, *sb.* excusing, prevarication.
- ENTAILLE, 31/730, *sb.* ENTAYLLE, 31/745, workmanship, fashion.
- ENTAMY, 116/3699, *vb.* break, cut through.
- ENTEMPRE, 6/164, *vb. imp.* restrain, moderate.
- ENTENDIAP, 111/3517, *pr. pl.* attend, direct their attention.
- ENTERLAS, 28/679. (?)
- ENTERNTE, 84/2590, *pp.* affected, weakened.
- ENTREMETRIE, 22/557, *vb.* interfere.
- ENVY, 4/114, *sb.* insolence.
- ERBER, 61/1773, *sb.* garden, arbour.
- ERE, 155/5004, *adv.* ever.
- ERLICH, 2/46, *adv.* early. A.S. *earlice*.
- ESCHEKKERE, 74/2224, *sb.* chess.
- EUERECHÉ, 5/140, *pron.* each, every one.
- EYMEDE, 31/735, *pt. s.* aimed, endeavoured.
- E3ENE, 37/907, *sb. pl.* eyes.
- FACHOUN, 74/2244, *sb.* sword. See Note.
- FACOUN, 41/1074, *sb.* falcon, hawk.
- FALE, 34/798, *adj.* many, numerous.
- FALE, 63/1845, *sb.* fellow, companion.
- FALSAR3, 38/966, *sb. pl.* hand-bills. See Note.
- FALUREDE, 116/3707, *sb.* company.
- FANDE, 87/2683, *vb.* try.
- FANT, 22/548, *sb.* FANSTON, 42/1083, font.
- FARE, 34/809, *vb.* to go, ride. FARETH, 74/2221, *imper.* A.S. *faran*.
- FASOUN, 41/1075, *sb.* fashion, appearance.
- FAUTEREL, 162/5235, *sb.* villain.
- FAU3T, 86/2657, *pt. s.* FA3T, 21/532, fought.
- FAWE, 43/1150, *adj.* happy, satisfied. FA3E, 10/308, *adv.* A.S. *faegen*.
- FAYN, 66/1951, *adj.* pleased, happy.
- FEE, 10/305, *sb.* reward; 179/5773, property, money paid by vassals: *in fee*, 54/1527, as a vassal.
- FEER, 12/329, *adj.* FERE, 15/414, proud, fierce.
- FEL, 64/1891, *sb.* skin. A.S. *fel*. Lat. *pellem*.
- FELawe, 5/150, *sb.* companion, associate. O.Icel. *felagi*.
- FELDE, 35, 841, *pt. s.* moved, bent.
- FELLE, 16/428, *adj.* daring, fierce.
- FERD, 34/832. FERDE, 3/85, *sb.* company, followers. A.S. *ferd*, *fyrd*. See also FERED, FEREDÉ, and FURDE.
- FERDE, 113/3598, *pt. s.* fared, A.S. *faran*.
- FEREN, 8/258, *sb. pl.* companions. A.S. *gefera*.
- FERETE, 75/2254. FERTEE, 134/4307, *sb.* strength, valour. "*Fiereté*. Fiercesse, boldness, stoutnesse, mettle," &c. Cotgrave.
- FERLICH, 35/842, *adv.* fiercely.
- FERLY, 30/716, *adj.* wonderful, fearful.
- FERMYE, 71/2113, *vb.* confirm, strengthen.
- FERRÉD, 114/3625, *pp.* distanced, far from.

- FETTE, 46/1260, *vb.* fetch, bring.  
 FETYS, 182/5883, *adj.* neat, well-proportioned.  
 FEȚME, 76/2312, *sb.* fathoms.  
 FEYE, 80/2430, *adj.* accursed, cowardly.  
 A.S. *fæge*, which means: (1) doomed, (2) dead, (3) accursed, (4) cowardly. See *Grein*, I. 274.  
 FEYNTYSE, 127/4073, *sb.* cowardice.  
 FIER, 15/409, *adj.* See FEER.  
 FLEAND, 88/2740, *pr. p.* flying. The northern form of the present participle: cf. I. 2736 above.  
 FLECHS, 139/4493. FLEHS, 138/4440, *sb.* flesh.  
 FLEN, 55/1574, *vb.* FLEO, 14/400, *vb.* flee. FLEOYNG, 88/2736, *pr. p.* fly. A.S. *fleon*.  
 FLET, 134/4311, *pr. s.* flows, runs.  
 FLETTE, 35/853, *sb.* ground, the flat.  
 FLEȝ, 31/731, *pt. s.* flew.  
 FLITTE, 156/5028, *vb.* stir, move.  
 FLOUR, 101/3184, *sb.* palm, prize.  
 FLOWEN, 35/855, *pt. pl.* FLOȝEN, 57/1620, *fled*.  
 FLYTE, 137/4420, *vb.* fight, quarrel.  
 FOL, 44/1170, *adv.* full, very.  
 FOL, 22/563, *adj.* foolish. Fr. *fol*.  
 FOLGHEDE, 61/1761, *pt. s.* followed.  
 FOLLOHT, 41/1047, baptism. FOLLOȝT, 14/397, *sb.* A.S. *fulwiht*. See *Reliq. Antiq.* II. 243, and *Lazamon*, 36.  
 FOLȝYEAP, 39/1001, *pr. pl.* follow, pursue.  
 FON, 6/184, *sb. pl.* foes, enemies.  
 FOND, 150/4849, *pt. s.* found.  
 FOND, 11/341, *vb.* venture, try.  
 FONGE, 178/5739, *vb.* receive.  
 FOR, 174/5589, *adj.* fore, front.  
 FORCHURE, 22/551, *sb.* "Fourcheure, f. A forkinesse, or forkednesse; a forke-like division, or cleaving; also that part of the body from whence the thighes doe part; (I thinke wee call it the Twist.)" Cotgrave.  
 FORCHYS, 92/2881, *sb. pl.* FOURCHYS, 95/2970, gallowes. "Fourche, a Forke, Pitch-forke, or Prong; also, a gibbet, or paire of gallowes." Cotgrave.  
 FORCLEUE, 21/543, *vb.* cut through, cleave.  
 FOR-COMYN, 25/617, *pp.* cut to pieces, cut through.  
 FORDRAWE, 62/1796, *vb. subj.* tear in pieces.  
 FORFARE, 12/318, *vb.* perish, be ruined.  
 FOR-GNAȝE, 43/1149, *vb.* devour.  
 FOR-GO, 10/319, *vb.* lose. FORGONE, 84/2584, *pp.*  
 FOR-LETE, 47/1274, *vb.* lose, forego.  
 FORSAKE, 18/483, *vb.* fly from, avoid.  
 FORT, 71/2146, for to, to.  
 FOR-PYNK, 10/319, 2 *pl. pr.* repent, regret.  
 FORW, 116/3720, *sb.* furrow.  
 FOR-WERIEȝ, 90/2809, *pr. pl.* become worn out, exhausted.  
 FORȝ, 174/5593, *sb.* lit. furrow; ground.  
 FOR-ȝYFT, 178/5736, *sb.* forgiveness.  
 FORȝYT, 89/2774, *pt. s.* forgot.  
 FOPER, 26/641, *sb.* a heavy weight.  
 FOYGNED, 175/5640, *pt. s.* thrust at. O.Fr. *foindre*, *foigner*, to feign, make a feint.  
 FOȝT, 43/1127, *pp.* fought.  
 FRAYNE, 40/1035, *sb.* ash. "Fresne, an ash tree," Cotgrave. Lat. *fraxinus*.  
 FRAYNE, 45/1216, *vb.* ask, question. A.S. *frignan*, *pt. t.* *fragn*.  
 FRECHS, 86/2664, *adj.* fresh, new. A.S. *fersc*.  
 FREE, 17/466, *adj.* noble.  
 FREKE, 4/113, *sb.* man. A.S. *freca*.  
 FROME, 42/1104, *sb.* beginning; *atte frome* = at first.  
 FRY, 108/3441, *sb.* noble maiden. A.S. *freo*, *frē*.  
 FUL, 74/2237, *pt. s.* fell.  
 FULD, 107/3390, *pt. s.* folded, clasped.  
 FULDE, 117/3734, *pt. s.* felled, knocked down.  
 FULLAUȝT, 178/5743, *sb.* baptism. See FOLLOHT.  
 FULLY, 177/5697, *vb.* baptise. FULLED, 42/1084, *pp.*  
 FUR, 25/605, *sb.* FYR, fire, sparks.

- FURD, 57/1625, *sb.* ford.
- FURDE, 4/95, *sb.* company, host. See FERED, FEREDÉ and FERDE.
- FURDE, 4/113, *pt. s.* conducted, behaved.
- FUSTE, 65/1901, *sb.* fist. A.S. *fêst*.
- FUURE, 4/101, *num.* four.
- FUYOUN, 138/4457, *sb.* plenty, quantity. Lat. *fusionem* from *funderé*, to pour out.
- FYEDE, 168/5443, *pt. s.* showed contempt.
- FYN, 60/1731, *sb.* payment.
- FYSAGE, 41/1079, *sb.* visage, face.
- GADELYNG, 46/1234, *sb.* vagabond, rascal. A.S. *gædeling*.
- GALE, 64/1889, *sb.* voice.
- GALWETRE, 133/4269, *sb.* gallows.
- GALWYS, 93/2896, *sb.* gallows, gibbet.
- GAN, GUN, *passim*. Used as auxiliaries of tense; thus *gan* to glyde = did glide.
- GAN, 37/910, *pt. s.* GUN, 34/824. GUNNE, 37/938, *pt. pl.* began.
- GARNYMENT, 50/1395, *sb. pl.* dresses, clothes.
- GAS, 67/1975, 71/2145, *pr. s.* goes, walks.
- GAT, 180/5825, *pt. s.* begat.
- GATE, 62/1801, *sb.* way, road. O.Icel. *gatu*.
- GEANT, 59/1700, *sb.* giant.
- GENT, 27/646, *adj.* noble.
- GENYLLERE, 175/5631, *sb.* armour for the knees.
- GERDE, 38/947, *pt. pl.* GERTE, 57/1618, *pt. s.* pierced, cut, struck. A.S. *gyrdan*.
- GERSE, 116/3693, *sb.* cut, wound, gash. "A garse; scarsa uel scaria." Cath. Anglicum.
- GERTE, 24/601, *pt. pl.* made, caused.
- GERYOUN, 177/5693, *sb.* treasure.
- GLAYUES, 88/2728, *sb. pl.* GLEUES, 145/4690. GLEYUES, 38/966. GLYUES, 104/3275, glaives: weapons made of a cutting blade at the end of a pike or staff.
- GLEDE, 74/2230, *sb.* a live coal, red-hot, but not blazing.
- GLENTÉ, 12/356, *pl. s.* glanced.
- GLOD, 24/590, *pt. s.* glided, glanced.
- GLOTOUNS, 120/3841, *sb. pl.* villains. "Glouton. A knave, rascal, filthie fellow," Cotgrave.
- GOBET, 25/614, *sb.* part, piece.
- GOFFANOUN, 33/774, *sb.* flag, pennon.
- GOME, 14/402, *sb.* 131/4203, *sb. pl.* man, creature.
- GOME, 60/1741, *sb.* care, heed.
- GON, 22/555, *vb.* go, move.
- GONDE, 64/1890. (?)
- GONELS, 135/4345, *sb. pl.* long gowns. "Gonnelle. A whole Petticote; the bodies & skirts being joined together," Cotgrave. "Gonel. Habilmente d'homme et de femme, . . . casaque on longue cotte qu'on mettoit sur l'armure, et qui descendoit sur les mollets. Les goneles étoient en soie on en drap, et étoient blasonnées. Geoffroy, fils de Fouiques-le-Bon, Grand Sénéchal de France, eut le surnom de grise-gonelle, parce qu'il portoit ordinairement sa cassaque de couleur grise," Roquefort.
- GOST, 126/4038, *vb.* 2 *pr. s.* goest; *goest* to grounde, wilt be ruined.
- GOST, 21/539, *sb.* spirit.
- GRADDE, 35/858, *pt. pl.* shouted, cried. A.S. *grædan*.
- GRAIDE, 90/2804, *pr. as fut. s.* shall crow.
- GRAME, 44/1182, *sb.* rage.
- GRAME, 29/691, *vb.* be vexed.
- GRAS, 71/2035, *sb.* grace, goodness.
- GRAYPE, 13/385, *vb. imp.* GREYPE, 52/1472, get ready, prepare, put on. O.Icel. *græða*.
- GREDE, 102/3225, *vb.* shout, cry. A.S. *grædan*.
- GRESSE, 60/1750, *sb.* grease, fat.
- GRETE, 106/3347, *sb.* cry.
- GRETTE, 55/1567, *pt. s.* saluted, cried to.
- GRILLE, 73/2195, *vb.* suffer, be pained.
- "Nu ich mai singe hwar ich wulle,  
Ne dar me neuer eft mon agrulle."  
*Owl and Nightingale*, ed. Stratmann, 1110.
- GROPEDE, 50/1388, *pt. s.* felt, touched.
- GROT, 134/4313, *sb.* bit, part.
- GRUTE, 93/2908, *adj.* great, heavy.



- GRYMLY, 21/539, *adj.* grim.
- GRYS, 87/2695, *sb. pl.* pigs. O.Icel. *gréss*. "Gris: *porcellus*." Cath. Anglicum.
- GRYSLICH, 7/201, *adj.* fearful, dreadful.
- GURD, 128/4117, *pt. s.* GURT, 74/2248, struck, smote. See GERDE.
- GURDELSTEDE, 59/1707, *sb.* waist, belt.
- GYEþ, 153/4921, *pr. s.* guides, leads.
- GYNNE, 135/4351, *sb.* plan, stratagem, device, machinery.
- GYNT, 84/2589, *pr. s.* begins.
- GYRFACOUNS, 60/1738, *sb. pl.* large falcons.
- GYSARMES, 36/895, *sb. pl.* battle-axes.
- GYSE, 54/1540, *sb.* manner, way.
- GYUES, 47/1272, *sb. pl.* gyres, fetters.
- HAB, 156/5042, 2 *pr. pl.* have.
- HABERKE, 8/236. HAUBERKES, 26/632, *sb.* coat of mail.
- HABERIONS, 28/675, *sb. pl.* breastplates, generally of mail or close steel.
- HACHE, 59/1701, *sb.* battle-axe.
- HAKENAY, 37/908, *sb.* hack horse.
- HALBERKE, HAUBERKES, 26/632, *sb. pl.* coats of mail.
- HALP, 17/449, *pt. s.* helped, assisted.
- HALS, 8/249, *sb.* neck.
- HALT, 56/1602, *impers. pr.* for *haldeth*, benefits, is of advantage.
- HALUENDOL, 103/3253, *sb.* half, part.
- HAMWARD, 126/4030, *adv.* homewards.
- HAN, 46/1237, *vb.* have, receive.
- HANNE, 33/795, *adv.* hence.
- HANT, 51/1406, *sb.* hand.
- HAPID, 57/1635, *pp.* happened, befell.
- HARD, 15/423, *adj.* hardy, brave, daring.
- HARD, 122/3901, *sb.* hard work, difficulty.
- HARLOT, 46/1234, *sb.* rascal, low fellow.
- HARNEYS, 60/1748, *sb.* baggage, accoutrements. "Harnois. Armor, harnesse: also a team, cart or carriage," Cotgrave.
- HARNEYSCHEAþ, 94/2929, *vb. imper.* arm, equip.
- HAUNDE, 86/2658, *sb. pl.* hands.
- HAUNSEL, 59/1708, *sb.* beginning: lit. the first money received.
- HEBBE, 46/1248, *vb.* heave. A.S. *hebban*.
- HEE, 10/303, *pr.* they.
- HEEL, 175/5651, *adj.* sound.
- HEF, 11/340, *pt. s.* raised, lifted.
- HEFD, 164/5302, *sb.* head. A.S. *heafod*.
- HEFþE, 33/791, *sb.* handle, haft.
- HELE, 43/1125, *vb. imper.* hide, conceal, cover. A.S. *helan*, *hílan*. HELEDE, 115/3655, *pt. s.*
- HELF, 4/99, *sb.* HELUE, 5/159, behalf, part.
- "O godes *halfe*." — *Ormulum*, 624.
- A.S. *healf*.
- HELF, 138/4441, *sb.* (?)
- HEN, 147/4741, *adv.* HENNE, 104/3285.
- HENNES, 30/713, hence, from hence.
- HENDE, 113/3616, *adv.* near.
- HENDE, 33/784, *adj.* gentle, kind.
- HENTE, 59/1722, *pt. s.* seized.
- HEO, *passim. pr.* she.
- HER, 49/1354, *sb.* hair.
- HERBORGHED, 163/5251, *pt. pl.* lodged, encamped.
- HERBURGHES, 176/5689, *sb. pl.* resting-place, camp.
- HERM, 17/461, *sb.* HERME, 84/2568, injury, hurt.
- HERMYE, 47/1295, *vb.* injure, damage.
- HERT, 115/3661, *sb.* hart, deer.
- HESTE, 42/1094, *sb.* command, order.
- HET, 41/1067, *pt. s.* ordered; 151/4865, *pt. s.* named, A.S. *hatan*.
- HETE, 89/2762, *sb.* occasion, time.
- HEþEMEN, 41/1053, *sb. pl.* heathens.
- HEþENIS, 73/2187, *sb.* HEþENISSE, 4/121, heathendom, heathen countries.
- HEUED, 14/405, *sb.* head. A.S. *heafod*.
- HEUEDE, 96/3004, *pt. s.* heaved, lifted, raised.
- HEYL, 30/712, *adj.* whole, sound.
- HEþE, 75/2283, *adj.* principal, high.
- HEþEDE, 147/4731, *pt. s.* hurried, hastened, hied.
- HEYþ, 25/622, *adv.* high, above.

- HILUES, 144/4655, *sb.* handles, hafts.  
 HIR EYPER, 24/601, each of them.  
 HIRT, 44/1166, *pt. s.* was called, was named. A.S. *hatan*.  
 HIRT, 47/1262, *pt. s.* ordered, bade.  
 HIRT, 90/2782, *sb.* promised happiness.  
 HOD, 165/5339, *sb.* HODE, 35/843, hood.  
 HOL, 20/519, *adj.* HOOL, 20/522, whole, sound.  
 HOLD, 40/1026, *sb.* prison, captivity.  
 HOLDE, 84/2592, *adj.* faithful. A.S. *hold*.  
 HOND, 54/1523, *sb.* hound, dog.  
 HOPE, 10/326, 1 *pr. s.* expect, believe.  
 HORE, 178/5725, *sb.* adultery (?).  
 HORE, 5/154, *adj.* white-haired, old.  
 HORENONE, 68/2016, *sb.* bastard.  
 HOST, 95/2982, *sb.* haste.  
 HOSYN, 66/1941, *sb. pl.* hose: breeches or stockings, or both.  
 HOTE<sup>p</sup>, 65/1925, *pr. s.* bids, orders.  
 HOTEN, 152/4901, *pp.*  
 HOVE, 103/3269, *vb.* remain, stay.  
 HOUEDE, 140/4515, *pt. s.* HOYNGE, 122/3904, *pr. p.*  
 HOUTE, 102/3225, *vb.* shout, cry. "Howtyn or cryn. Boo." *Prompt. Parv.*  
 HOWES, 155/4993, *sb. pl.* hooks.  
 HOZE, 141/4539, *sb.* hurt, harm. See Note.  
 HUD, 50/1400, *pp.* hid, hidden.  
 HUGENYS, 2/51, *sb.* size.  
 HULD, 6/178, *pt. s.* held, kept.  
 HULLE, 119/3819, *sb.* hill.  
 HUMELICH, 69/2050, *adv.* gently, quietly.  
 HURD, 2/47, *pt. s.* heard.  
 HURE, 68/2035, *vb.* hear.  
 HURE, 7/215, *pron.* her, it.  
 HURE, 10/303, *poss. pr.* their.  
 HWYCH, 20/511, *pron.* which.  
 HYE, 42/1106, *vb.* hasten, hurry.  
 HYLDE, 57/1639, *vb.* skin; *let hem hylde*, cause them to be skinned.  
 HYL<sup>p</sup>, 102/3208, *sb.* help, assistance.  
 HYLUE, 138/4434, *sb.* haft, handle.
- HYMEN, *passim.* these, they, them.  
 HYNE, 178/5730, *sb. pl.* servants.  
 HYRE<sup>p</sup>, 119/3794, *pr. pl.* hear.  
 HYWE, 24/604, *pt. pl.* hewed, slashed.  
 HYWE, 145/4665, *sb.* complexion. A.S. *heow, hîw*.  
 HYRT, 182/5873, 2 *pt. s.* didst promise.
- I-BOTENED, 6/166, *pp.* buttoned, fastened.  
 I-BROCHED, 107/3389, *pp.* pierced, trans-fixed.  
 IN-BUCHED, 92/2879, *pp.* placed in ambush.  
 I-DI<sup>p</sup>TE, 55/1577, *pp.* prepared, armed. A.S. *dihtan*.  
 IHERID, 42/1100, *pp.* praised. A.S. *herian*.  
 I-HOTE, 42/1087, *pp.* named. A.S. *hatan*.  
 ILECHE, 77/2336, *adj.* like.  
 ILKE, 26/637, *adj.* same, very.  
 ILYUE, 62/1804, *vb.* believe, credit.  
 I-PAID, 60/1747, *pp.* satisfied, paid.  
 I-PL<sup>p</sup>T, 83/2543, *pp.* placed, fixed.  
 I-SAME, 70/2112, *adv.* together.  
 \*I-SCHENT, 12/371, *pp.* destroyed.  
 I-SWONKE, 5/152, laboured, exerted. A.S. *swincan*.  
 IAKKE, 116/3689, *sb.* a defensive upper garment quilted with stout leather: a jerkin.  
 IAMBEAUS, 174/5615, *sb. pl.* leg-armour which covered both the front and the rear, while greaves only protected the shins.  
 IANTAIL, 21/527, *adj.* noble, courteous. Fr. *gentil*.  
 IET, 58/1681, *sb.* contrivance, device.  
 IEW-DE-DAME, 74/2225, *sb.* draughts.  
 IOLIF, 8/251, *adj.* 56/1582, handsome, active.  
 IOLYTE, 75/2259, *sb.* mirth. "Ioliet". Iollity, jollinesse: jocundnesse, mirth, &c." Cotgrave.  
 IOUPOUN, 116/3689, *sb.* a short kind of surcoat introduced in the time of Edward III: often of silk or velvet, and was worn over the armour in the same way as the Cote-armour.



- IORNAY, 34/827, *sb.* combat.  
 IORNE, 126/4029, *sb.* journey, way.  
 IORNEE, 100/3155, 134/4307, day's work, day's march.  
 IOUSTE, 4/105, *vb.* joust, engage, contend.  
 IUGGYMENT, 178/5739, *sb.* judgment, sentence.  
 IUPOUN, 31/745, *sb.* jacket.
- KEEM, 8/260, *vb.* *pt. s.* came. KEMEN, 99/3130, *pt. pl.*  
 KENDE, 48/1298, *sb.* race.  
 KENNEB, 134/4314, *pr. s.* knows.  
 KEP, 125/4016, *vb.* 1 *pr. s.* care, wish.  
 KEPEDE, 106/3377, *pt. s.* troubled for.  
 KERNELS, 102/3234, *sb. pl.* battlements. "Crenaux, Carneaux; the battlements of a wall. Creneler. To im-battle," Cotgrave.  
 KERSE, 168/5442, *sb.* rush. See Note.  
 KET, 115/3667, *adv.* KETE, 143/4596, quickly, fast, fiercely. See Note.  
 KEUERID, 78/2370, *pp.* covered, hid.  
 KNAK, 143/4599, *sb.* knock, blow.  
 \*KNAL, 17/463, *sb.* (?knak,) knock, blow. Compare the preceding word.  
 KNEN, 179/5775, *sb. pl.* knees.  
 KNOB, 6/174, *pr. s.* knoweth.  
 KUD, 50/1401, *pp.* known, celebrated, discovered. A.S. *cyðan*, *cuðian*.  
 KULDE, 86/2660, *pt. s.* killed.  
 KUNNE, 14/389, *sb.* kin, race, family.  
 KUSTE, 68/2030, *pt. s.* kissed, embraced.  
 KUPE, 4/104, *vb.* KYPE, 55/1581, show, make known. See KUD.  
 KYNNES, 4/128, *sb.* kind, manner. None *kynnes*, of no kind.
- LACYE, 164/5308, *vb.* lace up.  
 LAK, 56/1589, *sb.* delay, hesitation; 170/5487, defect.  
 LANCYNGE, 88/2733, *sb.* shower of lances or darts.  
 LASSE, 6/187, *adv.* less.  
 LATOUN, 86/2647, *sb.* a mixed metal resembling brass.
- LAU3TE, 76/2315, *pt. s.* LAWTE, 39/995, caught.  
 LAWE, 3/85, *sb.* faith, creed.  
 LAWE, 13/386, *vb.* laugh. LAWYNG, 60/1757, *pr. p.*  
 LAY, 14/397, *sb.* religion, faith.  
 LAY, 56/1602, *sb.* song, story.  
 LAYKY, 106/3357, *vb.* amuse themselves, play.  
 "3if him list for to laike, benne loke we mowen." P. Plowman, B. ProL. 172.  
 LECHES, 42/1092, *sb. pl.* physicians.  
 LEEM, 63/1861, *sb.* light.  
 LEES, 15/407, *sb.* lie.  
 LEEF, 19/495, *adj.* willing, desirous.  
 LEEF, 21/541, *sb.* leaf.  
 LEEF, 148/4763, *vb. imper.* leave, retire from, give up.  
 LEETE, 172/5535, *pt. s.* was left, remained.  
 LEGGE, 54/1534, *vb.* lay, set; 136/4394, stake.  
 LEKEDEM, 118/3769, *pt. pl.* pleased them.  
 LEKYNGE, 98/3090, *sb.* pleasure. Hure *lekynge*, pleasing to her.  
 LEL, 61/1770, *adj.* faithful, true.  
 LENDE, 179/5772, *vb.* landed, settled.  
 LERE, 77/2354, *vb.* learn, hear.  
 LET, 93/2896, *pt. s.* ordered, caused. A.S. *létan*.  
 LET, 3/93, *vb.* hinder, stop. A.S. *lettan*.  
 LEUE, 85/2633, *vb.* remain, be left.  
 LEUERE, 5/145, *adv.* rather, sooner.  
 LEUES, 48/1327, *sb. pl.* folding-doors.  
 LEUET, 61/1781, 1 *pr. s.* leave it, give it up.  
 LEYE, 26/629, *vb.* lie, be deceived.  
 LIBBE, 179/5779, *vb.* live, pass (one's life).  
 LIFLODE, 81/2493, *sb.* provisions, means of subsistence.  
 LIFT, 121/3863, *sb.* sky, air.  
 LIGGE, 48/1311, *vb.* lie, remain.  
 LIPPEN, 5/141, *sb. pl.* lips.  
 LIp, 74/2248, *sb.* nerves, sinews. A.S. *liss*.  
 LI3T, 71/2145, *pt. s.* alighted.  
 LI3TE, 20/521, *sb.* light.

- LODLUKER, 145/4665, *adj.* more loathsome, hideous.
- LOES, 9/273. Los, 4/123, *sb.* praise, fame.
- LOME, 9/286, *adv.* often, frequently.
- LORDLYNGES, 54/1518, *sb. pl.* LORDLYNGES, 97/3049, *sirs.*
- LORE, 76/2298, *pt. pl.* lost.
- LOSENGERS, 131/4196, *sb. pl.* deceivers, liars. "*Losengier*. A flatterer, cogger, foister, pickthanke, prater, cousener, guller, beguiler, deceiver." Cotgrave.
- LOP, 19/4195, *adj.* unwilling, loth.
- LOVELICH, 68/2030. LOVELY, 8/244, *adv.* with love, lovingly.
- LOUS, 16/439, *sb.* louse, flea.
- LOUTE, 3/67, *vb.* bow, bend.
- LOW, 12/356, *pt. s.* LOW3, 20/524, laughed.
- LUP, 8/243, *vb. pt. s.* leaped.
- LUSE, 139/4469, *vb.* lose money.
- LUST, 17/453, *vb. imper.* listen, hearken. LUSTE, 64/1900.
- LUTHER, 59/1708, *adj.* evil, bad. A.S. *lyðer*.
- LUUERE, 128/4093, *adv.* rather, more willingly.
- LYAUNCE, 51/1409, *sb.* family, descent; 128/4098, party, alliance.
- LYBBE, 131/4213, *vb. 1 pr. s.* live.
- LYE, 74/2242, *sb.* flame. A.S. *lēg, lȳg*.  
 "Fostren forth a flaumbe and a feyre leye."  
*P. Plowman*, B. XVII. 207.
- LYERE, 60/1757, *sb.* liar.
- LYKE, 57/1631, *vb.* please.
- LYME, 158/5092, *sb.* limb.
- LYN, 111/3541, *vb.* lie, beset.
- LYN, 3/89, *vb.* to stop, remain. A.S. *linnan*.
- LYNEDE, 49/1362, *pt. s.* leaned. LYN-  
 YNGE, 106/3358, *pr. p.*
- LYTE, 139/4474, *adj.* little, small; 55/  
 1578, *adv.*
- LYTHER, 54/1535, *adj.* dangerous, fierce.  
 A.S. *lyðer*.
- LYP, 158/5092, *sb.* limb. See LIP.
- LYUAND, 22/549, *adj.* living, alive.
- LYUEDE, 3/85, *pt. pl.* believed.
- LYUES, 81/2483, *adv.* alive.
- LYURE, 42/1095, *sb.* liver.
- MA, 91/2828, *imp. pron.* men, they.  
*Fr. on.* See ME.
- MAKE, 51/1422, *sb.* mate, consort.
- MALES, 131/4201, *sb. pl.* bags.
- MAMETES, 83/2541, *sb. pl.* idols. See  
*Note to l. 2534.*
- MANACE, 16/432, *sb.* threats, menaces.
- MANYON, 35/835, many a one, many.
- MARBRE, 177/5701, *sb.* marble-vessel.
- MARTYR, 2/55, *vb.* martyr, slay.
- MASALYNE, 48/1327, *sb.* some kind of  
 metal: probably brass. Halliwell  
 quotes from MS. Cantab. Tf. II. 38,  
 leaf 122:—  
 "iii. c. cuppys of golde fyne,  
 And as many of mastyn."
- MASTRYE, 65/1904, *sb.* MAYSTRYE,  
 2/57, power, mastery
- MAT, 84/2590. MATE, 82/2506, *adj.*  
 faint, almost dead. "*Mat*. Deaded,  
 mated, amated, quelled, subdued,  
 overcome." Cotgrave.
- "Meliors was al mat: sche ne miȝt no furþer."  
*William of Palerne*, ed. Skeat, 2441.
- MAUFESOURS, 114/3633, *sb. pl.* villains,  
 malefactors.
- MAUGRE, 23/567, *prep.* in spite of.
- MAUGREE, 10/315, *sb.* misfortune.
- MAUMERYE, 83/2534, 153/4938, *sb.*  
 shrine or temple of idols. See Note.
- MAWE, 59/1691, *vb.* may, are able. See  
 MOWE.
- MAY, 94/2927, *sb.* maid. A.S. *mæg*.
- MAYE, 39/978, *vb.* to be troubled.  
 "*S' Esmayer*. To be sad, pensive,  
 careful; to take thought." Cotgrave.  
 Caixon reads—"lose his wits."
- MAYGNY, 61/1791, *sb.* MAYNEE, 107/  
 3405, meyne. Attendants, retinue.  
 O.Fr. *maisniée* = *mansionatam*, from  
*mansionem*, as household, from house.
- MAYL, 144/4653, *sb.* mallet, hammer.
- MAYLLE, 26/624, *sb.* ring or link of his  
 mail-armour. See note to l. 876.
- MAYSTRES, 49/1349, *sb.* governess.
- ME, 3/88, *impers. pron.* men, people;  
 equivalent to the French *on*. See MA.

MEDE, 167/5409, *sb.* meadow, field.  
 MELKIS, 182/5879, *sb.* of milk.  
 MELLE, 178/5749, *vb.* have anything to do, meddle with.  
 MELLEDE, 104/3290, *pt. s.* mixed, mingled.  
 MENDE, 84/2584, *sb.* consciousness, mind.  
 MENE, 173/5568, *vb.* lament, complain.  
 MERUAYLLEB, 22/556, *imp. pr.* it surprises, astonishes me, I am astonished.  
 MESSENGER, 52/1466, *sb.* MESSAGERE, 53/1483, messenger.  
 MEST, 73/2217, *adj.* greatest, principal.  
 METE, 2/47, *sb.* a meal.  
 METE-LES, 45/1195, *adj.* without food.  
 \*METENYE, 12/352, *vb.* maintain.  
 MEYNE, 22/556, *adj.* low, poor.  
 MEYTEYNE, 12/352, *vb.* maintain.  
 MICHE, 34/811, *adv.* much.  
 MIDDEL, 73/2199, *sb.* waist.  
 MIDE, 92/2866, *prep.* with. A.S. *mid*.  
 MIXT, 18/474, 2 *pt. s.* mightiest, canst.  
 MOD, 5/144, *sb.* temper, feeling, disposition.  
 MOLDE, 153/4940, *sb.* the suture of the skull.  
 MOLDE, 12/361, *sb.* earth.  
 MON, 45/1212, *sb.* MONE, 45/1196, lament, lamentation.  
 MONEKYS, 3/60, *sb. pl.* monks.  
 MORED, 91/2834, *pp.* fixed, rooted.  
 "And *i-mored* so uaste also þat hi ne miȝte awei be nome."—*Legends of the Holy Rood*, E. E. T. S., ed. Morris, p. 28, l. 126.  
 MOREL, 116/3713, *sb.* a name properly applied to a dark-coloured horse.  
 "Morel as Moreau. Moreau cheval; a blacke horse." Cotgrave.  
 MORNYNG, 77/2338, *sb.* mourning, lamentation.  
 MORWE, 42/1114, *sb.* MORWENYNG, 2/46, morning, morrow.  
 MORWETYDE, 93/2895, *sb.* morning-time, morning.  
 MOST, 5/144, *aux. vb.* might.  
 MOT, 10/318, *aux. vb.* may.  
 MURȝBE, 68/2034, *sb.* MURȝBE, 2/48, mirth.  
 MYNE, 155/4993, *vb.* undermine.

MYNTE, 173/5587, *vb.* aim.  
 MYSBEDE, 85/2619, *vb.* give disgraceful orders to, speak shamefully.  
 MYSBRAYDE, 40/1037, *sb.* abuse.  
 MYS-BYȝOTE, 180/5825, *pp.* mistaken, acting wrongly.  
 MYSTER, 87/2684, *sb.* trade, profession, art.  
 MYSWENT, 66/1963, *pp.* mistaken, gone wrong.  
 NAD, 5/141, *pl. s.* for *ne had*, had not.  
 NAKE, 88/2744, *adj.* uncovered, bare.  
 NAM, 80/2434, for *ne am*, am not.  
 NAM, 31/746, *pt. s.* hit, reached; 8/257, took. A.S. *niman*.  
 NAMLICH, 62/1823, *adv.* especially.  
 NAYM, 13/374. Nain. Compare CAYM = Cain.  
 NAȝT, 61/1779, *adv.* not, nought.  
 NAUEL-STEDE, 20/509, *sb.* navel, middle.  
 NEDES, 60/1741, *adv.* necessarily.  
 NEITE, 5/148, *sb.* night, evening.  
 NEL, 23/568, for *ne will*, will not.  
 NEMPNEDE, 101/3196, *pp.* named.  
 NEODE, 120/3853, *sb.* affair, business.  
 NERE, 10/326, *pt. s.* for *ne were*, were not.  
 NERE, 41/1069, *adv.* never.  
 NESSCHE, 110/3499, *adj.* NEYCHS, 161/5187, soft; at *nessche* & hard, entirely, on every point. A.S. *hnesce*.  
 NEȝ, 23/575, *adv.* nigh, nearly.  
 NEȝED, 6/179, *pt. s.* approached. NEȝEHEDE, 53/1494, drew near. A.S. *neahwian*.  
 NEȝENE, 88/2720, *num.* nine.  
 NEȝENTENE, 87/2699, *num.* nineteen.  
 NEȝY, 154/4953, *pr. pl.* approach, come near. See NEȝED.  
 NISTE, 28/681, *pt. s.* for *ne wiste*, did not know.  
 NOLDE, 4/127, *pt. s.* for *ne wolde*, would not.  
 NOME, 43/1133, *pp.* betaken, taken. A.S. *niman*.  
 NONE, 56/1587, *sb.* noon.

- NONES, 48/1324, *for the nones* = for the time (*for than ânes*).  
 NOT, 122/3902, *pr. s.* for *ne wot*, does not know.  
 NOPELES, 23/573, *conj.* nevertheless, yet.  
 NOPEP, 5/147, *conj.* NOUPER, neither, nor.  
 NOWAR, 2/51, *adv.* nowhere. A.S. *nâhwer*.  
 NUBBEE, 55/1571, *sb.* Nubia.  
 NULLETH, 94/2932, 1 *pr. pl.* for *ne wull-eth*, will not.  
 NUYE, 2/49, *vb.* be vexed or grieved.  
 NYOY, 181/5843, *adj.* foolish, silly. Lat. *nescius*.  
 NYCYTE, 75/2255, *sb.* folly. Fr. "*nicet  : simplicit  , or simpleness.*" Cotgrave.  
 NYSTE, 89/2756, *pt. pl.* for *ne wiste*, did not know, were at a loss.  
 NYPEMEST, 103/3257, *adj.* lowest.  
 NYȚT, 155/5017, *pt. pl.* knew not.  
 O, 18/470, *adj.* one.  
 OF-SEȚ, 117/3739, *pt. s.* saw at a distance.  
 OF-TAKE, 39/984, *pp.* OF-TOKEN, 39/987, *pt. pl.* overtook.  
 OK, 141/4561. OKE, 141/4554, *sb.* oak.  
 ONDE, 74/2242, *sb.* breath.  
 ONES, 156/5040, *adv.* ONYS, 15/418, once, before.  
 ONEPE, 88/2739. ONNEPE, 36/883. OUNPEPE, 85/2631, *adv.* with difficulty, with reluctance. A.S. *Oneaȝ* from *eaȝ*, easy.  
 ONLADE, 155/4989, *adj.* unloaded, empty.  
 ONMAWE, 86/2658. OUNMAWE, 89/2766, *adj.* fierce, furious.  
 OPEN-HER, 66/1943, *adj.* bare-headed.  
 OR, 154/4970, *adv.* before, ere.  
 ORN, 122/3893, *pt. s.* ran. A.S. *rinnan, irnan, eornan*.  
 "The children *ournen* at the bares."  
*MS. Cott. Cleop. D. ix, leaf 156, back.*  
 OTEN, 152/4901, *sb. pl.* oats, corn.  
 \*OUN, 20/511. ?  
 OUNARAID, 34/821, *adj.* unprepared, unarmed.  
 OUNDO, 48/1310, *vb. imper.* undo, release.  
 OUNGERTE, 66/1943, *adj.* ungirded.  
 OUNHELID, 24/586, *adj.* uncovered. A.S. *helan*, to cover.  
 OUNHENDE, 66/1965, *adj.* uncourteous.  
 OUNKENDE, 48/1301, *adj.* unkind.  
 OUNLEKES, 47/1264, *pr. s.* unlocks.  
 OUNLOK, 46/1254, *pt. s.*  
 OUNRIDE, 32/747, *adj.* OUNRYDE, 116/3691, fearful.  
 OUNRIȚT, 40/1031, *sb.* outrage.  
 OUNRIȚT, 5/157, *adv.* unfairly, wrongly.  
 OUNPANK, 98/3061, ill thanks. The same as *maugre*, or *malgre* = *male-gratum*.  
 OUNWRASTE, 93/2905, *adj.* OUNWRESTE, 147/4740, wicked, base.  
 OUNWRYE, 63/1849, *vb.* unfold, disclose, tell. A.S. *unwrihan*.  
 OUT-TAKE, 7/200, *prep.* except, save.  
 OUTTRAGE, 58/1669, *sb.* foolish action.  
 OUPER, 3/84, *conj.* or, *ouper* . . . *ouper* = either . . . or.  
 OUERAL, 50/1389, *adv.* everywhere, altogether.  
 OUERCASTE, 63/1831, *vb.* be troubled.  
 OWAR, 33/767, *adv.* anywhere. A.S. *  hwer*.  
 OWE, 157/5068, *adj.* own, true.  
 OȚENE, 20/513, *adj.* own.  
 OȚT, 54/1535, *sb.* ought, anything.  
 OȚTE, 98/3071, *pt. s.* owned, possessed.  
 PAGE, 111/3523, *vb.* pass, cross.  
 PAID, 83/2533, *pp.* pleased.  
 PAN, 161/5188, *sb.* piece, portion. "*Pan*. A pane, piece, or pannell of a wall, also a Spanne." Cotgrave. "*Panne* of a howse; *Panna*." Cath. Anglicum.  
 PAN, 145/4685, *sb.* skull.  
 PARAGE, 58/1668, *sb.* parentage, kindred.  
 PARD, 111/3517, *sb.* part, direction.  
 PARFAY, 17/457, in faith, faith. Fr. *par foi*.  
 PARFORNY, 67/1994, *vb.* perform, carry out.

- PAS, 95/2969, *sb.* course.
- PAST, 89/2763, *sb.* paste. *On past*, in a pie.
- PASTE, 45/1195, *pt. pl.* went away, departed.
- PAUTENER, 35/859, *sb.* villain, rascal. *See Note.*
- PAUYLOUNS, 3/74, *sb. pl.* tents.
- PAYE, 135/4355, *sb.* pleasure, satisfaction. *At my paye* = to please or satisfy me.
- PAYNYE, 4/122, *sb.* PAYENYE, 33/761, heathendom, pagan countries.
- PAYS, 130/4152, *sb.* peace, reconciliation.
- PAYTREL, 115/3665, *sb.* breastplate; the strap that crosses the breast of a horse.
- PENOUN, 55/1555, *sb.* flag, banner.
- PERCY, 143/4613, *vb.* pierce, wound.
- PERE, 15/413, *sb.* equal, match. *Lat. par.*
- PERE, 177/5722, *sb.* pear.
- PEROUN, 137/4429, *sb.* column, pier. "*Perron.* A square base of stone, or metall, some five or six feet high, whereon, in old time, knights errant placed some discourse, challenge, or prooffe, of an adventure." Cotgrave.
- PERREE, 48/1327, *sb.* jewels, precious stones. "*Pierrerie.* Jewels or precious stones." Cotgrave.
- PERS, 141/4548, *vb.* pierce, cut through.
- PERS, 58/1682, *sb. pl.* piers.
- PERSAUNT, 154/4980, *sb.* Persians.
- PERSCHED, 38/941, *pt. s.* pierced, ran through.
- PEYNYMES, 33/762, *sb. pl.* pagans, paynim.
- PIȚT, 69/2069, *pp.* fixed, placed.
- PLAT, 48/1330, *pp.* plated.
- PLATE, 36/876, *sb.* plate-armour. *See Note.*
- PLEYNEDE, 32/750, *pt. s.* complained.
- PLYȚTE, 47/1281, *vb.* plight, pledge. *A.S. plihtan.*
- PLYȚTE, 97/3029, *pt. s.* snatched, plucked.
- POLASTRE, 48/1327, *sb. ?*
- POLTE, 157/5077, *pt. s.* put, placed.
- PORPOS, 22/560, *sb.* intention, purpose.
- POSTE, 100/3158, *sb.* power, might.
- POT, 73/2213, *pt. s.* POTTE, 39/1003, put, placed.
- POYLE, 12/365, *sb.* Apulia.
- PRAUNCEDE, 165/5341, *pt. s.* stamped about.
- PRAY, 181/5857, *sb.* prayer, entreaty.
- PREF, 43/1150, *sb.* proof, witness.
- PRES, 171/5520, *sb.* charge, struggle.
- PREST, 103/3240, *adj.* ready. *O.Fr. prest. Fr. prêt. Lat. præsto.*
- PREYNTE, 46/1238, *pt. s.* winked. "*Prince eages, nictus vel ictus oculi.*" Lye, *A.S. Dict.*
- PROCURY, 180/5826, *vb.* cause, endeavour.
- PROFRYEM, 5/139, *vb.* offer himself, volunteer.
- PROUTELICH, 4/118, *adv.* proudly, haughtily.
- PROW, 12/357, *sb.* good, advantage. *O.Fr. prou.*
- PRUDE, 16/432, *sb.* pride, haughtiness.
- PRUWESSE, 40/1014, *sb.* prowess, daring.
- PRYKIE, 34/824, *vb.* ride.
- PRYME, 62/1800, *sb.* six o'clock, a.m.
- PRYS, 6/173, *sb.* value, account, estimation.
- PRYSOUNS, 39/1000, *sb. pl.* prisoners, captives.
- PRYUEE, 179/5773, *adj.* friendly.
- PULT, 24/594, *pt. s.* put, placed. PULTE, 33/774, pushed.
- PUPLE, 130/4169, *sb.* people, men.
- PURCHAS, 85/2603, *sb.* acquisition.
- PURPOS, 66/1956, *sb.* opinion, proposal.
- PYCH, 135/4330, *sb.* pitch.
- PYKES, 144/4647, *sb. pl.* spikes.
- PYKOYS, 155/4993, *sb.* pickaxes. *See Note.*
- PYNE, 41/1048, *sb.* PYNS, 41/1055, *sb. pl.* grief, pain.
- PYNGE, 80/2430, *vb.* tingle, stir; 46/1248, push.
- PYSE, 181/5847, *sb.* pea. *Lat. pisum.*
- QUARELS, 105/3312, *sb. pl.* bolts from cross-bows. "*Quarreau.* A Quarrell, or boult for a crossebowe, or an arrow



- with a four-square head." Cotgrave.
- QUARREE, 145/4676, *adj.* square-headed.
- QUAȝTE, 25/607, *pt. s.* shook, quaked.
- QUED, 16/429, *sb.* wretch. O.Fris. *qvād.*
- QUEDE, 54/1535, *sb.* ill, harm.
- QUELLE, 16/431, *vb.* kill. A.S. *cwellan.*
- QUENTE, 115/3659, *adj.* strange, curious, quaint. See QUEYNTE.
- QUEREL, 28/668, *sb.* quarrel, engagement.
- QUERT, 30/712, *adj.* safe, whole.
- QUERTE, 10/325, *adj.* safe. *In querte* = in safety. "Querte; *Incolumis.*" Cath. Angl.
- QUEYNTE, 58/1684, *adj.* QUYNTE, 58/1681, 103/3257, curious. "Coint. Quaint, compt, neat, fine, spruce," &c. Cotgrave.
- QUYCLYCH, 60/1742, *adv.* quickly, soon.
- QUYKE, 118/3764, *adj.* alive, living.
- QUYTE, 62/1819, *vb.* requite, repay.
- RAD, 67/1990, *pp.* advised, told.
- RAIED, 76/2295, *pp.* laid out, served.
- RAKE, 72/2177, *pt. s.* hurried. A.S. *recan.*
- RAPLY, 13/384, *adv.* quickly. Cf. Lat. *rapere*, to snatch, to seize hurriedly.
- RATHE, 121/3874, *adv.* early. RAȝERE, 16/426, *comp.*
- RAUȝT, 26/641, *pp.* RAȝT, 38/965, *pt. pl.* reached, struck. See ARAUȝTE.
- RAY, 13/385, *imper. s.* array, prepare.
- RAYNE, 60/1755, *sb.* rein, bridle.
- RECET, 40/1021, *sb.* retirement.
- RECREENT, 12/318, *adj.* recreant.
- RECULEDE, 142/4585, *pt. pl.* drove back, made to recoil.
- RECVLLE, 38/971, *vb.* recoil, draw back, retreat.
- RECVLYNGE, 89/2771, *sb.* retreat, retiring.
- RED, 59/1716, 67/1986, *sb.* advice.
- REDE, 169/5456.
- REDE, 7/218, *vb.* assist, maintain.
- REFET, 60/1736, *pp.* fattened, fat. "Re-  
faict. Plumpe, fattened, high-fed." Cotgrave.
- REGARD, 47/1297, *sb.* looks, appearance. "Regard. A look, view, sight, aspect." Cotgrave.
- REGNEE, 78/2386, *sb.* kingdom.
- REKE, 46/1249, *vb.* run, hurry. A.S. *recan.*
- REKE, 167/5403, *pt. pl.* hastened.
- REKE, 3/61, *adj.* rich. A.S. *rice.*
- RELIEDE, 38/963, *pt. pl.* rallied, recovered.
- RELYGYOUS, 3/62, *adj.* members of any religious order.
- REMUȝE, 3/77, *vb.* remove, stir.
- RENDE, 74/2242, *pt. s.* ran.
- RENDOUN, 166/5357, *sb.* haste, speed. See ARAUNDOUN.
- RENEYED, 145/4673, *pp.* foresworn, false.
- RENTE, 22/561, *sb.* property.
- REPE, 113/3583, *adv.* speedily, quickly. See also RAPLY.
- REPREUE, 14/404, *sb.* shame, disgrace.
- REQUILLED, 57/1621, *pt. pl.* drove together. See Note.
- RESCOWE, 40/1012. RESCUWE, 39/1008, *vb.* RESCUWY, 39/1003, rescue.
- RESOUN, 126/4047, *sb.* advice, opinion.
- RESTARE, 51/1439, *vb.* restore, give up.
- REUE, 14/405, *vb.* deprive, bereave.
- REWARDIEȝ, 109/3463, *pr. 2 pl.* determine, agree. REWARDED, 10/312. REWARDET, 10/311, *pp.*
- REWE, 97/3026, *sb.* row.
- REWȝE, 33/784, *sb.* pity.
- REYNOURS, 62/1798, *sb. pl.* thieves, robbers.
- RIBAUȝ, 140/4517, *sb. pl.* villains, rascals.
- RIDEL, 83/2537, *sb.* curtain, screen. "Rideau. A curtain, or cloth-skreen." Cotgrave.
- RIG, 137/4397. RIGGE, 48/1309, *sb.* back. A.S. *hrycg.*
- RIGGES, 55/1565, *sb. pl.* ridges, mounds.
- RITTE, 156/5030, *pt. pl.* cut, tore.
- RIȝDT, 38/956, *pr. s.* rides.
- RIȝTES, 135/4343, *adv.* directly, straight.



ROBBY, 62/1799, *vb.* rob, plunder.  
 ROUT, 34/813, *sb.* ROUTE, 34/825, company, followers.  
 ROUTE, 49/1343, *vb.* roar. O.Icel. *rauta*.  
 ROWE, 48/1300, *vb.* ?perhaps rest, be still. See *The Tale of Beryn*, ed. Furnivall, l. 284.  
 ROWE, 66/1954, *adv.* rough, thick. A.S. *ruh*, *ruw*.  
 ROYT, 176/5669, *pt. s.* cared, recked. A.S. *récán*.  
 RYDE, 48/1300, *vb.* ride.  
 RYOT, 138/4459, *sb.* assembly, gathering. O.Fr. *riote*.  
 RYSE, 42/1114, *pt. pl.* arose, rose.  
 RYSSCHE, 4/124, *sb.* rush. A.S. *risce*.  
 SAD, 12/353, *adv.* strongly.  
 SADE, 103/3235, *adj.* heavy; 105/3340, sharp, severe. "Sad, or hard. *Solidus*." *Prompt. Parv.*  
 SAF, 128/4109, *prep.* except, save.  
 SAINTFAILE, 77/2350, *sb.* certainly, beyond a doubt. Fr. *sans faille*.  
 SAKRED, 51/1405, *pp.* taken a solemn oath.  
 SARPPLERS, 136/4371, *sb. pl.* bags. "*Sarpillère*. A Sarpliar; a peece of canvas, cloth, or other stuffe to wrap or packe up wares in." *Cotgrave*.  
 SAUETE, 107/3410, *sb.* safety.  
 SAWE, 57/1635, *sb.* tale, account.  
 SAY, 7/213, *sb.* serge or woollen cloth. "Saye clothe, *serge*." *Palsgrave*.  
 SAY, 34/811. SAYE, 117/3729, *pt. pl.*  
 SAWY, 46/1245, *pt. s.* saw, discovered.  
 SAYE, 42/1093, *vb.* try, examine.  
 SAYNE, 63/1836, *vb.* say, tell.  
 SAYSEþ, 96/3009, *pr. s.* seizes.  
 SCABERKE, 33/771, *sb.* scabbard.  
 SCAPYE, 32/759, *vb.* harass, injure.  
 SCHAD, 31/743, *pt. s.* spilt.  
 SCHAK, 86/2663, *sb.* shock, charge.  
 SCHAKE, 37/928, *vb.* hurry, ride.  
 SCHAKET, 73/2205, *vb.* shake it.  
 SCHALY, 104/3282, *vb.* peel off, fall off (in scales).

SCHAPE, 146/4713, *pp.* purposed, proposed. A.S. *sceapian*.  
 SCHAV, 25/615, *pt. s.* cut, shaved off.  
 SCHEP, 50/1369, *pt. s.* pushed, shoved.  
 SCHELTOU, 51/1436, shalt thou.  
 SCHENE, 138/4463, *adj.* bright, shining.  
 SCHENNES, 72/2175, *sb.* ruin, destruction. A.S. *scendnyss*.  
 SCHENT, 17/459, *pp.* disgraced, defeated. A.S. *scendan*.  
 SCHENTFULE, 67/1973, *adj.* shameful, disgraceful.  
 SCHEP, 21/541, *pt. s.* shaped, created. See SCHAPE.  
 SCHERTH, 35/837, *pr. s.* cuts, shaves. A.S. *sceran*.  
 SCHILDE, 31/727. SCHULDE, 26/631, *pt. pl.* resounded. O.H.Ger. *scellan*.  
 "bide schillinde stefne." *Sainte Marharete*, ed. Cockayne, 19.  
 SCHILLE, 96/3020, *adv.* shrilly, loudly. A.S. *scyll*. See Note.  
 SCHIPPE, 21/542, 2 *pr. s.* prepare, make ready. See SCHAPE.  
 SCHON, 66/1941, *sb. pl.* shoes.  
 SCHOND, 66/1947, *sb.* ruin, disgrace. A.S. *sceond*.  
 SCHOURE, 25/581, *sb.* blow.  
 SCHREWE, 62/1828, *sb.* villain, cursed fellow.  
 SCHRIDE, 8/234, *vb.* array, dress.  
 SCHRIDDE, 35/868, *pt. s.* A.S. *scriðan*.  
 SCHYNDE, 20/523, *vb.* ruin, destroy. A.S. *scendan*.  
 SCKYRME, 74/2227, *vb.* fence.  
 SCOLLE, 12/353, *sb.* skull, head.  
 SCOUTE, 75/2284, *sb.* wretch.  
 SEDE, 6/190, *pt. s.* said, cried.  
 SEET, 45/1200, *pt. s.* sat.  
 SEGE, 72/2183, *sb.* position, place; 78/2358, siege, attack.  
 SEKEDE, 7/209, *pt. s.* sighed.  
 SELCOUþ, 177/5708, *adj.* strange, unusual.  
 SELUE, 67/1997, *adj.* same.  
 SEMBLY, 35/834, *adj.* fair, handsome.  
 SEMBLANT, 37/923, *sb.* face, countenance.  
 SEMBLEE, 79/2423, *sb.* assemblage.

- SENGLE, 41/1071, *adj.* simple, hence, unclothed, naked; 66/1942, *adv.* See Note.
- SERUAGE, 2/56, *sb.* subjection.
- SESSOYNGNE, 65/1923, *sb.* Saxony.
- SEST, 70/2108, *pr. t. s.* seest.
- SEST, 40/1017, *pt. pl.* ceased, stopped.
- SET, 64/1872, 1 *pr. s.* reckon, think of consequence.
- SE<sub>3</sub>, 31/736, *pt. s.* SE<sub>3</sub>E, 19/504, saw. A.S. *seon*.
- SE<sub>3</sub>, 24/589, *pt. s.* ?
- SHET, 124/3962, *pt. s.* shot, plunged. *Sset* occurs in *Robert of Gloucester*.
- SHREWEDERE, 138/4431, *adj.* more villainous-looking.
- SHREWIDNESSE, 98/3084, *sb.* villany.
- SHROUT, 106/3358, *sb.* cover, shelter. A.S. *scrūt*.
- SIBBE, 109/3447, *adj.* related.
- SIGGE, 3/87, *vb.* say, tell.
- SIKERLUKERE, 35/867, *adv.* SYKERLUKER, 37/909, more securely, more safely.
- Sip, 44/1163, *adv.* afterwards, after.
- SIPES, 41/1080, *sb. pl.* times.
- SI<sub>3</sub>TE, 40/1023, *pt. s.* sighed.
- SKEER, 181/5835, *adj.* free, safe from.
- SKRY<sub>3</sub>TE, 56/1609, *pt. pl.* shrieked, cried out.
- SKUNTEDE, 121/3888, *pt. s.* foamed. See Note.
- SKYLES, 110/3499, *sb. pl.* reasons, reasoning.
- SLAKE, 84/2595, *vb.* fail, run short.
- SCLAUNDRE, 4/132, *sb.* mockery.
- SLAU<sub>3</sub>T, 103/3236, *sb.* SLA<sub>3</sub>T, 171/5519, slaughter.
- SLEE, 2/55, *vb.* slay. SLEEP, 66/1966, *imper.* A.S. *seon*. See also SLONE and SLOW.
- SLEGGE, 48/1308, *sb.* sledge-hammer.
- SLENT, SLENTE, 28/674, *pt. s.* aimed, struck. See STRATMANN, *s. v.* Slengen.
- SLE<sub>3</sub>, 52/1446, *adj.* SLE<sub>3</sub>E, 46/1239, wise, sensible. O.Icel. *slægr*.
- SLO, 135/4338, *sb.* sloe. See Note.
- SLONE, 16/427, *vb.* SLAY, 66/1958, *pp.* A.S. *seon*.
- SLOW, 3/59, *pt. s.* SLO<sub>3</sub>, 3/62, slew. A.S. *seon*.
- SMERE, 13/386, *adv.* ? gently. "He smere lōh." *Lazamon*, ed. Madden, 14981.
- SMYLLP, 83/2546, *pr. s.* smells.
- SNEL, 75/2273, *adv.* quickly, at once. A.S. *snell*, *snel*.
- So, 3/81, *adv.* as; so . . . so = as . . . as.
- SOCOURE, 45/1192, *sb.* help, assistance.
- SOJOURNED, 150/4841, *pt. s.* halted, remained.
- SOMERS, 87/2692, *sb. pl.* pack-horses, horses of burden. "Sommer. A sumpter-horse."—Cotgrave.
- SOND, 14/401. SONDE, 165/5331, *sb.* message.
- SONDE, 23/573, *sb.* sand, ground.
- Sòot, Sot, 30/719, *sb.* sweat. A.S. *swat*.
- SOR, 19/503, *sb.* wound. "Surre; cica-trix." Cath. Anglicum.
- SOUNDERLICHE, 67/1990, *adv.* separately.
- SOUNEDE, 41/1080, *pt. s.* SOWENEDE, 131/4221, swooned, fainted.
- SOWENYNG, 43/1134, *sb.* SO<sub>3</sub>ENYNG, 84/2585, swooning, faint.
- SO<sub>3</sub>TE, 3/71, *vb. pt. t.* sought, came to.
- SPELIE, 13/342, *vb.* spare. "Spele and spare." *P. Plowman*, C. XIV. 77.
- SPELLE, 16/429, *sb.* speech, harangue.
- SPERDE, 47/1263, *pt. s.* closed, barred. A.S. *sparrian*.
- SPERHAUK, 87/2680, *sb.* sparrow-hawk.
- SPILLE, 153/4947, *vb.* be lost, ruined, killed. SPILD, 23/569, *pp.*
- SPILLYNG, 168/5425, *sb.* waste, outpouring.
- SPI<sub>3</sub>TE, 103/3248, *pt. s.* ? directed, bade.
- SPORES, 55/1564, *sb. pl.* spurs.
- SPREYNTE, 104/3291, *pt. s.* sprinkled. A.S. *sprengan*.
- SPRINGOLD, 105/3310, *sb.* a machine of war for casting stone arrows, &c. See Note.
- SPRYNGGYNG, 112/3562, *sb.* dawning, opening.
- STAGES, 103/3255, *sb. pl.* platforms, stories. Fr. *estage*.

- STAP, 11/345, *sb.* step.  
 STAPE, 180/5793, *vb.* step.  
 STENT, 58/1653, *pr. s.* stands.  
 STERK, 103/3241, *adj.* sharp, stiff. A.S. *stearc*.  
 STERREDE, 132/4233, *adj.* with a star on his forehead.  
 STEUENE, 99/3111, *sb.* voice.  
 STEJE, 78/2388, *vb.* climb.  
 STEJE, 178/5731, *pt. s.* ascended. A.S. *stigan*.  
 STILLE, 10/322, *adv.* quietly, in a low tone.  
 STILP, 141/4553, *sb.* stump, post. O.Icel. *stolpi*.  
 "But iii foote high on *stulpes* must ther be."  
*Palladius on Husbandrie*, ed. Lodge, 39/1054.  
 STOKKES, 44/1186, *sb. pl.* stocks.  
 STORK, 71/2118, *adj.* stiff, sharp. See STERK.  
 STOUNDE, 20/518, *sb.* moment.  
 STOURE, 29/696, *sb.* battle, contest.  
 STOZEN, 156/5027, *pp.* climbed. See STEJE.  
 STRAUT, 67/1976, *adv.* STRA3TE, 73/2204, directly, straight.  
 STRE, 74/2229, *sb.* straw.  
 STREK, 8/244, *vb. pt. s.* stroked.  
 STREKES, 47/1265, *pr. s.* hurries, goes rapidly.  
 STRUYEDE, 3/64, *pt. s.* destroyed.  
 STURIE, 36/876, *vb.* exert, busy himself.  
 STYL, 105/3313, *sb.* STYLE, 138/4433, steel.  
 STYNTE, 3/77, *pt. s.* stopped, halted. A.S. *astyntan*.  
 STYB, 29/696, *adj.* STYBE, 85/2614, fierce, strong, sturdy; 26/631, *adv.* A.S. *stið*.  
 SULK, 138/4463, *sb.* silk.  
 SUNDERLY, 94/2937, *adv.* separately, individually.  
 SURLOKERE, 20/520, *adv.* more safely.  
 SUPPE, 27/647, *adv.* after, afterwards, since.  
 SWARF, 31/743, *pt. s.* swerved, glanced, passed. A.S. *sweorfan*.  
 SWART, 93/2908, *adj.* black. A.S. *sweart*.  
 SWATTE, 178/5753, *pt. s.* sweated.  
 SWER, 3/82, *pt. s.* swore.  
 SWETE, 120/3855, *vb.* sweat, be exhausted.  
 SWOLWE, 132/4232, *sb.* swallow.  
 SWOM, 124/3958, *pt. s.* swam.  
 SWYKEL, 142/4589, *adj.* traitorous, deceitful. A.S. *swicol*.  
 SWYNKE, 20/517, *vb.* work, labour.  
 SWYRE, 31/735, *sb.* neck. A.S. *swira*.  
 SWYPPER, 34/816, *adv.* more quickly.  
 SYCHE, 65/1935, *vb.* seek, follow.  
 SYE, 58/1679, *pr. s.* seest.  
 SYKERLY, 3/62, *adv.* certainly, assuredly.  
 SYKERY, 47/1281, *vb.* assure, pledge. See also SAKRED.  
 SYKYNGE, 77/2345, *pr. p.* sighing.  
 SYMEB, 59/1700, *pr. s.* seems.  
 SYSST, 180/5809, 2 *pr. s.* seest.  
 SYJNG, 40/1040, *sb.* sighing.  
 TABIDE, 19/500, *for to* abide, to wait for.  
 TABLERE, 74/2225, *sb.* backgammon.  
 TABOURS, 122/3895, *sb. pl.* drums.  
 TAKET, 73/2204, *vb.* take it, seize it.  
 TAL, 12/363, *for to al*; in *tal* = into all.  
 TALE, 34/799, *sb.* count, reckoning by tale, in number.  
 TANGE, 48/1308, *sb.* tongs.  
 TARSE, 138/4463, *sb.* a kind of silk. See Note.  
 TAST, 59/1700, *vb.* TASTE, 42/1094, try, examine, touch.  
 TAU3TE, 50/1391, *pt. s.* TA3TE, 56/1603, showed, proved.  
 TEEN, 39/991, *sb.* TENE, 35/846, rage, vexation.  
 TELEST, 55/1578, *pr. s.* countest, reckonest. TELLEB, 4/117, TELT, 6/173, *pr. s.*  
 TEYNTE, 82/2506, *pp.* pained, affected. A.S. *teonian, tynan*.  
 THE, 5/144, *vb.* thrive; so most he þe, so might he prosper.  
 THILKE, 12/364, *pron.* that one, he.  
 THO, 5/141, *adv.* then.  
 THRO, 124/3968, *adj.* swift, threatening.

- THROWE, 167/5413, *sb.* moment, short time.
- TIDE, 11/350, *sb.* time. A.S. *tīd*.
- TILLE, 3/59, *vb.* reach, come to. TILDE, 145/4678, *pt. s.* A.S. [*ge*]tillan.
- TURN, 40/1015, *pt. pl.* turned, directed their course. TURN, 31/729, *pp.* intended, meant.
- TOCHED, 7/219, *pt. s.* appertained to, belonged to.
- TOCHON, 96/3000, *pt. s.* broke in pieces. A.S. *to-cinan*. "pe roche tochon." *An Eng. Miscell.*, ed. Morris, p. 92.
- TO-CLATRID, 36/897, *pp.* broken to pieces.
- TO-FALLE, 155/5011, *pp.* knocked to pieces.
- TO-FLENTE, 153/4940, *pt. s.* flew in pieces.
- TO-GADRES, 28/672, *adv.* together.
- TO-HEWE, 28/676, *pp.* cut to pieces.
- TOK, 4/114, *pt. s.* counted, considered.
- TOL, 141/4541, *sb.* tool, weapon.
- TOLD, 145/4659, *pp.* reckoned, measured.
- TO-NIGHT, 5/153, *adv.* this night just past, last night.
- TO-RENTE, 28/675, *pt. pl.* tore, cut to pieces.
- TORKE, 85/2605, *sb.* Turk.
- TO-TAAR, 141/4533, *pt. s.* tore to pieces.
- TOUR, 42/1104, *for to our*.
- TOUȝT, 151/4857, *adj.* strong. See TOȝT.
- TO-WOND, 84/2568, *pt. s.* went, tumbled.
- TOȝT, 124/3969, *adv.* strongly, fiercely. "pe kniȝt so toȝt." *Sir Gawayne*, 1869.
- TOȝT, 59/1716. ?
- TOȝTE, 136/4390, *adv.* tightly, full.
- TRACES, 182/5881, *sb. pl.* tresses, hair.
- TRATE, 50/1370, *sb.* old wretch. See Note.
- TRAYSEMENT, 147/4754, *sb.* treason, treachery.
- TRE, 56/1595, *sb.* TREO, 123/3939, wood, shaft. TREN, 102/3230, *pl.*
- TRECHOUR, 102/3210, *sb.* traitor.
- TRENCHAUNT, 21/537, *adj.* cutting, sharp.
- TREPEDE, 8/241, *vb. pt. s.* stepped on.
- TRETYS, 182/5883, *adj.* slender. See Note.
- TREU, 133/4393, *sb.* toll. "Treu. The toll or custom paid unto Lords, for salt, and other commodities, or merchandise, carried along by their dominions; and generally, any toll, tax, or imposition."—Cotgrave. See TROW.
- TRIST, 6/191, 1 *pr. s.* trust, rely on.
- TRISTOUR, 78/2373, *sb.* grief, sadness.
- TROME, 78/2372, *sb.* assembly, gathering, heap. A.S. *truma*.
- TROSSY, 130/4189, *vb.* TROSSYE, 58/1663, *imper. s.* TRUSSYE, 130/4193, *vb.* pack, tie. "Trousser. To tucke, packe, bind or girt in." Cotgrave.
- TROSSEDE, 13/4201, *pt. pl.*
- TROW, 44/1186, *sb.* wood.
- TROW, 60/1732, *sb.* toll, fine. See TREU.
- TRUFLE, 109/3459, *sb.* nonsense, folly.
- TRUPT, 64/1872, *interj.* pooh! See Note.
- TRUSSYAM, 126/4029, *vb.* get themselves ready, pack up. See TROSSY.
- TRUWAGE, 60/1731, *sb.* toll. "Truagè, A toll, custom, tax, imposition." Cotgrave.
- TURDE, 87/2691, *pt. pl.* turned, from French *tour*; turn being from *tourner*. L. Lat. *tornare*.
- TWELMONTH, 91/2832, *sb.* twelve-months a year.
- TWELPE, 91/2843, *num. adj.* twelfth.
- TWEYRE, 10/311, *num.* of two.
- TWYE, 175/5645, *num.* two.
- TWYȝTE, 56/1596, *pt. pl.* drew hastily. A.S. *twiccan*.
- TYNT, 56/1596, *pp.* lost, destroyed. O.Icel. *týna*.
- TYȝD, 62/1817, *impers. pr. as fut.* it will betide, happen to.
- ȝAR, 2/51, *adv.* where.
- ȝARȝ, 76/2288, *prep.* through.
- ȝE, 181/5841, *vb.* ȝEO, 103/3251, thrive, prosper. A.S. *peon*.
- ȝEARNES, 38/949, *sb. pl.* bowels. A.S. *pearne*.
- ȝEPE, 73/2207, *sb.* country. A.S. *peod*.

PENCHESOUN, 130/4168, *sb.* for *pe enchesoun*, the reason.

PENGYNs, 155/4985, for *pe engyns*.

PENNE, 34/803, *adv.* thence.

PERSTE, 9/291, *vb. pt. s.* dared, ventured.

"I ne perste do such a fol dede."  
*Sainte Margarete*, ed. Cockayne, 304.

PEYNT, 167/5395, ? does it seem to.

PEY, 18/483, *conj.* though, although.

PILKE, 23/578, *pron.* that, such. PYLKE, 48/1301, *pl.*

POLIE, 47/1275, *vb.* suffer, endure. A.S. *polian*.

PONDER, 26/631, *sb.* thunder.

POR, 21/544, *adv.* there.

PORW, 35/843. PORWH, 34/829. POR, *prep.* through, by.

POPRE, 113/3592, for *pe opre*, the rest, the others.

PRASTE, 113/3606, *vb.* push on; 36/871, *pt. s.* pressed, pushed.

PREF, 68/2017, *sb.* fortune, luck, thriving.

PRETE, 43/1152, *vb.* threaten.

PRIDDE, 49/1355, *num. adj.* third.

PROW, 28/679, *sb.* time, moment.

PUS, 27/660, *pron.* these.

PYWYNG, 158/5094, *pr. p.* ? threatening.

UAKE, 72/2148, ? awake.

VCHONE, 162/3207, *pr.* each one, all.

VNDERFONGE, 7/208, *vb.* undertake.

VDERNOME, 7/205, *pp.* abused; 100/3148, *pp.* undertaken; 161/5213, perceived.

VNDER,YTE, 81/2469, *pt. pl.* understood. A.S. *undergitan*.

VNRIDE, 29/705, *adj.* violent, fierce. See OUNRIDE.

VNWRASTE, 46/1256, *adj.* vile, wretched, worthless. See UNWRAST in *Glossary to Havelock*, ed. Skeat.

VSAUNCE, 73/2217, *sb.* custom, habit.

VSAUNT, 104/3296, *adj.* accustomed.

VAAT, 177/5696, *sb.* vat, vessel.

VACCHE, 82/2517, *vb.* fetch, procure.

VAILLE, 36/877, *vb.* avail, be of service to.

VASSALAGE, 58/1671, *sb.* noble deed, becoming a knight.

VASTE, 20/509, *adv.* fast by, close by; 83/2565, soundly, fast.

VAUASOUR, 16/430, *sb.* vassal, an un-knighted person, common soldier.

VERAMENT, 16/435, *adv.* truly, assuredly.

VERDE, 102/3228, *impers. pt.* it fared, was.

VET, 72/2183, *sb. pl.* feet.

VETRES, 48/1313, *sb. pl.* fetters, chains.

VEWE, 38/953, *adj.* few.

VIAGE, 34/804, *sb.* journey.

VILENTYNE, 112/3555, *sb.* birds (wild), fowl. A corruption of *Volatile*, the usual M. E. name for birds in general, Lat. *volatilia*, neuter plural, used as a collective noun singular, much as we say *poultry*, fowl. It here = French *volatisses*, which itself is another corruption from the same source.

VOLDE, 97/3028, *vb.* fold, clasp.

VORES, 55/1565, *sb. pl.* furrows, vallies. A.S. *furh*.

VOULE, 137/4427, *adj.* foul, hideous.

VOYDEDE, 144/4627, *pp.* cleared, emptied. See Y-VEWDID.

VYLAYNICHE, 165/5345, *adv.* insolently. VILENLY, 62/1825, outrageously, shamefully.

VYLONYE, 75/2254, *sb.* harm, disgraceful treatment.

VYNDE, 20/522, *vb.* find.

VYUE, 43/1147, *num. adj.* five.

WACCHE, 161/5185, *sb.* guard, garrison.

WACE, 14/389, 2 *pt. s.* WAST, 15/421, *pt. s.* was.

WALES, 80/2428, *sb.* whale's. See Note.

WALWE, 84/2585, *vb.* WALWEDE, 77/2328, *pt. s.* roll about, wallow, flounder. A.S. *wealwian*.

WAN, 2/47, *adv.* when

WAN, 20/513, 1 *pt. s.* won, gained.

WANNYS, 47/1267, *adv.* whence.

WANYE, 57/1645, *vb.* vanish, disappear.



- WAR, 144/4635, *adj.* aware, told.  
 WAR, 50/1381, *conj.* whether.  
 WAR, 56/1592, *vb. imper.* beware.  
 WAR-FOR, 10/505, *conj.* wherefore, for which.  
 WARYSOUN, 42/1099, *sb.* reward.  
 WAS, 60/1726, *pron.* whose.  
 WATHER, 18/486, *conj.* whether.  
 WAVES, 49/1343, *sb. pl.* waves.  
 WEDEDE, 68/2007, *pt. s.* wedded.  
 WEDES, 60/1751, *sb. pl.* clothes, dresses.  
 WEL-A-FYN, 89/2752, *adv.* to good purpose, well.  
 WELDE, 116/3716, *sb.* power, possession.  
 WEM, 178/5725, *sb.* stain. A.S. *wamm*.  
 WENDEST, 13/387; \*WENIST, 13/387, 2 *pr. s.* thinkest, imaginest.  
 WEORE, 5/157, *pt. pl.* WORE, 5/156, were.  
 WEP, 153/4928, *pt. s.* wept.  
 WEPNE, 6/171, *sb.* a weapon, arms.  
 WERE, 35/845, *vb.* defend, protect. A.S. *werian*.  
 WERCHE, 54/1545, *vb.* work, act.  
 WERRE, 17/450, *sb.* war.  
 WES, 45/1194, *pt. s.* was.  
 WHERE, 92/2872, *sb.* doubt.  
 WHILE, 84/2580, *adv.* once.  
 WHYTE, 49/1367, *vb.* know, learn. A.S. *witan*.  
 WIKKE, 36/889, *adj.* fierce, violent (men).  
 WILLES, 7/221, *adv.* of one's own free will, willingly.  
 WILY, 71/2138, will I.  
 WISSE, 4/120, *adj.* certain. See Note.  
 WIT, 84/2584, *sb.* senses.  
 WITH-HALST, 174/5620, v. 2 *pr. s.* with-holdest.  
 WITTES, 57/1649, *sb. pl.* thoughts, opinions.  
 WIXE, 53/1485, *adj.* strong, fit for fighting. O.Icel. *vigr*, battle.  
 WJTE, 17/456, *adj.* active, strong.  
 WJTLICHE, 167/5384, *adv.* bravely, courageously.  
 WO, 7/209, *adj.* grieved, vexed.  
 WOD, 24/591, *pt. s.* went, passed. A.S. *eode*.  
 WOD, 31/728, *adj.* mad, furious.  
 WOLD, 105/3324, *sb.* power, possession.  
 WON, 48/1311, *sb.* dwelling, place.  
 WON, 112/3560, *sb.* plenty. "Woone, or grete plente copia," &c.—Prompt. Parv. See *P. Plowman*, C. xxiii. 170.  
 WOND, 36/892, *pt. s.* went, turned.  
 WONDE, 19/501, *sb.* wound.  
 WONDOWE, 49/1361, *sb.* window.  
 WONE, 68/2017, *sb.* habit, practice.  
 WONED, 78/2390, *pp.* accustomed.  
 WORLDY, 161/5202, *adj.* earthly, on earth.  
 WORSCHIP, 39/981, *sb.* honour, fame.  
 WORST, 34/805, 2 *pr.* as *fut. s.* wilt be.  
 WORP, 19/488, *pr.* as *fut. s.* will be.  
 WOST, 70/2108, *pr.* 2 *s.* knowest.  
 WOSTOU, 65/1905, wouldst thou.  
 WOT, 26/638, 1 *pr. s.* know.  
 WRAKE, 62/1815, *sb.* mischief, destruction.  
 WRECHE, 130/4181, *sb.* vengeance.  
 WRYTE, 61/1782, *pp.* written.  
 WRJTE, 61/1774, *sb.* writing, letter.  
 WYCHE, 38/955, *pron.* which, whom.  
 WYCKE, 146/4721, *adj.* hard, painful.  
 WYKES, 112/3549, *sb. pl.* weeks. A.S. *wice*.  
 WYKKE, 36/882, *adv.* fiercely, mightily.  
 WYLDE, 160/5179, *vb.* wield.  
 WYMEN, 86/2672, *sb. pl.* women.  
 WYS, 118/3763, *adv.* to *wys*, for certain, of a certainty. See *WISSE*.  
 WYT, 124/3956, *adj.* white.  
 WYT, 159/5127, *imper. s.* blame, find fault, charge.  
 WYTE, 163/5276, *vb.* know, find out. A.S. *witan*.  
 WYTHERWYNS, 28/672, *sb. pl.* antagonists, enemies. A.S. *wiðerwinna*.  
 WYUY, 70/2096, *vb.* wife, marry.  
 WYJTE, 15/415, *adj.* active, strong.  
 WYJTE, 11/342, *sb.* man, person.  
 WYJTE, 177/5710, *adv.* brave, valiant.



- Y-BATRID, 36/896, *pp.* inlaid.  
 Y-BORE, 16/444, *pp.* born.  
 Y-BULD, 48/1331, *pp.* built.  
 YCH, 161/5191, *pr.* I.  
 Y-CORE, 33/766, *pp.* chosen. "Icham coren king." *Guy of Warwike*, p. 428.  
 Y-FERE, 11/345, *adv.* together.  
 Y-FOLLED, 181/5829, *pp.* Y-FULLED, 181/5835, baptised. *See* Y-VOLLID.  
 Y-FRACLED, 115/3659, *adj.* spotted, freckled.  
 Y-FULD, 3/74, *pp.* filled.  
 Y-GULD, 48/1330, *pp.* gilt.  
 Y-HARNEYSED, 115/3665, *pp.* adorned, ornamented.  
 Y-HUDE, 135/4346, *pp.* hidden, concealed.  
 YKE, 130/4166, *adv.* also. A.S. *eac*.  
 Y-KENED, 177/5724, *pp.* conceived. A.S. *cennan*.  
 Y-LEPE, 144/4626, *pp.* thrown over, made to leap over the bridge.  
 Y-LET, 130/4135, *pp.* stopped, prevented.  
 Y-LIF, 77/2343, *vb. imper.* believe, trust.  
 Y-LONG, 133/4291, *adv.* along of, in consequence of.  
 Y-LOȝE, 20/511. ?  
 Y-LYUEST, 128/4097, 2 *pr. s.* believest, trustest.  
 Y-MACED, 105/3326, *pp.* amassed, collected.  
 \*Y-MET, 11/335, *pp.* dreamt.  
 Y-METE, 70/2092, *pp.* measured.  
 Y-MONE, 4/99, *adv.* together. A.S. *gemong*.  
 Y-MUWED, 60/1738, *pp.* moulted, changed their plumage.  
 Y-MYNT, 23/576, *pp.* meant, intended.  
 YNDE, 92/2866, *sb.* end.  
 YNEWE, 26/626, *adv.* anew, afresh.  
 Y-NOME, 42/1105, *pp.* taken, captured. A.S. *niman*.  
 YNOW, 40/1043, *adv.* enough. A.S. *genoh*.  
 Y-PEYNT, 29/701, *pp.* painted, ornamented: *wyth gold y-peynt* = gilt.  
 Y-PILT, 10/316, *pp.* fixed, settled.  
 Y-PONDRED, 48/1327, *pp.* stewed.  
 Y-PYȝT, 48/1305, *pp.* placed, fixed.  
 Y-RAD, 127/4083, *pp.* counselled, advised. A.S. *rædan*.  
 Y-RAD, 179/5789, *pp.* read, repeated.  
 Y-RAFT, 65/1934, *pp.* stolen, taken.  
 YRE, 31/742, *sb.* iron.  
 YRE, 114/3643, *sb.* rage, anger.  
 Y-SAME, 44/1188, *adv.* together.  
 Y-SETE, 2/48, *pp.* set, inclined.  
 Y-SHRID, 66/1940, *pp.* clothed, dressed. A.S. *scrȝdan*.  
 Y-SLENTE, 105/3313, *pp.* flung, slung.  
 Y-SOWE, 77/2328, *pp.* exhausted, fainting. A.S. *swogan* (?)  
 Y-SPERDE, 113/3596, *pp.* bolted, barred.  
 YSSE, 4/125, *pr. s.* is, exists.  
 Y-STABLYD, 117/3753, *pp.* stabled, put in the stable.  
 Y-STOKEN, 161/5190, *pp.* stopped, blocked.  
 Y-STRAWED, 15/421, *pp.* strewn, covered.  
 Y-TRENT, 182/5881, *pp.* plaited, curled.  
 YUEL, 7/212, *adj.* ill, evil, bad. YULE, 15/417, *adv.*  
 Y-UASTE, 91/2822, *pp.* fasted.  
 Y-VERE, 47/1269, *adv.* together.  
 Y-VEWDID, 99/3131, *pp.* cleared, emptied. *See* Note.  
 Y-YOLDE, 180/5796, *pp.* closed, shut.  
 Y-VOLLID, 22/548, *pp.* baptised. A.S. *fulwian*.  
 Y-WARESCHID, 32/758, *pp.* healed, cured.  
 Y-WORȝ, 93/2908, *pt. s.* was, became.  
 Y-WORȝE, 148/4761, *pr. as fut. s.* will be.  
 Y-WREȝED, 126/4045, *pp.* angered, enraged.  
 Y-WYS, 5/139, *adv.* certainly, in truth. A.S. *gewiss*.  
 Y-ȝETE, 2/49, *pp.* eaten, finished his meal.  
 ȝAF, 46/1243, *pt. s.* gave. A.S. *gifan*.  
 ȝARE, 130/4193, *adj.* ready, prepared.

- 3EARE, 161/5186, eager; 97/3059, *adv.*  
 3EALWE, 182/5881, *adj.* yellow, fair.  
 3EATE, 59/172, *sb.* 3ETE, 71/2141, pas-  
 sage, entrance.  
 3EDE, 74/2240, *pt. s.* 3EODE, 118/3770,  
*pt. pl.* 3UTE, 31/729, went, moved.  
 A.S. *eode*.  
 3ELDE, 21/533, *vb.* yield, surrender.  
 3ULDE, 38/953, *pt. pl.*  
 3ERNE, 19/505, *adv.* 3URNE, 81/2478,  
 hastily, speedily, eagerly.
- 3EUE, 17/462, 1 *pr. s.* as *fut.* shall give.  
 A.S. *gifan*.  
 3YUE, 4/191, 1 *pr. s.* give, yield.  
 3IEP, 52/1450, *pr. s.* assures, tells.  
 3ILPE, 29/694, *vb.* boast, speak loudly of.  
 A.S. *gelpān, gylpan*.  
 3OLDE, 115/3684, *pp.* paid back, requited.  
 3OND, 166/5367, *adj.* yonder.  
 3OT, 116/3690, *pt. s.* went, cut. A.S.  
*eode, ivit*.  
 3UTE, 32/750, *adv.* yet.

## CORRECTION.

In Glossary, for GRILLE, 73/2195, read AGRILLE, and transfer to A.

Hungay:

CLAY AND TAYLOR, PRINTERS.











